



NUNC COGNOSCO EX PARTE

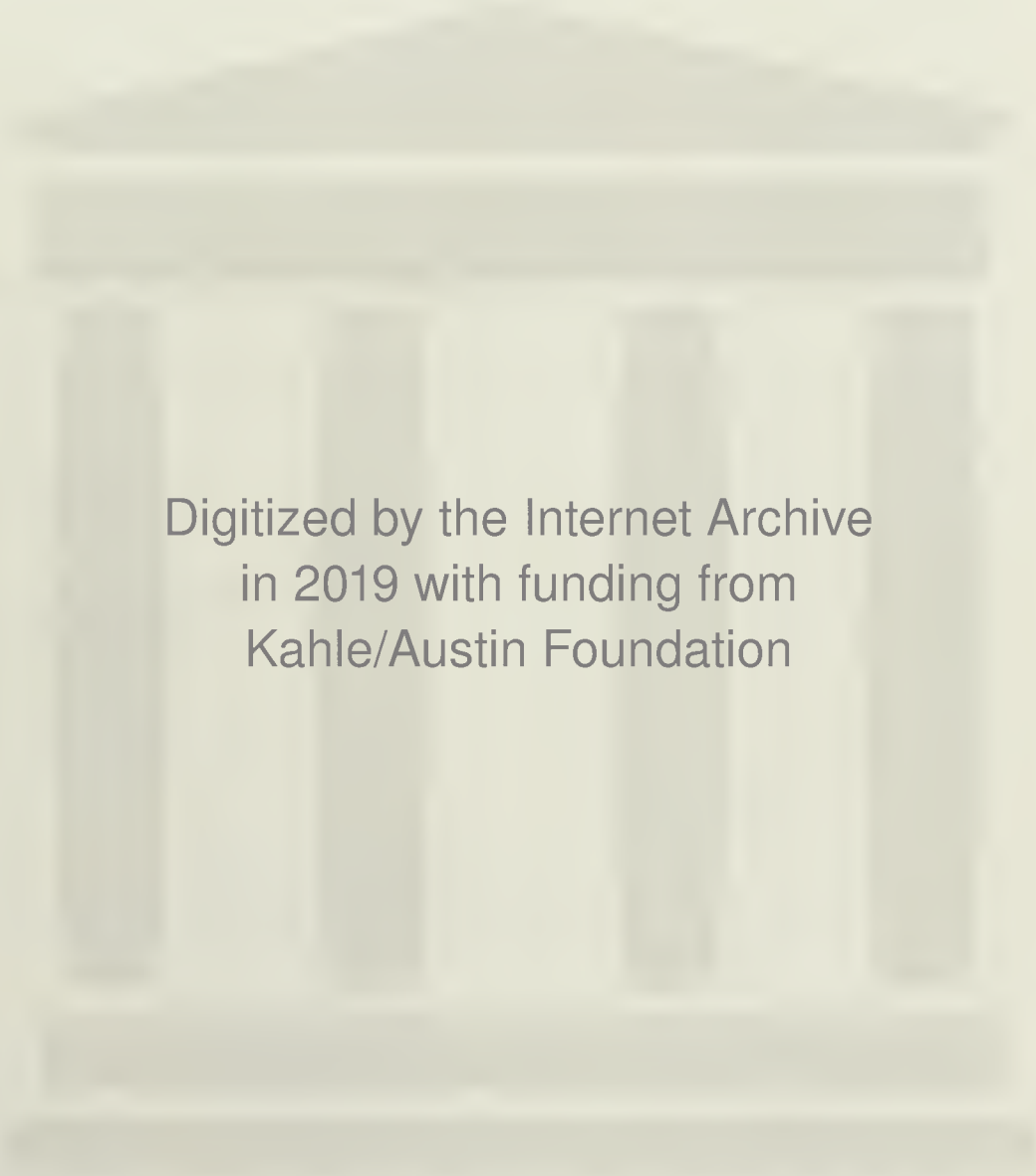


TRENT UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

PRESENTED BY

J. Alex Edmison





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2019 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

<https://archive.org/details/encyclopediaofbr0001unse>



THEIR MAJESTIES KING GEORGE V.
AND QUEEN MARY IN THEIR
CORONATION ROBES

Photo, W. & D. Downey, London

THE
ENCYCLOPEDIA
OF THE
BRITISH EMPIRE

THE FIRST ENCYCLOPÉDIC RECORD
OF THE GREATEST EMPIRE IN
THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD

EDITED BY
CHARLES W. DOMVILLE-FIFE

Illustrated with 2000 Photographs and Maps

VOL. I.

THIRD EDITION

LONDON
VIRTUE & CO. LTD.
19, 20, 21 THAVIES INN, HOLBORN CIRCUS, E.C.1

DA 11. D7 1930 v.1

*“What do they know of England
who only England know!”*

—KIPLING

THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE

CONTENTS OF VOLUME I.

	PAGE		PAGE
Introduction to the Complete Work . . .	17	Rise of British Influence . . .	45
How to Use the Encyclopedia . . .	20	The Bombardment . . .	46
Educational Value . . .	21	Zanzibar To-day . . .	47
		The Spice Islands . . .	48
		City of Zanzibar . . .	49
		Climate . . .	50
AFRICA.		The Union of South Africa . . .	54
British East Africa, Kenya and Uganda	25	Important Dates in South African	
Portuguese and Arab Dominion . . .	25	History . . .	52
The Slave Trade . . .	25	The Portuguese and Dutch at the Cape	54
Federation of East Africa . . .	25	Post Office Stones . . .	53
Protectorate over Uganda . . .	27	The Great Trek . . .	56
Kenya Colony . . .	28	Rise of the Dutch States . . .	56
Monibasa and the Coast . . .	30	The Zulu and First Boer Wars . . .	56
Kenya and Uganda Railway . . .	30	The Making of Rhodesia . . .	58
Nairobi and the Highlands . . .	31	The Raid and the Matibili Rising . . .	58
Natives . . .	36	The Great Boer War . . .	59
The Great Lakes . . .	36	South Africa To-day . . .	59
Forests . . .	38	Cape Town . . .	61
The Uganda Protectorate . . .	39	From the Cape to Rhodesia . . .	62
Zanzibar . . .	41	The Great Karoo . . .	62
The Portuguese and Arab Dominion	41	Kimberley . . .	63
The Slave Trade . . .	43	The Diamond Fields . . .	63
German Activity . . .	44	Bechuanaland . . .	67
England in East Africa . . .	45		

	PAGE		PAGE
The Kalahari Desert	67	West Africa To-day	150
Rhodesia	68	The Gambia	151
Cape Province	68	The Gold Coast	155
Port Elizabeth	69	Sierra Leone	162
Province of the Orange Free State .	71	British Nigeria	165
Bloemfontein	72	Southern Provinces	167
Province of the Transvaal	73	Northern Nigeria	170
The Witwatersrand	73		
Johannesburg	75		
Pretoria	77		
The Province of Natal	78	AGRICULTURE.	
Durban	81	The British Isles	173
The Native Problem	83	Australia	173
Pietermaritzburg	84	Canada	175
Ladysmith	85	Western Wheat Pools	175
Zululand	85	Ceylon	177
Climate	87	Kenya and Uganda	177
Districts and Towns	88	Indian Empire	180
South African High Commission . .	89	New Zealand	181
Bechuanaland Protectorate	89	Rhodesia	181
Basutoland	89	Sudan	184
Swaziland	91	The Union of South Africa	185
Rhodesia	92	West Indies	188
Early Occupation	92	British Empire	189
The British Occupation	94	The World	190
The Matibili War	106		
The Native Rebellions	106		
British South Africa Police	108		
Development	113	ASCENSION.	
Northern Rhodesia	115	Ascension	191
Southern Rhodesia	115		
Climate	116		
Settlers	116		
Towns	117	AUSTRALIA.	
Mining	119	Discovery and Settlement	193
Agriculture	122	Convict Settlements	196
The Victoria Falls	123	Rapid Development	198
Zimbabwe	124	Federation of the Australian States .	198
Inyanga and Khani	125	The Federal Capital	209
The Matopopo Hills	126	Nation-making	209
Big Game	129	Australia To-day	210
Natives	132	Mountains	211
Nyasaland, British Central Africa .	132	Rivers	211
England in Central Africa	135	Plains	213
Highlands and Lowlands	136	Forests	213
British West Africa	139	Irrigation	213
Slavery	139	Climate	214
Ashanti Campaigns	140	New South Wales	215
The Partition of West Africa	143	Victoria	219
Ashanti Rebellion	143	Queensland	224
Founding of the Gambia	143	South Australia	230
Founding of the Gold Coast	144	West Australia	235
Founding of Sierra Leone	146	Romance of the Gold-fields	242
Founding of Nigeria	146	Tasmania	249

27076

	PAGE		PAGE
Restoration of the Stuarts	401	Peninsula War	423
Sea Fights	401	Waterloo	423
The Plague and the Fire	403	War with the United States	425
The Cabal Ministry	403	Georgian England	425
Rye House Plot	405	West Africa and Burma	425
Monmouth Rebellion	406	Reform Bill	427
The Prince of Orange	406	Abolition of Slavery	427
The Declaration of Rights	408	Early Years of Queen Victoria	427
Massacre of Glencoe	408	Expansion of British India	429
James in Ireland	408	Repeal of Corn Laws	429
War of the Grand Alliance	410	Crimean and Persian Wars	430
War of the Spanish Succession	411	Indian Mutiny	430
The Treaty of Utrecht	413	American Civil War	430
The Jacobites	413	The Fenians	432
The South Sea Bubble	415	Home Affairs 1865-75	432
Spanish and Silesian Wars	415	Formation of the Indian Empire	432
The Young Pretender	416	England in Africa	432
Seven Years' War	416	Ireland and Home Rule	433
Conquest of Canada	416	Second Boer War	434
Peace of Fontainebleau	416	Alliance with Japan	434
American War of Independence	417	The Entente Cordiale	436
Independence of the United States	420	North Sea Incident	436
Sea Power and the French Revolution	420	The Great European War of 1914-21	436
Union of Great Britain and Ireland	422	Final Cause of World War	438
The Struggle with Napoleon	422	The Great Victory	438
Trafalgar	422	League of Nations	439

M A P S

Kenya Colony, Uganda, Tanganyika		Tasmania	250
Territory and Zanzibar	51	Oceania	277
Africa	Facing Page 64	Bahama Islands	299
Rhodesia and Nyasaland	118	British Borneo	340
Sketch Map of West Africa	142	The British Empire	Facing page 392
Australia	Facing Page 216		

For Gazetteer and Index see end of work

PREFACE

TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN the Introduction to the original work, published at the conclusion of the Great European War, the hope was expressed that, *the foundation had been well and truly laid upon which future generations in future editions might build a perfect encyclopedic record of the British Empire and the British Race.* This original introduction, surveying the contents, aim and uses of the work—with some alterations and additions made necessary by the extended scope of the new edition—is reproduced in the following pages.

The complimentary remarks of an almost world-wide Press which greeted the publication of the original work, then in three volumes, and the practical demonstration of the pressing need for such a complete illustrated compendium, in all parts of the far-flung Commonwealth, by the rapid passage of tens of thousands of sets from printing works to readers of all ages and in all spheres of life, proved conclusively that these foundations *had* been “well and truly laid.” It cannot be too strongly emphasised that the whole work has been written with the object of making it as useful in one portion of the Empire as another. It is not just a view of the Great Commonwealth from a purely English, or local standpoint. Many of the contributions have been obtained, often with Government assistance, from authoritative Dominion and Colonial sources.

There remained among those who had laboured for ten years to produce the basis for this literary edifice the hope that it would be maintained and improved in future editions, “—each a more perfect link of Empire, joining thousands of scattered peoples by the great bond of mutual understanding.” This, then, has been the aim when revising and extending the THIRD EDITION of this encyclopedic record of the greatest Empire known in the history of the world.



HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, WESTMINSTER—"THE MOTHER OF PARLIAMENTS"

Photo, Central News



B. F. Gribble

Mine-layer
Flying Boat
Pulling Cutter

Destroyer

Seaplane

Aircraft Carrier

By kind permission of the Navy League

Battleship

Coastal
Motor
Boat

Motor
Launch

Light Cruiser

Minesweeper

Trawler

M Class Submarine

THE EMPIRE'S SHIELD

Raphael Tuck & Sons, Ltd., London, E. C.



FOR THE EMPIRE—OUR GLORIOUS DEAD
The Cenotaph, Whitehall, London

Photo, Luscombe Toms



OPENING OF THE FIRST COMMONWEALTH PARLIAMENT



DOMINION HOUSE OF PARLIAMENT, OTTAWA

Photo, C. P. Roy.



DELHI THE CAPITAL OF THE INDIAN EMPIRE

The splendour of India. Durbar Procession of Indian Princes on richly adorned elephants



GOVERNMENT HOUSE, WELLINGTON
The official residence of the Governor-General of New Zealand

Photo, New Zealand Government



THE UNION GOVERNMENT BUILDINGS, PRETORIA

Photo, South African Rlys

INTRODUCTION

TO THE COMPLETE WORK

AN encyclopedia of information covering one-quarter of the surface of the world, carried out on a scale so large as to give in detail sufficient for the statesman, politician, educationalist, student and general reader the whole field of British endeavour, comprehending, as it must, a multitude of contributory subjects in addition to the historical, geographical, descriptive and statistical surveys of the component parts, will readily be acknowledged a work of almost incalculable magnitude and importance. Yet it is to this end that the distinguished body of experts who have been engaged for ten years on the present publication have steadily and surely laboured. The production of such a work, the first of its kind, should be more than a literary incident. It should be an historical undertaking of great national importance—a Domesday Book of Empire. The thousands of articles, written by experts and illustrated by photographs and maps contained within the volumes comprising this encyclopedia, will form, for all future time, the foundation of systematised knowledge of the greatest Empire known in the history of the world. Other nations of the modern world, such as the United States of America, have national encyclopedias of their history, politics, people, places, institutions and life, and it was felt that the British Commonwealth—by far the largest and most complex ever known—should also be uniformly recorded in a single standard work.

The words, *Encyclopedia of the British Empire*, convey, as fully as a title can do so, the extent of the undertaking. But many readers will perhaps desire a fuller description to enable them to realise with what systematic care a work so extensive must be planned, and how vast is the area of knowledge that the title covers. Let us give an example.

There are over 1,120,000 words in the complete work, together with more than 2,000 illustrations, maps and tables. The Encyclopedia is divided into 102 main sections in alphabetical order; each of these sections vary from a few hundred to 70,000 words, and the sections comprise 1,249 articles ranging from 50 to about 3,000 words in length. The titles of the complete sections, and the articles composing them, can be seen at the beginning of Vol. I, under "Contents." One section, covering the "Cities and Towns of the Empire," contains a description of no fewer than 3,350 populous centres, and forms a gazetteer, alphabetically arranged, enabling any city or town of importance to be quickly located, and its population, historic monuments, industries, means of communication, and other

advantages ascertained. Another section covers the history of the British Isles from the earliest times to the present day, and has, among its 40 articles, a history of London illustrated with maps and diagrams.

In the domain of history the rise of British power in all parts of the world has received detailed attention, and among the articles may be mentioned (Synopsis of British History)—the Saxon Period, the Danish Period, Restoration of the Saxon Dynasty, Norman Period, the Plantagenets, etc., bringing the purely Imperial history up to the reign of King George V (about 20,000 words) ; (Canadian History)—the First Settlers, England and France in the War of Independence, United Empire Loyalists, Extension of Influence Inland, the Hudson Bay Company and the Great North-West, the Red River Rebellion, Establishment of the Dominion, etc. ; (Ceylon)—Early Conquests, the Chinese, Portuguese and Dutch, etc. ; (China)—England in the Far East, Occupation of Hong-Kong, Extension of Hong-Kong and the Treaty Ports, the Policy of the Open Door, the Russian Advance, the Acquisition of Wei-hei-Wei, Siege of the Peking Legations, etc. ; (Cables)—Historical Account of Principal Cable Lines, etc. ; (Commerce)—Rise of Home and Colonial Overseas Trade, etc. ; (Africa, British East)—The Portuguese and Arab Dominion, the Slave Trade, Protectorate over Uganda, the formation of the Kenya Colony, and the acquisition of the Tanganyika Territory, etc. ; (Egypt and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan)—England's Work in Egypt, the Araby Revolt, the Regeneration of Egypt, the Capitulations, Mixed Tribunals, Gordon at Khartoum, the Relief Expedition, etc. ; (West Africa)—Early Slave Trading Posts, Effect of the Abolition of Slavery, Ashanti Campaigns, Partition of West Africa, Ashanti Rebellion, Founding of the Gambia, Founding of the Gold Coast, Founding of Nigeria, etc. ; (British West Indies)—The Spaniards and the West Indies, the Beginning of the Slave Trade, the Buccaneers, Naval Victories, Early Colonisation and White Slave Trade, etc. ; (Finance)—Growth of the National Debt, etc. ; (Indian Empire)—India in the Dark Ages, Dawn of European Adventure, Rise of British Power in India, an Account of the Administration of every Viceroy, etc. ; (Newfoundland)—The First English Colony, the French Claims, etc. ; (New Zealand)—Dawn in the Pacific, the Stewart Incident, a Dependency of New South Wales, the New Zealand Company, Cession to Great Britain, the New Zealand War, etc. The above are but a very few of the subjects dealt with, and are given here by way of example only.

Within the sphere of geographical and topographical description may be mentioned such articles as : (British Malaya)—Topography, Climate, Through the State of Perak, Taiping, etc. ; (Straits Settlements)—Singapore, Malacca, Dependencies, etc. ; (New Zealand)—Composition and Area, Topography and Climate, South and Stewart Islands, Earthquakes, Christchurch, Wellington, the Hot Springs, the New Zealand Alps, the Fjords, Tourist Resorts, etc. ; (Canada)—Area and Physiography, the Rocky Mountains, the Prairies, River Systems, Climate, Maritime Provinces, Eastern Provinces, Central Canada, Pacific Province. Description of every Province in Detail, Soil Conditions, Markets, Forests, Lumbering and Fishing, Farm Wealth, Scenery, Ottawa, Montreal, Toronto, etc. ; (Ceylon)—The Island and the Natives, Harbours, Colombo, the Highlands, Kandy, Buried Cities, Tea Estates, etc. ; (Indian Empire)—Foreign Territorial Rights, British Provinces, Native States, Topography, Climate, Burma, Bengal, Calcutta, United Provinces, Central Provinces,

Punjab, N.W. Frontier, Delhi—the Imperial Capital, etc. The above are but a few of the geographical articles taken at random from the Index.

Among the articles of special interest must be mentioned : Big Game Hunting in Different Parts of the Empire, Rubber Growing, Cotton Growing, Forests and Timber, Hill Stations in the Himalayas, Civil Services of the Empire, Plantation and Ranch Life.

The economic articles include : Imperial and Colonial Finance, Commerce, Mining, Manufacturing Industry, Pastoral Industry, Agriculture, Timber, Coal, Petroleum, Tariffs, Wireless Systems of the Empire, Regulations Regarding Commercial Travellers, Taxation, Rents, Prices of Commodities, Hours of Labour, Wages, etc.

In the maritime sections will be found : Navies of the Empire, Cables, Canals, Trade Routes, History of the Mercantile Marine, Wireless Systems, Harbours, Distances between Principal Ports, Lloyds, Trinity House, Steamship Lines and Routes from every Port in the Empire to and from all parts of the World, etc.

Among the articles of military interest will be found : Armies of the Empire, Imperial Defence, N.W. Frontier of India, Indian Army, Indian Police, Armies of the British Isles, Accounts of every Campaign of importance in English and Colonial History, etc.

The political sections, which cover a very wide field, are of the most diverse character, and include : The Government of the Empire, Indian Administration, History of every Colony and Island, the Beginning and End of the Slave Trade, the Irish Home Rule Movement, the Political History of the Dominions (separately), the Policy of the Open Door in China, the Capitulations in Egypt, Mixed Tribunals, Judicial Systems, an account of the Administration of each Indian Viceroy, Spheres of Influence, States in perpetual alliance, Synopsis of English Constitutional History, etc. From the historical and political sections the rise and progress of the British and Indian Empires can be traced step by step, and the causes of upheavals, wars, and “ storm clouds ” of the past and present can be clearly seen.

The Gazetteer of Cities and Towns enables all the important centres of the whole Empire to be rapidly located and the characteristics of each to be ascertained. The sea communications between each port and other parts of the world have also been included. If further information is needed it will usually be found under the general description of the Dominion, Colony or State, of which it forms part. When used in conjunction with each other, these two sections form a complete place-guide to 5,000,000 square miles of territory and the homes of nearly 600,000,000 people.

For an example of the many uses to which the different sections may be placed, it is only necessary to assume that a reader desires to thoroughly understand *the basis* of such political problems as “ Free Trade Within the Empire,” “ Protection,” “ Free Trade,” “ Safeguarding,” or other controversial subjects of vital importance on which he or she is expected to vote or express an intelligent opinion. The reader in search of *the facts* on which these policies are based would refer, first, to *Tariffs*, in the General Index ; then

to *Commerce* (for existing systems and data) ; *Finance* (for Revenue producing as apart from protective duties) ; *Agriculture* (for Empire grown supplies). Here, also, he would find the total production of staple commodities within the Empire compared with the production in foreign countries. He would turn to *Shipping* (for the Carrying Trade and "invisible exports and imports" ; to *Population* (for Empire possibilities) and so follow the subject through all the ramifications of administration, commerce, finance and life, not only of the British Isles but also of the Dominions and Colonies until he had mastered the essential factors without which no intelligent opinion is possible. It may, at first, be thought that factors of this character could more easily be obtained and understood from a study of the works devoted to current politics. Generally, however, such sources of information are politically biased, whereas the master purpose of The Encyclopedia of the British Empire is to present facts and not to expound or even elucidate policies.

How to use the Encyclopedia

The system adopted when compiling an encyclopedia of a nation must of necessity differ considerably from the more straightforward alphabetical arrangement employed in an encyclopedia of general knowledge, or of the sciences. The reasons for this are not difficult to understand. Firstly, there is the fundamental problem of whether to use the administrative or geographical designation for each part of the territory treated. Some idea of what this difficulty means may be obtained by giving here only two examples ; German East Africa has become "The Tanganyika Territory" ; British East Africa is now "Kenya Colony" ; the Australian dependency of Papua is a portion of the Island of New Guinea, and the ex-German colony "Kaiser Wilhelm Land" is another portion. In order to overcome these and many constructive difficulties in this Encyclopedia, four main alphabetical systems have been employed. They are as follows :—

(1) The general alphabetical arrangement of the main sections of the whole Encyclopedia by the adoption of the geographical root of the administrative title. Thus, the Union of South Africa is placed under "A" as AFRICA, UNITED, SOUTH ; with AFRICA, EAST ; and AFRICA, WEST ; Egypt and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan under "E," Manufacturing Industry under "M," Pastoral Industry under "P," Imperial and Colonial Finance under "F," and Dominion of Canada under "C." If any difficulty is experienced in quickly finding any article required under this system, reference can be made to the extensive list of "Contents," placed for convenience at the beginning of each volume.

(2) It will be apparent that to have scattered the 3,350 cities and towns of the Empire through the 2,000 pages of the Encyclopedia would have rendered the finding of any small town a somewhat lengthy operation. For this reason one of the main sections into which the Encyclopedia has been formed is entitled "Gazetteer of Cities and Towns of the Empire," and in this very extensive section, placed at the end of Vol. V, all the 3,350 places are arranged under a separate alphabet.

(3) Finally, the whole Encyclopedia has been alphabetically indexed, with many thousand references, at the end of the work.

The use of cross-references has been reduced to a minimum by the classification of such subjects as Education, Agriculture, Commerce, Finance, Defence, under main sectional headings ; and the articles which follow deal with the subject stated *in each part of the Empire*. Therefore, if the educational system of Australia, the British Isles, Canada, India, or the Fijis, etc., is required, it will be found under " Education " (" E "), possibly supplemented by more general information also to be found under " Australia, the Commonwealth of," etc.

At the conclusion of all important economic articles will be found a summary of the resources of the whole Empire in comparison with those of the rest of the world (*see* Agriculture, Mining, etc.).

If it is desired to follow up such a subject as the chronological extension of British influence in, say, Africa, this can be done by first referring to the articles devoted to the History of the British Isles, and, subsequently, to the historical articles in the sections : Africa, United South ; Africa, East ; Africa, West ; Rhodesia ; Nyasaland ; Somaliland Protectorate, etc. Likewise, the history of the now changing Far Eastern Question may be followed through the pages of Indian History, the Far and Middle East, etc. Egypt has been included because of the historical work done by England in this State, which is now in alliance with the Empire.

The colonies and territories acquired from Germany by the victorious ending of the Great European War have all been placed under a sectional heading entitled, " Lands of the British Mandates " (under " M ") ; the reason for this being that they are " Mandatory Colonies," and of a new political order (*q.v.*).

By the intelligent *combined* use of the different articles contained in this Encyclopedia, a complete and authoritative volume of ordinary size on almost every subject of Imperial, Dominion and Colonial importance is in the hands of the reader.

Special Educational Facilities

Apart from the use of the Encyclopedia to the general reader, who if he is a British Subject, is called upon almost daily to vote or express an opinion on one or other problem connected with some portion of the Empire of which he is often without adequate and reliable knowledge of all the true facts shorn of controversial politics, it is sincerely hoped that this extensive work, which even in its present and possibly imperfect form, has taken a corps of experts no less than ten years to write and compile, will be found of special use by statesmen, members of Parliament, administrators, civil servants, diplomats, consuls, business men, and last, but by no means least, by the educational insitutions of the Empire.

No mention need be made here of the immense number of short references and tabular statistics which must necessarily find a place in an encyclopedia, and enunciation is equally impossible of the diversified uses to which the sections and articles, when used in conjunction with each other, may be put. Sufficient to say here that the brains of over 100 British and Colonial administrators and writers of ability have been focussed and the results systematised in the pages of this work.

The statistics given throughout the Encyclopedia are based on averages of five years (except where otherwise stated), and, owing to the abnormal war period, 1914-18, two sets of figures have been given in certain cases where it has been found necessary to refer back for such a long period as from 10 to 15 years.

That there are omissions and imperfections is readily admitted. Could it well be otherwise in a work covering so extensive a field and so complicated a subject. It is, however, hoped that the foundation has been well and truly laid upon which future generations in future editions may build a perfect encyclopedic record of the British Empire and the British Race.

In all parts of our "far-flung" dominions has been felt the pressing need for a compendium of uniform information on the history, politics, people, places and industries of all the lands under the British Crown. It is with the object of supplying this want in full that this illustrated encyclopedia has been written.

The amount of literary labour and investigation, and the time spent in travel and study while collecting the material for this, the first compendium of Empire, has been very large, the Editor and staff of contributors having spared themselves no effort in endeavouring to produce a standard work of material value to all interested generally or specifically in any or in every portion of the Empire. The maps have nearly all been specially compiled and drawn for this Encyclopedia, and the world has been searched for suitable photographs. Since the first edition was published the Editor has renewed his acquaintance with many of the Dominions and Colonies and the Encyclopedia has become the standard work of reference on the Empire in thousands of government and commercial offices, Embassies, consulates, schools, banks and libraries.

Incredible as it may sound, there are to-day many educated people who are quite unaware of the extraordinary complexity of these great nations, who have no conception of their almost limitless possibilities and resources. Least of all do they understand whence emanated the mysterious ordinance that has placed millions of people on the smallest spaces and left deserted, uncultivated, and, in some cases, almost unknown, millions of acres that might yet be fertile and populous. Again, many parts of the Empire are generally believed to be fearfully unhealthy, which in reality have a climate little worse than that of the British Isles. Furthermore, there are still those who believe that the native races from time to time taken under the Empire's sheltering wing were shamefully forced into vassaldom and are inwardly seething with discontent. Others there are who appear to regard the cities and towns of Greater Britain as mere collections of wooden shanties built in the midst of

countless miles of half-civilised and barbarous country. Numbers realise but vaguely the huge amount of manufactured goods taken by the Dominions and Colonies from the workshops of the Motherland, and the food and raw materials supplied in exchange. To these, then, as well as to him whose object it is to study closely the growth of this colossus of the twentieth century, the Encyclopedia should prove of deep interest and valuable assistance. It is almost impossible to scan the columns of any large daily or weekly newspaper and not find therein one or more paragraphs the interest of which would not be materially enhanced, and the information given more clearly understood, by a reference to the *Encyclopedia of the British Empire*.

History made has been the plan generally adopted in the sections devoted to the rise of British power in all parts of the world, controversial politics being rigidly excluded. In the geographical and descriptive portions the surveys of each colony have been supplemented by closer accounts of the points and places of interest and importance ; here local customs and typical features are popularly described with a facility and accuracy which speak of close acquaintance. On the economic and commercial side, details of industry, trade, finance, colonisation, agriculture, mining, taxation and shipping finds a very important place. The illustrations have been collected from all parts of the world, and were chosen from over 15,000 photographs submitted for consideration. Briefly, then, the Encyclopedia, which is the first of its kind, comprises a complete illustrated survey of the rise of the British and Indian Empires, their institutions and appearance, their influence on the history of the world, and their economic position and aspect in the reign of His Majesty the King-Emperor, George V.





A KAVIRONDO VILLAGE NEAR VICTORIA NYANZA, EAST AFRICA,
SHOWING CAGES OF DECOY QUAIL

Photo, Underwood

AFRICA

BRITISH EAST AFRICA KENYA AND UGANDA

BRITISH EAST AFRICA consists of the territory formerly administered by the Imperial British East Africa Company, and now known as the Kenya Colony and Protectorate; the vast inland country bordering the Great Lakes, called the Uganda Protectorate; and the Tanganyika Territory (formerly German East Africa) which is now administered under a Mandate from the League of Nations.

Although the tendency is for closer administrative relations between these vast countries, which have a total area of 681,526 square miles and a population of 10,288,000, of which only 18,600 are Europeans, 52,362 are Asiatics and Arabs, and the remainder natives, it is necessary for the purpose of accuracy to include the description of Tanganyika Territory under Mandatory Colonies.

The climate of this portion of Africa varies according to the altitude. Tropical complaints are prevalent in the lowlands during certain seasons, and there are some very unhealthy districts, especially in Uganda. In the Kenya Colony, however, the country is formed by elevated plateaux, which vary in altitude from 3,000 ft. to 7,000 ft., and on these the climate may be considered healthy, as they are above the average line at which malaria, and tropical diseases generally, cease to assume epidemic proportions. Here lie the great agricultural and pastoral possibilities of East Africa, for these highlands are eminently suitable for colonisation by Europeans. The Kenya and Uganda State Railway and the steamboat services on the Victoria Nyanza afford

a means of communication between the sea-coast and the heart of Africa, crossing these territories, and are governing factors in the recent growth and the rapidity of the future development of East Africa.

PORTUGUESE AND ARAB DOMINION.

At Mombasa, the chief seaport of the Kenya Colony, are the ruins of a fort which overlooks the harbour. This old pile was built in 1593 by the Portuguese, who were the first Europeans to discover, and establish a settlement on this coast. This fort withstood many assaults by Arabs, who made desperate endeavours to obtain a footing in this slave preserve, for over a century. In 1698, however, after a siege of nearly three years, the defence broke down and the few remaining defenders were put to death. The fall of the fortress gave the death-blow to Portuguese dominion on this portion of the East African Coast, and it passed into the hands of the Arabs, who, under the Sultans of Muscat, Oman, and Zanzibar, maintained it as a slaving ground until the arrival of the British in the latter portion of the nineteenth century.

THE SLAVE TRADE.

In East and Central Africa, Great Britain has carried on in the face of almost insurmountable difficulties one of the most humane undertakings of modern times. It is difficult accurately to gauge the benefits which have accrued to the enormous native population from the assumption of control and administration by Great Britain. The slave raids of the coast Arabs and the warlike



A COFFEE PLANTATION IN KENYA

Masai, combined with the almost continual internal warfare, induced the British Government to grant, in 1888, to the Imperial British East Africa Company a Charter of Administration over the territory leased to it by the Sultan of Zanzibar (see *Zanzibar Protectorate*) and the country ceded by various native chiefs. For seven years this corporation struggled manfully with the difficulties of settling a country which had for centuries been the special preserve of slavers, without sufficient troops to compel the cessation of the terrible internecine warfare and the massacres of the weaker tribes. In 1895 the Chartered Company handed over the administration to the Imperial Government, and the territory between the Juba and Uмба Rivers, with frontiers defined by the Conventions with

Germany in 1886, 1890 and 1893; with Italy in 1891, and bordered on the west by the then native kingdom of Uganda, was proclaimed the British East Africa Protectorate, the status and name being changed in 1921 to that of, "The Kenya Colony." The narrow coastal belt, leased from the Sultan of Zanzibar, still remains as the "Kenya Protectorate."

FEDERATION OF EAST AFRICA.

In 1922-3, owing to the agitation of Indian immigrants for equal political rights with Europeans throughout the Colony, the whole question of immigration from India was studied, and it was decided: (1) that the Kenya Highlands should be reserved exclusively for Europeans; (2) there should be five elected Indians, one Arab and eleven



AN AVENUE, NAKURU, KENYA

Europeans in the Legislative Council ; (3) that the segregation of Indians should not be permitted ; (4) that the unrestricted immigration from India should be subject to the interests of the natives ; and (5) that the possibility of creating an East African Federation, to include Kenya, Uganda, Tanganyika and Zanzibar, with, possibly, Nyasaland and Northern Rhodesia, should be studied. This latter plan was carried into effect by the appointment of a Commission, in 1927, to suggest means for the eventual federation (or otherwise) of the British States in East and Central Africa.

In 1924 that portion of Kenya Colony known as Jubaland, consisting of about 33,000 square miles, was transferred to

PROTECTORATE OVER UGANDA.

Many were the necessities which induced the British Government to extend their sphere of influence inland. It was found impossible to establish a regime of peace in East Africa unless the interior of the country was secured ; no efficient check could be placed on the slave-raiding expeditions in Egyptian Equatoria unless the northern regions of Uganda were also occupied ; the prosperity of Egypt and the Sudan depending upon the Nile, it was deemed necessary to prevent any other European nation from claiming the country around the source of this great river ; and the awful tribal warfare in Southern Uganda made the occupation of



KITALE, KENYA COLONY

Italy, becoming a portion of Italian Somaliland. In the same year a Parliamentary Commission visited East Africa and in the report, published in 1925, the most energetic development of the Empire's East African States was advocated.

Trouble with Abyssinian Slave Raiders, who for many years had been making forages across the border and carrying both slaves and loot back into the wilds of Abyssinia assumed serious proportions and severe fighting took place in 1926.

Although the Defence of the Colony is in the hands of 750 of the King's African Rifles, a Defence Bill of 1927 provides for the compulsory service of all white British subjects between the ages of 18 and 50 in case of necessity.

that country also necessary if British prestige was to be maintained in Africa.

The march inland was continued in 1890-3 when Uganda was brought under British protection, and since then the whole country which surrounds Lakes Albert and Edward, extending as far south as the middle of Victoria Nyanza, has been incorporated in the Uganda Protectorate. (See also, *Lands of the British Mandates—Tanganyika Territory*.) The Central African Protectorate, known as Nyasaland, which lies north of the Zambesi, and includes the Shiré Highlands, was brought under British influence in 1891. (See *Nyasaland*).

The opening up of East Africa was the first consideration of the government, and as early as 1893, before the country passed completely

out of the control of the Chartered Company, surveys were made to determine the possibility of constructing a railway from Mombasa on the coast to the Victoria Nyanza. The line was commenced in January, 1896, and reached the lake region in Uganda in 1902. This was the dawn of the new era in British East Africa.

In 1907 Legislative and Executive Councils were established in the East African Protectorate, now Kenya Colony, and the title of the chief political officer was changed from "Commissioner" to Governor. Shortly after the extension of the Uganda Protectorate, in 1896, so as to include within its administration a large area of the surrounding country, King Mwanga of Uganda headed a rebellion in the neighbouring

fighting. (*See also Tanganyika Territory and Nyasaland*).

KENYA COLONY.

This country, which has a total area of 214,000 square miles, and a population of approximately 2,813,725 (including the Kenya Protectorate), is divided for administrative purposes into six provinces, which are again divided into districts and sub-districts. The provinces, with their administrative headquarters, are as follows: Seyidie (Mombasa), Ukamba (Nairobi), Tana-land (Lamu), Kenya (Fort Hall), Naivasha (Naivasha), and Kisumu (Kisumu). The coastal belt of land 10 miles wide and the Islands of Lamu, Manda, Patta and Siwa, remain as the Kenya Protectorate.



MOMBASA FROM THE HARBOUR

Messageries Maritimes

territory of Buddu, which was suppressed in 1897. The King then fled into German territory, and his son was declared King with a native council of Regency as he was under age. In September of the same year a mutiny occurred among the Sudanese troops in the Protectorate. An expedition was dispatched to suppress this revolt, and established its headquarters at Fort Turnan, near the Lumbwa Hills. It was here that the leader of the rebellious regiments, Belal Effendi, shot Major Thurston and other British officers, causing such an extended rising among the natives, as well as the Sudanese troops, that it was only suppressed with great difficulty after several months

The wonderful range of altitudes in East Africa and Uganda causes a great variety of climatic conditions. There are, however, four zones both topographically and climatically distinct. Around Mombasa, and along the whole forest-covered littoral, it is essentially tropical, damp, and feverish, but as it is close to the equator there is little variation of the temperature. The most pleasant period of the year in this region is from June to December, during the south-west monsoon, when the days are not too hot and the nights fairly cool. On the plains further inland, away from the sea-breeze, the heat is considerable, but there is less moisture in the atmosphere, as the country is more open and



OLD MOMBASA



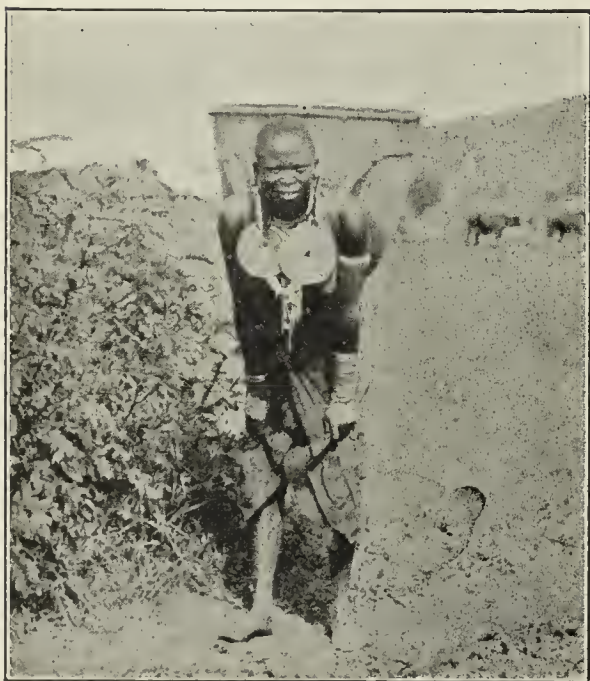
KILINDINI HARBOUR FROM THE MAINLAND



VASCO DA GAMA STREET, MOMBASA

Photos, E.A. Commissioner

the risk of malarial fever is much less. The temperature in this portion of the country is high. In the highlands of East Africa, which vary in altitude from 3,000 to 7,000 ft., and are mostly formed by open prairie plateau, the climate is comparatively healthy and invigorating, although the sun heat is often great. Around the great lakes in Uganda the climate is decidedly tropical, and the country is covered with the rich and exuberant forest growth of darkest Africa. The atmosphere is excessively humid and the temperature high. Tropical diseases are prevalent during the rainy seasons. The best months for travelling in the Uganda Protectorate are from October to January.



A LUMBWA "BELLE"

A native dairymaid of the Kenya Highlands

MOMBASA AND THE COAST.

Kilindini Harbour is one of the finest natural anchorages on this coast of the Continent, and may be termed the gateway of East Africa. From the ocean a narrow channel, flanked with low, verdure-clad hills, gives access to this land-locked bay, and some two miles distant stands Mombasa, the sea-coast terminus of the Kenya and Uganda Railway, which penetrates into the heart of Equatorial Africa. The town is situated upon an island, connected with the

mainland by the Salisbury railway bridge, which is over 1,700 ft. in length. It has a population of about 17,440, most of whom are coloured and of various African races, including a considerable number of Arabs, the Europeans numbering only about 700. The general aspect of the town, as it rises in a confused mass of red, white, and green from the tranquil waters of the bay, is both pretty and interesting. Mombasa is nestled in a wonderful profusion of tropical foliage, varying from the feathery branches of palms and the red blossoms of the Mohur tree to the tall waving aquatic grass and the exquisite tints of the purple and deep blue bougainvillea. The fact that this was originally an early Portuguese settlement is quickly made apparent by the ruins of the old fort and the narrow alleys flanked by Arab houses, which form exceedingly interesting relics of Mohammedan supremacy. During this period Mombasa was one of the most frequented slave ports in East Africa. There are now several broad streets and a few fine buildings, including two good hotels; there is also a neatly laid-out public garden in which stands a fine statue of Sir William Mackinnon, one of the makers of British East Africa. On the road to Kilindini, and elsewhere in the town there are many motor cars and taxis.

The fertility of the coastal region is wonderful. The rain and hot sun produce from the soil such a mass of vegetation that in many parts it is impossible to catch even a glimpse of the earth itself. For the cultivation of tropical fruits these coast lands could scarcely be equalled; and, although during the wet season malaria is somewhat prevalent, it is difficult to understand why more advantage is not taken of this productive soil for the cultivation of cotton, cocoa, tobacco, sugar, and tropical fruits, all of which could be raised in abundance, as land is comparatively cheap and labour plentiful.

KENYA AND UGANDA RAILWAY.

The railway to Victoria Nyanza is the feature of general interest, for it enables merchandise to be conveyed into the interior and the produce of the many plantations to be brought to the coast for sale and shipment at comparatively small cost. It is also the highway into Equatorial Africa for government officials, travellers, settlers and

sportsmen, who can now reach the country of Speke, Livingstone, and Stanley without the inconvenience and delay occasioned by the old methods of travelling on foot, with a caravan of natives carrying ammunition, camping equipment, and food supply for many months.

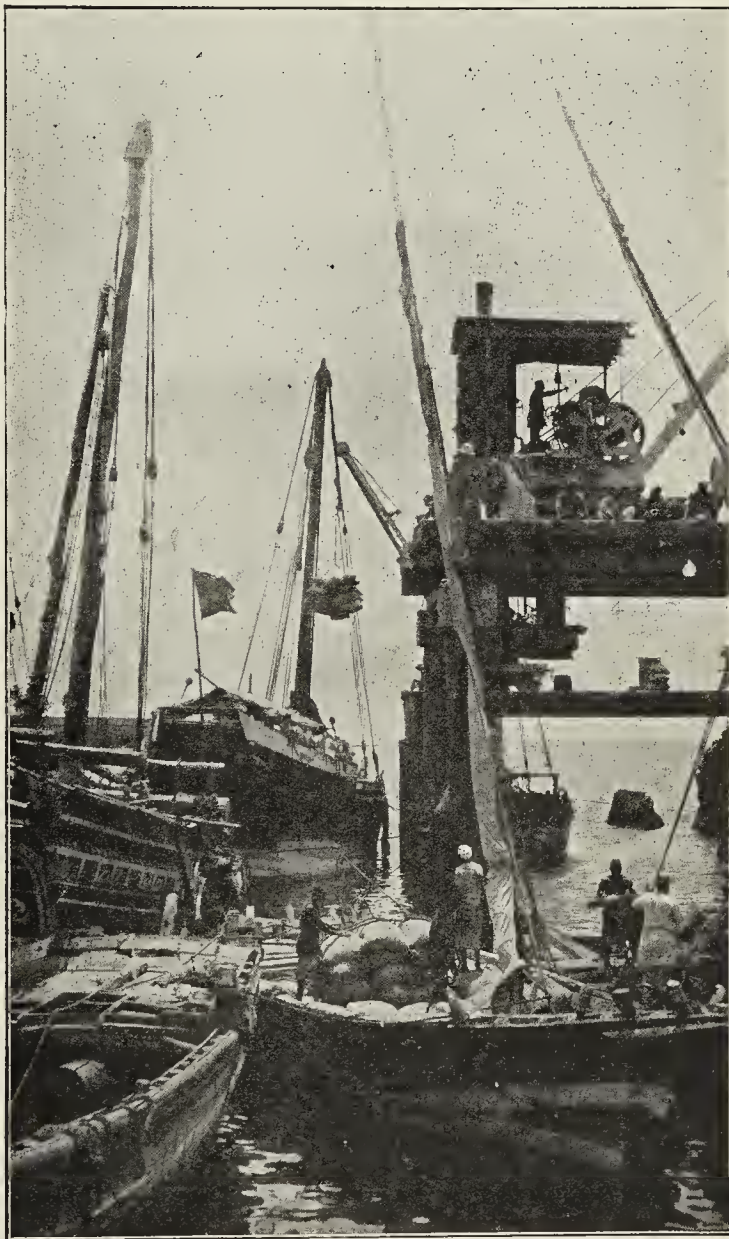
This line, the construction of which cost over £9,000 per mile, cuts through jungle, over swamp, and across plains covered with wild beasts, herds of which can be seen from the carriage windows, and ascends many thousand feet in the climb to the great lakes, famous as the scene of Stanley's early travels in "Darkest Africa."

The Kenya and Uganda Railway, which has a total length of nearly 1,500 miles, was intended as a strategic line to secure British supremacy on the upper reaches of the Nile, and to open a permanent road into Central Africa. When the funds necessary for this undertaking were voted by the Imperial Parliament it was not imagined that in less than 27 years a considerable annual profit would be forthcoming. This line will form a most important branch of the Cape to Cairo Railway scheme (*q.v.*). The main line from Mombasa to Lake Victoria is 590 miles in length and there are numerous branch lines, one of which connects Kenya with Tanganyika.

NAIROBI AND THE HIGHLANDS.

Perhaps the best and most interesting way of describing the interior of Kenya and Uganda, and the country surrounding the Victoria Nyanza, the great African inland sea, which gives rise to the Nile and the Congo, is to follow the railway line across both Colony and Protectorate. After leaving Mombasa Island the line runs through thick jungle for mile upon mile, broken here and there by gorges, rivers, and occasional plantations of bananas, rubber, cotton and fibre, with a

few open spaces cultivated by the natives with maize, millet, and sweet potatoes. The exuberant vegetation gives this land the appearance of a tossing sea of verdure stretching away for leagues on every side; then the line winds through the dark recesses of the forest, huge trees embrace weaker saplings, and peeping through the luxurious undergrowth exquisitely tinted orchids and other tropical flowers may con-



British East Africa Corporation

LOADING DHOWS IN MOMBASA HARBOUR

This type of vessel was formerly used for the transport of slaves between East Africa, Zanzibar and Arabia



A TYPICAL SCENE ON THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

tinually be seen. This jungle-covered land is inhabited by the peaceful tribes known as the "Wanyika."

The first hundred miles is brought to a close as the train leaves the Taru Jungle, a vast tract of parched country covered with thorny bush and coarse grass. From Voi station, just over 100 miles from the coast, the majestic snow-capped summit of Kilimanjaro may be seen rising 19,000 ft. into the sky. This sugar-loaf mountain is situated on the Frontier of what, previous to the

Peace of 1919, was German East Africa, now the Tanganyika Territory. A branch line runs from Voi to Moshi and there connects with the Tanganyika system.

The line has been steadily rising all the way from the coast, and at each of the little wayside stations the air seems to grow cooler and more refreshing. At Simba ("the place of the lion") the country changes from hills and forests to vast rolling plains. Here may be seen that which has no counterpart anywhere. The whole country is swarming



ON THE ROAD TO UGANDA

British East Africa Corporation

A scene on the Uganda Railway between Mombasa and the Great Lakes of Central Africa



NAIROBI, CAPITAL OF KENYA COLONY. SIXTH AVENUE



THE TREASURY, NAIROBI, KENYA COLONY



THE INDIAN BAZAAR, NAIROBI

with wild animals; rhinoceros, buffaloes, hyenas, hartebeestes, gazelles, ostriches, hundreds of zebras, and occasionally a few lions stalking across the plains and scattering the lesser beasts, form this unrivalled spectacle. Even the air is not free, for bustards and vultures hover over the ground waiting to clean the skeleton of the lion's prey.

The sight presented on the Athi Plateau is difficult of description. If one could imagine the beasts in the zoological gardens of Europe loosed on an enormous plain, some conception of this portion of East Africa might be obtained, but the number of game

healthy, as the altitude is considerably over 5,400 ft.

The principal part of this town is composed of the offices of the railway, the sidings, the coach houses, and the extensive workshops, but there are many bungalow-houses, a fair number of shops, one or two hotels, a club, and a good racecourse. The population numbers about 13,200, of whom 3,620 are Europeans. In the immediate neighbourhood of the capital there are over 600 European farmers with their wives and families. The town has been laid out with avenues, squares and streets on modern principles, and the fine country roads make



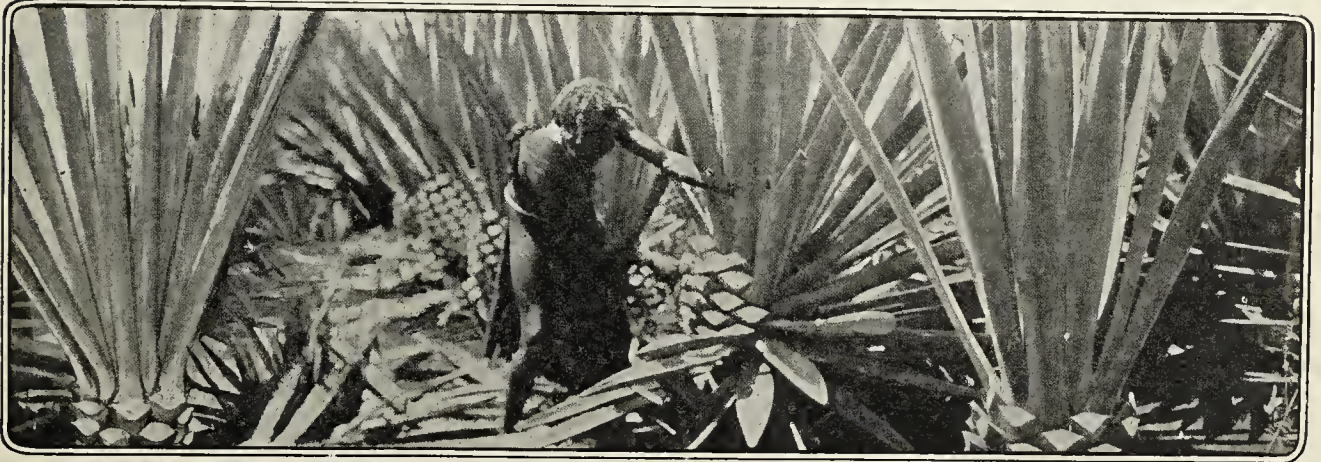
ELEPHANT HUNTING IN UGANDA

Photo, Uganda Rly.

on these plains, which stretch for miles, can only be roughly estimated in thousands. This paradise of sport is yearly attracting hunters from all parts of the world. A portion of the game-covered territory has, however, been reserved, and a timely warning given here as in Central Africa, where the famous "Elephant Marsh," near Chiromo in Nyasaland, has been proclaimed a Government Game Reserve.

Nairobi, the capital of Kenya Colony, and the headquarters of the Kenya and Uganda Railway Administration, is situated in the centre of a large number of ranches and farms. The climate is here thoroughly

motoring pleasurable. Nairobi is the headquarters of a battalion of the King's African Rifles, which are recruited from various African tribes, and quickly trained by British officers into smart, well-drilled troops. The K.A.R. are certainly a credit to their officers, by whose energy alone this corps has been brought to such a standard of efficiency, that it has for several years proved sufficient to fight down the slave traffic, maintain order throughout the whole of East and Central Africa, and in the recent world conflict to render valuable service in the conquest of German East Africa (*q.v.*).



CUTTING SISAL, KENYA COLONY

The terrible difficulties overcome in the construction of the Kenya and Uganda Railway will, perhaps be better understood when it is pointed out that the line rises from a few feet above sea-level at Mombasa to an altitude of 8,350 ft. on the Mau Summit, which is above the European snow line, then descends a steep gradient of 4,000 ft., crosses the great Rift Valley, a peculiar rut in the surface of the earth which extends from the Zambesi to Arabia but reaches its maximum depth in Uganda, skirts the shores of lakes Kakuro and Naivasha, and crosses many rivers before Kisumu (formerly Port Florence) on Victoria Nyanza is reached. Barren bush country many miles in extent has been traversed, and plains swarming with wild beasts. On several occasions lions have made a good square meal off one, two or even three plate-layers, and then added insult to injury by

walking on to the platform of the nearest station and besieging the officials in the ticket office; zebras have amused themselves by pulling down the signal wires, and marauding lions sharpened their claws on the freshly painted posts and stations. Not the least among the trials of the railway pioneers were the thieving propensities of some of the natives, who would extract the bolts from the fishplates to make hunting spears. Added to these minor difficulties was the resistance offered by nature to this colossal engineering task. The Taru Desert (barren bush country) had to be crossed, steep gradients in the highlands negotiated, many gorges spanned by steel viaducts, and continual warfare waged against malaria on the lowlands of the coast. The surveys for this line were made before the country was properly settled or the personal safety of the



DRYING SISAL, KENYA COLONY

survey party could be absolutely assured. On the Uganda extension a height of over 9,000 feet is reached.

NATIVES.

With two exceptions the native tribes of the Kenya Colony are comparatively peaceful, and have settled down to agricultural and pastoral pursuits. Those great nomads, the Masai, are no longer dreaded for their war-like powers, although they are still very active in cattle stealing and tribal raids. One of their most curious customs is the drinking of the blood of bulls, which is done in the following manner, without harming the animals. A guard is placed about an inch behind the point of an arrow to prevent

Another somewhat troublesome tribe of the Kenya Colony is the Kikuyu, who, in common with the Masai, will not touch a dead body, even the diseased are given to the hyenas. They use bows and poisoned arrows, live in beehive-shaped grass huts, or kraals, and are continually raiding more peaceful neighbouring tribes. The men hunt and attend to the cattle, while the women do all the manual work, and by way of personal adornment, enlarge the lobes of their ears by adding each year a thick bangle, or ring, through holes made in the soft skin.

THE GREAT LAKES.

The country, during the last 100 miles before the Victoria Nyanza, consists of dense



NATIVES OF UGANDA

Photo, Uganda Rly.

the weapon entering too deep. The animal chosen is then flung on to its side and held down while a cloth tourniquet is placed round its neck. The arrow is then discharged from a bow with wonderful accuracy into the jugular vein. A trickle of blood is then allowed to flow from the wound by the easing of the tourniquet. The Masai then apply their mouths to the wound and drink the warm fluid! When enough has been drunk, or collected in a vessel, the tourniquet is removed, the wound closes naturally, or with the aid of a mud plaster, and the bull is allowed to go unharmed.

elephant forests, which slope gently down to the plains of central Africa. Hunting in these thick jungles is extremely difficult owing to the density of forest growth which impedes every movement. Brakes and ferns of all descriptions intermingle with creepers and tree trunks, and the under-growth and prickly brush-wood rise above the shoulders of the average man. The atmosphere again becomes damp and hot as the descent from the Highlands is continued, and the vegetation quickly assumes a tropical and luxuriant appearance, although on the lofty plateau, where ice may frequently be seen in winter,



Photo, Uganda Rly.
MASAI WARRIOR

the soil is no less fertile than in the hot damp atmosphere of the lower regions around the Lake. At Kibos there are large settlements of emigrants from India, who have been given land in East Africa on which they grow considerable quantities of cotton, rice, millet and various kinds of vegetables. This portion of Africa, still far removed from the centres of civilisation, has not been spoiled by the white man or his inventions. It is to-day almost what it was in the time of Stanley, Baker and Emin Pasha, an unknown vast tropical territory in the heart of Equatorial Africa. Still the once fierce Kavirondo go about in their unclothed condition, adorned only with ornaments and shining amulets, and armed with whips, spears and clubs, for although they have ceased to make war on the white man they occasionally even now, fight fiercely among themselves. Almost impenetrable forests cover the shores of Victoria Nyanza. In many parts not even the rays of the sun, which shines directly overhead, pierce the leafy roof, and the soil

is wet and spongy and covered with dead leaves and vegetation. To emerge from the humid atmosphere, stillness and subdued light of the Uganda forest, and see spreading out almost from one's feet that immense inland sea, Victoria Nyanza (water area of Uganda, 17,000 square miles) with the blue haze of distance hanging like a bride's veil over the hills on the opposite shore, is to experience a sensation never likely to be forgotten.



British East Africa Corporation
GIRL OF THE KIKUYU TRIBE
At Gilgil, Kenya Colony

The residential portion of Kisumu, which is the terminus of the Kenya and Uganda Railway and the chief port on the lake, consists of many bungalows and several stores. The town is situated upon a hill overlooking Kavirondo Bay. A Dak bungalow, similar to those in India, has been erected for the convenience of travellers. It is, however, the Indian Bazaar that forms the most interesting feature of this little lake-port which owes its existence to the Kenya and Uganda Railway. During the day large numbers of natives come in from the surrounding country to barter their agricultural

are commodious vessels of about 600 tons, they are provided with electric light and other modern conveniences. The voyage across the lake to Entebbe, which by canoe occupies about ten days, takes only a day and a night by these steamers, which were brought up from the coast in sections and fitted together at Kisumu, in the same manner as the Nile gunboats.

FORESTS.

The area of the timber covered lands in the Kenya Colony is approximately 3,200 square miles, of which about 185 square



KAVIRONDO TRIBESMEN

Photo, Uganda Rly.

On the Shores of Victoria Nyanza

A domestic quarrel is being settled by the giant in the foreground

produce and trophies of the hunt for the simple necessities of life at the many open booths. The exports from this region consist principally of ivory—from elephant tusks to antelope horns—rubber, fibre and copal.

The Lake itself is studded with small islands close to the shore, and many sailing Dhows, and war canoes some 30 ft. long, manned by twenty or thirty natives and propelled by long-bladed paddles, may be seen crossing this huge sheet of water or creeping along the shore. The steamers which run to various points around the lake

miles is covered by dense tropical forest. The forest reserves extend over 2,000,000 acres. In the coast jungles, ebony, rubber and copal trees abound, while in the forests of the Highlands, lying to the north and west of Nairobi, the principal trees are iron-wood, olive, cork, pillar-wood, cedar, camphor and jarrah. The most important are the Taveta (tropical) forest situated on the borders of the Tanganyika Territory (*q.v.*), the Witu Forest, the Kenya Forest (area 625 square miles), the Aberdare Forest (750 square miles), the Mau Forest (1,200 square miles) and the Mt. Elgon Forest (50 square miles).

The forest covered area of Uganda has not yet been definitely ascertained, but there is no doubt that it is very extensive and consists almost entirely of dense tropical growth.

THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE.

The Kingdom of Uganda lies on the north-west shore of Lake Victoria, about 600 miles inland from the East African coast ; but the British Protectorate, which has an area of 94,210 square miles, and a population of 3,136,946, extends round the whole northern half of Victoria Nyanza, and westward to the frontier of the Belgian Congo, southward to the limits of the British Mandatory

a governor, assisted by military, judicial, medical and political officers.

Entebbe is the administrative headquarters of the Uganda Protectorate, and has been prettily laid out around a public garden. There are a few European shops and trading agencies in this little Central African lake station, but it consists principally of a considerable number of well-built bungalows with nice gardens, belonging to the government officials.

The surrounding country, which is tropical in the extreme, is covered with the banana groves so common in Uganda, and the forests are alive with screeching parrots. The native



A MONARCH OF EAST AFRICA

Photo, Uganda Rly.

territory of German East Africa, now called "The Tanganyika Territory," and northward to the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. The Equator crosses the southern portion of Uganda, and lakes Albert and Edward are situated in its northern territory. It is divided for administrative purposes into five provinces, which are as follows—

- (1) Eastern Province.
- (2) Rudolf Province.
- (3) Northern Province.
- (4) Western Province.
- (5) Buganda—which is a recognised native kingdom, under a "Kabaka," or native king. The government is administered by

capital is Kampala, which consists of several hills covered with strongly built huts, and a native town of about 60,000 inhabitants hidden among the banana groves below. On Mengo Hill stands the residence of the King of Uganda. On another hill stands the English Cathedral, which was built entirely by native labour, and without a nail being used in the building. It dominates the capital. On yet another hill stands the old fort, which is now used as a museum of native arts and crafts. A tablet marks the spot where the Union Jack was first hoisted over Uganda. It is on Naksero Hill, however, that the European Hospital, Government

Offices, Indian bazaar and European residents are situated. Kampala, in addition to being an administrative and missionary centre is also a growing commercial town. It is connected with Port Bell, on Victoria Nyanza, by railway and motor road, and with the Sudan Government steamer service on the White Nile, by the *Sudan Road*, 600 miles in length and available for motor traffic.

At the north end of Victoria Nyanza are situated the famous Ripon Falls, which give birth to the Nile. Upon the annual rise of this great river countless millions of Sudanese and Egyptians depend for subsistence. The breadth of these falls is about 850 ft., and it is estimated that the flow of water exceeds 10,000,000 gallons a minute (see *Egypt* and the *Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*). Near to these falls, and lying at the head of Napoleon Gulf, is the important lake-port of Jinja, situated in the former kingdom of Usoga, which forms the north-eastern portion of the Uganda Protectorate.

The south-eastern and western shores of Lake Victoria have been thoroughly explored to the frontiers with the ex-German sphere and the Belgian Congo. There is now a continuous stretch of British Territory from the Cape to Cairo (*q.v.*).

The country surrounding the Albert and Edward Nyanza, which, with their connecting river the Lemliki, form the secondary source of the Nile, is but little known. It was across this vast territory, and through the great Congo forests to the West coast, that Sir H. M. Stanley forced his way on the famous expedition through "Darkest Africa."

The lofty Ruwenzori, clad with eternal snows and glaciers, dominates these lakes and the surrounding country. These ice-capped mountains in the heart of Equatoria, highest of the peaks of Africa, were formerly known as the "Mountains of the Moon." The scene when the surrounding forest is wrapt in the death-like stillness of an African night is one of supreme grandeur. The golden rays of the tropical moon, diffusing a pale mysterious light through the rising mists, shine on the snowfields and glaciers of the Ruwenzori Peaks, $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles above the tallest trees; a glittering line of light, illuminating the deep recesses of the Great Congo forests, the home of the Okapi, Gorilla and Pigmy (See *Government, Finance, Commerce, Agriculture, Gazetteer*, etc.).



ZANZIBAR

ALTHOUGH politically a separate unit, and geographically two islands off the coast of the mainland, the Zanzibar Protectorate is commercially, and in nearly every other respect, part and parcel of British East Africa.* Of the two islands, Zanzibar and Pemba—both of which are distant about 23 miles from the coast of East Africa—the former, with an area of about 640 square miles, is the largest and most important, as it contains, besides the majority of the population and the principal plantations, the City of Zanzibar, which possesses one of the finest harbours on this coast and is the emporium of East Africa. Pemba, the other island included in this Protectorate, lies nearly 30 miles north-east of Zanzibar. It has an area of only 380 square miles and is comparatively of secondary importance. The population of both islands is just over 217,000.

THE PORTUGUESE AND ARAB DOMINION.

Some little doubt exists as to who was really the first European to set foot in Zanzibar, but the Portuguese navigator, Vasco da Gama, visited the island, and also Mombasa, after doubling the Cape of Good Hope in 1498; and early in the seventeenth century, after several futile attempts, the Portuguese succeeded in establishing themselves there, and also on the adjacent coasts of Africa and Arabia.

Wherever the Portuguese exercised colonial dominion their rule was oppressive, owing principally to a succession of badly chosen men sent out as governors and officials to their new possessions, and also to the system of government commercial monopoly which

so often followed the hoisting of their flag.† In Zanzibar, and on the coast of East Africa, their rule was no more successful than it was elsewhere, and in 1698 the Sultan of Muscat, acceding to the entreaties of the people, despatched several armed vessels which succeeded in capturing not only the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba, but also Mombasa and the whole Portuguese East African coast as far south as Cape Delgado, which still marks the limit of the Portuguese sphere on this coast.

The history of Zanzibar while under the Sultans of Muscat and Oman is principally one of friendship towards Great Britain, coupled with commercial prosperity and depression consequent on fluctuations in the slave trade, and a few rebellions, all of which, since they occurred long before the proclamation of the British Protectorate in 1820, and have but little bearing on the past, present or future thereof, are of no importance or interest. Zanzibar, with its African mainland territory, which then included the country from Warsheikh in the north to Tanghi Bay in the south, remained tributary to the Sultans of Muscat until the death in 1856 of Seyyid Said, the wisest ruler of these two States, and a friend of Great Britain. Differences among his many sons led to the appointment of a British Commission, which had eventually to consider the rival claims of Seyyid Thuwaini, who had obtained the Sultanate of Muscat and Oman, and Seyyid Masjid, ruler of Zanzibar.

Previously, however, to the appointment of this commission, the claim of these two brothers for the throne of Zanzibar had been referred, with the consent of both parties to Lord Canning, at that time

* The Sultan of Zanzibar is also nominally the sovereign of a narrow strip of the coast of British East Africa.

† Brazil, being the favourite colony, was in many respects an exception to this rule of misgovernment.

Viceroy of India, but before any award could be made, another son of Seyyid Said, named Barghash, appeared on the scene, and succeeded in creating a rebellion in Zanzibar.

While the forces of Masjid, who was acting as Sultan pending the decision of the Viceroy, were attempting to effect his defeat outside the city, Barghash, by a *ruse de guerre*, made

shelter of a house from which he had previously escaped after being confined for inciting to rebellion. Colonel Rigby then landed a party of marines from a warship, effected his capture, and deported him to Bombay.*

The Commission appointed by Lord Canning gave their decision in favour of Masjid,



ZANZIBAR *British East Africa Corporation*
One of the main streets of the Arab quarter

a flank march on the city in Masjid's rear; but the time had come for British intervention, and Colonel Rigby, the British Consul, acting with great and praiseworthy promptitude on his own responsibility, took charge of the city in the Sultan's absence, and when Barghash appeared he was forced to seek the

who was desired by the people in preference to the ruler of Muscat, the parent State. The only condition was that "the ruler of Zanzibar should pay to the ruler of Muscat an annual subsidy of forty thousand crowns."†

These terms were accepted in 1861, and the tribute was paid until 1866, when the

* Barghash was permitted to return to Zanzibar in 1861, and became Sultan in 1870, when he undertook to support British policy.

† Lord Canning gave it that this award was not intended as a recognition of the dependence of Zanzibar on Muscat, but simply to equalise the division of the inheritance of the two sons of Seyyid Said

murder of Thuwaini by his son, Salim, who then made himself Imam, or Sultan of Muscat, caused it to be discontinued on the plea that Salim was a usurper.

THE SLAVE TRADE.

In 1822 the Sultan of Muscat signed a treaty to prohibit the exportation of slaves from his Asiatic dominions, and this was followed in 1845 by a further treaty which extended this prohibition to his dominions on the coast of East Africa; but, as was unavoidably the case at first in every native slave-owning country, these treaties did not forbid the holding of slaves, nor their transportation, during certain seasons of the year, from one portion of the Sultan's dominions to another, provided the masters of the dhows in which the slaves were shipped obtained a licence from the Customs House at the port of embarkation. This hole in the law gave unlimited opportunities to slave traders. A bribe to the local chief or native customs official was usually sufficient to enable cargoes of "black ivory" intended for sale, and not being moved from the African to the Asiatic estates of their masters, to be covered by the necessary licence. Nevertheless, many captures, amounting to about 7 per cent. of the estimated total number of slaves transported from East Africa and Zanzibar to Arabia, were effected by the British warships patrolling these coasts.

To correct a wrongful impression which is sometimes obtained, it is necessary to point out that the first object of the British Government in their necessarily long battle with this frightful evil was not the suppression of slave labour (which was then so very prevalent over such enormous areas of little known country, and such a time-ingrained custom in nearly every Asiatic and African State as to have made the quick accomplishment of such a task quite impossible), but rather the prevention by warship patrols of the transportation of slaves from one country to another, in order to *cripple gradually the slave-trading industry*.

Mohammedans were the largest slave owners, and the Koran enjoins the good treatment of slaves by all true believers. Allowing for the many exceptions to every rule, the life of the slave when settled with a master was happiness compared with the

terrible suffering these wretches were forced to endure when on the march and in the stifling holds of the dhows. Hence to prevent the transportation of slaves was not only to make this traffic unprofitable, but also to mitigate the lot of the slaves themselves. By this means the slave trade has been all but stamped out, but naturally years have been required for the attainment of an ideal of civilisation which was terribly resented by nearly a quarter of the population of the earth.

It is a long story, the suppression of the slave trade between East Africa and Arabia, which for many years constituted one of the pivots of British policy in the islands now under review. Sir Bartle Frere, H.M. Special Envoy, arrived in Zanzibar in 1873 to endeavour to obtain the signature of the Sultan to a treaty having as its object the absolute suppression of the slave trade. The Sultan met these proposals in a thoroughly open-handed and friendly spirit, but pointed out the dangers to the commerce and also to the peace of the island if such drastic action were taken, and notwithstanding the strong protests of Sir Bartle Frere and his staff, Barghash, who became Sultan in 1870 on the understanding that he would support the British policy, remained obdurate, and the mission left the island; but Dr. Kirk (afterwards Sir John Kirk, G.C.M.G., K.C.B.), who had been appointed British Political Agent and Consul-General, succeeded in getting the treaty signed after an ultimatum had been sent by the British Government threatening as an alternative, a naval blockade of the island.

When this had been accomplished, it is only fair to say that the Sultan did his best to maintain the conditions of the treaty, even liberating his own domestic slaves, and eventually issuing proclamations threatening with severe punishment anyone engaging in this traffic on land or sea. Many thousands of slaves belonging to British Indian subjects resident in Zanzibar were liberated, and on the coast of Africa, as well as in the islands, energetic measures to prevent slave running were taken by British warships and also by the Sultan's troops under Lieutenant Mathews, R.N. (afterwards Sir Lloyd Mathews, K.C.M.G.).* Notwithstanding

* The Sultan, Barghash, visited England in 1875, and was well received.

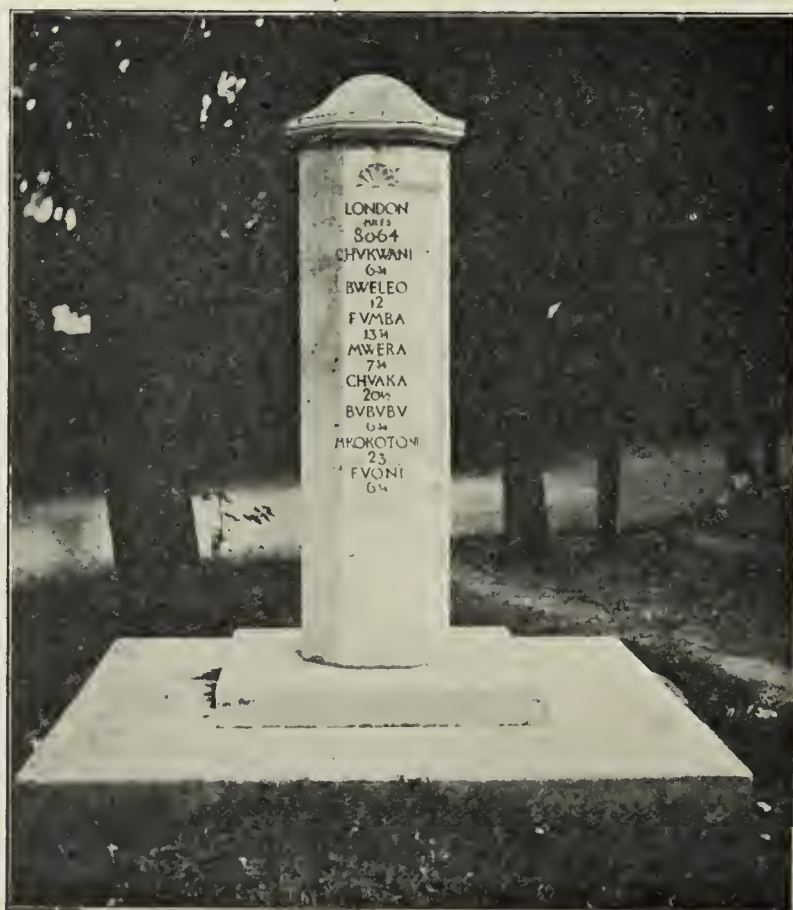
these strong measures, large numbers of slaves were smuggled through the cordon, but hundreds were liberated, and the traffic slowly became unprofitable. The cost to the Imperial Government and to the Sultan was, however, very considerable, and many British officers and Government officials gave their lives for the African slave.

GERMAN ACTIVITY.

In 1884 the Germans, setting aside the Anglo-French treaty of 1862, commenced aggressive operations on the East Coast of Africa, in the sphere generally acknowledged as tributary to the Sultan of Zanzibar, and tense political as well as commercial attention was directed on this new development. It would be wandering from the subject to detail the various steps whereby Germany gained her East African possessions. It is sufficient to say that Dr. Karl Peters, of the "Society for German Colonisation," made

treaties with the various chiefs and annexed the territory which up to the Peace of 1919 formed German East Africa, now the British mandatory territory of Tanganyika (*q.v.*)

The Sultan of Zanzibar protested strongly against this act of aggression, and was especially indignant because he had, himself, given the German pioneers letters of recommendation to Zanzibar officials already occupying portions of this territory in the name of the Sultan; but on the advice of the British Agent the question was eventually referred to diplomatic discussion in London and Berlin. When the German Emperor granted a charter of protection to the society which had acquired this territory, and accepted the allegiance of the native chiefs, the foreign affairs of Great Britain were in a state of peculiar and unavoidable complexity. The great work of reorganising and controlling the administration of Egypt had commenced, and France was in consequence a



British East Africa Corporation
ZANZIBAR—THE FAMOUS MILESTONE

jealous rival; trouble was brewing on the North-West Frontier of India; the Transvaal was in a state of unrest, and there was every possibility of disturbances in the West African hinterland. It is therefore not altogether surprising that Lord Granville gave way to the desires of Prince Bismarck. A German squadron visited Zanzibar and obtained the Sultan's recognition of the new German Protectorate.

ENGLAND IN EAST AFRICA.

A few months later the "British East African Association" was formed to exploit the territory lying between the great lakes (the sources of the White Nile, the life blood of Egypt and the Sudan) and the coast. The next question which demanded settlement was the delimitation of the territory belonging to the Sultan of Zanzibar on the East Coast of Africa. A mixed British, French, and German Commission was appointed to consider these claims, but Germany refused to recognise the right of the Sultan to anything but a few isolated towns and a narrow strip of coast. The Commission furnished a report, and a settlement was arrived at in London in 1886. The Sultan was confirmed in his possession of the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba and all the islands off the coast, a strip of land 10 miles broad from Tunghi Bay, in the south, to Kipini, in the north—on the mainland of Africa—and a number of isolated places situated to the north of these limits.

The dominions of the Sultan have, however, been gradually reduced, and now include only the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba, with nominal suzerainty over a narrow strip of the coast of the Kenya Protectorate, Italy having purchased the most important parts of the Benadir, or Somali coast, and the German East Africa Company the portion running into the ex-German sphere.

The Portuguese next gave trouble on the southern boundary of the ex-German sphere, even going so far as to attack villages inhabited by British Indian subjects; but as this affair was settled by treaty between Germany and Portugal in 1894, it is of little concern here.

Barghash, although exiled at first for attempting to overthrow his brother, proved a good and wise ruler, and a staunch friend

of Great Britain. He died in 1888, and Khalifa, his brother, who had also been confined by the British for rebellion, became Seyyid or Sultan. Under Khalifa the concessions granted by Barghash to the British East Africa Company were renewed, and Britain's splendid work on the mainland was continued. Several small risings in the continental country, in Pemba, and elsewhere, were suppressed, and in 1889-90 slavery was finally abolished by a Decree which made slave-dealing illegal, and enabled slaves to purchase their freedom; but the next most important political event was the complete reorganisation of the Zanzibar administration by Sir Gerald Portal in 1891-2.

RISE OF BRITISH INFLUENCE.

When Sir Gerald Portal arrived in Zanzibar a financial crisis seemed inevitable. The revenue had suffered successive depletions from the loss of the continental territory; and the expenditure of the Sultan, whose custom it had been to distribute the whole surplus revenue broadcast among the adventurers of his court, had not been decreased in proportion as it should have been.

Under the new régime all revenue was paid to the Government Treasury, and not to the Sultan as hitherto, and the Sultan agreed to accept a stated monthly grant for personal expenditure. British officials were appointed to establish and control the various departments of government, and these officials were made removable only with the consent of the British Agent.

The military force, numbering just under 1,000, was supplemented by a police force under a British officer; and in 1906 the troops were disbanded and the police were increased to about 500 men. Two companies of the King's African Rifles were at the same time transferred from British East Africa to Zanzibar.

The import duty was temporarily removed in order to attract the oversea commerce of the coast, and so secure the maritime and commercial position of Zanzibar as the chief port and emporium of the whole of East Africa. Zanzibar occupies a position analogous to Singapore and Hong-Kong; but Mombasa, the terminus of the Kenya and Uganda Railway, with Kilindini as its port, has taken away some of the trade of this

island. The erstwhile German sphere in East Africa, however, possesses no port equal to Zanzibar, which in face of the opposition offered by Dar-es-Salaam, the capital of this territory (Tanganyika) maintains its position as the commercial centre of this coast, sharing with Mombasa nearly all the oversea trade of East Africa, north of Lourenço Marques. The port service was reorganised under a British naval officer, and many public works were undertaken.

Sir Lloyd Mathews relinquished the command of the Army and became First Minister of the Sultan, with a number of British officials as chiefs of the various departments. The British Agent and Consul-General became the intermediary between the British Government and that of the Sultan. Zanzibar and Pemba were divided into districts, and British officers were appointed to advise and control the Arab governors. Many other administrative reforms were carried out, all of which more or less resemble those initiated, or adopted, in Egypt, and the proper system of government then instituted for the first time in the history of Zanzibar has proved its practicability by the test of time, having worked smoothly up to the present day, with the exception of the three days during which occurred the bombardment of the Palace in Zanzibar city; but even this was not made necessary by a discontented populace, or a flaw in the newly constructed machinery of government.

THE BOMBARDMENT.

Unable at first to break away from old traditions, no fewer than three claimants to the succession appeared immediately after the death in 1893 of Seyyid Ali, and one, Khaled bin Barghash, seized the Palace, but on the appearance before the doors of Sir Lloyd Mathews, the British Agent (Mr. Rennel Rodd), and Captain Campbell with a party of blue-jackets and marines with machine guns, he came out, gave himself up, and was immediately pardoned, only, however, to repeat the performance with more determination on the death three years later of the Sultan Hamid. This time, notwithstanding the efforts of Mr. Basil Cave, the British Agent, and Sir Lloyd Mathews, he refused to submit, and placed the Palace in a state of defence with several machine guns and muzzle-loaders, and an armed

retinue of about 3,000, many of whom were really slaves.

On the following morning Rear-Admiral Rawson arrived in H.M.S. *St. George*, and, with the three gunboats and one cruiser already in the harbour, took up a position covering the Palace, the Custom House, and the British Agency. Parties of blue-jackets and marines were landed to reinforce the native troops guarding the European quarter



British East Africa Corporation

A GATEWAY IN ZANZIBAR CITY

and the principal thoroughfares of the city. Early on the following morning an ultimatum was sent to Khaled, and as the terms were not complied with, the warships opened fire at nine o'clock on the morning of 27th August. Thirty-five minutes later the Palace was in flames, over 500 killed and injured lay in huddled masses on the terraces and

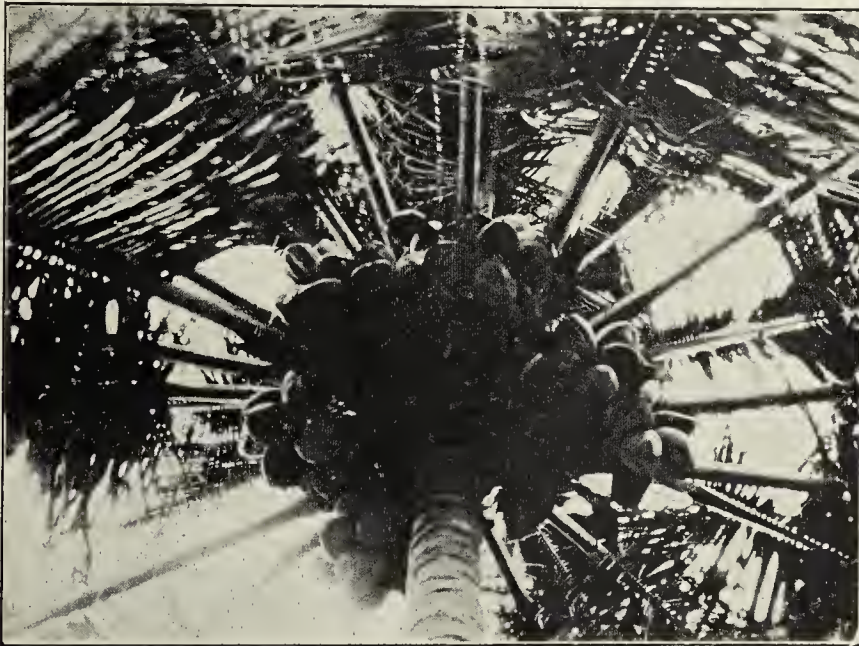
approaches, and the usurper had escaped and taken refuge in the German Consulate, from whence he was deported to what was then German East Africa.

The casualties on the British side were insignificant, and little damage was done to the town itself, but the last vessel of the Zanzibar navy had been sunk with several of the crew, and the Arabs of the island had been taught a lesson which they were not likely to forget. Hamond bin Mohammed was proclaimed Sultan, and Zanzibar entered on a period of orderly government and commercial prosperity which has lasted until

In 1924 the Kismayu Coast, on the mainland, which had hitherto formed a portion of the Kenya Protectorate was ceded to Italy. The frontier of this addition to Italian Somaliland being finally settled by a Boundary Commission in 1927.

ZANZIBAR TO-DAY.

Although called a British Protectorate, Zanzibar differs politically in nearly every respect from Protectorates such as the East and Central African, and really occupies a position in the Empire analogous to the



COCO-NUTS ON PEMBA ISLAND

the present time. In 1901 occurred the death of Sir Lloyd Mathews, a faithful servant of Zanzibar, where he was universally beloved by rich and poor alike, and one of Britain's greatest administrators in this island. In the following year Seyyid Hamond also died, and was succeeded by his son, Ali, who had been educated in England, and as he was then under age, the First Minister, Mr. A. S. Rogers, became Regent of Zanzibar. Seyyid Ali showed himself to be the most enlightened ruler that Zanzibar had so far known. He ruled for only nine years, however, being succeeded, after his death in 1910, by his brother-in-law, H.H. Seyyid Sir Khalifa bin Harub, K.C.M.G., K.B.E.

feudatory States of India, with a native ruler acting on the advice of a British Resident, and all foreign affairs settled by the Imperial Foreign Office ; native courts to try native cases, subject to appeal to the Sultan and his adviser, the Resident ; the Departments of Government under British Officials, and Arab governors for local administration supervised by British officers ; a native police force, with Imperial native troops ; British judges for the trial of British and Indian civil and criminal cases.

The revenue of Zanzibar, which is mainly derived from import and export duties, taxes on produce, shipping dues, registration fees, and the rent *or interest* paid by Great Britain and Italy, for the continental coast territory,

averages about £550,000 per annum; and the expenditure is approximately £530,000.

The chief article of export from Zanzibar and Pemba is cloves, a considerable portion of the world's supply of this commodity coming from these two islands—over £600,000 in value per annum. The other important products are copra, vanilla, and tropical fruits. The average total value of imports and exports amounts to about £1,733,800 and £1,807,800 respectively.

Zanzibar imports from the United Kingdom, India, and British East Africa, merchandise to the approximate value of £1,199,000, and exports to the same parts

dense bush, interspersed with rocky clearings and a few gaunt-looking trees. This portion is but thinly populated, all the best plantations being situated on the coast around Zanzibar city.

Three ranges of low hills cross the main island, but at no point is the country more than 450 ft. above sea-level, and much of the forest-covered coast land is low-lying and swampy. Curiously, although Zanzibar is the premier island, and possesses one of the chief ports of East Africa, Pemba, in proportion to its size, has the largest area of fertile soil, and consequently of prolific growth, although the surface of this island is more broken



IN A NATIVE VILLAGE, ZANZIBAR

of the two Empires produce to the value of £965,000. The ocean shipping annually entering the port of Zanzibar averages about 2,210,000 tons.

THE SPICE ISLANDS.

Both Zanzibar and Pemba are spice islands, and much of the country is covered with clove plantations. The western portion of the larger island is the most cultivated, and possesses the richest soil and the most luxuriant wild growth. With the exception of a narrow fringe of mangroves and coco-nuts on the coast, the eastern half is composed of open country covered with low

and rugged. Here, as in Zanzibar, mangroves, African almond trees, coco-nuts, orange trees, mangoes, rubber vines, papaws, bananas, and countless other kinds of trees, fruit, and flowers grow in profusion, filling the hot, still air with the peculiar rank, heavy odour of the African forest. Mangroves fringe the hundreds of small creeks and inlets of the sea, and the low, swampy valleys, between the clove-tree-covered hills, are many feet deep under the thickest and rankest of vegetation, and the taller growth of giant trees. In these leafy fastnesses it is semi-dark even when the sky is like polished brass, and the filmy wreaths of ague-mist,

which hide the jungle in a pall during the night and early morning, have scarcely departed from between the trunks and entwined stems.

So important to both islands is the clove-growing industry that a few words here on this subject may prove of interest. The Arabs are the principal land owners of Zanzibar, although there are over 10,000 British Indians in the two islands, in whose hands are many of the shops and commercial houses. The Swahilis, who form the bulk of the population, are a mixture of Africa and Asia, with a decided predominance, in character and appearance, of the people of the former continent. No closer description is possible, for the term "Swahili" includes African and Arabian half-breeds, and blacks of all the coast tribes from Somaliland to the Zambesi. These—many of whom are freed slaves—form the coolie class in the towns, and the labourers on the plantations. Europeans are quite unable to stand exposure to the sun for any length of time during the hot season (January to April), and therefore Arabs, even when they do not own the plantations, are mostly employed as overseers.

A clove plantation, like a coffee or tea estate, is not made in a day, nor in five years, unless the wild trees, which grow in abundance in different parts of the island, are used; for the young plants are not ready to be moved and laid out until two years after the sowing of the seed, and even then six or seven years' growing is required before the trees begin to bear. The young trees are planted in rows from 10 to 20 ft. apart, and are shielded from the scorching sun by a palm leaf suspended on a stick. When in full bearing, each tree, if proper care has been taken, should yield from 5 to 6 lb. of cloves; but so little attention is paid by the Arabs to weeding, pruning, and manuring, that many trees only yield from 2 to 4 lb. Some trees, of course, yield considerably more than either of these estimates, especially in good seasons, but these figures may be taken as a fair average for a plantation.

To gain some idea of the extent of the clove-growing industry in these two small islands, it is only necessary to state that over 14,000,000 lb. of this spice are annually exported, which is equal to all but a fraction of the estimated supply of the entire world.

The produce of every clove plantation in both islands must be taken to the Custom House in Zanzibar city, where a small tax has to be paid before it can be bought for export by Indian and foreign firms.

Coco-nuts are usually planted round cloves, or other profitable trees, and bananas and cassava are grown by nearly all the Shamba people, or plantation natives. There are also several rubber, vanilla, and other plantations. Second in importance to the clove industry comes that of copra, and the average value of the production exceeds £370,000 per annum.

CITY OF ZANZIBAR.

A medley of white stucco buildings—seeming almost to touch the sparkling sea—clustered on the low-lying and sheltered inner coast of the island, forms the city of Zanzibar. Although it contains fully 100,000 people, and a large number of colour-washed buildings and dusty streets, there is little of note to tempt description, although a certain irregular picturesqueness and air of indolent Arab life make its thoroughfares and by-paths not altogether uninteresting. The Sultan's Palace, a substantial building surrounded by thin columns supporting frescoed terraces, and lit at night by brilliant electric lights, shares with the British Agency, a fine white building on Shangani Point, which projects into the harbour, the political and social honours of this city of the Orient; while the Custom House and the landing stages are the centre of the commercial and maritime activity. The Anglican Cathedral stands on the site of what was once the largest slave market in the world, and the Altar has been placed where the whipping post once stood. There is here a crucifix made from the wood of the tree under which Dr. Livingstone's heart lies buried at Chitambo, on the shore of Lake Bangweolo, Rhodesia-Congo Frontier.

The city is a perfect maze of narrow streets, which are relieved by fine Arab doorways of carved wood. One of the most interesting sights is the famous Ivory Bazaar, in which curios from every part of Africa and the Near East may be purchased. Across the Darajani Bridge is the teeming native town of Ngambo, wherein every African race is represented, and the hot,

spice-laden atmosphere vibrates to the sound of the African drum.

The harbour is spacious, and well-sheltered on the north and west by several small islands and coral reefs. Forests of the slanting masts of dhows are usually clustered along the shore. Among the ocean-going vessels calling at Zanzibar are those of the Union Castle Line, British India Steam Navigation Company and the Messageries Maritimes. Zanzibar is distant about 154 miles from Mombasa, 1,827 from Durban and 6,765 from London. Strategically it is important, as it dominates the whole East Coast of Africa.

CLIMATE.

Not many years ago the climate of Zanzibar was considered one of the most pestiferous in the whole length and breadth of the British Colonial Empire. Even now, for a white man to spend a night in the open, either in the plantations or the forest, would

be to court a severe attack of fever. Zanzibar is one of the places where the European can take no liberties with his constitution. The heat is greatest during the months of January, February, March, and April, and the rainfall is heaviest in both islands during April and May, when it averages from 12 to 17 inches. The maximum temperature in the shade during the summer seldom exceeds 90 degrees F., and in July, the coolest month, it rarely exceeds 84 degrees F. The average rainfall in the year varies from 60 to 100 inches.

There is but little twilight in these islands, it is dark almost as soon as the sun has set. The sky is quickly a starry blaze, and the black mangroves, cotton trees and coco-nuts are sharply outlined against the brightening sky. A yellow moon tops the swaying palms, fire-flies flit about like tiny floating stars, and all, save the hum of insects, is still in Zanzibar. (*See Government, Finance, Commerce, Agriculture, Trade Routes, etc.*).



A CLOVE PLANTATION, ZANZIBAR. Drying the Cloves



SPECIALLY DRAWN FOR THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE BY A.H.L.E.

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK

FOUNDER OF THE CAPE



IMPORTANT DATES IN SOUTH AFRICAN HISTORY.

- 1487. Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope by Bartholomew Diaz.
- 1497. Landing of Vasco da Gama at St. Helena Bay and at Mossel Bay.
- 1503. Discovery of Table Bay by Saldanha.
- 1580. Sir Francis Drake's voyage round the Cape.
- 1601. First British East India Fleet at Table Bay.
- 1602. Netherlands East India Company formed.
- 1652. Landing of van Riebeeck. First settlement.
- 1688. Arrival of Huguenot settlers.
- 1820. Arrival of 5,000 British immigrants.
- 1835. Durban founded.
- 1836. Great trek from Cape.
- 1837. Winburg founded.
- 1839. Potchefstroom founded.
- 1843. Natal proclaimed a British possession.
- 1846. Bloemfontein founded.
- 1848. British sovereignty proclaimed between Orange and Vaal Rivers.
- 1852. Sand River Convention, recognising independence of Transvaal.
- 1854. First Cape Parliament.
- 1855. Pretoria founded.
- 1856. South African Republic Constitution (Grondwet) established. Natal made a separate colony.
- 1857. First legislative council in Natal.
- 1859. First railway in South Africa commenced.
- 1860. Pretoria established as the seat of Government in Transvaal.
- 1867. First diamond discovered.
- 1872. Responsible Government introduced in the Cape.
- 1884. Barberton goldfields opened.
- 1886. Opening of goldfields on Witwatersrand.
- 1888. First mining concession granted by Lobengula. British South Africa Company founded.

- 1893. Responsible Government granted to Natal.
- 1899. Conference at Bloemfontein between Sir A. Milner and President Krüger. War declared (October 11th).
- 1900. Occupation of Bloemfontein, Johannesburg and Pretoria.
- 1902. Peace of Vereeniging (May 31st). Death of C. J. Rhodes.
- 1904. Death of ex-President Krüger.
- 1906. Constitutions given to Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- 1909. Passing of the South Africa Act by Imperial Parliament. Death of Hon. J. H. Hofmeyr.
- 1910. Constitution of the Union of South Africa.
- 1914. Outbreak of the Great War, and commencement of operations against German South West Africa.
- 1915. Conquest of S.W. Africa completed.
- 1918. South African Delegates (Botha and Smuts) take part in the Peace Conference at Paris.
- 1919. Native Delegation visits London to petition the Imperial Government for the removal of grievances of the 5,237,000 natives within the Union.
- 1922. Serious revolutionary strike in the Rand Mining Area, which had to be suppressed by the Military.
- 1926- The introduction and passage of the
- 1928. Flag Bill through the Union Parliament.
- 1929- Serious unrest among the native and
- 1930. coloured population, with riots in several parts of the country, owing, largely, to the colour bar grievance.



Photo, South African Rlys.

CAPE TOWN, CAPITAL OF THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

Parts of this picturesque old pier have been replaced by a modern bandstand

THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

THE most important portion of British Africa—which collectively has an area of nearly 4,650,000 square miles, and a mixed white and coloured population of considerably over 57,000,000 (exclusive of Egypt) is the self-governing dominion of "The Union of South Africa," which occupies the southern and temperate portion of the continent, and is composed of the four divisions: Cape Province, Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal. This immense homogeneous territory has an area of 472,347 square miles, with a mixed population of 6,928,580, of whom approximately 1,691,000 are Europeans. The three elements, British, Dutch and native, in the composition of the inhabitants, with the corresponding divergence of opinion and custom, form the ever present problem of South African administration.

THE PORTUGUESE AND DUTCH AT THE CAPE.

The first navigator to discover the Cape of Good Hope was Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese, who was one of the many explorers commissioned by various kings of Portugal to find an oversea route to India. Diaz, however, did not land in Africa, but simply doubled the Cape and returned to Portugal in 1487.

The famous navigator, Vasco da Gama, who discovered the long sought-for ocean route to Hindostan, leaving Portugal some ten years later landed in Natal on Christmas Day, 1497; but made no attempt to colonise or hold the territory which he had discovered. In 1620 Humphrey Fitzherbert and Andrew Shillinge took possession of the Cape in the name of King James of England and hoisted a flag on Lion's Rump (now Signal Hill). For many years the Cape was

used only as a port-of-call for ships trading between Europe and the Indies; but in 1652 the Dutch East India Company established a fort and supply base for their ships on the site which is now occupied by Cape Town. Johan van Riebeeck, a surgeon in one of their ships, called the attention of the Directors to the importance of obtaining the exclusive possession of a country at which the ships of rival powers going to and returning from India must necessarily touch.

The Dutch retained possession of this southernmost point of the African continent for over a hundred years, although it was taken by a British force in 1796, but was restored in 1803; only, however, again to fall to British arms some three years later, and, by the Treaty of Peace, to be permanently ceded to Great Britain.

The Province of Natal originally formed a portion of Chaka's Zulu Kingdom, and was not colonised until 1820, when over 3,000 British settlers landed and established a settlement at Algoa Bay (Port Elizabeth). In 1843 Natal was proclaimed British territory, and in 1856 made a separate Crown Colony.

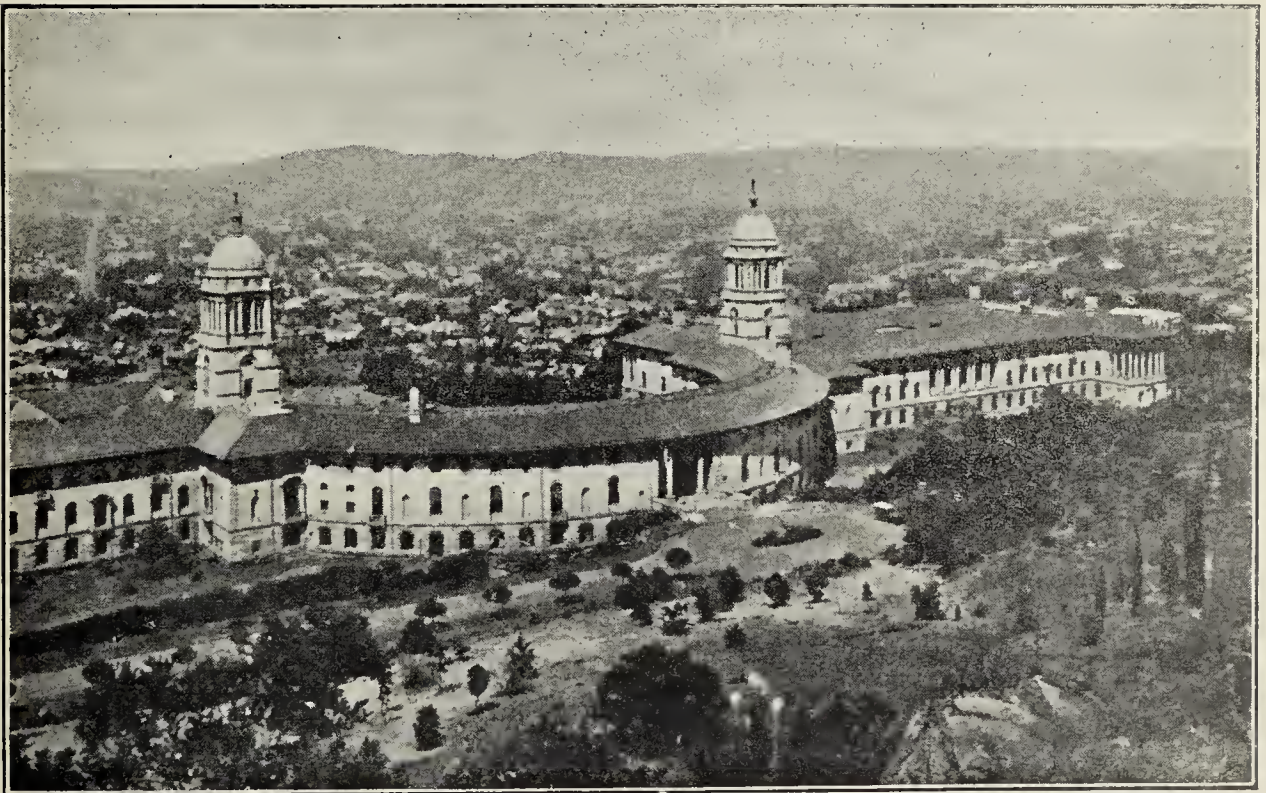
POST OFFICE STONES.

A most interesting relic of these early days at the Cape of Good Hope is the collection of what are known as "Post Office Stones," in the South African Museum at Cape Town. Many of these are of great antiquarian interest, since they record the visits of early European navigators to Table Bay. The dates on these stones range from 1485 to 1632, and the number so far discovered—often during excavations for building purposes—is eighteen.

These stones mostly served the purpose of pillar-boxes, concealing letters left for and



HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, CAPETOWN
The Legislative Headquarters of the Union of South Africa



UNION BUILDINGS, PRETORIA
The Administrative Headquarters of the Union of South Africa

by passing ships. The letters were protected by coverings of canvas, made waterproof with pitch. The following is an example of the inscriptions cut deeply into the surface of these stones :—

“JOHN ROBERTS COMMAUNDER OF THE
LESSER JAMES ARY 8TH DECEM DE^E_V
26 1622 LOUK WITH THIS LINE FOR
LETTERS —————”

THE GREAT TREK.

The Dutch settlers who came under British sovereignty when the Cape was finally acquired through purchase by Great Britain in 1814 numbered about 30,000. These nomadic farmers had known practically no law except that which was taught in the tenets of the Dutch faith, and were slave owners on a large scale.

The statute providing for the emancipation of all the slaves in the British colonies, promulgated by the Imperial Parliament in 1834, increased the natural discontent caused by the country's passing under foreign rule. This was still further augmented by what the Boers considered the small amount paid by the British Government for each slave liberated. The compensation allowed slave owners in all the British colonies amounted to the high figure of £20,000,000, but only £3,000,000 was allotted to Cape Colony where the slaves numbered 40,000, and the bills were made payable at the office of the National Debt in London, with the result that many of the Dutch farmers lost large sums of money by selling their claims to agents who could present them in the United Kingdom.

This state of affairs created general discontent and a revolutionary outbreak was threatened, but the power of the British Empire made such a course impracticable, and the discontented settlers decided literally to “take up their bed” and march inland into the great unknown. This was the beginning of the secession, or “great trek.” Thousands of Dutch squatters forced their way north and east into what is now the Orange Free State and the Transvaal, also into Natal, whence, however, they emigrated when this was proclaimed British territory. This country was then a desolate region inhabited only by Kaffirs, but these pioneer-farmers, after some years of almost

continuous guerilla warfare, forced back the natives and compelled them to go further north into the valley of the Zambesi and the fastnesses of the Matoppo and Drakensberg mountains, or remain in slavery.

Then came the rise of the Dutch Republics in Africa, which were always within the sphere of British influence. It is interesting to note here that Great Britain also holds a recognised right of pre-emption over Portuguese East Africa.

RISE OF THE DUTCH STATES.

The intermediate period in which the Dutch settlers slowly formed themselves into organised states occupied many years. They first established homesteads in Natal, but finding themselves under active British rule they began trekking northwards and westwards. In 1848 Sir Harry Smith, Governor of Cape Colony, tried to prevent this migration, but failed, so declared the country between the Orange and Vaal Rivers, to which the Boers were moving, also under British rule. This caused the great leader, Pretorius, to assemble his commandos and offer resistance, but he was defeated by Sir Harry Smith at Bloomplatz. In 1854 independence was, however, granted, by the Convention of Bloemfontein, to what then became known as the Orange Free State.

Although Great Britain recognised the independence of the Transvaal by the Sand River Convention signed in 1852, the “South African Republic,” as it was then called, was not definitely formed until 1860, when Pretorius, son of the great Boer leader, succeeded in uniting all the conflicting interests in this portion of central South Africa and establishing the second of the Boer states.

THE ZULU AND FIRST BOER WAR.

It is needless here to follow the fortunes of these two republics; sufficient to say that in 1877 the Transvaal was proclaimed by Sir Theophilus Shepstone, the British Agent in Pretoria, to be under the protection of the British flag. Then came a period of warfare between the British and the Zulus in which occurred the disaster of Isandlwana, the gallant defence of Rorke's Drift, and the final victory of Ulundi.



BLOEMFONTEIN, ORANGE FREE STATE, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Maitland Street

Photo, South African Rlys.



ADDERLEY STREET, CAPETOWN

When the British forces had quelled the native rising which had previously threatened the Boers, the latter rose and proclaimed their independence. War immediately broke out, and the British troops under General Colley suffered reverses from the opening engagement at Bronker's Spruit to the final battle on Majuba Hill. By the Convention of Pretoria the Transvaal was again given independence under British suzerainty.

THE MAKING OF RHODESIA.

The struggle between Briton and Boer for the mastery of Rhodesia quickly resolved itself into a battle of *finesse* and influence between Cecil Rhodes and Krüger, in which the former was victorious.* First came the occupation of Mashona and Manicaland in 1890, then the conquest of Matabililand in 1893, followed by the final annexation of the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899–1901.

The discovery of gold in quantity in the Transvaal in 1885–6 caused public attention to be directed on the territory further north, lying between the Rivers Limpopo and Zambesi, then subject to Lobengula, King of the Matibili. The few hunters and prospectors who had explored these lands spoke of their great mineral wealth and agricultural possibilities, and pressure was brought to bear on the Imperial Government, ever slow to extend its jurisdiction, with the result that Mr. Moffat, Assistant Commissioner in Bechuanaland, was sent to obtain from Lobengula an agreement undertaking not to cede or sell any of his territory to any foreign nation or individual without the consent of the British High Commissioner.

This treaty brought Matibililand and Mashonaland practically under British protection, and agreements with Germany and the Transvaal in 1890, and with Portugal in 1891, defined the frontiers of this portion of Rhodesia on all sides except the north.

The British South Africa Company had been formed previously to the actual occupation of Mashonaland by what was known as the "Pioneer Expedition," organised by Cecil Rhodes in 1890. Although the treaty

with Lobengula gave to the British Government, and through that source to the B.S.A. Company, a certain right to exploit Mashonaland, it was not a cession of this territory; consequently, when the Pioneer Expedition took possession of the land and began the construction of a chain of fortified posts, the Matibili impis could no longer be restrained by their chief and war broke out in 1893.

The campaign was a short and sharp one. The Matibili attempted to rush the British laagers in the open and were swept aside by the fire of magazine rifles and machine guns. Their impis were completely defeated and the King retreated into the forest country in the valley of the Zambesi.

It was thus that the occupation of Mashonaland was made effectual and Matibililand conquered. Bechuanaland had been annexed after the expedition of Sir Charles Warren in 1884, when the suppression of the two small republics of Stellaland and Goshen, formed by adventurers from the Transvaal, had been successfully and peacefully carried out.

THE RAID AND THE MATIBILI RISING.

The Boer states were now shut in on all sides except the east, and all chances of their obtaining access to the sea were slowly disappearing. Amatongaland was annexed, and, by the Arbitration Treaty of 1872, Great Britain had obtained a right of pre-emption over Portuguese East Africa, which closed Delagoa Bay. Thus they became inland states and consequently dependent on the countries which surrounded them. From this moment their amalgamation in some way or other with the remainder of South Africa became inevitable, and only a matter of time.† It was then that Cecil Rhodes, who was at this time popular with the Cape Dutch, tried to induce the Boer Republic to enter a South African confederation *within the Empire*, but realising the impossibility of achieving the long desired Union in this way, and seeing, at the same time, that the storm clouds long gathering in the Transvaal,

* See also under RHODESIA.

† Although in the history of South Africa the names of Rhodes and Milner do not appear so often as might be expected from the part they played, from totally different standpoints, in shaping the destinies of modern South Africa, it is because they played that part so well and politics so often became accomplished facts, that the personal element was lost in the political result.

especially among the Uitlanders, must soon break, and bear away into obscurity the work of his life on the tide of uncontrolled rebellion and war, he supported the projected rising in Johannesburg and the famous Jameson Raid that he might with one decisive blow obtain control of the elements of destruction and so effect the Union of South Africa.

The Raid was followed by a rising of the Matibili. Some of the settlers were murdered and the occupation by the British pioneers was in jeopardy, but after some sharp fighting the rebellion was crushed, and tranquility restored throughout Rhodesia. One of the effects, however, of the unsuccessful raid was to strengthen the mutual ties of the two Boer states, which had previously been of a somewhat loose character. The excitement and agitation of a few months was followed by an ominous calm for a few years, the outward calm of inward unrest which is the sure precursor of a political storm.

THE GREAT BOER WAR.

The end came before it was expected. The absolute monopoly by the Boers of an enormous tract of country in the heart of British South Africa was politically and commercially impossible unless all had equal chances therein of citizenship. The British Government asked that the franchise might be extended so as to include Uitlanders, or Anglo-South Africans, after a period of residence in the country, but this was persistently refused, and many irksome laws directed against the Uitlanders were passed. In the meantime guns and ammunition were pouring into the two republics, and German officers were drilling the Boer Artillery. Dr. Leyds was busy helping the Boer cause in Europe, and it has now become evident that strong support was lent by certain European powers, notably by Germany, which led the Boers to place reliance on foreign support and intervention if such became necessary. The part played by the British Navy in preventing this being given can now be fairly accurately estimated, but from a military point of view there can be no doubt that Great Britain was unprepared for a war even of this magnitude. Krüger's government delivered an ultimatum in October, 1899, and the Orange Free State joined forces with the Transvaal. In the following year the two

Boer Republics were annexed by Great Britain, and ten years later the *spirit of Union* was made manifest by the formation of the fourth great British Empire State.

It should be noted here that the seeds of future trouble between Great Britain and Germany were sown during this struggle in South Africa. The famous Kaiser's telegram to Krüger; the German artillery experts in the Transvaal, and other provocative actions on the part of Germany in a field wherein she had no interests caused the first deep suspicions and animosities which resulted in war fifteen years later.

SOUTH AFRICA TO-DAY.

The four great provinces which were united by the Imperial South Africa Act under one government on 31st May, 1910, are collectively four times the size of Great Britain and Ireland, having a total area of 472,347 square miles with a population of 6,928,580. There are over forty towns of importance scattered over this wide area; and the railways, which together with all the harbours form one great system of communication under government control, have a total length of nearly 12,500 miles. The revenue is approximately 27 millions sterling per annum and the expenditure 21 millions. The Public Debt is just over 230 millions. The average annual value of the exports and imports is 77 millions and 63 millions sterling.

The production of gold, which forms the most important product of South Africa, averages in value about 42 millions annually, the total mineral output 58 millions, and the value of the diamond output is approximately 10 millions sterling per annum. Coal to the value of about four millions is annually produced, as well as considerable quantities of other minerals of less importance. It has been estimated that the value of the gold produced by the South African mines up to the year 1929 reached the huge figure of 1,000 millions sterling. The climate of almost all parts of this vast territory is quite healthy and eminently suitable for white residence; and there are millions of fertile acres suitable for cultivation and vast tracts of grazing land available for stock raising.

From these few facts the size and economic status of United South Africa will be apparent.



COMMISSIONER STREET, JOHANNESBURG

Cape Town

Table Bay, the gateway of South Africa, is a place of moods. Approach it when the rock-strewn coast is beaten by the surf of ocean combers and the top of the mountain is obscured by clouds, and the sight is cheerless ; but see it first from the blue waters of the bay, with the sun streaming on the tiers of houses and streets, and the bold outline of Table Mountain sharply defined against the summer sky, and the sight is one of exceptional picturesqueness. Cape Town is the seat of the Legislative Assembly of United South Africa, and shares with Pretoria, where the permanent administrative departments have their headquarters, the position of capital.

The city, which, with its suburbs, has a population of nearly 207,000, of whom just over 130,000 are Europeans, possesses many fine streets abundantly supplied with shops, hotels, theatres, and clubs. The main thoroughfare is Adderley Street, in which well-dressed crowds may always be seen. There is a prosperous and striking appearance about this well-arranged city which forms a contrast to the badly planned towns in the interior of the country.

The many fine buildings make individual description almost impossible, but mention must be made of the Cape Parliament Houses, which are in the Renaissance style and cost nearly a quarter of a million sterling to build ; the General Post Office, a magnificent corner block of buildings facing broad thoroughfares ; the library, which contains over 70,000 volumes, including the collection presented by Sir G. Grey, whose statue occupies a prominent site facing this building ; the ruins of the Old Dutch Castle, erected in 1666, and the Observatory which is maintained by the British Government.

Perhaps the most interesting sight in the vicinity of Cape Town is the fine old Dutch Mansion, Groote Schuur, with its quaint interior, beautifully laid out grounds, and collection of animals from Zambesia, once so dear to the heart of its late owner, Cecil John Rhodes, the maker of Rhodesia. Foreseeing the eventual union of South Africa, and with the thoughtfulness and consideration for the welfare of his adopted land which was the characteristic of Cecil Rhodes, he bequeathed this fine mansion as a place of residence for

the Prime Ministers of the Union of South Africa.

The city museum, in which a fine collection may be seen, many of the specimens having been presented by that famous hunter, F. C. Selous, is well worth a visit, as is also the Koopmans-De Wet Museum, and especially the de Waal Drive.

To catalogue the sights of Cape Town is, however, the work rather of a guide book ; therefore let it be said that there is much to interest the casual traveller, but more to interest the man of affairs who sees in this fine city and port the gateway of a rich and powerful State of the Great Commonwealth.

The most striking feature of Cape Town is the great mass of rock, with almost perpendicular sides, known as Table Mountain, which forms a background to the city. The ascent of this mountain, which has an altitude of 3,582 feet, has been rendered easy by the construction of a cable railway. The view from the summit on a clear day is very fine. The city, nestling in the shadow, and the opposite shores of the Bay, may clearly be seen, and from this eminence an unexampled panorama of the inner harbour and anchorage of Table Bay is obtained.

It was the magnificent natural anchorage in Table and Simons Bays which caused the Dutch to choose these spots as supply bases for their East India Merchantmen, and both still remain two of the finest natural harbours on the African continent. In Table Bay an immense breakwater shelters the anchorage. The inner harbour comprises two basins nearly 16 acres in extent, and the quays, which are well supplied with hoisting and coaling machinery, stretch for several miles. Simonstown, which is only a few miles distant from the capital, is the chief south-east African Naval Station, it contains a well-equipped dockyard and is strongly fortified.

One of the best means of unostentatiously seeing Cape Town is to go over the extensive tramway system, which not only covers the principal portion of the city, but links up all the important suburbs. A trip from Adderley Street to Sea Point, through charming residential quarters, gives some idea of the suburbs of Cape Town. One of the finest marine drives in the world extends from the city to Cape Point, and the famous surf bathing resorts of Muizenberg, St. James, Kalk Bay and Fish Hoek.

The rapid increase in the population of this city has caused the east and south-east suburbs to be greatly extended, and a good train service with this area is now maintained. There are also hundreds of miles of good motor roads.

From The Cape to Rhodesia

Topographically the Cape Province, which has an area of 276,540 square miles, and a population of over 2,700,000, of whom nearly

endless succession, and as the line approaches the little original Huguenot settlements of French Hoek and Paarl the country becomes more mountainous. In the distance the rugged peaks of the Drakenstein range tower up into the sky. Still the land retains a prosperous appearance and many acres under wheat may be seen. Past the blue gum trees of Worcester, which stands at the foot of the Hex River Mountains, about 100 miles from Cape Town, the line climbs through the Hex Pass and debouches on to the Great Karoo.



KRUGERSDORP, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Monument Street and Town Hall

Photo, South African Government

2,000,000 are coloured, is a mountainous country, being crossed from the seaboard to the interior by irregular ranges, which, with their flat tops, form a series of terraces rising in height as the sea is left behind. Between these mountains lie valleys and plains.

The main line of the Government Railways, after leaving the capital, runs completely across the Cape Province to the diamond fields of Griqualand West and the gold fields of the Witwatersrand. For the first 50 miles after leaving Cape Town the country is closely cultivated. Orchards, vineyards, and farms innumerable are passed in seemingly

The Great Karoo

This vast, waterless tract, almost devoid of trees, is covered with coarse grass and brushwood, the monotony of which is only relieved by a few bare kopjes with rugged boulder-strewn sides and flat uninteresting tops, which at sunrise and sunset take to themselves glorious tints of gold, purple and blue. There is a certain fascination in this sun-scorched desert, its vastness and desolation appeals strongly to imaginative minds. The glare of the African sun on the burnt grass and slate-coloured kopjes, beating down with

relentless fury on hard earth which cannot deliver up an atom of moisture, with here and there an isolated farmhouse surrounded by a few sheep-pens, and everything looking lifeless and lazy in the dry heat, forms the general summer aspect of the South African Karoo.

During certain months this great plain is considered a health resort owing to the dry invigorating air, and there are, notably at Beaufort West, sanatoriums for people suffering from pulmonary complaints; but there is little doubt that the pure air on the Matoppo Hills in Rhodesia is more suited to those suffering with weak chests.

At night the silence of the desert is there, and one might almost imagine oneself in the stony belt of the great Sahara; the same cold wind and bright sky, the sharply defined rocks and hills in the brilliant moonlight, and a stillness which quickly makes one realise the vast peopleless tracts which exist in all parts of Africa.

The advance of the British troops across the Karoo during the Boer War was conducted parallel to the railway line, and consequently there are within sight many famous battlefields. De Aar, the junction for Mafeking, Bulawayo, and the Orange Free State, is situated in the centre of this arid plain, and was the supply base for the main army under Lord Roberts.

During the wet season, lasting from November to March, the sparse population of this great desert store the rain water which has to be used during the long, hot and dry summer, when every atom of moisture is drawn from the earth by the fierce rays of the sun. Dust storms are by no means infrequent, the hot wind whisks the sandy grit into the air and carries it along in a cloud of fine dust which penetrates everything. These are most unpleasant for anyone riding over the dried-up plains.

Some miles further up the line, near the Orange River, the country assumes a more fertile aspect. It was at Hope Town, where the Orange and Vaal Rivers meet, that in 1869 diamonds were first discovered in South Africa. Some years later a Boer farmer noticed that a Kaffir was carrying as a charm a large dull stone which resembled a rough diamond. He purchased it for a comparatively small sum, and sold for £10,000 this magnificent gem, which was known as "The

Star of South Africa." This was the signal for the diamond rush which gave birth to the fields of Kimberley.

A few miles the other side of the Orange River lies Honey Nest Kloof, where, on the 8th of November, 1899, was fought the Battle of Graspan, which forced the Boer Commandos to retire on the Modder River, destroying the fine railway bridge behind them. Here battlefields are all around. Some buildings in the vicinity were almost destroyed by shell fire, and the ground was riddled with shot in the fiercely-contested passage of the Modder River. About 40 miles eastwards lies Paardeberg, the scene of the surrender of General Cronje to Lord Roberts; and further up the main line stands the famous Kopje which was stormed by the Highland Brigade at the Battle of Magersfontein on 7th December, 1899. On the summit of this rock-strewn hill stands a large Celtic cross bearing the inscription, "Scotland is poorer in men but richer in heroes."

Kimberley

The first discovery of diamonds in this district was made in 1870, and was quickly followed by many other discoveries. The rush of prospectors which resulted from these finds caused a town of shanties to spring up; but when it was realised that Kimberley would become in a very short time the centre of the richest diamond fields in the world, a magnificent city was rapidly constructed. It now possesses fine streets, avenues, shops and pretty suburbs, and there are electric lighting and tramway services.

THE DIAMOND FIELDS.

The chief interest of the country surrounding Kimberley centres in the diamond mines, most of which are now owned by that great corporation known as the De Beers Consolidated Mining Company, the creation of which was due mainly to the skill and determination of the late Cecil J. Rhodes.

For many years, following the first discovery of diamonds in 1869-70, the claims were held by a large number of small companies and private individuals who had either "pegged" or purchased them from the original prospectors. Gradually competition arose among these small mine owners, and

more stones were placed on the markets of the United States and Europe than could possibly be disposed of at a price sufficiently remunerative. The result, as must have been foreseen, was a rapid decline in price. Added to the loss which owners suffered through the overstocking of the market was the theft of rough diamonds by the natives employed in the mines, which they sold to illicit diamond buyers, then known as I.D.B.'s.

and, if worked scientifically, would prove of great commercial value, foreseeing at the same time that unless a scheme was evolved which would do away with the two great disadvantages, the Kimberley mines would soon fall into very bad repute, succeeded in forming, in 1885, a combination of many of the most valuable diamond mines in this area. Great economies in working were effected; the theft of stones and their



DU TOIT'S PAN ROAD, KIMBERLEY

Official Photo, South African Rlys

One of the main business thoroughfares of the Diamond City of South Africa

Many and ingenious were the schemes employed by the natives in secreting the stones when discovered in the clay. The loss suffered in these two ways by the early mining companies was enormous, so much so that it became a struggle for them to produce a balance sheet which in any way met the expectations of the shareholders.

At this juncture Cecil J. Rhodes, knowing the critical state of several mining concerns whose property was really immensely rich

purchase by illicit diamond buyers were gradually suppressed by the employment of careful supervision and means of detection, and the output was regulated so that only just enough would be sold to meet the absolute demand, keeping the price at a sufficiently remunerative figure.

These wise regulations had the desired object: the price of diamonds rose and has never since fallen to such a low figure as it did during the ten years of unchecked

competition during 1875 to 1885. It would now be an extremely difficult and dangerous task to buy in South Africa a diamond in its rough state without having a covering receipt, and a still more risky proceeding to try to dispose of one so purchased. The perfection to which the system of buying and selling these gems has been brought is a triumph of organisation. The few merchants, or really responsible agents, who buy direct from the mines receive the "parcels" (specified quantities) in turn and distribute them among the smaller merchants in number only just sufficient to meet the demand. So perfectly does this arrangement operate, that the history of every large and valuable stone can be traced at any moment.

The amalgamation of nearly all the diamond mines under one corporation greatly reduced the population of Kimberley, as the staff needed is very much smaller now than it was in the days of separate ownership, when an enormous number of adventurers and prospectors flocked to this region as offering a chance of getting rich quickly.

The white employees of the great De Beer Corporation have a suburb of Kimberley to themselves. Kenilworth, as it is called, which was built by Cecil Rhodes, consists of a considerable number of well-built, medium sized houses facing broad avenues of shady trees. This is the administrative and executive headquarters of the greatest diamond mining industry in the world. The native labourers who work in the mines are housed in what are known as "compounds." These are large enclosures surrounded by walls and connected with the mines by underground passages. The huts in which the natives sleep, or rest when not working, are situated inside this courtyard. Food is obtained from the compound store which is run by the company, but no spirits are permitted to be sold. This prohibition is, on the whole, beneficial both to the natives and to their employers; it is an example which could be followed with distinctly satisfactory results especially as far as law and order are concerned, by others who have the supervision of natives. Many of the excesses perpetrated by the negroes in the Southern States of America, so often followed by the hideous process of lynching the culprits, were, in the years previous to the passing of the Prohibition Act, caused by the action of spirits

on the hot African blood. An example of this is afforded in South America where even the negroes drink the cheap universal beverage Maté, which is a kind of invigorating but not intoxicating tea, with the result that excesses are very seldom committed by the coloured population. Vicious crime is, happily, comparatively rare in the whole of British South Africa.

The restrictions placed on the natives in the De Beer compounds are quite necessary to prevent any diamonds found in the workings from being stolen. Were these regulations to be entirely withdrawn a return to the old ways of crime and violence would almost immediately result, and Kimberley, instead of remaining in its present peaceful and happy state, would again become the resort of thieves and adventurers. The comparatively high rate of wages paid to the labourers in these mines attracts natives from all parts of South Africa, and the compounds are thus of considerable ethnological interest. In addition to wages the miners are allowed a certain percentage on the value of every diamond which they actually discover, and the amount paid yearly by the De Beers Company in this way comes to about half a million sterling.

The value of the diamonds extracted from the grey-blue clay in the South African mines, up to the year 1929, was approximately 280 millions sterling. The chief market for these gems is found in the United States. The total area occupied by the De Beers open workings and mines is very considerable; the shafts, sidings, laboratories, engine rooms and compounds form a town in themselves. The general view over the principal diamond fields of Kimberley is extremely dismal. The piles of grey refuse and the apparent chaos of sheds, railway lines, shafting, and the great open workings of the Wesselton mine, which has an area of nearly half an acre and is over 120 ft. deep, combine to form a scene which is anything but picturesque; but when it is considered that the average value (exclusive of the cost of working which is very considerable) taken from these mines would in about twenty-three years pay the National Debt of the Union of South Africa, one can, without being considered mercenary, become enthusiastic even over this dismal bed of diamondiferous clay.



EAST LONDON, CAPE PROVINCE, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Oxford Street

Photo, South African Government



KIMBERLEY, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Town Hall

Photo, South African Rlys.

Bechuanaland

About half-way between Kimberley and Mafeking, on the Bulawayo line, is situated Vryburg, a small town with a history which cannot be called peaceful. It first arose from the low bush veld with which it is surrounded during the struggles between the Boers and Natives; some years later it was proclaimed capital of the "Republic of Stellaland," one of the two miniature states founded by Van Nickerk, the other being named the "Land of Goshen"—why so called it is difficult to conceive, as it certainly was not a "land which floweth with milk and honey." The position of the first of these proposed Utopias, across the British trade route through Bechuanaland, made it impossible for the authorities at the Cape to consent to its establishment, and the territory was proclaimed under British protection but, although Cecil Rhodes attempted to effect a settlement, President Krüger annexed it to the Transvaal. An expeditionary force, under Sir Charles Warren, caused the, then reasonable, President of the South African Republic to change his mind, and the whole of Bechuanaland came under British rule.

Mafeking, although only a small town, has an important place in the annals of British history, as the town so gallantly defended by Sir R. H. S. Baden-Powell, with about 800 men and a few guns, during the great South African struggle. Mafeking is the centre of a country which is devoted almost entirely to farming and cattle raising. It possesses some good hotels and a club, and offers fair opportunities for shooting in the bush which covers the surrounding country. A fine memorial has been erected in memory of those killed during the siege.

The Kalahari Desert

North of Mafeking, on the Bulawayo line, lies the British Bechuanaland Protectorate, a portion of which is formed by the Kalahari Desert, a dry sandy waste, with occasional patches of low scrub and thorny mimosa bush.

The keen air and hot sun on these South African deserts make up somewhat for the lack of moist green vegetation and variety of scene. One may travel for hundreds of miles across the high and fertile veld and yet see but little change in the aspect of the

country. Vast plains covered with grass and low bush, with occasional clumps of stunted trees, crossed by muddy dongas and flat-topped, rock-strewn mountains, are the chief characteristics of South African scenery, with the exception of Zambesia and Natal.

On the Kalahari Desert, which borders the line for many miles, practically the only inhabitants are lions, giraffes, and other beasts; now and again a few vultures and bustards will alight on these plains, which are so often swept with violent sand storms.

North of Mafeking lies Pitsani, where Dr. Jameson formed one of his camps of mobilisation preparatory to the famous, though ill-fated raid. Further north, near Lobatsi, are several native reserves, or "Staadts" as they are termed in the half-Dutch parlance of the locality. These villages are surrounded by the prettiest country yet seen, and the whole territory begins to assume a more fertile, though less inhabited, aspect.

It is a peculiar fact that in South Africa, as in Canada and Australia, the most fertile lands in healthy parts of the more remote regions are left uncultivated and despised, whereas, the comparatively crowded and impoverished soil of the districts within close proximity to populous centres is sometimes manured and carefully tended, in order that a much smaller acreage than would be available in the interior may produce abundant crops. The question of a ready market and means of transport account in many places for this curious condition of affairs, but in most instances this is certainly not the case, for in Rhodesia, Alberta, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, Queensland and Western Australia there are markets, means of transport, and vast areas of fertile territory, which can be bought for a sixth of the price that would be paid for lands in Cape Colony, Ontario, or Victoria.

For miles the line runs across low bush veld, and within a short distance of numerous native villages, around which mealies, corn, and other crops are raised. At one point the current of air caused by the speed of the train whisks up the sand from the plains and drops it in showers of fine penetrating dust on the rear coaches. In this portion of Bechuanaland is situated the Monarch Gold Mine, which is one of the oldest in South Africa.

Rhodesia

During the long journey across the Karoo, then over the High Veld and low bush desert of Bechuanaland most African travellers look forward with increasing interest to the time when, at the small siding of Ramaquabane, Rhodesia will be entered. This interesting country, which owes its present prosperous condition to the foresight of Cecil Rhodes, includes within its frontiers the Matoppo Hills, the Zambesi River, and the Victoria Falls, which during full river season rival the far-famed Niagara.

Shortly after crossing the boundary distant views of the Matoppo may be obtained, but the low bush veld continues. Manyalala Hill, about 60 miles from Bulawayo, was the scene of a fight between British troops under Major Gould Adam and the Matibili during the rising of 1893.

A remarkable example of the revolution effected by the railway line is afforded in Bulawayo, the capital of Matabililand, and

the chief commercial town of Southern Rhodesia, which, less than forty years ago, was the site of the Kraal of Lobengula, and to-day is a flourishing town of nearly 8,300 white inhabitants, possessing several fine hotels, clubs and shops, with broad avenues and streets. (See *Rhodesia*).

Cape Province

Between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, on the south-east coast of this province, there are, both inland and on the coast, many towns and villages, such as Caledon, Bredasdorp, Swellendam, Heidelberg, Riversdale, and Mossel Bay. The lands in these districts are occupied as farms, vineyards, orchards, tobacco plantations, pastures for sheep, cattle, horses and angora goats, and ostrich enclosures. From Mossel Bay and Knysna to near Humansdorp the country is well wooded, the forests running for a distance of 170 miles, with a varying depth of from 10 to 20 miles from the sea. This is the



PIETERMARITZBURG, NATAL, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

*Photo, South African Government***POTCHEFSTROOM, TRANSVAAL, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA**

principal timber-producing district in the Province. The main trade is in timber for engineering and wagon-building purposes. The soil is generally poor for farming without artificial fertilisers, but there is a plentiful rainfall. There is a large number of indigent white wood-cutters at Knysna, where gold has also been discovered.

Behind these towns and amidst another range of mountains lie the fertile districts of Ladismith and Oudtshoorn. The town of Oudtshoorn has a population of about 11,000. It is connected with Port Elizabeth by a branch railway 154 miles in length. Throughout this district there is an extensive system of irrigation. The chief industries are ostrich farming and lucerne and tobacco growing, a considerable amount of the latter commodity being exported to other parts of South Africa. Fruits of many kinds are also largely grown and there are several small vineyards. This is one of the best districts in South Africa.

Port Elizabeth

This important town lies about 460 miles east of the Cape of Good Hope, and is one

of the principal commercial towns in the Union. It has a population of about 44,900. It is connected by rail as well as by regular steamboat service with Cape Town. Near Port Elizabeth are the pretty towns of Uitenhage, Humansdorp and Jansenville, which are surrounded by fine agricultural and pastoral districts. Grahamstown (population 15,300) is most pleasantly situated at an elevation of 1,760 ft. above sea-level, and is well laid out with broad avenues of trees and gardens. It is the metropolis of the eastern district of the Cape Province, the air being more bracing than on the coast. East London, which has a population of about 31,000, lies at the mouth of the Buffalo River, and possesses a fine harbour. It is the centre of a good agricultural and pastoral district. Connected with East London are the coal mines of Cyphergat, and others in the Great Stormberg Range (205 miles distant) and the Indive mines.

Pondoland, which joins the Cape Province to Natal, is almost entirely a native country. With a population of over 200,000, only some 1,200 are whites. The principal products are mealies, Kafir corn, cattle, sheep and goats.



MOSEL BAY, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA



OUDTSHOORN, CAPE PROVINCE, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

Photos, South African R'y.

Although in the divisions of Piquetberg and Clanwilliam there is some agricultural and pastoral activity, this portion of the Cape Province is mostly occupied by the sparsely populated Namaqualand. Near Ookiep in the north-west corner there are some copper mines of considerable value, but they are situated in an otherwise barren country, which adjoins the Mandatory Territory of South-West Africa (*q.v.*).

Province of the Orange Free State

This small province has an area of only 49,650 square miles and a population of about 628,827, of which over 202,900 are white. Although agriculture and cattle-breeding form the chief industries, there are several districts which give promise of mineral wealth. Near Highbury, in the Fauresmith District, are the Jagersfontein

and Koffyfontein diamond fields; and it has long been known that coal, gold, and diamonds exist in various parts of the country, especially around Lindley.

Adjoining this province is Basutoland, which has an area of about 10,000 square miles, and contains, besides considerable unexploited mineral wealth, some of the most beautiful mountain scenery on the continent. The Drakensberg Mountains, which form the eastern frontier, may be termed the Alps of South Africa.

The climate and soil of this province vary considerably. The Eastern districts are the best watered, and the climate is moist, but the winter is often exceedingly severe. The Western districts suffer from a very dry climate, the rainfall being both slight and uncertain. The heat in the summer months of December to March is great, especially in the Central and Western divisions, the thermometer at Bloemfontein, which is 4,500 ft.



Official Photograph,

A NATIVE HUT NEAR THE VICTORIA FALLS
An example of the work of Native Thatchers

South African Government

above sea-level, sometimes registering 100 degrees in the shade. The cold in winter is often very severe, and exceedingly trying changes of temperature are experienced in autumn and spring. The winters are bright, clear and practically rainless, the days being warm and pleasant and the nights frosty. The climate may be considered generally healthy, especially in the rural districts. The Bloemfontein District, owing to its altitude and dry atmosphere, is well adapted for consumptives. There are no low-lying unhealthy areas, but the rainfall in the West and South-West districts is very slight, and droughts are often severe.

Agriculture is one of the main industries of this province, and maize, wheat, oats and barley are largely grown. There is also a considerable number of orchards.

In the Western districts the soil is quite as fertile as in the East, but irrigation is wanted for the crops. On some farms there are natural springs, providing sufficient water for a limited crop. Where there is no spring, surface water is caught, where possible, in a dam. Some of these dams are of very large proportions; they are made of earth, and have a very primitive lining of stone. But without rain they are of no use, and it is no unusual occurrence that they do not get filled for one or two years after completion. Once filled, however, it is astonishing what an amount of fruit, cereals, and even grapes, such plots can produce. In some districts, especially in the south and south-east, locusts are very destructive.

Stock farming is largely carried on, especially in the Western and Central Divisions. There are nearly 10,000,000 sheep, 1,500,000 cattle, 500,000 angora goats, 250,000 horses and 10,000 ostriches in this province of the Union. The dairy industry is also a growing one, and creameries have been established in many places.

The Province of the Orange Free State is divided into twenty-four districts, each having its own resident magistrate, who deals with all local matters.

Bloemfontein

The capital of the Province of the Orange Free State is situated about 750 miles from Cape Town. It has a population of about 50,000, with 22,700 whites. It is a well laid out city possessing several fine buildings, among which must be mentioned the noted Raadzaal, or (provincial) Legislative Chamber, which is surrounded by twenty-four Corinthian columns, and is surmounted by a carved dome.

The position of Bloemfontein on the open veld gives it a very pleasant aspect, especially when seen from a distance, and the climate is very dry, healthy, and thoroughly suitable for Europeans. The principal thoroughfares are Maitland Street and Market Square. In the former there is a fine statue of Sir John Brand, who was for many years President of the Orange Free State.

There are millions of acres of land suitable for agriculture and stock-breeding in all the



Photo, South African Government

HARRISMITH, ORANGE FREE STATE, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

provinces of the Union, and the rapid advance of scientific methods of irrigation and dry farming will eventually open to these industries some of the drier plains of the whole country. In addition, there are the diamond and gold fields and extensive coal deposits, which form the dormant wealth of United South Africa.

Province of the Transvaal

This province, which has an area of 110,500 square miles and a population of over 2,087,636, of which only about 608,700 are whites, is a little smaller than the United Kingdom. It is for the most part a vast tableland, occupying the highest altitude south of the Limpopo. The prevailing conformation is that of great rolling plains. The High Veld ranges from about 4,000 ft. to 5,700 ft. above sea-level, the Bush Veld from 2,000 ft. to nearly 4,000 ft., and, in addition, there is the Low Country, which is unhealthy. In no part of this province is water plentiful, and trees are scarce in the best agricultural districts, except in the immediate vicinity of towns or farmhouses. In the north and east, however, the country is thickly covered with scrubby bush, and there are large plantations of fir trees and gums around Johannesburg.

The Witwatersrand

"The Rand" is the narrow rocky ridge, rising above the surrounding country, and containing the great gold basin of conglomerate reefs, which extends, roughly, for 40 miles from Krugersdorp in the west to Springs in the east, and has the town of Johannesburg as its centre. The whole strip is covered with a chain of mines and mining villages, connected by a good high road and by the railway running to Klerksdorp in one direction, and to Springs in another. The estimated population of this strip of country is about 500,000, of whom over 300,000 are coloured.

The "dead patches" cause the mines at present in operation to spread irregularly over a smaller area, and practically without formation. Here are situated many of the famous Rand Mines, of which there are between thirty and forty. The average annual production of gold in the Transvaal, taken over twenty years, is approximately

30 millions sterling, but during the years since the Great War the annual output has greatly exceeded these figures, and the total output from the South African mines up to 1929 is estimated at 1,000 millions sterling.

Gold was first discovered in the Transvaal in 1884 by the brothers Struben, who began mining operations on what was called the "Confidence Reef." It was not until a year later that the metal was discovered in "banket," or main conglomerate reefs, from which many of the smaller and less valuable reefs offshoot. The financial pioneers of the gold mining industry of the Rand were J. B. Robinson, W. Knight, Colonel Ferriera, and Cecil J. Rhodes, who were instrumental in the flotation of many of the great mining corporations. There are now many thousand stamps at work milling the ore, and for nearly 30 miles the head-gear, shafts, heaps of "tailings," or *débris*, and the many other unsightly edifices of the mining industry, disfigure the country for miles around. Over 190,000 natives and 21,000 Europeans are employed in the gold mining industry.

Johannesburg relies almost entirely on the continued success of the gold-mining industry; therefore it is only natural that the question should be often asked, how long, under reasonably successful conditions, will these reefs last? In all mining there is a degree of hazard, especially when the ore is not in "banket," but such investigations have now been made, with the experience of years as additional evidence of accuracy, as to make it fairly certain that fifty years' working will not thoroughly exhaust the already known deposits, estimated to value 1,500 millions sterling. The estimated annual value of the gold production of the world averages 83 millions sterling, of which the Province of the Transvaal alone produces 51.8 per cent.!

Should the mining industry continue successful for the next half-century, as there is every reason to suppose, notwithstanding the deep-levels at which operations are now being carried on, not only is it probable that as the gold-fields of the Transvaal eclipsed those of California and Australia, so will new regions of even surpassing value be found, but the continued prosperity will call into being an increased population, manufacturing industries and new cities, which will require to be fed, and the country will



IN THE DRAKENSBERG MOUNTAINS, NATAL



DUNDEE, NATAL, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Main Street

Photo, South African Government

consequently then enter upon its years of agricultural prosperity, when the soil of small nations has been impoverished by cropping.

Johannesburg

The chief city of the Rand, which now has a population of over 300,000, of whom 170,800 are Europeans, was founded in 1886, but consisted for many years of tumble-down wooden shanties, intersected by the "tailings" from the mines, which, at that time, were nearly all open workings spread far out over the veld. Thousands of prospectors cut up the country all around in their endeavours to strike "paying-ore," and nearly every avenue of shanties possessed a well, from which muddy water for drinking purposes was drawn and conveyed about the town in barrels.

In the early days the only way of getting from the sea-coast was by coach, which not only frequently overturned in some swollen drift, but often broke down on the open veld. It is a curious fact that the coach which broke down most often was, for many years, the most expensive vehicle to travel by, as it was drawn by eight horses and termed "the express."

The collapse of gold-mining securities in 1889, which was followed by a rapid decline in all South African stocks, caused thousands to leave the city, but from that date Johannesburg has slowly gained in prosperity until to-day it is the commercial and industrial metropolis of Central South Africa.

The municipal area of the city at the present time is just under 85 square miles, but this includes the outlying districts and many of the mines. The reason for the incorporation of nearly all the suburbs was to insure unity of administration, means of communication, sanitary systems, and also to ameliorate the condition of the congested areas by providing a cheap tramway service which now enables the poorer classes to live further out from the commercial centre. There are 250 miles of streets, an extensive tramway net, a water supply which delivers 9,000,000 gallons a day, and the whole city is lighted by electricity. The rateable value now exceeds £58,000,000.

The chief business thoroughfares are Eloff Street, Rissik Street, and Commissioner

Street, in which many of the buildings are constructed on the American steel-girder principle, with five and six storeys. One of the finest buildings in Johannesburg is the Stock Exchange, in Marshall Street. The foundation stone of this magnificent structure was laid by Lord Milner in 1903, and the membership now numbers over 500.

There are many good clubs, such as the Rand, the Goldfields, the Athenaeum (Military and Transvaal Civil Service), New and Catholic. There were also several German clubs previous to the Great European War of 1914. This subject must not be left without mentioning the Johannesburg Y.M.C.A., which has an exceptionally large number of members, as it is run on thoroughly popular lines. There are also many churches, schools and theatres.

The most popular places of amusement are race-courses at Turffontein and Auckland Park, where meetings are very frequently held. The cosmopolitan society of Africa's industrial and gold-mining capital delight in the excitement of the turf, and it is surprising what heavy sums of money change hands at these meetings, especially if they are organised by the South African Turf Club. It is an interesting fact that, wherever Britons congregate in numbers, a race, golf, football, cricket, or polo ground is established, and soon becomes the centre of a good sporting circle, among which may be found some of all that is best in British masculine society.

The Transvaal Chamber of Mines is another very useful institution situated in Johannesburg. It supplies, besides many other things, an admirable report of the gold output, which is published in newspapers throughout the Empire.

Mention must be made of the Public Library, and the various newspapers, which have a large circulation not only in this city but throughout the Transvaal and the whole of South Africa. The library, which is fortunate in receiving a grant not only from the Government, but also from the Municipality, is one of the finest and best equipped institutions in the city. A special feature is that when two volumes are borrowed by the same person, one must be of an educational character. There is also an exceptionally fine Country Club, with a swimming pool, golf course, tennis courts, and fine club

house. This club is one of the best of its kind in the British Empire.

Another favourite resort of motorists is the Vaal River at Vereeniging, 45 miles by rail south of Johannesburg, and 40 miles by road. This river, since the erection of the Rand Water Board Barrage, has become a controlled waterway for over 40 miles, with an average width of 600 feet. The whole distance is available for boating and fishing,

The principal newspapers, in addition to the well-known *Cape Times*, are the *Leader*, which passed through troublous times before the Boer War, several of its editors being compelled to hasten across the frontier into British territory because of their fearless criticism (this journal now has a foremost place among the dailies and weeklies of South Africa); the *Star*, which makes a special feature of its weekly edition, pro-



A VIEW OF JOHANNESBURG FROM A MINE "DUMP"

The gold deposits of the Rand are estimated to value £1,500,000,000

and a fine fleet of rowing and sailing boats, together with several motor launches, gives opportunity for pleasurable sport and pastime. The river is very popular with holiday makers and campers. The Barrage that holds back the flood waters of the Vaal River is eighteen miles down stream from Vereeniging. It took six years to complete, and was opened by H.R.H. Prince Arthur of Connaught in 1923, its cost being £1,525,000. The volume of water impounded by the Barrage is 13,500,000,000 gallons.

fusely illustrated with magnificent photographs of South African scenery and topical events; the *Rand Daily Mail*, a brightly written journal with an excellent news service; and the *Transvaal Review*, one of the principal weekly journals in Africa.

There are 2,000 factories in Johannesburg producing goods to the value of £30 millions a year and paying nearly £9 millions in wages.

One of the chief drawbacks to Johannesburg is the three months of cold weather,

during which time pneumonia is somewhat prevalent, owing principally to the cold night winds and to the fact that many people come straight to this city from the hot plains north of the Zambesi and other warm climates. The natives unfortunately, have very primitive ideas of hygiene, which makes the work of sanitation most difficult. This has been the case, not only in many parts of Africa, but also in Brazil, and other countries, where the difficulty has been met by the formation of a powerful sanitary board which enjoys very arbitrary powers. Much has, however, been done to remedy these defects, and, although there is still room for improvement, this city may now be considered thoroughly healthy.

Johannesburg was the intended rendezvous of the Jameson raid. Arms had been distributed among the British colonials, who were known as Uitlanders, and it was planned that a rising should first be started there. Dr. Jameson (later Sir Starr Jameson) with his small force of Bechuanaland Police should then cross the frontier from Mafeking and Pitsani and join hands with Johannesburg; but the premature advance of the troops under the popular "Dr. Jim" enabled the Boer Government to turn their full attention to throwing a line of defence across the route into the Transvaal, with the result that, before the revolution had taken place in Johannesburg, Jameson's force was confronted by large commandos of Boers and forced to capitulate at Doornkop. The loyalists in Johannesburg were prevented from rising by the Krüger Government holding Dr. Jameson, Colonel Rhodes, and many others, whose lives depended upon the tranquility of the golden city.

Pretoria

Some thirty miles north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the Administrative Capital of United South Africa, which has a population of just under 64,250, three-quarters of whom are whites. The growth of this city has been due, principally, to its political position, and, although it is not nearly such a fine or large city as Johannesburg, it is, nevertheless, decidedly more picturesque, being plentifully supplied with trees and fine buildings, and situated in the centre of an amphitheatre of hills.

Among the most popular sights of Pretoria is the Wonderboom, with its giant trees, Robert's Heights, a most picturesque open-air swimming bath, a Zoological Gardens, a racecourse and five good clubs. There are many fine streets and buildings, which are nearly all of solid structure. Within easy reach of the capital there are several places of interest, such as Middelburg, to which the Boer Government retired when compelled to leave the capital by the British advance; the miniature rapids on the Crocodile River; Romaati Falls, and the Premier Mine, which is the leading diamond mine in the Transvaal.

The principal town of the West Rand is Krügersdorp, near to which is situated the famous Doornkop, the scene not only of "Dr. Jim's" surrender, but also of the victory of the British Left under General Sir Ian Hamilton. Around this healthy and well laid out town of rapidly increasing dimensions are situated the mines of the French Rand.

This portion of the Transvaal offers special attractions to the ordinary traveller, as there are many picturesque localities in the surrounding country, and the climate is very healthy, there being a noticeable absence of the strong winds and accompanying dust storms which are such unpleasant features in many other portions of South Africa.

The average temperature in the Transvaal varies not only with the seasons and time of day, but also with the altitude. On the High Veld there is always a severe drop in the temperature during the night. At Barberton, the chief town of the De Kaap Valley, prettily situated at an altitude of 2,800 feet above sea-level, the mean shade temperature at midday during the summer months ranges from 85 to 90 deg. F. In winter it varies between 60 and 70 deg. F. At Ermelo, one of the healthiest districts in the Transvaal, and 4,500-6,000 ft. above sea-level, the highest temperature is about 90 deg. F. and the lowest 17 deg. F. At Piet Retief, which adjoins Swaziland, the thermometer registers 94 on the hottest days and only 29 on the coldest. The variation at Potchefstroom, which is about 4,500 ft. above sea-level, ranges from 95 to 21 deg., with an annual mean of 63 deg.

The Province of Natal

No part of South Africa can compare for beauty of scenery and healthiness of climate with the garden Province of Natal, which has an area of 35,285 square miles, a white population of about 160,000, and a coloured population of approximately 1,150,000. Although the coast lands are covered with semi-tropical vegetation, and, in parts, bear a certain resemblance to islands in the Caribbean Sea, tropical fevers are almost

from the Rand, or the diamonds from Kimberley would, however, in a very few years, be sufficient to purchase all the remaining uncultivated land in the whole of this territory.

The story of Natal forms a most romantic chapter in the annals of Empire. Not until the end of the seventeenth century was Natal first visited by men of English birth, these being a party of shipwrecked mariners who made their painful way there on foot from the shores of Delagoa Bay. Later,



CHURCH SQUARE, PRETORIA

unknown. Natal is one of the few countries which can boast of possessing luxurious growth and a warm coast climate without the usual attendant disadvantage of an unhealthy season.

The magnificent scenery in the Drakensberg and Quathlaniba Mountains, which form the boundaries of this Province, is proverbial throughout South Africa. It is said, with much truth, that more grand views may be obtained in a few square miles of Natal than in the whole of the Transvaal or Orange Free State. The value of the gold

various missions were despatched to Natal from the Cape, but not until after the Cape Colony, now the Cape Province of the Union, had been definitely acquired by the British, did the real history of Port Natal as a white settlement begin.

It was just over a century ago—namely, in 1823—that the brig *Salisbury* (from which the picturesque islet in Durban Bay derives its name) set sail from Cape Town for Port Natal. Aboard her was Lieutenant Farewell, an officer of marines, the man whom the people of Durban regard as virtually the

founder of the first European settlement on the coast of Natal.

From the Zulu chieftain, Chaka, of sanguinary memory, whose kraal at that time was situated near Tongaat, Lieut. Farewell obtained the cession of twenty-five miles of the coast line of Natal, with one hundred miles of its hinterland. Returning to the Cape he came back in the following year with a small band of British pioneers to enter into occupation of the ceded territory.

ment and held it for nine days, during which period the whites sought refuge aboard the brig *Hornet*. Scarcely were peace and order fully re-established ere the Dutch flag was hoisted in Natal; later, a British force was despatched from the Cape to re-assert Great Britain's rights, and for some months an armed conflict betwixt Dutch and English was maintained. Of those troublous days the graveyard at Congella provides a grim memento.



LADYSMITH, NATAL, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Murchison Street

Photo, South African Rlys.

Thus was formed the nucleus of the colony of Natal.

For many years thereafter the young settlement had a bitter struggle for existence. Its members endured hardships and faced difficulties and perils common to all who fare forth to the distant places and extend the frontiers of our far-flung Empire.

In 1838 Durban (named "D'Urban" in 1835 after Sir Benjamin D'Urban, at that time Governor of the Cape) was menaced by savages and Europeans alike. Dingaan, who had waded through blood and rapine to the Zulu throne, swept down upon the settle-

In due course reinforcements arrived; a permanent camp was established at the Old Fort, and in the year 1843 Natal was formally and finally proclaimed British Territory.

In 1842, when the depleted British garrison, under Captain Smith was sore pressed by a vastly superior force of the enemy, one, Dick King, a transport rider, volunteered to make his way through the Boer lines and carry news of the British force's dire need for succour to the nearest military post—Grahamstown, Cape Colony. The daring and difficult enterprise was successfully carried through, and the memory



THE TOWN HALL, DURBAN, NATAL

of King's ride of 600 miles through difficult and in places almost impassable country, and moreover country that was beset with the spies and scouts of the enemy, and full of wild animals, will ever hold a foremost place in local history. King, weary almost unto death, struggled into Grahamstown on the tenth day, and a month later H.M.S. *Southampton* reached Durban Bay with reinforcements, and the siege of the British camp was raised. An equestrian statue to the memory of Dick King, erected on the Esplanade, at the foot of Gardiner Street, commemorates this epic of Natal, while King's Hall, in Aliwal Street, is another tribute to the gallant transport rider's memory.*

Durban

The most important city in Natal is Durban, which has a white population of 70,402, a coloured and native population of 53,950, and, in addition, an Asiatic population (mostly Indian) of 57,309. It is a favourite winter sea-side resort of well-to-do residents in all parts of South Africa, and the chief seaport on the south-east coast. The harbour has been deepened sufficiently to allow the magnificent liners of the Union Castle Co. to lie alongside the quays, which are over two miles in length. The waterside warehouses occupy many acres, and the average annual number of ships which enter this port is approximately 800.

Durban is composed of three distinct quarters. That part of the city known as "The Point" includes the harbour and shipping area, the centre is formed by the commercial and business thoroughfares, and the low hills in the background, called "Berea," are the residential district. The bluff, which forms the extremity of the bay, is several hundred feet high. A lighthouse has been built on this eminence, and its welcome light may be seen on clear nights for a distance of over 20 miles.

The general *ensemble*, as the vessel crosses the bar, which not many years ago prevented ocean liners from approaching Durban, is not very striking, but when the town is entered it does not take long to discover that Durban is one of the most pleasant cities

in South Africa. The streets are broad and well-kept, and many of the buildings, such as the offices of the Government Railways, the Town Hall, and the Durban Club, are really magnificent. There is a good electric tramway service, and, although the sizes of the buildings in the chief thoroughfares are somewhat irregular, the appearance of the whole town is gay and lively when compared with sleepy Pretoria or busy Johannesburg.

Durban is a pleasure resort. This becomes apparent almost directly the town is entered. The natives are dressed in clean suits, and numerous jinrickshas with white and coloured hoods, drawn by native "boys," give the streets a more picturesque aspect than is to be found in any other city in South Africa. The Victoria Embankment, on which is situated the fine building of the Durban Club, is a handsome promenade; but perhaps the prettiest spot is the Botanical Gardens. The warm climate of Durban enables tropical flowers and trees to be grown in profusion, which adds considerably to the charm of the town. There are two race-courses, Greyville and Clairwood; the Durban Country Club, with an excellent golf course; the very interesting Indian and Native markets; an excellent municipal Library containing over 50,000 volumes; and a beach open-air swimming bath and children's pool. This place is a veritable paradise for bathers and surf riders.

The favourable climate of the coast of Natal is principally caused by the warm Mozambique currents, and the hot sun, which is tempered by cool sea breezes. The calm blue waters of Durban Bay make boating and bathing most enjoyable, especially after a long sojourn on the veld. The bay is, however, a busy roadstead, around which are dotted several growing suburbs. The only charge which could be brought against this city—a favourite of Cecil Rhodes—is one of frivolity, when compared with the quiet Anglo-Dutch towns of the interior. It may be termed the Brighton of South Africa.

On the Bluff side of the harbour entrance are the slips to which the whaling ships haul their giant catches. From May to November, approximately, the whaling season extends, and at frequent intervals within that period the carcasses of these marine

* *Durban*. Published by the Durban Publicity Association.



A NATIVE KRAAL, SOMKELE, ZULULAND



INSIDE A ZULU KRAAL, SOMKELE

monsters are landed here and conveyed on railway trucks of special construction to the Whaling Station behind the Bluff. The capture of one or more whales being promptly notified to the public on a board at the Post Office, there is usually a rush to the slips by tram and ferry to see the catch landed.

THE NATIVE PROBLEM

The most difficult problem which must, for many years, be faced by South African Legislators, is the complicated questions affecting the livelihood and status of races and colour.

When considering this problem it must be remembered that, unlike the other British self-governing Dominions, South Africa contains an enormous and increasing coloured population. Not only are the Kafirs, which term, in its broad sense, includes blacks of all tribes, much more in number than the whites, but the Europeans are themselves of different origin. There are, in addition to the British element, Anglo-Dutch of the Transvaal and Orange Free State, Anglo-French settlers at the Cape, and Germans on the Rand, besides Malays in the coast ports and thousands of immigrants from India in Natal.

For many years to come the natives must form, as they do now, the labouring classes. Europeans in Africa are generally adverse to all forms of hard manual labour. This is, no doubt, in certain parts, accounted for by the climate; such as in the Zambesi Valley (Rhodesia) where the humidity of the atmosphere, and the prevalence of malaria and fever make violent exertion a danger to health; but even on the central plateau, where the climate is quite suitable for European labour, the roughest work is done by the Kafirs. The farmer, whether he be of British or Dutch origin, expects his land to be tilled by the "boys," and even a European artisan employs a Kafir to carry his tools and act as his assistant. This complete dependence of the white population upon black labour makes any change almost impossible for many years, and, besides the ignorance and contented nature of the blacks, make rapid change undesirable, as they are generally treated with kindness and have more liberty than they have ever known before, although the dislike of the Kafirs by

South Africans tends somewhat to increase the difficulties of Legislation.

The number of natives in Natal, compared with the white population, is larger in proportion than it is in the Cape, Transvaal, or Orange Free State.

In view of the importance of the "Native Problem" as it is called in South Africa, the following extract from an official publication may be of interest:—

"Although the two races come into close contact, no actual fusion between European and native is ever likely to occur. The natives have their own reserves where they can own land, and dwell and multiply in peace and prosperity. In other parts of the country they live among the white people, but yet are segregated as much as possible. They are engaged as labourers for the mines; they are wanted on the farms; they are in demand as domestic servants; but in the majority of towns they live in their own locations, they have their own churches and schools, and they travel on the railways in coaches specially reserved for them, even up to the first class if they desire it.

"What are known in South Africa as 'coloureds' are distinct from the natives. These coloured people are the outcome mostly of an inter-mixture of Europeans and natives in the days when social distinctions in South Africa counted for very little. It is some times hardly possible to determine the genealogical history of certain types, but the Mauritians, Malays and St. Helenans are of a superior strain, and many representatives of these people have attained a degree of culture and refinement that would do credit to any European race. Economically, the coloured people occupy an intermediate position, performing for the most part semi-skilled tasks for which they are paid in higher ratio than the native, who is at present simply a manual labourer. In the Orange Free State and the Transvaal, what is known as the 'colour bar' operates, and the coloured person is distinctly at a disadvantage in the matter of securing even semi-skilled work, but in Natal and the Cape a coloured man is often remunerated at the European scale. The wages of a native, however, are throughout the country distinctly low, but whatever they receive is found to be strictly in accordance with the inexorable law of supply and demand.



ZULU GIRLS

Official Photograph

"As to the franchise, except for about 14,000 natives in the Cape Province who, under an old law relating to educational and property qualifications, have the right to a parliamentary vote, the native races in South Africa are voteless. The coloured people, except in the Cape Province where they have full rights, are similarly situated, although for parliamentary purposes the Mauritian is regarded as a European and votes accordingly.

"During recent years in South Africa there has been a noticeable development along the lines of class consciousness. The natives and coloured people are organising themselves into trade unions and, in the opinion of many thinking South Africans, ere another generation passes they are likely to be in a much stronger position economically, if not politically, than they are to-day."* (See *History of South Africa*.)

* Extract from "Union of South Africa: A Résumé." Issued under the auspices of the Administration of Railways.

Pietermaritzburg

Although only 72 miles from Durban, Pietermaritzburg, the Capital, is elevated 2,200 ft. above sea-level, and enjoys a very healthy climate, entirely devoid of all extremes of heat and cold. It has a population of about 40,000, of whom 20,000 are whites. It is surrounded by green-covered hills and well-wooded country, and is situated in the centre of a most interesting district. Beautiful scenery, waterfalls and rugged mountain peaks, are all within close proximity.

The city itself contains several fine buildings; but still retains much that is Dutch-Colonial in the streets, houses, churches, and population, although there are several good thoroughfares and modern hotels, clubs and shops. It possesses an excellent open-air swimming bath, a mountaineering club, a race-course at Scottsville and the Victoria Club.

The Albert Falls, some few miles from Pietermaritzburg, form one of the beauty

spots of Natal. The waters are churned into foam by the numerous rocks which stem the torrent, and for miles below the falls the rapids rush swiftly on between banks laden with exuberant foliage. The surrounding country is covered with trees, and the moist green forms a pleasing contrast after the dried up appearance of the veld. On the coast lands of Natal, which stretch for about 20 miles inland, are numerous small plantations of sugar-cane, maize and tobacco, which give the country a thoroughly tropical aspect.

Many rivers, waterfalls, and rapids add considerably to the attractiveness of the scenery in this portion of Africa. The Umgeni Falls, and those on the Tugela River, are well worth visiting, especially as they are situated in the vicinity of the theatre of battle during the early stages of the Boer War. Near Chieveley, the headquarters of Buller's Army, is the famous field of Colenso. This rough, broken plain, closed by a ridge of lofty hills, and crossed by the Tugela River, was the scene of the loss of Colonel Long's guns when the earth all around was ploughed up by shells from the Boers on the Tugela Heights. It was here that Lieutenant Roberts was killed while gallantly attempting to extricate the guns which had been advanced too rapidly, and left unsupported in the retirement. Hussars' Hill, Hart's Hill, and the frowning crest of Spion Kop, bring vividly to mind the battles which raged for hours on this historic field.

It is not difficult to understand the mistake which led to the Spion Kop disaster, when this hill is viewed from various positions on the plain. The lofty crest shields from sight the succeeding ridge, which commands it at close range, and from which the Boer guns showered such a hail of shot and shell on to the small exposed summit of Spion Kop. Viewed in the calm light of peace, with no sound save the gentle sighing of the wind, it is difficult to conceive how such an exposed position was held for so long. A short ride, however, reveals the cleft in the circle of Kopjes which surround Ladysmith, through which the relieving army eventually forced its way.

A word here as to the rugged configuration of South African Kopjes may not be out of place. In England many of these hills would

be termed by the multitude mountains, but although the altitude in many cases debars them from any such dignified title, the boulder-strewn slopes make climbing considerably more difficult than many a Scottish or Welsh mountain. The rocky sides, which lead up to the flattened tops of typical South African Kopjes, give them an appearance of barren grandeur, which, however, is altogether unlike the awe inspired by the great giants of the Himalayas. These rugged hills, unsheltered by a single tree, from the crest of which the surrounding country can be dominated by a few guns naturally concealed by the many immense stone boulders, form one of the most effective natural barriers to the advance of a hostile army.

Ladysmith

The most historic town in the whole of South Africa is, undoubtedly, Ladysmith, which held out for 188 days against the Boer army 22,000 strong, and supplied with some of the heaviest guns of long range which had, up to then, been used in land warfare.

It is unnecessary here to catalogue the sights of this famous town, which will live for ever in the annals of British history. Caesar's Camp, Wagon Hill, Gun Hill and Vaal Krantz will all be inspected by the visitor, and few Englishmen will be able to restrain a feeling of pride when they survey the scene of these stirring fights; but all this is now past, and the scenes of war are forgotten. Britain remembers but three things, the bravery of the defenders of her honour, the gallant stand by the people of the Transvaal and Orange Free State, and the great aid lent during the world struggle of more recent times.

Zululand

Forming the north-east portion of Natal are Zululand and Tongaland. The latter country is low and unhealthy, but the former is mountainous and thoroughly suitable for colonisation by British folk. It is a good game country, and many interesting villages of native Kraals are scattered among the bush. The capital, which, during the rule of Cetewayo, was Ulundi, has been removed to Eshowe, a small town with a white population of about 1,000.

The story of the British occupation of Zululand, which took place during the tenure of office of Sir Bartle Frere as Governor of the Cape, is full of incident. The Zulus were at that time the most powerful homogeneous native race south of Lake Tanganyika, and their military organisation under Cetewayo, the grandson of the famous Chaka, caused considerable apprehension in British South Africa.

British agent accredited at Ulundi, the Zulu capital.

Knowing that with native chiefs silence means contempt, Sir Bartle Frere instructed Lord Chelmsford, at that time commanding the British forces in Natal, to invade Zululand and enforce the acceptance of these conditions, which, although necessary, it must in fairness be said, meant the extension of complete British influence over the whole



BATHING AT OCEAN BEACH, DURBAN

The Indian Ocean is warm enough for swimming even in mid-winter

After a period of almost continuous guerilla warfare between the newly-established Boers of the Transvaal and the Zulus, who claimed certain territory then held by the Transvaal Government, it was agreed that the question should be settled by reference to the Governor of the Cape, who gave his decision in favour of the Zulu Kingdom, but imposed the conditions, which were considered necessary, for the safety of Natal and the Transvaal, that Cetewayo's army should be disbanded and a

Zulu Kingdom. The column advanced across the frontier in January, 1879, and the opening engagement was the terrible disaster at Isandlwana,* when a portion of Lord Chelmsford's force was cut to pieces by a Zulu Impi 15,000 strong.

Cetewayo then decided to invade Natal, and advanced on Rorke's Drift near the Buffalo River, but was there checked by

* Near Jager's Drift Station.

100 men of the 24th Regiment under Lieutenants Bromhead and Chard, who fortified the hospital buildings by surrounding them with a parapet of biscuit boxes and mealie bags, and succeeded in holding at bay 4,000 Zulus until relieved by the main body. The Battle of Ulundi, which took place some months later, when the British and Colonial forces had been brought up to a strength of over 4,000, with cavalry, artillery, and a

about 100 deg., but on many days in the year it is over 90 deg. ; the lowest is about 45 deg. in June and July, but it is seldom below 50 deg. at any time, and in November, December, January, February and March it is rarely below 70 deg. The mean temperature of Pietermaritzburg is between 64 deg. and 65 deg., or 4 deg. lower than on the coast, and the temperature sometimes goes down to freezing point. The winter is sunny,



NATIVES GRINDING SNUFF

Photo, South African Government

large number of native allies, completely destroyed Cetewayo's power and established British rule in Zululand, which now forms a portion of the Province of Natal.

CLIMATE.

In Natal there are practically only two seasons, viz., the rainy season, which lasts from September to March, coinciding nearly with summer ; and the dry season, which extends from April to August. At Durban the highest temperature in the shade is

dry and comparatively cool, but the heat in summer is semi-tropical on the coast, the country north of Durban being hotter and drier than Durban itself. The land gradually rises from the coast to a height of more than 5,000 ft., and the climate becomes much more bracing at places like Newcastle, Dundee, Howick, Pinetown, and Estcourt, which are from 1,100 to 4,100 ft. above sea-level. The summers and winters are hot in the day-time, the temperature ranging from 75 deg. to 90 deg. in the shade ; but the nights are

cold, and the temperature on some nights in the winter falls below freezing point. The amount of rainfall in the year varies considerably in different parts. The average rainfall at Pietermaritzburg is 26 to 36 in. The average rainfall at Richmond is 35 to 44 in., and at Newcastle 24 to 41 in. The rainfall at Durban and along the coast is heavier than in the hill country of the interior, being 35 to 45 in. in the year on an

average at Durban, and 30 to 43 in. at Verulam. There are severe thunder storms at times.

bracing, and the centre of the coal industry ; Newcastle, 268 miles north of Durban ; Weenen, connected by rail with Estcourt ; Greytown (altitude 3,416 ft.), 65 miles by rail north-east of Pietermaritzburg, in a good agricultural and pastoral district ; Richmond, 28 miles by rail south-west of Pietermaritzburg, situated in a good dairy district ; Howick, 88 miles from Durban, altitude 3,439 ft. ; Estcourt (altitude 3,833 ft.), with



NATIVES HAIRDRESSING

Photo, South African Government

average at Durban, and 30 to 43 in. at Verulam. There are severe thunder storms at times.

DISTRICTS AND TOWNS.

The principal places in Natal besides Durban and Pietermaritzburg are Verulam, 18 miles by rail north-east of Durban, surrounded by sugar plantations ; Ladysmith, 192 miles, and Dundee, 237 miles by rail north of Durban, Dundee being over 4,000 ft. above sea-level, is healthy and

a fine and dry climate ; Pinetown ; and Vryheid, 54 miles by rail from Dundee. The country surrounding Vryheid is said to contain coal and other minerals, and its resources are opened up by the railway from Dundee ; the temperature ranges from 32 deg. to 101 deg. Zululand has been thrown open for settlement by Europeans on condition of personal residence. Many farms have been allotted on the coast lands for sugar-growing, and others at Eshowe for wattle planting, dairying, and general

farming ; the principal crops at present are sugar and maize.

Education is compulsory in all four provinces of the Union, and schools are provided by the Government, but in many cases a small payment is required from each pupil. There is no State Church in South Africa, and all are equal before the law. The principal denominations are the Dutch Reformed Church, the Church of South Africa, Methodists, Roman Catholics and Presbyterians. The law in force is derived from the Roman Dutch Law amended by Statute ; but the criminal law is much like that in force in Great Britain.

A knowledge of the vernacular Dutch and of native dialects (Kafir and Zulu) is considered essential for all traders and farmers in the interior. In addition to the British Imperial system there are local weights and measures : a *leaguer* equals about 128 imperial gallons ; a *morgen* equals just over 2 English acres ; and a *muid* is equivalent to 3 bushels.

SOUTH AFRICAN HIGH COMMISSION

The Bechuanaland Protectorate does not form a part of the Union of South Africa. It is a Crown possession administered under the High Commission by the Governor-General of the Union of South Africa, who delegates a Commissioner and other officers to carry on the administrative work. There are also three other territories in the heart of South Africa which also come within the jurisdiction of the High Commission. These are (1) the Territory of Basutoland ; (2) the Swaziland Protectorate ; and (3) the Native Reserves in Southern Rhodesia.

The office of High Commissioner for South Africa was combined (first in 1900) with that of the Governor-General of the Union of South Africa, who is also the King's representative in Rhodesia. There are four systems of government in British South Africa : (1) The Union of South Africa, with Responsible Government ; (2) Southern Rhodesia, with a form of Self-Government ; (3) Northern Rhodesia, which is administered as a Crown Colony ; and (4) the Protectorates of Bechuanaland, Basutoland and Swaziland, administered by the High Commissioner. These two Empire States and four small

native Protectorates are, however, all within the jurisdiction of the South African High Commission.

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE.

The administrative headquarters of this territory are at Mafeking (in the north of the Cape Province). It has a total area of 275,000 square miles, exclusive of the *Caprivi Zipfel*, which was attached to the Protectorate for the purposes of administration in 1922. At the census of 1921 the population numbered 152,985, of whom only 1,743 were whites.

Bechuanaland is essentially a native cattle-country, and there are over 500,000 beasts within its confines. There is little agricultural activity owing to the dry climate, but mealies, beans, pumpkins, melons and kafir corn are, however, grown. The territory is regarded, very largely, as a native reserve, the principal tribes are those of the native chiefs Khama, Linchwe, Sebele II, Tshosa, Seboko, and Mathibe. The only white settlements are at Serowe, Francistown, Gaberones and Lobatsi. There is usually a slight excess of revenue over expenditure, both of which are, however, approximately £100,000. The Protectorate is crossed on the way between Mafeking and Rhodesia by both railway and telegraph lines.

BASUTOLAND.

This native territory lies between the Orange Free State and the Natal Province of United South Africa. It has an area of 11,700 square miles, and a population of about 500,000, of whom only 1,600 are Europeans. The administrative headquarters are at Maseru, where there are 400 white people and 2,400 natives. The revenue is approximately £280,000, and the expenditure £260,000 a year.

Unlike Bechuanaland, in which malaria is prevalent during February, March and April, the Territory of Basutoland is well-watered, fertile and healthy. It produces some of the finest grain crops in the whole of South Africa, and the wide expanses of grassland enable the Basutos to rear large herds of cattle. Topographically, the country is rugged, elevated and wild. It is crossed by the Maluti branch of the Drakensberg Mountains. It is administered by a resident Commissioner under the direct control of the



A NATIVE DOCTOR OPERATING ON A PATIENT

Photo, South African Government

High Commissioner. The territory is connected to the South African telegraph and railway systems.

SWAZILAND.

This territory is situated between the Transvaal and Natal Provinces of the Union. It has an area of 6,678 square miles, with a population of 112,951, of whom 2,205 are Europeans. The remainder of the inhabitants are all of the Swazi nation.

This region may be divided for descriptive purposes into three zones : (1) the mountainous west country, which has an average altitude of 4,000 feet ; (2) the central veld, about 2,000 feet above sea-level ; and (3) the low veld, which adjoins the Limbombo Mountains, and seldom reaches 1,000 feet elevation. The whole Protectorate is healthy and well-watered, except the low veld, where malaria is prevalent during certain seasons. It is an excellent country for cattle breeding, and there are over 300,000 beasts on the central veld. During the winter season about half a million sheep are transferred from the

Transvaal to the mountainous area of Swaziland for grazing purposes. Gold and tin are among the minerals being worked, and the country is known to be rich in other ores. Sub-tropical fruits are grown, as well as tobacco, maize, millet, ground-nuts, beans and sweet potatoes. Successful experiments have been made in the cultivation of cotton and tea.

The administrative headquarters are at Mbabane, which is a small European settlement in the mountains, at an altitude of 4,000 feet. It is connected with Carolina by a bi-weekly motor car service (80 miles), and is linked up by telegraph wires, not only with the Transvaal, but also with other settlements in the Protectorate. These are Pigg's Peak, Stegi and Hlatikulu, all of which are district administrative headquarters with small white populations. The only means of communication between these posts and the railway systems of the surrounding Provinces of the Union is by cart, and (for postal packages) by native runner. (See *Government, Finance, Commerce, Industry*, etc.).



RHODESIA

THE country situated immediately to the north of the Transvaal is named after its modern founder, Cecil Rhodes. The total area is 440,000 square miles, and it is, consequently, nearly four times the size of the United Kingdom. The population number 1,882,726, by far the larger portion being natives and Asiatics. Rhodesia extends from the Belgian Congo and Lake Tanganyika in the north to the Limpopo River, on the Transvaal and Bechuanaland frontier, in the south. It has no sea-coast, being divided from the Indian Ocean by some 200-300 miles of Portuguese East African territory, with Angola on the opposite side. The country is divided into two sections: (1) Southern Rhodesia, with Salisbury as the capital; and (2) Northern Rhodesia, with its headquarters at Livingstone. These two territories are divided geographically by the Zambesi River.

Southern Rhodesia is a self-governing State of the British Commonwealth, but Northern Rhodesia is a Crown Colony, and economically, very largely in the hands of the British South Africa Company. The Imperial Government exercises a measure of control, especially over administrative appointments and native affairs, through the South African High Commission (*q.v.*) and by a Governor resident in Salisbury, and one in Livingstone.

EARLY OCCUPATION.

This country was "occupied," in common with the rest of South Africa, many centuries prior to the Christian era. Rhodesia then, historically—or prehistorically—speaking, parts company with the territory to the south, for, while these parts were yet in barbarian bondage, Rhodesia was the home of a civilisation and an industrial activity of world importance, the mere record of which

is full of the strangest romance and fascination.

The earliest occupiers were Bushmen, a small-statured, yellow-skinned tribe, who, it is assumed, spread from Western Europe in some very remote period and became settled in the southern portion of what is now the African continent, about 3,000 years ago, if not before then. Traces of this occupation are to be found in many parts of Rhodesia to-day in the form of rock paintings; the occupation is of interest principally for this reason. These paintings, as may be imagined, mainly illustrated hunting scenes and their domestic sequels, tribal feasts and dancing. This, however, was not the limit of the artist's range, as recent discoveries show. At least nine paintings of the Victoria Falls, appropriately enough, have been located. The clearest depicts five streams of water falling over cliffs, with vapour rising from the base. Evidently the Falls were, much in their present form, familiar to the ancients. Several of these Bushmen paintings are in a surprisingly good state of preservation, and most, if not all, can be reached quite easily from one or other of the various centres of settlement. If the majority are crude, the best of them undoubtedly show no small amount of skill on the part of their creators. The human figures in many instances are drawn with graceful lines and are full of meaning.

It is said that the first authentic reference to any part of South Africa to be found in the records of the past speaks of the period round about 600 B.C. The part of South Africa referred to was, most probably, the Portuguese East Africa, and the Rhodesia of to-day. In any event scientific research and reasonable speculation carry us back much further. On the advent of the white man—



RHODESIAN SCENERY

in the early eighties—old gold workings were found scattered all over Rhodesia, some of them fairly deep, and all of them more or less overgrown with trees and scrub, suggesting that a considerable period of time had elapsed between the cessation of mining operations and the rediscovery of the sites. Responsible engineers, notably Mr. John Hugo Hammond and Mr. Telford Edwards, calculated that these mines had yielded at least £75,000,000 in gold, and concluded, in the absence of evidence of more than an infinitesimal amount of this gold having been used in the country, that the great bulk of it was exported. Eminent European authorities have identified the methods by which the gold was won with the methods of mining followed by the Asiatics. Yet who exactly the miners were, when they mined, where precisely the gold went, and for what it was used, are matters that are shrouded in mystery.

One interesting speculation was that Rhodesia was the land of Ophir, whence Solomon drew his gold. In view of the results of subsequent researches, the claim in this form is untenable, but there seems to be ground for the assumption, now held by many recognised authorities, that though Ophir was not in Rhodesia, its gold did come from Rhodesia. We gather from Biblical records that Ophir was the great *entrepot* of Eastern Asia in the period about 1,000 B.C. The gold taken or stored there was, calculation shows, of the value of many millions of pounds sterling. It is questionable whether any other country than the one to-day known as Rhodesia was at that time capable of supplying gold in anything like such quantity. There is now agreement in determining Ophir to have been in Southern Arabia, in the ancient kingdom of Sheba or Saba. In the days of Ophir the people of Saba enjoyed the monopoly in navigation and trade in the Indian Ocean and along its coasts. These trading expeditions brought them into touch with the gold reefs of Rhodesia—such is the assumption—and, from the presence in the mining area of plants, fruits and trees essentially indigenous to India, it would seem as if the Sabeans worked the mines with Indian labour.

To some extent bound up with Rhodesia's ancient mining industry are the stone quarries, which, on account of the mystery

surrounding their origin, have likewise excited the scientific mind of the world. Controversy as to the builders has given rise to two schools of thought. In the one are those who are convinced that the oldest of the buildings were constructed under the influence of Asiatic culture, if not actually by Asiatics, some time prior to A.D. 600; in the other are those who see no reason to suppose that the builders were other than Bantus, or that the buildings were erected before the fourteenth or fifteenth century, A.D. The supporters of the first theory point conclusively, to the plan of building, methods of construction, character of mural decoration, and the presence of monoliths, carved stone birds, phalli, conical towers, and astragali ingot-mould, which, they point out, present parallels to features common in ancient Eastern Asia. The second body base their contention on the point that no inscriptions have been found, and that none of the glass or pottery unearthed appears to date further back than the thirteenth or fourteenth century, A.D. At any rate, there is agreement in this, that the largest and finest of these buildings, and those richest in contents, are at Zimbabwe, near Victoria, in the south of Southern Rhodesia. None of the other buildings, apparently, were constructed on anything like so elaborate a plan, and most, if not all, were built subsequently to Zimbabwe, while others are frankly of Kafir origin and not more than a century or two old at most. The assumption is that the smaller of the older buildings were forts erected for the purpose of guarding the routes along which the gold was no doubt conveyed from the mines to headquarters, at Zimbabwe. There was a period of Portuguese influence in the country during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, but subsequently the territory lapsed into pure barbarism.

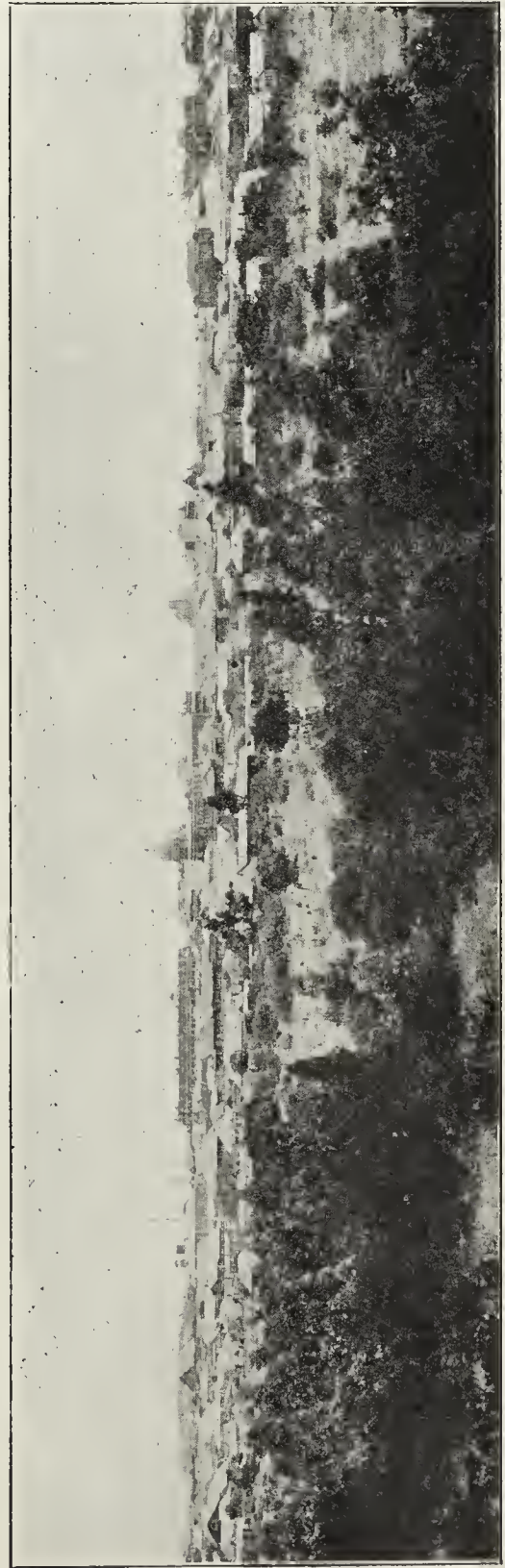
THE BRITISH OCCUPATION.

We now come to the present period of British influence and occupation, which stands out prominently for many reasons, but principally for its association with the great names of David Livingstone, the missionary-explorer, and Cecil John Rhodes, the empire-builder. As in the case of most new countries—and Rhodesia at this time was *terra nova* to the world at large—the



PANORAMIC VIEW OF SALISBURY. Capital of Southern Rhodesia

Photos, British South Africa Co.



PANORAMIC VIEW OF BULAWAYO. The chief commercial centre of Southern Rhodesia

first advance of civilisation was the result of missionary enterprise. A station of the London Missionary Society was opened up on the direct initiative of Livingstone, who himself paid the salary for five years of one of the missionaries. The station was established at Ingate, in Matibililand, in 1860. Rhodesia was then in the hands of the Matibili, an offshoot of the Zulu nation and of the Mashonas. The native chief, Lobengula, claimed kingship over the whole territory. Gradually other mission stations were established, and traders, hunters, and other hardy adventurers began to filter into the country. In the eighties more than one Power had turned its eyes to Matibililand and Mashonaland, and both the Portuguese and the Boers under Krüger endeavoured to conclude treaties with Lobengula. Fearing that the British might thus be anticipated, Mr. Rhodes, then a leading figure in Cape politics, urged Sir Hercules Robinson, the then High Commissioner of South Africa, to make a Treaty with Lobengula. This was negotiated by Mr. J. S. Moffat, the Assistant British Commissioner in Bechuanaland, Lobengula pledging himself thereby not to enter into any correspondence or treaty with any foreign Power or to sell or alienate any part of his territory without the sanction of the High Commissioner. The treaty had only a negative value, and was not of the character that Mr. Rhodes would have liked, but it undoubtedly paved the way for the epoch-making events that followed. On 30th October, in the same year, Lobengula granted a complete and exclusive concession of all mining rights in his territory to a syndicate in which Mr. Rhodes, supported by Mr. Alfred Beit and Mr. C. D. Rudd, was the moving spirit. In combination with other concessions and interests, this (the "Rudd") concession was the basis on which the present British South Africa Company was formed. The Company was granted a Royal Charter on 29th October, 1889, this being the actual commencement of British Government in Rhodesia.

In effect these negotiations had reference only to Mashonaland, which part of the territory the Company proceeded to open up first. For this purpose, Rhodes equipped and dispatched a pioneer expedition from Kimberley. The force reached and camped at Fort Salisbury (which, as the city of

Salisbury, is now the capital of Southern Rhodesia) on 12th September, 1890, without mishap of any kind. Nevertheless, the expedition was fraught with no small amount of danger, and was no light task. Each 12th of September is now observed by the pioneers and their descendants as the Mashonaland Occupation Day; while in honour of the



A NATIVE WITCH DOCTOR

founder of the country and of the men who were associated with him the first consecutive Monday and Tuesday in July are observed as public holidays—the first known as Rhodes' Day, the second as Founders' Day.

The work of establishing a civil administration on British lines was commenced. The first head of this body was Mr. Archibald R. Colquhoun. Mr. Colquhoun was succeeded a year later by Dr. Leander Starr Jameson,



Photo, British South Africa Co.
"THE CORRIDORS OF TIME." The gorge below the Victoria Falls



ON THE ZAMBESI RIVER

Photo, British South Africa Co.

F.W. & J.H. S.

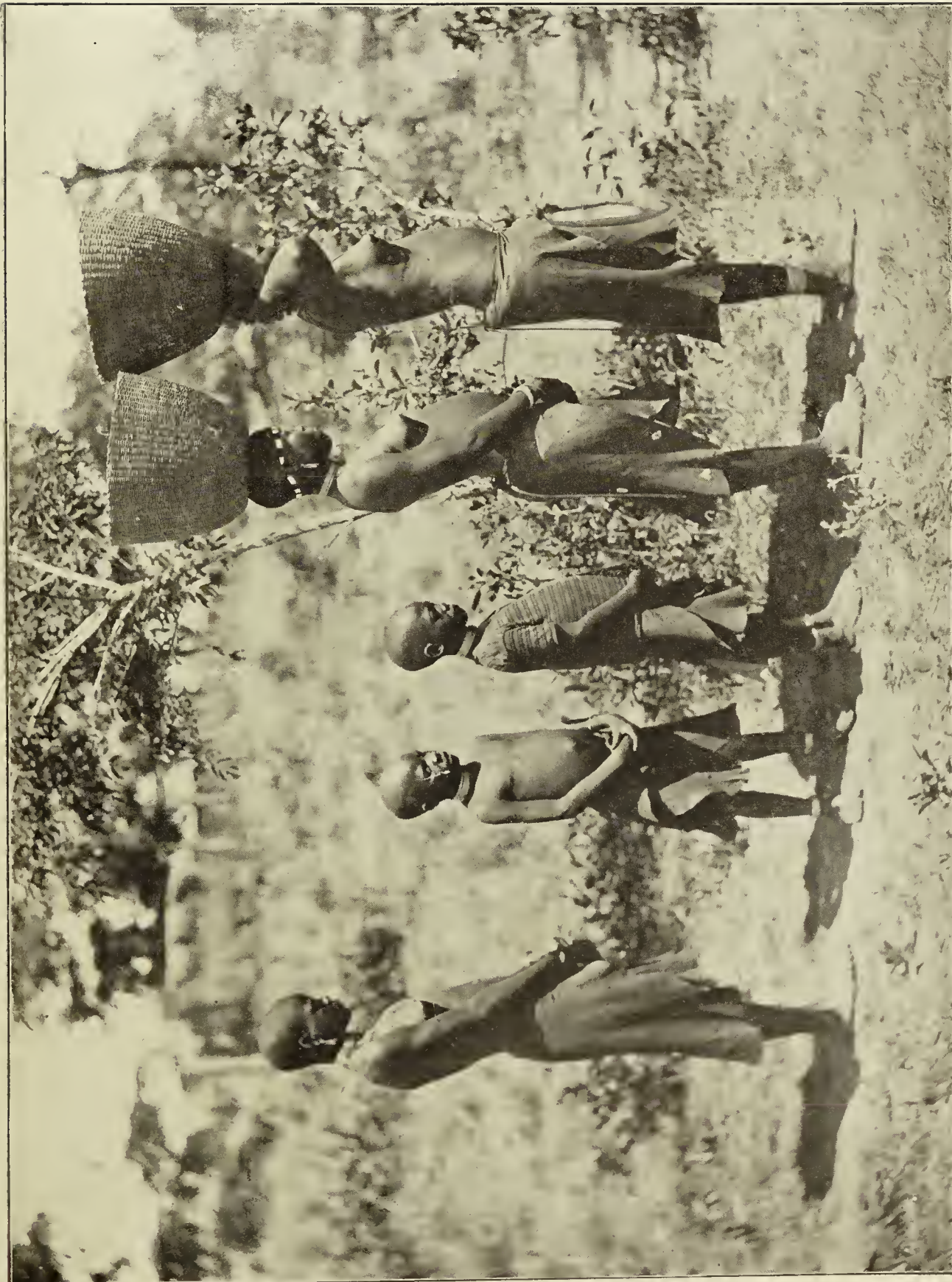


A MATIBILI WARRIOR

Photo, British South Africa Co.



MAIN STREET, BULAWAYO



Official Photograph,

MAKALANGA GIRLS AT ZIMBABWE

The present-day inhabitants of the region of the mysterious city of the past



F.W.SYKES.

THE VICTORIA FALLS

One of the wonders of the world. Discovered by Livingstone in 1856

Photo. British South Africa Co.



Photo, South African Railways

MEMBERS OF A NATIVE BAND GIVING A PERFORMANCE ON WEIRD
MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS



SALISBURY, CAPITAL OF SOUTHERN RHODESIA



REBELLION MEMORIAL, BULAWAYO

who, a close personal friend, had throughout been, and remained to the end, closely identified with Mr. Rhodes in his ideal of British expansion northward. Dr. Jameson became Sir Starr Jameson, and the President of the British South Africa Company; which started with a capital of £1,000,000 sterling, and had in 1920 a capital of £9,000,000, exclusive of debentures. The new colony at the beginning made splendid progress. Telegraphic communication with the outer world, which meant the erection of a line from Salisbury to Mafeking, was opened up, the construction of railways both from Beira and Vryburg was commenced, main roads were cut, and other schemes of settlement were embarked upon. This work was scarcely three years old, however, when the effective existence of the community was seriously threatened by the action of the Matibili, who carried out frequent raids on the Mashonas, now being at peace among the white settlers. The Matabili extended these raids even to the holdings of white settlers on occasions. In the end the High Commissioner authorised Dr. Jameson to proceed as he thought best. The only course open to the Administrator was to go to war with the Matibili.

THE MATIBILI WAR.

Hostilities commenced early in October, 1893, and lasted into January, 1894. They resulted in the apparently complete subjugation of the Matibili, whose forces fled in all directions. Their capital, the present Bulawayo, was entered on 4th November, but by this time Lobengula had taken to flight. He died a natural death near the Zambesi, on 23rd January, 1894. The war, though short and effective from the British point of view, led to one of the most tragic events in British Colonial warfare, in the massacre of a small column of the Company's forces under the command of Major Alan Wilson. This column had proceeded from Bulawayo in pursuit of Lobengula, and had come up with his bodyguard on the banks of the Shangani River. The king's escort, however, was in overwhelming numbers compared with the pursuing body, and, owing to the Shangani suddenly coming down in flood, it was impossible for Major Wilson to fall back on his main support. He was attacked at nightfall, and the whole force wiped out.

"There was no survivor," to use the simple but impressive line that interprets the disaster on the magnificent mausoleum in the Matoppo Hills, near Bulawayo, in which their bodies lie interred, and which Rhodes caused to be raised to their imperishable memory. The tragic event is perpetuated in the Rhodesian calendar, and Shangani Day, 4th December, is a public holiday. The cost of the war, amounting to something like £100,000, devolved on the British South Africa Company. The 4th November is now annually observed by the Matibililand pioneers (members of the force which fought the Matibili) and their descendants as the Matibililand Occupation Day.

THE NATIVE REBELLIONS.

There was a similar, only much more serious, interruption of peaceful development two years later, when the natives broke out in revolt. The Matibili rose first (20th March, 1896), and were followed by the Mashonas on 14th June. At bottom, there is no doubt that this was the effect of the inability of the warlike and masterful Matibili to settle down at once under a peaceful régime, coupled with the baneful influence of the native priests, though there were also many contributory factors. About this time, for example, a cattle scourge, hitherto quite unknown in South Africa—the rinderpest—swept the country from one end to the other. In a desperate endeavour to check its progress, the Government cleared a belt of country of all cattle by shooting them, a procedure which involved native-owned beasts as well as cattle belonging to white settlers. The natives, unhappily, were unable to appreciate the wisdom of the measure, and their feelings were thus quite ready to be worked upon by their priests and others of their own advisers. The rising was characterised by all the ferocity of native warfare. Lonely white settlers were raided in their homesteads in all parts of the country. Brutal murders, massacres and nameless horrors were committed only too frequently. For a time the position was extremely desperate. The local forces, however, were not wanting in pluck or resource, and the upper hand was maintained until the arrival of reinforcements—Imperial troops and others. The rebellion in Matibililand was



SALISBURY FROM THE KOPJE

quelled the same year, the final movement being a memorable "indaba" with the headmen in their Matoppo fastnesses by Rhodes himself, unarmed and unattended by any military force. Certain assurances were given them, and their formal submission was received on the 13th October.

The trouble in Mashonaland extended into the following year, and was not ended until the leader had been killed and his followers decisively defeated (24th July, 1897). In all, the two rebellions lasted sixteen months. They necessitated the placing under arms of every able-bodied man in the country, the employment of Imperial troops, and

BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA POLICE.

In Rhodesia, where the Police Force is the only regular body in the country, it is essential that, in addition to its usual duties of maintaining law and order, it should be in a position to deal effectively with any local disturbances (such as native risings) in their initial stages. For this reason, the training of the B.S.A. Police is still devoted to both military and police duties. A force of this description has proved its efficacy in most young countries. The Cape Mounted Rifles, the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, the Natal Mounted Police and many other corps might be instanced.



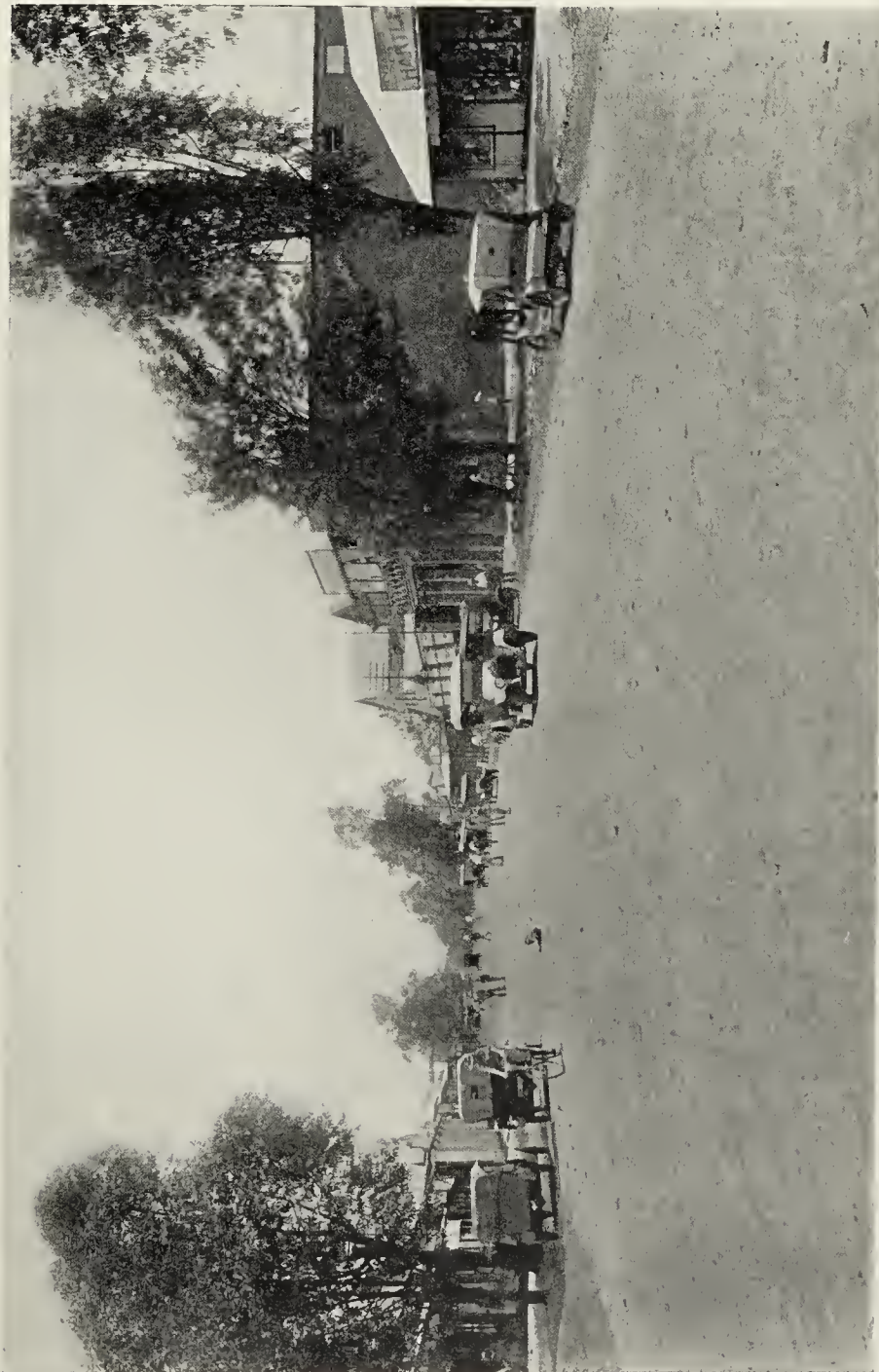
VETERANS OF AFRICAN WARFARE. THE OLD BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA POLICE

resulted in the loss of many valuable lives. On the other hand, instances of sacrifice and heroism were numerous, and form one of the proudest chapters in Rhodesia's short history. Two of these instances came specifically to the notice of the authorities, and had their sequel in the award of the Victoria Cross to Captain R. C. Nesbitt (Mashonaland) and Trooper H. S. Henderson (Matibililand). The cost of these operations, which also devolved on the Company, amounted to over 2½ millions sterling; and, in addition, the sum of £360,000 was paid out in compensation to settlers for the losses they had directly sustained, this being the first time that any Administration in South Africa had assumed financial responsibility for individual losses sustained in native warfare.

At present the strength of the corps is 465 Europeans of all ranks and 871 natives, exclusive of 39 Europeans in the Criminal Investigation Department and 43 natives.

Recruiting for the European branch is mainly from *England*, and the call of the open air life attracts a stamp of man which would be a credit to any Colony. Casualties are large in proportion to the strength, many men leaving each year to take up farming, mining, and tobacco growing in the Colony itself, and for such as remain on this phase is naturally conducive to rapid promotion.

Commissions are given from the ranks by selection, subject to passing a qualifying examination; and examinations are also held for promotions to the various non-commissioned ranks, but candidates cannot



GWELO

sit for these unless recommended by their officers.

On attesting, both town and district police are posted to the depôt in Salisbury, where the latter are instructed in horsemanship, animal management, bayonet fighting, mounted riflemen training, revolver shooting, drill, first aid, and law and police duties. Special care is taken with musketry instruction, and annually large money prizes are given for the best shots in the warrant, non-commissioned and other ranks. The latest tables are fired by the corps, and it has at present a reputation for fine shooting. A proportion of the corps are expert machine gunners. The town police recruit receives such training as fits him for his duties, including the important branch of musketry. On an average, a recruit undergoes a training of five months.

In addition to the training in the depôt, there is another form of more practical work which serves the dual purpose of giving the recruit a sound grounding in the ways of the veld, and at the same time showing the native in his reserves the spectacle of an armed and mobile force. These patrols usually consist of from 50 to 80 men, and are sent out annually and move through various parts of the country accompanied by their own transport. Their itinerary is changed year by year. No better method could be devised to train the recruit in his military duties, and give him that confidence in himself which is the invariable result of practical work.

In so far as the corps is concerned, the country is divided into districts, each under the command of a District Superintendent, either ranking as a Captain or Major, and to these districts recruits are drafted after leaving the depôt. Size and local conditions dictate the sub-division of the districts, and these again are split into sections, in charge of N.C.O.'s, each on his own station. Sections are marked out in areas, a trooper to each, whose duty it is to patrol his particular charge each month.

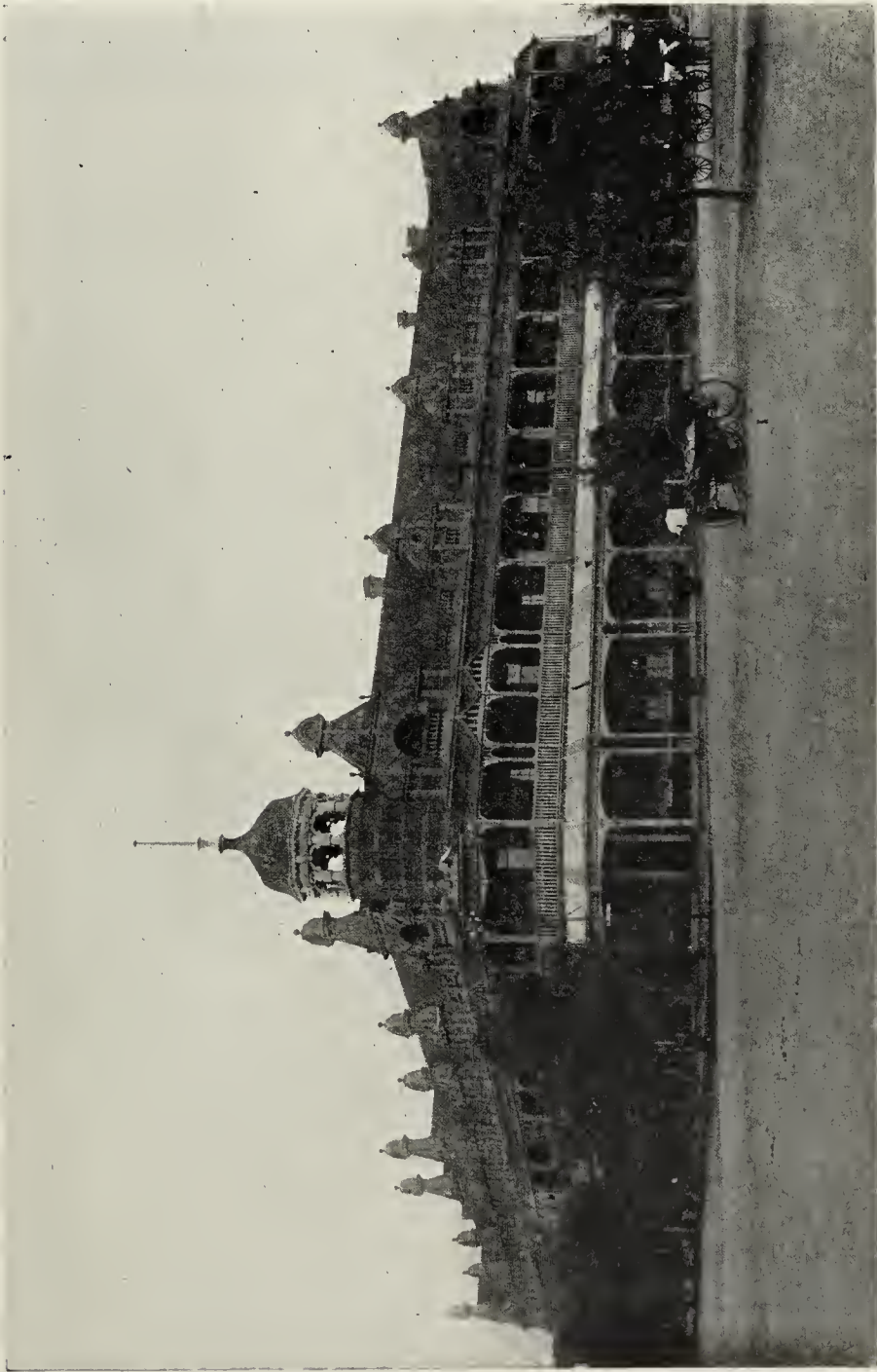
A very small proportion of the total area is occupied by Europeans, and a policeman in the course of his work finds himself in many remote and wild spots, often devoid of water, where the hardihood of man and beast are at times severely taxed. Such a part of the country is the Zambesi Valley, which is

low and hot, and where the tsetse fly forbids the use of horses. Patrols are perforce performed on foot, kit and food being transported by native carriers. Game, from elephant to pig, abounds; and at night, by the camp of the patrolling trooper, the roar of the prowling lion and the harsh snarl of the leopard are by no means infrequent noises.

Crime among Europeans is not a very serious problem to the Police in Southern Rhodesia. The white community is, on the whole, extremely law-abiding—a state of affairs due mainly to the strict immigration laws, which prevent undesirable persons entering the territory and ensures their speedy deportation if they succeed temporarily in evading the surveillance of the Criminal Investigation Department. Fortunately, the Colony is not cursed, to any great extent that is to say, with the habitual criminal. In spite of the fact that specie and bullion is continually being moved from place to place, the number of hold-ups since the country was first colonised, amount to one; and that sole instance, curiously enough, was committed by a policeman!

But in the prevention and detection of crime among natives, the Police are confronted with a problem of some magnitude. The extent of wild and unoccupied country is so vast, the frontiers are so far reaching, and the proportion of police to the natives so small, that great difficulty is experienced at times in bringing the investigation of cases to a successful conclusion. Many laws, applying to natives only, have been introduced from time to time to assist in controlling their movements and tracing their whereabouts. Of these, mention may be made of the Native Pass Laws, which, *inter alia*, compel every native to carry a registered certificate, and also of the finger print regulations.

Natives are proverbially loath to lodge information against each other, unless they themselves have suffered. In a recent case, where over £100 worth of jewellery was stolen, the thief—a native—remained for over a week in a farmer's compound, wearing diamond and sapphire rings on his fingers, and gold bracelets on his wrist. Although a reward had been offered and the "wanted" native was known, not a single native informed either his master or the police.



GRAND HOTEL, BULAWAYO

The multitudinous huts of the larger compounds and kraals, and the wide expanse of bush-covered veld, lend ready and usually undiscoverable concealment to stolen property. Alien natives returning to their countries in the north are, with difficulty, intercepted by the outlying police posts, and find it comparatively easy to cross the extensive

Similarly, if a native loses his registered certificate or applies for a duplicate, this is not given to him until the finger prints have been taken and returned as correct. If the search in the Bureau shows that the applicant is wanted, he can readily be traced from the office where the application for the original, or the duplicate, was made.



Photo, British South Africa Co.

CHIEF KISOMA, LAKE BANGWELO

frontiers. When alien native offenders remain in the country and endeavour to evade arrest, the finger print regulations are of tremendous assistance. These regulations compel an alien native on entering the country to have his finger prints taken before the issue of a registered certificate is made. The finger prints so taken are filed in a central bureau, and the records searched before an issue is made.

In this manner, many hundreds of "wanted" natives are apprehended each year. The problem of systematically and efficiently registering every native in the Colony is yearly growing more difficult, as the increased facilities for learning to read and write allow them to defeat the ends of the Pass Laws with comparative ease.

Although in the less remote areas the assistance of the Criminal Investigation

Department is available when handling important cases, it is no uncommon thing for a trooper of the mounted branch to carry through the investigation of a murder, or other serious crime, from the time when it is reported to when the accused faces the Judge in the High Court. In all cases, except at the High Court, and at Salisbury and Bulawayo, police non-commissioned officers act as Prosecutors, in addition to performing their other duties. The necessary knowledge and ability are acquired by experience; and this system has been found to be quite successful.

Apart from purely police work, that is to say the prevention and detection of crime, patrolling, etc., it is interesting to note the variety and number of extraneous duties which the corps is called upon to perform. Postal Agencies, Pass Officers and Pound Officers are frequently merged into police duties. The inspection of licences, supervision of cattle dips and magazines, issue of cattle permits, compilation of jury lists and voter's rolls, escorts for specie, assistance in the collecting of agricultural and other statistics, are duties which they continually carry out; while the vaccination of natives, the maintenance of small pox and East Coast fever cattle cordons are taken in hand as a matter of course. When the country was invaded recently by locusts, it can fairly be said that the police bore the brunt of the work in dealing with these pests. Gangs of natives under police supervision hurried from swarm to swarm, spraying them with arsenic.

The Town Police and the C.I.D. both form part of the one force. The conditions of service include a first engagement to serve for three years; and the rates of pay vary according to rank and length of service from £150 to £400 a year. There is also a pension and gratuity scheme.

DEVELOPMENT.

Since these "early" days, Rhodesia has travelled far in the way of settlement and progress. When Matibililand was brought within the sphere of the Company's operations (Order-in-Council of the 18th July, 1894), the government of the country was carried out by the Administrator assisted by a Council of four, all nominees of the Chartered Company. To-day, the British South Africa

Company is no longer in authority. There is a duly-constituted Legislative Assembly, with elected representatives of the people.

The railways from Beira and Vryburg not only have reached the capital, but have spread into many parts of the country. There are nearly 2,500 miles of railway, representing about 20 millions sterling of capital, between the coast (Portuguese East Africa), the Frontier of the Belgian Congo and that of the Union of South Africa. The telegraph system has extended even further afield, and is now supported by telephone exchanges in almost every township. There is a fine postal organisation. No district is without medical supervision, and the Government, at great cost, has established hospitals in different parts of the country. Police and volunteer forces have been organised, and represent a high state of efficiency, and an adequate judiciary is at work. A splendid system of education has been built up, reaching into every corner of the land. Supported as this is by an apportionment of the famous Rhodes scholarships, and by a series of scholarships springing from the munificence of the late Mr. Alfred Beit, it is possible for the young Rhodesian to pass at little or no expense to his parents from the elementary school to the English University. No other country in the world is so richly endowed in the matter of scholarships, regard being had to population, and education is provided for a larger proportion of children of school age than in any other Province or State in South Africa. Lastly, there are two already wealthy industries—mining and agriculture—which promise to expand to enormous proportions. The former at present represents a yearly value of over 2½ millions sterling (Southern Rhodesia only); the latter—when its cattle ranches, tobacco plantations, and citrus orchards are fully developed—will easily eclipse this figure.

At the last census the population of Southern Rhodesia was 39,170 whites, and 839,085 natives and Asiatics. The former have since increased at the rate of about 1,000 yearly. They enjoy all the advantages of an enterprising and settled community. They are well catered for commercially, and generally a high standard of living is current. There are churches, museums, public libraries, parks, zoological and other gardens, clubs,

theatres, and, above all, an extremely fine and healthy climate.

No review of Rhodesian affairs would be complete without a reference to the tremendous and irreparable loss which the country sustained on the 26th March, 1902,

buried in the Matoppo Hills he loved so well, simply but in lonely grandeur, in consecrated ground which is the Rhodesian Valhalla of the future, the final and fitting resting place of those who have deserved well of their country.



Photo, British South Africa Co.

NATIVES PREPARING FOOD. "Hulling and winnowing the corn"

by the death of its founder, Cecil John Rhodes. The Empire-builder, unfortunately, did not live long enough to see his cherished schemes completed according to his ideals, but he lived long enough to see them take shape, and long enough to impress the people of the country with his commanding genius and his amazing determination. He lies

Rhodesia, in common with all parts of the British Empire, suffered severely through the loss of men and money during the Great European War of 1914-18. Nearly 6 per cent. of the male adult population fell in this world-wide campaign.

Early in 1914 the Rhodesian Police occupied the Caprivi Concession (see *Bechu-*

analand) ; then the 1st Rhodesian Regiment fought in German South West Africa ; another force from this young Dominion operated with the Belgians on the Rhodesian-Congo-German East-Africa front ; and two additional regiments marched into German East Africa.

In 1923 Rhodesia became a self-governing Dominion.

In October, 1922, a plebiscite was taken in Southern Rhodesia on the question of whether the country should be incorporated in the Union of South Africa or be given Responsible Government. The result was a considerable majority of votes in favour of the latter political future. The decision of the people was carried into effect, and Rhodesia became, on October 1st, 1923, a self-governing state of the Empire. (See *Government of the Empire*).

Northern Rhodesia

Northern Rhodesia is 288,000 square miles in extent and therefore not much smaller than the United Kingdom and France combined. It is now being opened up as a ranching and agricultural, and to some extent as a mining country, though in point of development it is not nearly so advanced as Southern Rhodesia. The territory is bisected from north to south by the Cape-to-Cairo railway, and another line connects Kafue with Salisbury and affords direct communication with Beira and the sea.

The Imperial authorities govern Northern Rhodesia through a Governor who has a resident staff of administrators. Government House and the headquarters of the Administration are at Livingstone, on the Zambesi River (where a weekly newspaper is published), seven miles to the north of the famous Victoria Falls.

It is estimated that the white population numbers about 5,000, and the natives about 1,200,000. Ranching is the predominant industry. Between 1,000,000 and 2,000,000 acres are devoted to the raising of cattle, the number of which approaches 500,000 head ; about 100,000 head are in the possession of white settlers. Except in the matter of maize, which is a staple, and cotton, tobacco, fibre, oilseeds and wheat, agriculture is more or less in an experimental stage, but it is only fair at the same time to

state that sufficient is known to justify the belief that Northern Rhodesia is suited to the growth on a commercial scale of many both " temperate " and " tropical " products. A cotton ginnery, owned by the British South Africa Company, has been installed at Mazabuka.

In parts, Northern Rhodesia is highly mineralised, especially in copper, lead, zinc, coal, gold and mica. Mining activity, in the main, centres in the area around and between Broken Hill and Bwana M'Kubwa.

Southern Rhodesia

Southern Rhodesia, with which this article henceforth mostly deals, is 148,575 square miles in extent, which is two and a half times the size of England and Wales. Previous to the granting of Responsible Government in 1922 it was governed jointly by the British South Africa Company and the people, the latter having control of legislation through their majority in the Legislative Council. The Council was constituted of eighteen members, twelve being elected by the country and six nominated by the Company. There were over 9,000 voters, and each constituency had practically the same voting value. The administration of the territory was in the hands of the Company through the Administrator (whose appointment was sanctioned by the Imperial Government). There was also an Executive Council composed of the heads of Government Departments. The granting of Responsible Government to Southern Rhodesia in 1922-3 has terminated the administrative duties of the Company.

The Royal Charter of the British South Africa Company was granted for an indefinite period, but the Imperial Government reserved to itself the right to add to, alter, or repeal any of its provisions at the end of 25 years, and at the end of every succeeding ten years. The first-named period closed on the 29th October, 1914. When the demand for a change of government made itself manifest in Rhodesia the British South Africa Company made no objection to the limitation of its administrative powers although a ten year period, subsequent to 1914, had not been completed. The granting of self-government to Southern Rhodesia means that the British South Africa Company has ceased to be an

administrative factor in the southern half of the great land which it secured and exploited for the Empire.

Besides being a Company charged with the "good government" of Rhodesia it had, however, great commercial assets in the country, and in the development and realisation of these assets it must continue to wield a considerable influence on the welfare of the whole state for many years after its administrative functions have ceased.

It should be noted that the law of Southern Rhodesia, unlike that of the sister territory

temperatures are 65 deg. and 80 deg. F. The difference is due to the high altitude. The bulk of Southern Rhodesia is a vast plateau lying 3,000 ft. and more above sea-level, and is consequently fit for European occupation without preliminary work. Its climate is not unbearably hot in the long summer months extending from September to April, while it is comparatively warm in the three or four months of so-called winter. The summer and winter seasons are more or less contemporaneous with the rainy and dry seasons, and are usually referred to as such, though actually the days on which rain falls



IN THE FAMOUS SINOIA CAVES

to the north of the Zambesi, is Roman-Dutch law, which is the law of the Union of South Africa also. The revenue and expenditure of Southern Rhodesia average about £1,800,000 and £1,700,000 a year. The Public Debt slightly exceeds £4,100,000 and the imports and exports average £4,800,000 and £5,700,000 a year respectively.

CLIMATE.

Southern Rhodesia has one of the healthiest and most genial climates in the world. Though completely in the tropics it enjoys a temperature at least 15 degs. below that of the sea-coast in the same latitudes. Respectively these average mean

do not average more than seventy in the year. Omitting the very highly favoured district of Melssetter in the South, the average rainfall may be put down at 26 in. per annum. Frosts in the daytime are unknown but are rather frequent at night, especially in the valleys where as many as 6 deg. have been recorded.

SETTLERS.

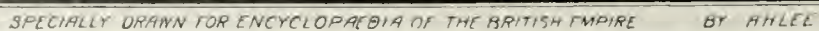
Though essentially what is called a White Man's country, the territory as yet carries comparatively only a small white population. The census taken in 1921 gave the following detailed figures:—whites 37,254, Asiatics 3,248. Some five years later, at the census

taken in 1926, the white population had increased to 39,170. These white settlers, however, admittedly represent only a tithe of the number that Southern Rhodesia can economically support, and will assuredly have when its great resources and exceeding fitness as a place where white people may live and have their being are fully realised and appreciated. A knowledge of these resources is gradually being spread in the United Kingdom and elsewhere, and the authorities confidently look forward to large influxes of population within the next decade. This stream, indeed, has already begun. The few years previous to the hiatus caused by the Great European War saw many new settlers introduced, and placed on the land, at the rate of 3,000 yearly. It is an interesting fact that over 90 per cent. of Southern Rhodesia's population are British born, the greater part hailing from the United Kingdom. Most of those who are immigrants from foreign countries have become naturalised Rhodesians. The Naturalisation Law requires that the settler shall take the oath of allegiance after a minimum residence in the country of twelve months. The franchise is extended to all British subjects after a six months residence as such, on their declaring on oath that they intend to reside permanently in Southern Rhodesia. General elections are provided for every three years. The birthrate is about 27 per 1,000, and the death rate about 13 per 1,000; in England these rates are respectively 25 and 14 per 1,000. The general health of the community is exceptionally good, though it must be admitted that the incidence of sickness from malaria in certain country districts is somewhat heavy. Nevertheless the mortality from malaria and from blackwater fever, which is believed to be a phase of malaria, averages only slightly over 2 per 1,000. And in the opinion of Surgeon-General Gorgas, of the United States Army, who was the head of the astonishingly successful anti-mosquito, anti-malaria campaign which has been waged in the Panama Canal Zone within recent years, and who at the invitation of the Administration visited Southern Rhodesia in 1914, malaria and blackwater fever will disappear from the districts in which they now prevail, when the combative measures against mosquitoes suggested by the authorities are thoroughly

and earnestly carried out. There is little if any malaria in the towns. No district is without medical supervision or hospital facilities.

TOWNS.

Settlement in Southern Rhodesia is fairly evenly distributed, evidence that practically all parts are suitable for occupation. Towns and townships are established in the north, south, east, and west. The principal are the capital Salisbury, Bulawayo, Umtali, Gwelo and Gatcoma; and among the others are Gwanda in the south-west, Victoria and Melssetter in the south-east, Guegue, Umvuma, Selukwe and Enkeldoorn in the midlands, and Hartley, Bindura, Eldorado, Shamva and Marandellas in the north and north-east. In every case they are growing consistently in size and importance. The largest and most influential town is Bulawayo, in Matibililand, which is the headquarters of the Railway Administration, of the Customs, and of most of the great mining and finance companies. Here, also, are the Rhodesian Museum and Government House, the residence of Visiting Directors of the Chartered Company and the guest house for distinguished visitors. Their Royal Highnesses the Duke and Duchess of Connaught resided here during their visit to the country in 1910. The population of Bulawayo is about 8,300 whites. The population of Salisbury, which is in Mashonaland, the eastern province of the territory, is 7,300 whites. The principal Government Offices, with Government House, the residence of the Governor, and Charter House (which was maintained by the British South Africa Company for the same purpose as Government House, Bulawayo), are in Salisbury, together with the Cathedral of the Church of England, and also the offices of several important mining and financial houses. Salisbury and Bulawayo are 301 miles distant from each other, but are connected by a fast and frequent train service. Both towns are conveniently laid out; their streets are wide, well-kept, and well-lighted, and are bordered by many very fine buildings, private as well as public. Among the notable buildings may specially be noted the girls, and boys, high schools, with their handsomely appointed boarding houses. The secondary system of education in Southern Rhodesia is for the most part being centred



in Bulawayo and Salisbury. A daily newspaper is published in each town. Umtali, the easternmost settlement in the territory, is one of the oldest towns, and has railway interests, in the form of engineering shops. It has a small daily newspaper. Gwelo, in the midlands, also an old-established town, is a recognised centre for the sale of cattle and other live-stock, and huge auction sales take place periodically. A creamery has been established there and a newspaper is published weekly. Gatooma is essentially a mining town, and has had a phenomenally rapid growth, the result of the expansion of what is known as the Small Worker industry, which has had such a great influence on Rhodesia's mining industry as a whole. Gatooma is situated between Gwelo and Salisbury. Gue-gue, near Gwelo, is another mining town, but of a totally different character. Whereas Gatooma has been made by the owners of small mines, who are individuals, Gue-gue owes its existence to the owners of big mines, who are companies. Hartley is the official headquarters of a district which includes Gatooma. Unvuma, some distance to the east of Gwelo, is both a mining and ranching centre, having estates of the British South Africa Company ("Rhodesdale") and of Willoughby's Consolidated ("Central Estates") in the vicinity, and the great Falcon and Athens mines (gold and copper) near by. Gwanda, too, may be described as a mining and ranching centre. It is the nearest township to the enormous Mazunga estates of the Liebig Company. Selukwe is a mining and general farming centre, and has chrome iron deposits in the neighbourhood which rank among the most important in the world. Victoria, around which are considerable asbestos deposits, may be similarly described, but it is also of importance by reason of its being the nearest settlement to the Zimbabwe Ruins, and therefore the headquarters of those who visit the celebrated prehistoric relics. Enkeldoorn, Melsetter and Marandellas are essentially general farming centres, as Eldorado, Shamva and Bindura are mining centres. Eldorado and Shamva are sufficiently identified by their names, which are derived from the huge mines around which they have sprung, while Bindura will for some time be better known perhaps as Kimberley Reefs, its old name, being situated near the big mine of that name.

There is good hotel accommodation everywhere. In the larger towns this bears comparison, in points of general convenience and comfort, with that to be found in places in a far more advanced state of development. There are numerous boarding establishments and several women's hostels.

MINING.

To-day, and for some time to come, Southern Rhodesia must be regarded as pre-eminently a mining territory. Nevertheless, it is to ranching and agriculture that it must look for ultimate prosperity. Most minerals are known to occur, the territory being unquestionably highly mineralised. Several ores are being "worked to profit"; gold, silver, coal, chrome iron, lead, copper, asbestos and tungsten, with diamonds and other precious stones; while inasmuch as experienced mining men have pegged and are maintaining if not actually developing aluminium, graphite, iron, antimony, mica and nickel claims, it is evident there is at least some prospect of these minerals also being worked in the early future. Even so, and though many million sterling have been spent already in exploiting these mineral resources, it is doubtful if the territory has yet been more than scratched. Hitherto most prospectors have been content to peg their claims on the sites of "old workings," *i.e.*, the abandoned mines of the Ancient gold seekers of Rhodesia. It is extremely unlikely that the Ancients exhausted the country's resources from a prospector's point of view, yet few have ventured to search for virgin reef. On a very rough calculation, it may be taken that something like 63 millions sterling have been obtained from the gold mines alone since the start of crushing returns in 1898. This gives the average value of the production at about 2 millions sterling per annum from gold alone. In recent years the output has reached over 2½ millions in value. Mining methods at the start, of course, were more or less experimental. They could not be based on experience for the reason that as a Rhodesian industry it was a new industry, while, owing to the diversity in formation, conditions differed from those generally found in other mining countries. Methods are totally different to-day. Knowledge of Rhodesian mining formations and conditions has



BRIDGE OVER THE ZAMBESI—BELOW THE VICTORIA FALLS
A wonderful view of the falls is obtained as the train passes over this lofty structure



PLAN SHOWING OXFORD STREET, LONDON, AS COMPARED WITH THE VICTORIA FALLS



F.W.SYKES.

VICTORIA FALLS

From the edge of Livingstone Island looking towards the North Bank

greatly advanced in recent years. Mining practice is highly skilled and as up-to-date as on any other field.

Mining, except in the matter of diamonds, has been carried on under licence from the British South Africa Company to whom royalties on gross output, ranging from $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. to $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. have been payable; the Diamond rights belong to De Beers Consolidated Mines. In the interests of the industry a Geological Survey has been carried out, and these interests are being further advanced not only by the Government but also by the Company in such ways as the giving of free technical advice, making advances at low rate of interest for the equipment of mines, and exempting outputs under the value of £200 per month from all royalty. These concessions are extended only to individual miners or "small workers," in order to enable them to bring their own properties to the stage where they become good commercial ventures.

AGRICULTURE.

From a farming point of view, the territory has good claims to the public interest. It is a cattle-ranching country which experts are unanimous in saying is second to none in the world; it can grow maize which, in common with that from the rest of South Africa, is in greater demand and fetches higher prices in Europe than maize from any other country; it is growing in quantity tobacco, both Virginian and Turkish, that is fast establishing itself as a tobacco of quality and distinction; and it is laying the foundations of a citrus-fruit industry that promises to extend to great proportions. These are branches of farming enterprise that are in a forward state of development. Much exploitation has taken place in other directions, but progress is not yet so marked. A good start has been made with ostrich farming on a large scale, and on some farms, notably round Gwelo and on the Rhodes Estate at Inyanga, flocks of woolled sheep are doing well; while on most general farms the dairy and the breeding of pigs, to say nothing of poultry, are essential branches of operations.

The following list indicates the products that are now being grown in Southern Rhodesia. Some of them are cultivated on a fairly large scale, such as potatoes, beans and nuts, and others are grown more or less experimentally; wheat, oats, barley, buckwheat, millets, hay, lucerne, onions, potatoes, beetroots, mangolds, pumpkins, ground nuts, many kinds of beans, linseed, cotton, rubber, coffee, tea, broom-corn, hems, sunflower seed, flax, and most kinds of fruits, while many schemes of afforestation are in progress. These are all products that can be profitably marketed in bulk, principally, of course, in



WESTERN CATARACT OF THE VICTORIA FALLS

Rhodesia itself, which, in view of the expansion ahead, must call for supplies in fairly large quantities. There are also markets overseas into which Rhodesians should have no difficulty in introducing certain of their products, among them beef and bacon, of both of which there is a world shortage, maize and tobacco for the best qualities of which there is always a demand, and citrus fruits which Rhodesia can market in Europe when non-African groves are out of season. Both the Government and the British South Africa Company expend a deal of effort and expense in assisting the farming industry as

a whole. Staffs of experts, who give free technical advice, are maintained, and through the Land Bank money may be borrowed for *bona fide* development purposes at a low rate of interest, while farmers enjoy numerous concessions—on the railways and in other directions—which they find of material benefit. Experimental farms are maintained by the Government, and quality of production is stimulated by means of agricultural shows which are a feature of business life in all parts of Southern Rhodesia. The Company has assisted in the general work by connecting producer and consumer, not in the

countries, with its natural phenomena such as the Victoria Falls and Sinoia Caves, and its prehistoric relics such as the Zimbabwe, Inyanga and Khami ruins, and Bushman rock paintings. In the Victoria Falls, which were discovered by Livingstone in 1856, the country has unquestionably a world-wonder that in grandeur and awe-inspiring effect is not to be surpassed anywhere. Livingstone himself described them in the following terms :—

“ It was called by the natives ‘ Mosi-aotunya ’ (smoke sounder there), or more evidently ‘ Shongwe,’ which may mean a seething cauldron. After twenty minutes’ sail in a canoe from Kalai, we came in sight, for the first time, of the [fire] column of vapour appropriately called ‘ smoke ’ rising at a distance of five or six miles, exactly as when large tracts of grass are burned in Africa. The whole scene was extremely beautiful. It had never been seen before by European eyes ; but scenes so lovely must have been gazed upon by angels in their flight. . . . Though we were within a few yards of the spot, I believe that no one could perceive where the vast body of water went ; it seemed to lose itself in the earth, the opposite lip of the fissure into which it disappeared being only 80 ft. distant. At least I did not comprehend it until, creeping with awe to the verge, I peered down into the large rent which had been made from bank to bank of the broad Zambesi, and saw that a stream of a thousand yards broad leaped

down a hundred feet and then became suddenly compressed into a space of 15 or 20 yards. The entire Falls are simply a crack made in a hard basaltic rock from the right to the left bank of the Zambesi, and then prolonged from the left bank away through 30 or 40 miles of hills. On looking down into the fissure on the right of the [Livingstone] island, one sees nothing but a dense white cloud. From this cloud rushed up a great jet of vapour exactly like steam, and it mounted 200 ft. or 300 ft. high ; there, condensing, it changed its line to that of dark smoke, and came back in a



THE GORGE BELOW THE FALLS

form of middleman, but rather as manufacturer. For example, by establishing a creamery at Gwelo it supplied the consumer with Rhodesian butter and cheese, and the dairyman and the general farmer with a cash market for their products. Apart from mining and agriculture, Rhodesia cannot be said to possess any industries of note, beyond perhaps, the engineering departments of the railways and the cement works near Bulawayo.

THE VICTORIA FALLS.

In its places of interest, Rhodesia is one of the most fortunate and most interesting of

constant shower, which soon wetted us to the skin. This shower falls chiefly on the opposite side (south) of the fissure, and a few yards back from the lip there stands a straight hedge of evergreen trees whose leaves are always wet. On the left of the island we have a good view of the mass of water, which causes one of the columns of vapour to ascend, as it leaps quite clear of the rock and forms a thick unbroken fleece all the way to the bottom. Its whiteness gives the idea of snow. As it broke into 'pieces' of water, all rushing on in the same direction, each gave off several rays of foam, exactly as bits of steel, when burnt in oxygen gas, give off rays of sparks. I saw the Falls at low water, and the columns of vapour when five or six miles distant, and the sound is quite distinct somewhat beyond Kalai."

Perhaps the best period of the year for visiting the Victoria Falls is from April to July, but the moods of the Falls are variable. They appeal in different ways at different times. The measurements are: height, 366 ft., width, 5,770 ft. The surroundings are also of uncommon interest—the Rain Forest, the Palm Grove, the Gorge, which is spanned by the highest railway bridge in the world, the "picnic" islands in the upper reaches of the Zambesi, and the trees of mammoth girth. In these days of travel, the Victoria Falls can be visited cheaply, rapidly and in the greatest comfort. There is an excellent hotel quite close to the falls.

ZIMBABWE.

The Zimbabwe are the most interesting and important of all Rhodesia's ruins. When "Great Zimbabwe" was built, by whom it was built, and for what purpose it was built, are questions that the scientific mind of the world has yet to solve. The ruins, at any rate, are the remains of an old city, and, while not comparing with Pompeii in their state of preservation, they are not so far gone in dilapidation as to nonplus the constructive mind of the scientist. Many if not most authorities are inclined to associate Great Zimbabwe with an occupation of Rhodesia which is assumed to go back at least to the

gorgeous times of King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba. It is suggested that there were buildings actually on this site during that period, when, apparently, Rhodesian gold was being exported and traded through the Sabaean emporium of Ophir, but the oldest buildings, the ruins of which are now to be seen, are admittedly of a later date. It is further suggested that Bantus may have been the actual builders, but it is asserted that they worked under Asiatic influence and direction. Thus the Bantus came to have an ingraft of Asiatic culture, which is offered as an explanation of the resemblance



THE MAIN FALLS FROM THE RAIN FOREST

in points of construction and enrichment of other old Rhodesian buildings to those at Great Zimbabwe.

There are distinct evidences that Great Zimbabwe has at various times been the home of enormous populations. Each set of newcomers has, it would seem, found the place in ruins, and has proceeded to reconstruct without clearing away the debris. Consequently, excavation work, of which a good deal has been done, has resulted in the unearthing of both buildings and relics; and the deeper has gone the spade, the older, more ornate, and more valuable have been the discoveries. These go to support the contentions of those who hold what may be

termed the "Ancient" theory as against those who are unable to agree that Great Zimbabwe is older than the thirteenth or fourteenth century, or that it is the work of other than negroids. Amongst the relics unearthed are engraved gold ornaments, carved soapstone bowls, and birds, the oldest forms of gold ingot moulds, and *linga* and *phalli*, respectively the female and male emblems of fertility in Nature Worship, the

height, and, as is the case throughout these ruins, are of dressed granite and uncemented. The Acropolis Ruins were, no doubt, a fort, constructed to all appearances by a people in whom the skill of the architect and engineer was developed in no minor degree. The Valley Ruins remain more or less unexplored. There is accommodation at Great Zimbabwe for tourists who, however, usually make Victoria, 17 miles away, their headquarters.



Photo, British South Africa Co.

THE ELLIPTICAL TEMPLE, ZIMBABWE

like of which are generally to be found on the Mediterranean coasts and islands, in Semitic countries, and very generally in Western India.

There are three sets of ruins : the Elliptical Temple, the Acropolis on Zimbabwe Hill, and the Valley Ruins between the two. In the Temple are to be found a Conical Tower and a little Cone, both *in situ* but not intact. Some of the walls are still over 30 ft. in

height, and, as is the case throughout these ruins, are of dressed granite and uncemented. The Acropolis Ruins were, no doubt, a fort, constructed to all appearances by a people in whom the skill of the architect and engineer was developed in no minor degree. The Valley Ruins remain more or less unexplored. There is accommodation at Great Zimbabwe for tourists who, however, usually make Victoria, 17 miles away, their headquarters.

INYANGA AND KHAMU.

Sparkling in romance almost equally with Zimbabwe, but carrying speculation along a somewhat different groove, are the remains at Inyanga of a past civilisation. It is assumed that the original occupiers of Great Zimbabwe were gold exploiters. The original occupiers

of Inyanga were clearly a people highly skilled in agriculture, horticulture and aboriculture. Inyanga is a wild, mountainous country, rising some 10,000 ft. above sea-level. Many if not most of its hills are terraced off and lined with miles of aqueducts from 16 to 24 in. wide and about 2 ft. deep, which connect the terraces with artificial dams in the mountain streams. Similar terraces it is said are to be seen in Southern Arabia to-day. Among the ruined buildings are a number of stone-lined shelter pits. It is assumed that these Inyanga Mountains were once the site of an

were Bantus who then possessed the "Zimbabwe Culture" in a modified form. The ruins have been not inaptly described as an archaeological half-way house between the ruins representing the best form of Zimbabwe culture and the crudely built and carelessly thrown-up stone ramparts, some of them only a century or two old, which crown many of the kopjes in Rhodesia to-day. Also from Bulawayo may be visited Bushman's Haunt, a few miles away, which in some very remote time was the home of Bushmen, the original occupiers of Rhodesia.



INTERIOR OF THE MAIN TEMPLE, ZIMBABWE

Arab settlement, and from the number of trees of Arabian and Indian origin that are growing wild there it is concluded that the Arabs carried on their agricultural operations with Indian labour. Inyanga is best reached from Rusapi Siding on the Beira-Salisbury main line. One of the well-known Rhodes Estates is situated in the district; it is over 100,000 acres in extent and is devoted to cattle and sheep ranching and to fruit growing.

The Khami Ruins are 14 miles from Bulawayo, and are said to date from early in the tenth century A.D. The builders

Numerous rock paintings are to be seen in the vicinity.

THE MATOPPO HILLS.

Bulawayo is the starting point for a visit into the Matoppos Hills, which few visitors to Rhodesia neglect to make. Apart from the grandeur of the scenery, there is the "World's View," the spot which has been hallowed to the memory of the great man to whose abiding genius the country owes its being. The Matoppos are a mass of compact hills stretching for some 50 miles from east to west, and for about 25 miles to the south. They



FIELD OF VIRGINIA TOBACCO



CARRYING IN TOBACCO



A FIELD OF YOUNG VIRGINIA TOBACCO PLANTS ON A RHODESIAN PLANTATION



A FIELD OF TOBACCO NEARING MATURITY

are full of hoary native tradition; they contain the cave of M'limo, a spirit or ancestral shade of the Karanga nation. They are extremely interesting from a geological point of view, specially prominent in this direction being the phenomenon called the Natural Wall, which runs for a distance of 27 miles, and has all the appearance of having been built by human hands. But the Matoppos have new traditions, and Mr. Rhodes is the centre of them. He lived on the fringe of the Matoppos and frequently penetrated into them. Conceivably he drew inspiration from their lonely grandeur. He now lies buried at "World's View"—the best view in the world, he counted it—and World's View, now consecrated ground, is the future burial place of those who have deserved well of their country. Thus, near to Mr. Rhodes's grave, visitors will notice a Grecian mausoleum of magnificent proportions, in granite. Known as the Shangani Memorial, it encases the bodies of the brave men who lost their lives in the historic Shangani fight against the Matabili in 1894. "There was no survivor." Here also lies buried Sir Starr Jameson, the "Dr. Jim" of African adventure.

The Sinoia Caves are near Eldorado, which is reached by branch line from Salisbury. They are the result of the action of water on a limestone formation. The largest cave is entered at some 20 ft. below the general surface of the ground, and a descending

passage leads to a pool of the most beautifully clear water of a wonderful blue colour, the depth of the water being more than 300 ft. The edge of the pool is 130 ft. below the entrance to the cave. In the various passages are numerous stalactites.

BIG GAME.

The country that can accommodate the seeker after wealth, the sightseer, and the antiquary so lavishly, is also able to afford pleasure to the sportsman, and can do so, as the books of Mr. F. C. Selous and other famous hunters testify, with a "menu" or programme that it is hard to match elsewhere. It has been said many times, and it is every whit a fact, that in the matter of big game Rhodesia is a veritable paradise for sportsmen. Game and carnivora of all kinds abound both north and south of the Zambesi, more so in the northern territory than in the southern, and there are no unreasonable restrictions against hunting it. The game includes the following varieties: bustard (including koorhan and paauw), dikkop, francolin (including pheasant and partridge), guinea fowl, sand grouse (commonly known as Namaqua partridge), bushbuck, hartebeeste (rooi and lichtenstein), impala, lechive, pookoo, roan and sable antelope, sitatunga, tsessibe, water buck, gnu or wildebeeste, klipspringer, buffalo, elephant, eland, black and white rhinoceros, hippopotamus, springbuck, giraffe, gemsbok, inyala, koodoo,



"WORLD'S VIEW," RHODESIA

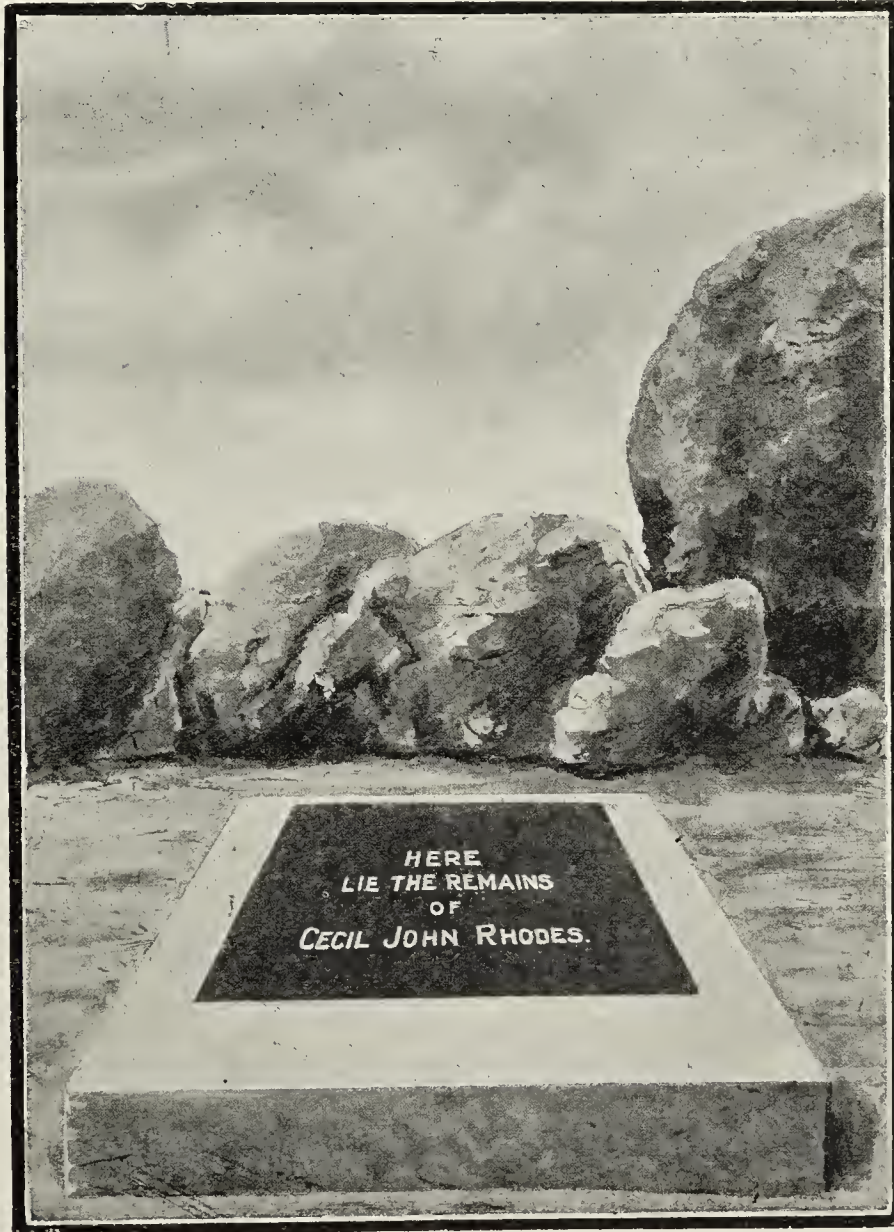


RHODES STATUE, MAIN STREET, BULAWAYO

ostrich, zebra, Burchell zebra or quaggo, duiker, bushpig and warthog.

There are defined seasons in Southern Rhodesia, extending from May to November inclusive, except in certain cases in Hartley District, owing to the prevalence there of

Northern and Southern Rhodesia, and shooting over private land without permission is, of course, prohibited. The best game districts in Southern Rhodesia are: Tuli, Gwanda, Lower Belingwe, Hartley, Wankie, Mafungabusi, Sebungue, Lomagundi, por-



A RESTING-PLACE IN THE MATOPPO HILLS

tsetse fly. In Northern Rhodesia no close time or fence season has been prescribed yet, but the eggs and young of any game must not be removed, disturbed or destroyed without special permission; females with their young are similarly protected. Game sanctuaries have been proclaimed both in

tions of Gwelo, Victoria and Bubi, Lower Mangwe, and North Mazol. In Northern Rhodesia they are: the Batoka Plateau district lying generally north of Victoria Falls and south of the Kafue River valley, of which the Government station of Mapanza may be taken as the central point; the

Kafue River valley, which is, approximately, a belt 50 miles wide, following the river for, roughly, 220 miles of its course west of the railway; the "hook" of the Kafue, which is the area north of the valley outside the great bend of the river; the Njoko country, an area extending some 30 miles north and south, and 20 miles east and west of the confluence of the Njoko and Morobetsi Rivers; and the Zambesi Valley, lying between the Katina-Molilo Rapids and Sinanga; most parts of the north-eastern



Photo, British South Africa Co
A NATIVE WARRIOR OF SOUTH-CENTRAL
AFRICA

province of the territory are "game country." (See also *Big Game Hunting*.)

NATIVES.

The native population of Rhodesia as a whole totals, roughly, 1,842,224, nearly 1,000,000 being resident north of the Zambesi. The predominant tribes are Barotse in Northern Rhodesia (who have their own chief or king), and the Matibili and Mashona in Southern Rhodesia. The Matibili are in

the main an off-shoot of the great Zulu nation; the Mashonas embrace a number of tribes, among them the Karanga, so frequently referred to in Rhodesian history. The State control of the natives is through Native Departments, whose officers act through the chiefs and headmen. The bulk of the natives live on reserves of land that have been specially set apart for them by Government, and, in the opinion of most people, are adequate both for present and future requirements. The Southern Rhodesian reserves are situated in various parts of the country, and number ninety-eight in all, accounting for some 39,000 square miles, or about 25,000,000 acres, which works out at more than 60 acres per male. Very few natives own or rent land, the old commercial system being still general. There are various opinions, naturally, on the subject of the effect on the natives of their contact with civilisation. The balance of these seems to favour the view that on the whole this influence has worked for good. Possibly the native of the present régime (which, it must be remembered, is not a full generation old), does not compare too favourably with the native of pre-civilisation days. On the other hand, industrially he has made great strides. The plough, for instance, has largely replaced the hoe—there are something like 5,200 native-owned ploughs in Matibililand alone,—and some have purchased even corn-crushers, while numbers are improving their stock by using better bulls and rams.

It is of value to contrast all this with the widely-held but antiquated notion that the male natives of Southern Rhodesia do no work at all, and, if left to their own inclinations, lead a lotus-eating existence at their village while their women-folk perform the manual drudgery required to keep them supplied with the necessaries of life. As a matter of fact, the native woman is far from being the slave she is frequently alleged to be, for which admittedly civilisation is entirely responsible. Evidence points to the fact that the bulk of the heavy work on the "lands" is performed by men; and far from leading an idle life, they provide for their own wants wholly by what they produce, and, moreover, supply much for the use of the mines. They actually cultivate over 1,000,000 acres of ground, producing about 3,000,000 bags of grain yearly,

while they own between 300,000 and 400,000 head of cattle and about 900,000 head of sheep and goats.

Native stock breeding has assumed a position of special importance, as indigenous cattle are regarded by white settlers as a valuable foundation upon which to establish better herds. Natives, both indigenous and alien—the latter mostly recruited by the Rhodesian Native Labour Bureau, a semi-official body—supply the labour wants of the mine, the farm, the store, and even the house, though eventually native women will replace their men-folk as domestic servants. There

is a very keen and growing desire among the young generation for education, and there are already over 1,200 native schools in existence. These schools are all maintained by the Missions, and are attended by between 80,000 and 90,000 pupils. As an interesting sidelight on this phase of native life, it may be mentioned that in one case, at least, a girls' school was formed as the result of a direct appeal from native boys, who did not want to marry "heathen girls." Polygamy is on the decrease. (See also *Agriculture, Mining, Gazetteer*, etc.).





NATIVE VILLAGE IN CENTRAL AFRICA.
Dwellers in the Darkest Africa of to-day

Photo, Underwood

NYASALAND

BRITISH CENTRAL AFRICA

ALONG the western shore of Lake Nyasa lies a narrow strip of territory situated on the continuous system of waterways formed by Lakes Nyasa and Chilwa, and the Upper and Lower Shiré River, which forms one of the chief tributaries of the Zambesi. The area of this territory, which is known as the Nyasaland Protectorate, is approximately 48,250 square miles, with 37,900 square miles of *land* surface. The population numbers 1,300,000 of whom 1,700 are Europeans and 760 are Asiatics. On the west of this neck of land lies north-eastern Rhodesia, which, geographically, also forms a portion of British Central Africa, but is a separately administered unit (see *Rhodesia*); on the south is Portuguese East Africa, and on the north the Tanganyika Territory (*q.v.*).

ENGLAND IN CENTRAL AFRICA.

Portugal's most ancient possessions, Mozambique on the east coast and Angola on the west, were, at the close of the eighteenth century, divided by what were at that time the unexplored tracts of Central Africa. About this time, however, the Portuguese Government began to consider the possibility of uniting the two colonies, and by so doing to place a political belt across the southern portion of Africa, north of the British Dominions. Nothing came, however, of these ambitious plans, which were only natural, considering that to Portugal belongs the honour of being the first European country to attempt the colonisation of East or West Africa.

Dr. Livingstone visited Lake Nyasa, which he named, in 1859 and the Livingstone Mission was founded in 1874. During the years 1887-9 the Arabs gave trouble in the Konde Country.

During the early part of the nineteenth century British pioneers gradually occupied a wedge of country between the Portuguese Colonies, and so established the most valid claim to the territory immediately to the north of the middle Zambesi. This advance made the Portuguese Government again consider the advisability of annexing the regions dividing her east and west coast colonies, but Great Britain, whose subjects had pacified the land and acquired considerable interests therein, disputed the claim of Portugal, which was based on the "right of pre-emption." In 1889 Lieutenant Coutino, who had just been placed in command of the Portuguese forces on the frontier, advanced into the disputed territory and destroyed a native village with the intention of occupying Blantyre, which was virtually a British town. The result of this raid was a strong protest from the British Government, and the recall of Lieutenant Coutino.

Nyasaland was proclaimed the "British Central African Protectorate" in 1891, and the frontiers of Portuguese East Africa were clearly defined to the satisfaction of both nations. The suppression of the slave trade, which was rampant until the formation of the British Protectorate, occupied the periods covered by many able administrations; on several occasions much assistance in the settlement of this colony was given by Mr. Cecil J. Rhodes and the Chartered Company, but the first administrators of the British Central African Protectorate* were Sir H. H. Johnston, K.C.M.G., K.C.B., and Sir Alfred Sharpe, K.C.M.G., C.B. Until a settlement had been effected of all questions involving negotiations with foreign countries, regarding definite frontiers and other international problems, this protectorate was under the jurisdiction of the British Foreign Office, but

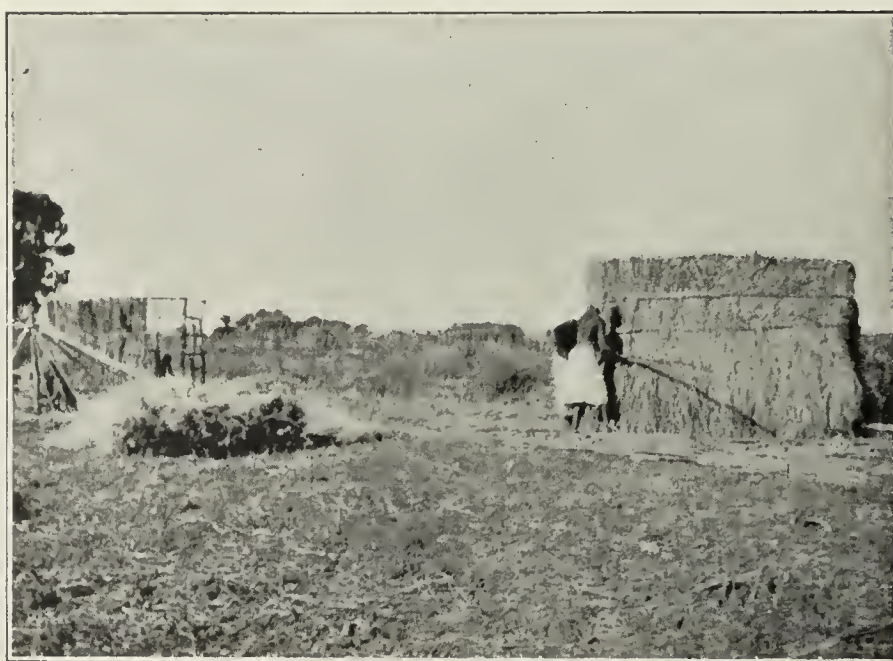
* In 1907 the name was altered to the "Nyasaland Protectorate."

on the satisfactory termination of external problems the administration was transferred to the control of the Colonial Office, in April, 1904. During the Great European War a German force crossed the Songwe River and attempted the invasion of Nyasaland but were defeated and driven back. In 1916 a British force based on Nyasaland invaded German East Africa. (See *Great European War*.)

HIGHLANDS AND LOWLANDS.

The general features of the 48,250 square miles of land and water forming the Nyasaland Protectorate are in many ways similar

the coffee planting industry, and of the African Lakes Corporation, whose steamers ply on the magnificent system of waterways in the surrounding country. About either of these Central African towns little can be said, for at present they are composed principally of brick bungalows. The Cathedral at Blantyre is, however, a substantial and picturesque building, and is a credit to the Protectorate, as it was constructed many years ago, almost entirely by native labour. Government House, Zomba, is another roomy edifice, and there are many nice bungalows with very prettily arranged

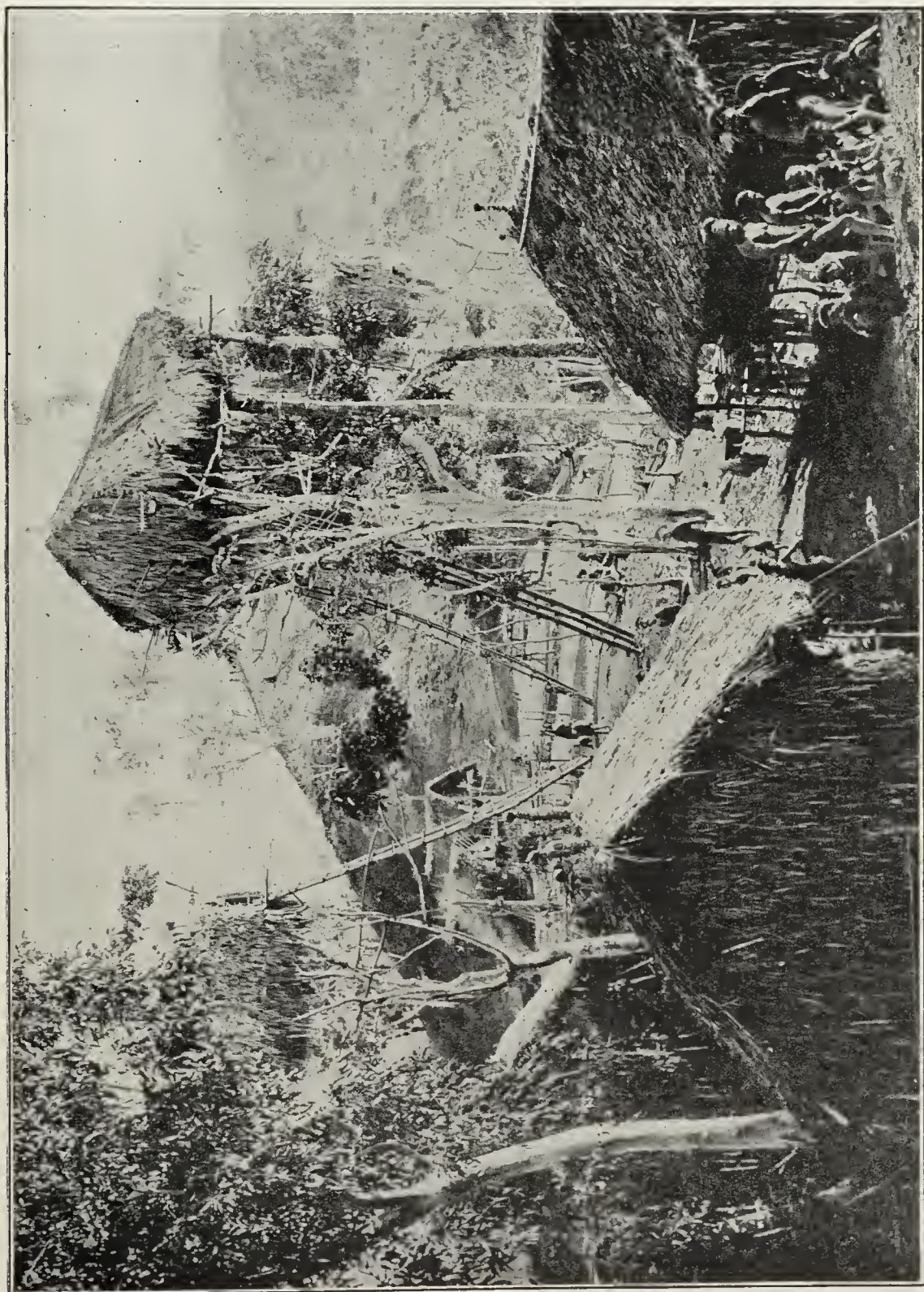


Photo, Shire Highlands Rly. Co.

CONSTRUCTION OF NEW NATIVE QUARTERS, MURRACA

to those of Uganda, both are tropical countries in the heart of the continent, bordering one of the great African lakes, and having large native populations. Nyasaland may be divided into three distinct portions, the hills, the lake country, and the Shiré River region. The climatic conditions vary greatly in different portions of the country. In the low-lying districts malaria and tropical fevers are prevalent, but in the hill country the climate cannot be considered altogether unhealthy, and consequently these districts are the most exploited. Zomba, the administrative headquarters, is situated in the highlands, as is also Blantyre, the centre of

gardens, that form the most attractive features of these two towns, which are the only important residential centres in Nyasaland. Blantyre has a white population of about 410 and a native population of over 7,000. In the surrounding country, however, there are many large plantations, on which spacious bungalows have been built. Overland telegraphic communication is maintained between this Protectorate, Rhodesia, and United South Africa, *via* Salisbury, also with the African Transcontinental line, which passes through Ujiji, on Lake Tanganyika, and the lines in Portuguese East Africa.



Photo, Underwood

A TREE-TOP VILLAGE IN CENTRAL AFRICA
The ladders leading to these dwellings are often over 40 feet high



Photo, Shire Highlands Rly. Co

FALLS ON THE RUO, A TRIBUTARY OF THE SHIRÉ RIVER

The position of Nyasaland, in the heart of Africa, made communication with the outside world, for many years, very difficult, but the discovery of the navigable Chinde Mouth of the Zambesi now enables coasting steamers from Beira and other East African ports to enter this great river, and at the small settlement of Chinde a piece of land, known as the "British Concession," has been granted by the Portuguese Government for the transshipment of goods, free of duty, into small river steamers which navigate the Zambesi and Shiré Rivers to Chindio.

The most direct route for travellers is, however, by railway from Beira, in Portuguese East Africa, to Mutarara, on the southern bank of the Zambesi River. The terminus of this line—which forms part of a new east to west trans-African system—is situated almost opposite Chinde, from which place lines run across Nyasaland to

Port Herald (terminus of the Central African Railway) and Blantyre, the commercial centre of the Protectorate, thus affording direct rail communication between the sea coast and the chief town in British Central Africa.

The cultivation of both cotton and tobacco has greatly increased during recent years, and the production is now considerable. Other important exports are chillies, ground-nuts, fibre and tea. The production of coffee, once so important, has declined considerably during recent years. The average annual value of the exports is £650,000, and of the imports £680,000. About 80 per cent. of the entire foreign trade is with Great Britain. The revenue averages about £350,000 and the expenditure £320,000 a year. (See *Government, Agriculture, Gazetteer*, etc.).

BRITISH WEST AFRICA

BRITISH WEST AFRICA, which has an area of about 600,000 square miles and a population of 30,000,000, comprises four separate Crown Colonies: the Gambia; the Gold Coast, with Ashanti; Sierra Leone; and Nigeria, North and South.

Great Britain cannot look back upon the founding of her first settlements on the coast of West Africa with the same feeling of pride for a really beneficial work accomplished as she can with regard to the early establishment of British influence and commerce in nearly all other parts of the Empire.

Unlike East and Central Africa, the West Coast Settlements, which, it must be remembered, were not undertaken by the Imperial Government, but by companies, were intended solely for the promotion of the slave trade. Gangs of natives were brought from the interior to the coast, and there sold to merchants who shipped them to the West Indies, South America and New England.

Slavery was at that time rife in all the tropical colonies of European countries, and the life of the slaves on the plantations in British possessions was not nearly so bad as it was in the oversea dominions of many other countries, and certainly not so black as it has been painted, but there are no extenuating circumstances which can be put forward in support of the barbarous raids for capturing the slaves, which reached the maximum point of cruelty in Africa.

The part played by Englishmen in this revolting trade, although small and mostly confined to the finance and shipping of these expeditions, is not a subject to be dwelt upon, therefore the early history of the British trading posts in West Africa can be passed over without feeling that an essential in the making of these colonies has been omitted.

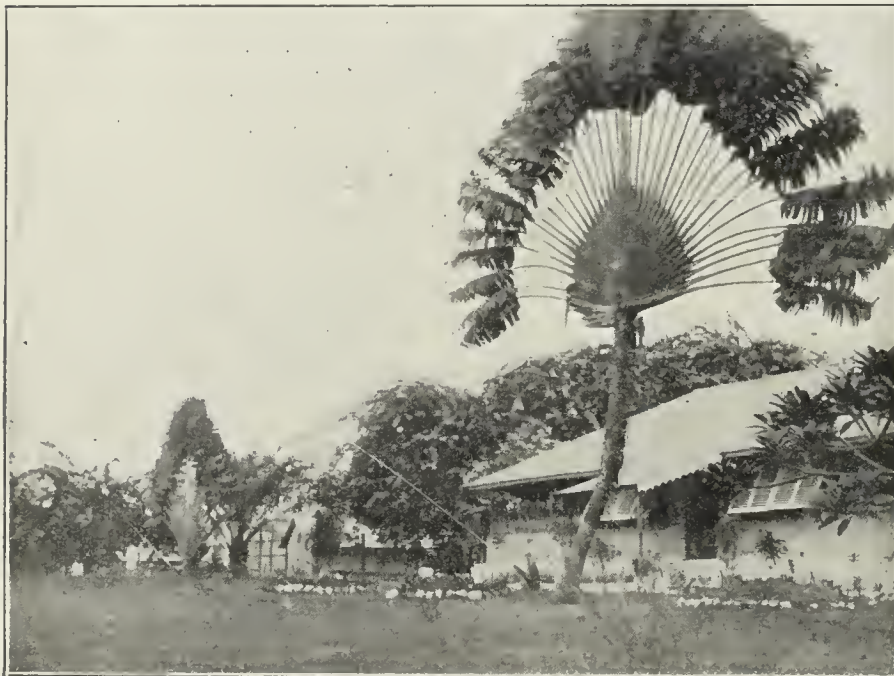
Not so, however, with the later British efforts to establish civilised government on this fever-stricken coast, which forms one of the most gallant and praiseworthy features in the annals of the Empire's Colonial administration.

SLAVERY.

Curiously, although these settlements were founded in the seventeenth century with the object of promoting the overseas slave trade, they were maintained during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries almost exclusively for the suppression of this nefarious and cruel commerce. Great Britain has paid a heavy price for the abolition of slavery in her colonies, for, in addition to the 20 millions sterling allowed as compensation to slave-owners, the expenditure on naval and military organisation for its suppression, which was continued for over 100 years, amounted to a sum far in excess of the actual compensation allowance. In West Africa alone the cost of maintaining warship patrols, river gunboats, fortified posts and local military and police forces, amounted, without taking into consideration the expense of the Ashanti campaigns, or the expenditure of the Royal Niger Company in Nigeria, to nearly £400,000 per annum from the Imperial Exchequer, or nearly half per cent. of the total revenue of the United Kingdom at that period.

The legitimate trade of these colonies was at that time practically non-existent, and consequently, with the total abolition of the overseas slave trade* in 1807, these settlements were placed on the verge of bankruptcy, and in 1821 the administration was taken over by the Imperial Government. The revenue at first amounted to such an

* Internal slavery continued until quite recent years, and even now—far up-country—it is carried on by caravans from the desert.



THE TRAVELLER'S PALM

The fronds contain pure water for thirsty travellers

ASHANTI CAMPAIGNS.

It must, however, be pointed out that originally the principal sea-coast trading stations were held by the Dutch, the French, the Danes and the Portuguese, who first founded Cape Coast Castle, but were gradually either given up as useless or transferred to the British for a comparatively small sum of money. The last to be erected were the Dutch forts round Elmina, the occupation of which by the British was the direct cause of the Ashanti Campaign of 1873; although there were contributory causes,

insignificant figure that many forms of direct native taxation were tried, such as a hut and poll tax, but, owing to the paucity in numbers of the white officials available for collection, and to the fact that British influence existed only on the seashore, the results were by no means satisfactory.

Many select committees of the House of Commons were successively formed to consider the position of the West African Colonies, and the expenses of the first Ashanti War placed an additional burden on the Imperial Exchequer.

As is usual with political committees the opinions expressed were at variance with each other, and a vacillating policy was pursued for many years. The settlements on the Gambia and Gold Coast were first administered by Government, then granted financial aid only and transferred to companies of merchants. This unsatisfactory state of affairs continued until the ratification of the Berlin Conference in 1885, which, as now understood, arranged for the partition of Africa among the Great European Powers.

such as the increased confidence of the King of Ashanti in the military prowess of his subjects aroused by recent successes against neighbouring tribes.*

The rapid advance of the British forces under General Sir Garnet Wolseley, and the burning of Kumasi, crushed for many years the Ashanti nation, which may be said to have constituted one of the most barbarous states in Africa. The hostages held by the King of Ashanti were liberated, and the coast settlements freed from the menace of a native invasion.

The employment of white troops in this campaign, necessitated by the insufficient training and unsteadiness under fire of the native regiments, compelled the quick return of the column to the sea-coast, on account of the unhealthy climate, and consequently the Ashantis were not properly punished. For many years great discontent existed, payments of the small war indemnity could not be obtained, and the terrible practice of human sacrifice was renewed. These causes led to the second Ashanti expedition in 1895-6 under Sir Francis Scott. No fighting, however, took place, and the march to

* Another cause was the petition to the British Government to stop the Ashanti raids and the sacrifice of the captured—made by the coast tribes.



IN THE GREAT WEST AFRICAN FOREST
Into these dense jungles the sun seldom penetrates

Photo, Underwood

Kumasi was unopposed. The result of this bloodless campaign was the construction of a fort in the capital, and the establishment of a British Resident. The Ashanti Royal Family were exiled to Elmina, and later removed to Cape Coast Castle.*

THE PARTITION OF WEST AFRICA.

Previously to the Berlin Conference, Germany had commenced the colonisation of the Cameroons and Togoland; France the establishment of her vast West African Dominions, the sphere of influence of which extended over nearly the whole of the Western Sudan, French Dahomey and Guinea, the Ivory Coast, and the French Congo; the Powers had recognised the independence of the negro state of Liberia, which was founded by the American Colonisation Society in 1820 as a country of refuge for freed slaves deported from the United States†; and Great Britain has established full claim, not only to her early settlements of Gambia, Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast, and Lagos, with their respective hinterlands, but to the "Oil Rivers," now known as Southern Nigeria, and also to that huge tract of country, Northern Nigeria, the title of which was acknowledged at this conference, and with it the control of one of Africa's greatest fluvial highways, the Niger River.

The activity of France and Germany in West Africa during 1892–1902 made it advisable for the British Government to place the country surrounding these Colonies under proper administrative control, and protectorates were consequently proclaimed over the territory adjoining the old established settlements.

ASHANTI REBELLION.

A rebellion broke out in Ashanti in 1900, which was caused by the openly expressed belief of the fetish priests, shared by the King, that British power had been strained to the utmost by the Boer War; and to the number of prospectors and missionaries who were overrunning the country, causing a decline in the power of the chiefs. A

* (See *Ashanti Rebellion*.)

† To be ruled almost entirely by negroes.

short but decisive campaign, under Colonel Sir James Willcocks, K.C.M.G., D.S.O., finally destroyed the Ashanti power.

FOUNDING OF THE GAMBIA.

The colony and protected hinterland on the River Gambia is one of the oldest British West African Settlements. The river was first discovered by the Portuguese in 1447, but no practical use was made of this discovery, until the year of the Spanish Armada (1588), when Queen Elizabeth, being at war with both Spain and Portugal, granted to an English company a Charter to trade with the Gambia region. An unsuccessful attempt was made in 1618, but the first British trading post was not actually established until 1685, when Fort James—named in honour of the English King—was constructed on a rocky island in the river. For nearly a century there was great rivalry between the English merchants and the Portuguese and



Photo, Niger Co.

OIL PALMS ON THE LOWER NIGER

These palms yield the oil nuts which give the name of "Oil Rivers"



YOUNG GIRL OF THE LOWER NIGER

French, who had also established themselves in this region. By the Treaty of Versailles, in 1783, the River Gambia and the adjoining hinterland was, however, recognised as British territory. No kind of administrative control was, however, exercised over this territory until placed under the government of Sierra Leone (established 1787) in the year 1807; but even then it remained neglected until made a colony in 1843, and given a separate administration in 1888.

The Crown Colony of the Gambia consists of about 69 square miles of territory formed by the islands of St. Mary and McCarthy, British Combo Albreda, the Ceded Mile, and other heterogeneous islands and territories on the banks of the Gambia River, and has a native population of about 14,000. The whites residing in this region are very few in number and are chiefly concerned in the administration. The Protectorate, however, encompasses a much wider area (estimated at 4,100 sq. miles), extending to the frontier of the French spheres, and has an estimated population of about 200,000.

FOUNDING OF THE GOLD COAST.

The first settlements in this portion of West Africa were established by the Portuguese, at Cape Coast Castle and Elmina, from whom

they were wrested by the Dutch. The English did not arrive on the scene until 1618, when a trading fort was established at Kormantyne. From this date onward many similar posts were established not only by English but also by Dutch, French, Danish and German merchants. These fortified posts were utilised almost entirely for supply in slaves to the West Indian and American possessions of these nations. In 1662 a Charter was granted to an English company to trade with the Gold Coast, and in 1672 the Royal African Company was formed.

This corporation obtained and enlarged Cape Coast Castle and established forts at Dixcove, Kommenda, Anambo, Winneba, Sekondi and Accra. In 1750 the African Company of Merchants succeeded the two original corporations; but this time it was constituted by Act of Parliament with special privileges. The Crown took over all these heterogeneous settlements in 1821, and they were placed under the Sierra Leone Administration.

Great Britain next purchased the few remaining Danish forts, but so intermingled were the Dutch and English settlements at this period that a difficult exchange was effected in 1867, which divided the

YOUNG AFRICA
Children of Northern Nigeria



A NATIVE TOMBSTONE IN ASHANTI

Photo, Elder Dempster & Co. Ltd.



THE "KING" OF ONITSHA, ON THE
LOWER NIGER

respective spheres ; those on the west of the Sweet River becoming Dutch and those on the east British possessions. Five years later the Dutch ceded all their settlements to Great Britain. In this way British interests became predominant, and the administration was separated from that of Sierra Leone, the settlements being amalgamated in the Gold Coast Colony, finally established in 1874.

The King of Ashanti fearing that his dominions would be completely cut off from the sea by the transfer of the Dutch settlements to Great Britain threatened the invasion of the Gold Coast, and thus brought about the Ashanti War of 1873-4. The victories gained in this and the two succeeding campaigns (1895-6 and 1900-1) caused the whole of the huge territory of Ashanti to come under the administration of the Gold Coast Colony. The total area of the territory now administered is approximately 80,000 square miles, and the population about 2,200,000, only about 2,100 being Europeans.

FOUNDING OF SIERRA LEONE.

Great Britain acquired the Peninsula of Sierra Leone (Lion Mountain) by cession from the native chiefs in 1787. At first it was intended for colonisation by the many destitute negroes deported from England ; and later, large numbers of emancipated slaves from America and the West Indies, as well as those freed by the warship patrols along the whole African coast, were landed in this colony. The surrounding hinterland, lying between 7 deg. and 10 deg. N., and 11 deg. and 13 deg. W., and bounded by French Guinea on the north and north-east and by the Negro State of Liberia on the south and south-east, comprising about 30,000 square miles with a native population of considerably over 1,500,000, was proclaimed a British Protectorate on 31st August, 1896, and placed under the Administration of Sierra Leone. The colony itself has an area of only 4,000 square miles and a population of about 90,000, of whom about 1,168 are white residents.

FOUNDING OF NIGERIA.

Southern Nigeria was formed by the amalgamation, in May, 1906, of the old Colony of Lagos with the Protectorate variously known as the "Oil Rivers," the Niger Coast Protectorate and Southern Nigeria, which was brought under British control by the Royal Niger Company. It includes the territory on the Bight of Benin, lying between French Dahomey on the west and the ex-German Cameroons on the east, and has an area of about 77,260 square miles. Northern Nigeria was established as a Protectorate in January, 1900, and includes the vast territory lying to the north of Southern Nigeria. It is bounded on the north and west by Dahomey and the French Sudan, and on the east by Lake Chad and the ex-German Cameroons. The acquisition of this territory raised the total area of Nigeria to over 366,000 square miles and the population to about 19,000,000.

Northern Nigeria was originally a portion of the Mohammedan Empire of Sokoto and Bornu, a descendant from that primitive civilisation of the Western Sudan, which had its headquarters at Timbuctoo, and its origin

in the Great Moorish Empire. Even now it is possible to trace in the Emirates of Nupé and Ilorin customs and scraps of folk lore, which give proof that these countries were the outposts of the early Moorish Empire, about which so little is known. The lapse of centuries has, however, almost obliterated all traces of things oriental, and continual contact and intermarriage with the tribes of Equatorial Africa have produced a race of blacks totally dissimilar to the original inhabitants; one of the many instances of the conquerors being submerged by the conquered.

During the early part of the eighteenth century, although trading vessels were continually passing through the Gulf of Guinea, practically no effort was made to establish commercial relations with this coast, or to open up the interior of the country for the purposes of trade, nor was any attempt made by the Government to bring it under British protection. The first to see the advantages which would accrue to Great Britain if trading posts could be established in Nigeria was Sir Joseph Banks,* who formed the African Association for the exploration of the regions surrounding the mysterious Niger River.

Many explorers were sent out, but nearly all either died of fever or were killed by the natives, until Mungo Park was chosen by the association in 1795. For seven months this intrepid young Scotchman, who afterwards became the greatest African explorer of the century, travelled almost alone and unarmed amidst the uncivilised tribes of the interior. He was cruelly ill-treated by the Mohammedans of the lower Sudan, but eventually succeeded, after passing through hardships which would have killed a man of ordinary physique, in reaching Sigu on the banks of the Niger—the first white man to discover the course of this mysterious river, which had for years defied all attempts by explorers to penetrate the fever-stricken forests and pass alive through the wild native tribes which jealously guarded it. Mungo Park

made several attempts to follow the Niger to its mouth when he was placed in command of a Government expedition, and eventually met his death in the great river which he was the first properly to discover.†

The commercial exploitation of Nigeria dates back only to 1855–60, when a few trading stations were established under great difficulties by Mr. Macgregor Laird, a West African merchant, who afterwards received a government subsidy of £8,000 per annum for the maintenance of a steamboat service on the Niger River.‡ But the rise of British Nigeria really commenced when the "National African Company" obtained a Government Charter for the administration of this territory. Mr. George Goldie Taubman, the Governor of this corporation (afterwards Sir George Goldie), amalgamated all the conflicting commercial interests, and succeeded in buying out two French companies who had established themselves on



A POST OF THE HISTORIC ROYAL NIGER COMPANY (at Forcados)

* President of the Royal Society.

† A Statue of Mungo Park has been erected in his native town, Selkirk.

‡ This subsidy was to be reduced by £500 per annum as the trade developed.



A WEST AFRICAN "FACTORY" OR TRADING SETTLEMENT

Photo, Niger Co.

the Lower Niger.* This wise policy, which prevented the French Government from establishing any claim to the territory surrounding this great waterway, enabled the extension of British dominion over the whole of Nigeria.

Tracing the successive steps of the extension of British influence in this portion of Africa we find that Lagos, which now forms a portion of Southern Nigeria, was first occupied by the Imperial Government in 1861, owing to the intervention of a Naval Officer during a native raid, but was under the jurisdiction of the Gold Coast Government until 1885-6 when it was proclaimed a separate colony, and the coast from Lagos to the Rio del Rey, the frontier

with the ex-German Cameroons, which was settled by treaty, was included in the Niger Coast Protectorate. This important territorial expansion was directly due to the activity and successful policy of Sir George Goldie.

The credit for the further inland extension of the British sphere of influence is due entirely to the enterprise of the Royal Niger Company. Treaties were concluded with the native chiefs and Mohammedan Emirs, and later a protectorate was proclaimed over the whole of

Northern Nigeria, which extends to the shores of Lake Chad. The frontiers with the French Sudan and Dahomey were settled, and in 1900 the British Government took over the administration from the Chartered Company who retained only their trading rights.



INSIDE A WEST AFRICAN "FACTORY"

* These companies were aided financially by the French Government.



THE GOLD COAST AT TAKORADI

The original site where now stands the busy Port of Takoradi. The largest and most important harbour on the Gold Coast



TAKORADI

As it appeared before the construction of the new Empire Port. The native surf boats in the foreground were used to reach vessels anchored outside the reef



THE BEGINNING OF THE GREAT TAKORADI HARBOUR
The new Empire port on the Gold Coast

One of the most important events which took place during the rule of the Royal Niger Company was the punitive expedition against the rebellious Emirs of Nupe and Ilorin in 1897. This brilliantly successful little campaign, under Sir George Goldie,* which was undertaken with only 600 native troops and a few British officers against many thousand fanatics held together by the power of Islam, lasted just over one month, and the successful issue gave the death blow to slave trading, and consolidated British supremacy from Lake Chad to the Bight of Benin.†

WEST AFRICA TO-DAY.

The four separate Crown Colonies, with their respective Protectorates, which form the vast and populous tropical dominion known generally as British West Africa, have a total area of 600,000 square miles and a population of over 30,000,000. The climate varies according to the altitude, and the country in most parts slopes gradually upwards from the low-lying and damp mangrove swamps and malarious coast lands to

the forest covered hills, and then to the somewhat more healthy open bush country. In Northern Nigeria this gradual ascent continues until the altitude has, in places, reached 3,000 ft., and the country and climate have changed from the extremely damp, fever-breeding swamps of the coast to the hot, dry and fairly healthy plains bordering the south-western extremities of the great Sahara. Northern Nigeria might, therefore, reasonably be omitted when making the sweeping assertion that no part of West Africa is suitable for the permanent residence of Europeans.

Although the British administer these regions, and success has attended the efforts made to minimise the unhealthiness of the climatic conditions, especially in the vicinity of towns, they can never become the home of a healthy white race. British West Africa must always remain a populous negro land; but the civilising influence of British rule in this one-time barbarous country cannot be over estimated. The vast improvement in the health of the natives themselves, and the

* Formerly an officer in the Royal Engineers.

† Many punitive expeditions have been dispatched during recent years to suppress slave-raiding and punish rebellious chiefs; notable among the latter was the burning of the city of Benin, a hot-bed of butchery and human sacrifice, which was destroyed by a naval brigade after some determined bush fighting.



AT SEKONDI

Lowering passengers from a mail steamer into surf boats a mile-and-half from the shore

abolition of internecine warfare, slavery, and the practice of human sacrifice, alone justify the British occupation. The commercial value of the West African Colonies to the Empire in general cannot for a moment be doubted. Every year the civilising influence of British dominion, social and religious example, and commercial relations, increase the requirements of these 30,000,000 natives, and at the same time stimulate their industrial activity in order that these growing needs may be supplied. The result is not only an increase in the production of raw material, but also an ever increasing market for British manufactured goods.

The Gambia

This small dependency is situated about 500 miles north-west of Sierra

Leone, and consists of a narrow strip of land 243 miles long on both banks of the River Gambia, as well as the islands at the mouth. This fine river, which is navigable for steamers of moderate draft up to the Barraconda Falls, approximately as far as British rights extend, forms an important highway for the trade of the vast interior, which is within the French sphere of influence. Any increase in the prosperity of this portion of the French Dominion in north-west Africa will, therefore, have a beneficial effect on the river commerce of this colony, which, although at present a revenue station on a large scale, is steadily being exploited. The cultivation of cotton may before long assume large proportions, when compared with the size of the colony; and the export of ground nuts, rubber, and palm oil is considerable.

Although the meteorology of the Gambia is similar to that of Sierra Leone, the climate is not nearly so injurious to Europeans, as the country is more open, the forest portion being of small extent, and, with the exception of the mangrove swamps which form the river banks for some miles from the mouth, it is less marshy. A considerable portion of the few miles of British land on either side of this fine waterway is covered with coarse grass and occasional clumps of trees, much of which is gradually being cleared for ground nuts, rice, cotton, maize, millet and other tropical products.



SURF BOATS ALONGSIDE A MAIL STEAMER
OFF THE GOLD COAST



POTTERY-MAKING IN WEST AFRICA

Photo, Elder, Dempster & Co. Ltd.

During the wet season, which lasts from June to October, the rainfall is very heavy, and tropical diseases prevail, but the remaining seven months are characterised by an almost complete absence of rain, which greatly retards agriculture. From December to April the Harmattan, or dry Sahara winds, blow almost continually, making the early morning and night very cold, and midday extremely hot. Tornadoes are frequently the unwelcome concomitants of the beginning and end of the wet season.

St. Mary's Island, on which Bathurst, the small but chief settlement of this colony, is situated, is low-lying and swampy, and the principal portion of its $4\frac{1}{4}$ square miles of territory is composed of sand and marsh. About the town of Bathurst little can be said, for it is nothing more than a collection of houses on a tiny island which commands the mouth of the Gambia.* Some few miles further up stream is situated the small island on which stand the ruins of Fort James, the earliest British post in West Africa. The only other settlement worthy of note is McCarthy's Island, near the frontier of French Senegambia. Here there is a wireless station.

Ocean steamships can cross the bar and enter this fine river at all states of the tide, and over $1\frac{1}{4}$ million tons of shipping annually enters and clears from Bathurst. The financial position of the Gambia is, moreover, prosperous. For many years the revenue exceeded the expenditure, and left a considerable balance in hand, which did much to assist schemes of development for the exploitation of the country bordering the river.

The exports, which have an average annual value of between £800,000 and £900,000, consist of ground nuts, palm kernels, beeswax, and hides; the first of these is, however, by far the most important, the nuts, which were once shipped almost exclusively to Marseilles have, since the Great War, been exported to the British Isles, where the oil is extracted and used for various commercial purposes. In the country sur-

rounding this small colony—mostly in the French sphere—rice, maize and cotton are cultivated on a small scale, but very little is exported. The annual value of the imports averages only £640,000.

The form of government is that usual in all Crown Colonies (see *Government of the Empire*), and is vested in a Governor, who is assisted by an Executive Council of official members and a Legislative Council of official



NATIVE WOMAN, SHOWING METHOD OF CARRYING BABIES

and unofficial members. There is an armed police force, numbering about eighty men, and a company of the West African Regiment is stationed in this colony. The revenue and expenditure average about £200,000, but there is a public debt of just under £100,000.

In the broad expanse of the British Empire which has frontiers on almost every sea, and possesses such rivers as the Indus, the

* Bathurst is the headquarters of the administration and Customs.



FERMENTING COCOA BEANS, GOLD COAST



HAULING MAHOGANY LOGS, GOLD COAST

Ganges, the Irrawaddy, the Zambesi, the Niger, the Thames, the Clyde and the St. Lawrence, this little West African colony forms but a small unit; yet the river, which called it into being as a portion of the Empire, may, when the peoples of north-west Africa awake from their sleep, and the immense areas of surrounding land are on a fair way to exploitation, become an important fluvial highway of considerable commercial and strategic value.

The Gold Coast

The area of this colony, which includes the protected hinterland and Ashanti, is about 79,000 square miles, and the population exceeds 2,110,000, of whom only 2,000 are Europeans. By far the largest portion of this territory is covered with dense tropical forests intersected by swamps, and the climate is very unhealthy, with the exception of the eastern portion, which is hilly and consequently more salubrious.

The capital and administrative headquarters is Accra, a coast town of some 38,000 inhabitants, which, being situated on the slopes of the Aquapim Hills, is somewhat more healthy than either Elmina or Cape Coast Castle, although along the whole coast malarial fever is very prevalent, especially at the beginning and end of the rainy seasons, which last from April to July and from October to November. About this, or, in fact, any West African town, little can be said, for, although there are many commodious bungalows in which dwell the European inhabitants, the native quarters are by no means attractive. Accra includes the old Danish settlements of Victoriaborg and Christiansborg. A few miles away is the new port of Takoradi.

The only times of the day during which exercise is possible on the West Coast of Africa are before ten in the morning and after six in the evening. When the sun sinks beneath the watery horizon, a cool breeze sets in from the sea, which seems to awaken life even in the prolific vegetation; but the long French windows of the European bungalows are closed against this invigorating wind, which sighs through the trees



A WOMAN OF OGUTA WEARING IVORY BRACELETS

and latticed verandahs, for, after the terrible heat of the day, people fear the cool breeze of the early evening. Scarcely has the short equatorial twilight ended before a violet hue spreads like a pall over the dark forest trees, the sighing wind ceases, nature stands in silence, and in less than an hour darkness has closed over, and the sky is lit by the great stars of the southern hemisphere. It is not long before the yellow African moon tops the black outline of the forest on the distant hills, casting a pale shimmering light on the white bungalows and the tall, ghostly palms. Not a sound breaks the stillness of these glorious tropical nights except the sorrowful roar of the surf. But West Africa shows another sight, less peaceful but truly characteristic. The night is still as death, not the slightest breeze stirs the thick foliage of the dense forest, and even the fireflies and mosquitoes seem dazed by the heavy atmosphere. Black is the earth below, but blacker is the sky above.

A faint breeze rustles through the forest, and then, as if by signal, the clouds burst, and the rain comes with a furious blast which bends the trees and lashes the earth into thick mud. The black vault above is rent by vivid masses of blue flame which shoot athwart the sky. The noise of the lashing rain is drowned by the roar of the thunder, which can be felt—so great is the vibration of the heavy air. Great patches of lurid flame light up the remotest recesses of the forest, and in less than half-an-hour the earth is turned into a morass of mud and fallen leaves. The storm vanishes as quickly as it came. To be exposed to the torrential downpour of the wet season is decidedly dangerous to health.

The coast line of this colony is very



A MARKET SCENE IN WEST AFRICA *Photo, Niger Co.*

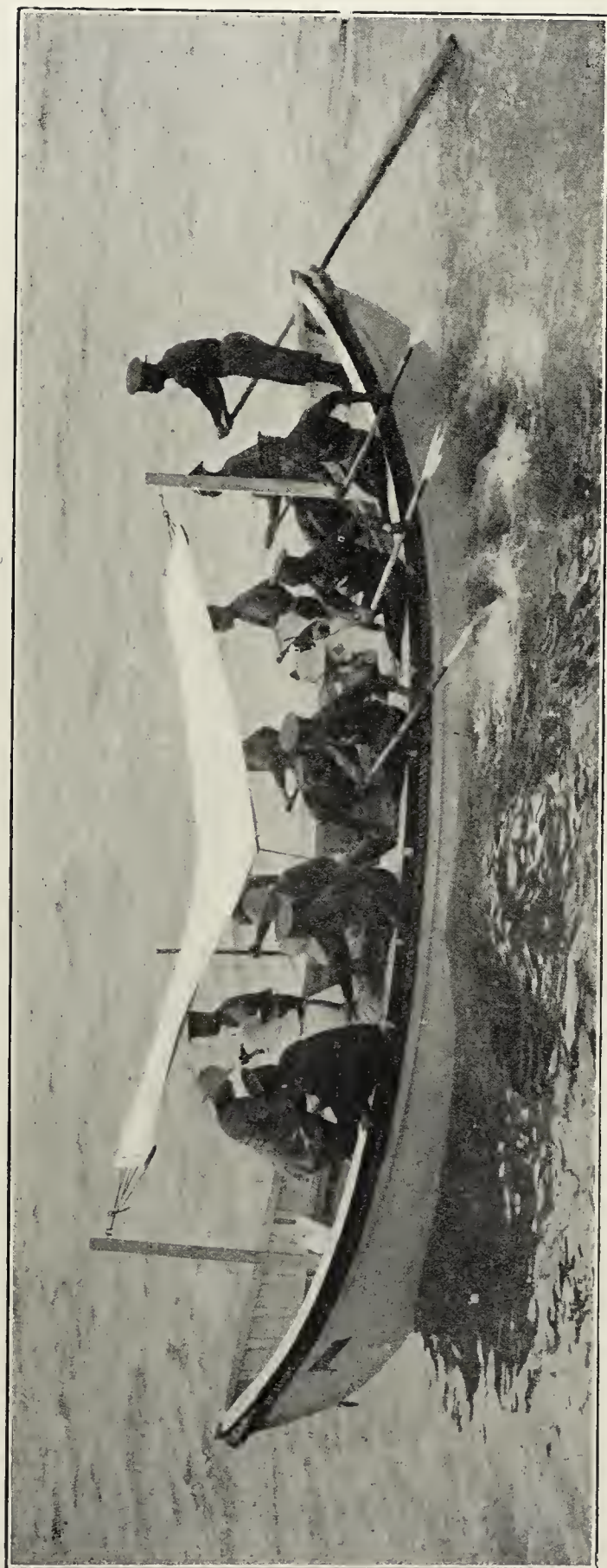
irregular, being composed of lagoons interspersed with low hills and cliffs, and long stretches of sandy shore. Shallows covered by breakers form a complete barrier along the coast, and a landing can only be effected in surf-boats. There are practically no

harbours, with the exception of the new artificial enclosure at Takoradi, and the mouths of the rivers are blocked by sand banks.

The whole interior of both the Colony and Protectorate, west and north of Accra, is covered with dense forests, which stretch beyond the River Prah, forming the Ashanti border, and continue intermittently half across the continent. Around the coast towns the country has been cleared of forest for health reasons. It is not so much the sun heat of West Africa which causes disease as the



BREAKING UP THE PALM-NUTS FROM WHICH THE OIL IS OBTAINED WHEN THE KERNELS ARE CRUSHED



H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES IN A SURF BOAT OFF THE GOLD COAST

mosquitoes and the dampness of the atmosphere with the consequent decay of the vegetation in the forests, especially during the rainy seasons.

The old coast settlement of Elmina (population 5,200), which first belonged to the Portuguese and then to the Dutch, is now of little importance, except as a trading centre for Ashanti. About eight miles to the east lies Cape Coast Castle (population 15,000),

(population 1,672); Axim (population 3,800); and Quittah (population 10,000), are the only other important towns in this colony, with the exception of Sekondi (population 9,000), which is connected by the Government Railway—the road for which was partly made to facilitate the advance of the British troops in the campaign of 1874—with Cape Coast Castle, the inland mining centre of Tarquah, and Kumasi, the capital of Ashanti.

Other than a few trading posts, such as Saltpond, and Winnebah, which are the chief centres of the palm-oil industry, the only other town of special interest is Kumasi, the capital of Eastern Ashanti, which, before its destruction by the British forces in 1874, contained many beautifully decorated buildings of native architecture,* but has never been properly rebuilt. The Palace, and the fetish tree which were once surrounded by the headless trunks of human sacrifices, have all been cleared away. The fort, which is the residence of the political officer, and the few bungalows of the white missionaries, comprise the only objects of Kumasi worth noting. The Government headquarters of Western Ashanti are at Sunyani.

Although cocoa forms the chief product of the Gold Coast, it is the precious metal from which this colony has taken its name that deserves first mention. No extensive mining operations have yet been carried out on this coast, but the results of geological examinations of the gold-bearing stratum gives encouragement to the generally expressed belief

of many residents that mining will before many years become the chief industry of the colony. This, however, is questionable, as the drawbacks of a bad climate and the fact that the ore is principally alluvial, are all against any great increase in the mining industry; but for years gold dust formed the medium of exchange, and large nuggets were by no means



"MANELLAS"—A FORM OF CURRENCY USED BY THE NATIVES OF CALABAR

which was for many years the capital of the Gold Coast Colony, and is still the second most important town. The Castle, from which it takes its name, is situated on a rocky eminence overlooking the sea, and forms the only object of historic interest. A marble slab in the wall indicates the last resting place of the well-known poetess, I.E.L., the wife of Governor Maclean. Ada

* Swish houses.



A RECEPTION AT ACCRA, GOLD COAST
Note the State Umbrellas used at a "Palarya"

unknown, therefore it would be decidedly risky to say that considerable deposits of paying-ore may not eventually be discovered. The output is at present principally dust, which is discovered in large quantities in the numerous rivers, but mines are being worked at Tarquah in the Wassau district, and at Axim near the Volta. The annual export of gold from this colony averages about £850,000, and manganese ore is produced to the average value of £700,000 a year.

There are two main railway lines in operation. One runs from Sekondi, through the gold-mining region of Tarquah, to

beyond the River Prah a ridge of hills crosses the whole country parallel with the coast, at a distance inland varying from 100 miles at Cape Three Points to 70 miles at Winnebah. These highlands, which form the advance guard of the great Central African Plateau, comprise the most healthy districts in Ashanti. With the exception of Kumasi, the capital, there are no towns of any importance with white residents in this territory.

The value of the Gold Coast lies in the undoubted mineral resources, the productiveness of the soil, which is as yet but little



MARKET SCENE NEAR BURUTU

Kumasi, a distance of about 170 miles. The other line proceeds inland from Accra to Kumasi, about 193 miles, and has a branch line to Kade, 98 miles.

The revenue of the Gold Coast averages £4,400,000 and the expenditure £4,330,000 a year. There is a Public Debt of about £11,700,000. The exports have a yearly value of about £12,000,000 and the imports £10,250,000.

Ashanti and the Protectorate, which for all commercial purposes now form the inland portion of the Gold Coast Colony, are comparatively little exploited. They are composed almost entirely of forest-covered lands and swamps, but some 30 miles

cultivated, the sylvan products, and the openings for British manufactures. The principal features detrimental to the rapid exploitation of the natural riches were until quite recently the absence of harbour facilities and the unhealthy climate of the lowlands. It has been proved that the clearance of forest growth in the vicinity of towns, and the wholesale destruction of the mosquito larvæ, greatly reduce tropical diseases. Swamps are also being drained and filled in, and the sanitary systems have been extended and improved. These efforts to diminish disease will be increased rather than relaxed, as the cost is by no means prohibitive to a colony which



A NATIVE VILLAGE, GOLD COAST



A TYPICAL SCENE ON THE GOLD COAST

has for many years lived and prospered without aid from the Imperial Exchequer.

The exports from the Gold Coast, which mostly find their way to Great Britain, consist of cocoa, gold, manganese, rubber, palm oil, gum-copal, ivory, cotton and timber. Half the world's supply of cocoa is produced by this colony, and the average annual value exceeds £9,000,000. The chief imports, as is usual in tropical colonies, consist principally of textiles, building materials and hardware. A native educational system is being slowly organised in many places by the grant of Government aid to the numerous

is much drier than the lowlands of the Gold Coast.

Sierra Leone

The roar of the surf caused the early Portuguese explorers to name the mountainous peninsula which forms this colony "Serra da Leôa"—the Mountain of the Lioness; past generations altered this to Sierra Leone. It is situated over 1,000 miles from Cape Coast Castle and half-way between England and Cape Town (United South Africa). The colony consists administratively not only of the Peninsula of Sierra



PALM-WINE SELLERS IN SIERRA LEONE

missionaries, irrespective of denomination. There are, however, many Government-owned schools with native teachers, and a University College has been opened near Accra. The important towns are lighted, drained, and policed; and the telegraphic net connects all the inland trading centres and interior administrative and military posts with the coast and the ocean cables. The system of government is the same as that of the other West African colonies. The administrative posts in the Northern Territories (north of the 8th parallel N. Lat.) are at Tamale and Navaro. The population of this backward area of Ashanti is about 600,000, mostly Mohammedans. The country

Leone and the adjacent Quiah Region—which is composed of swamps, creeks and rivers—but also of the Protectorate, which extends along the coast, and rises from the low-lying marshes to the hills of the Niger basin, at a distance inland of about 100 miles. Sherbro Island, which is just off the mainland, and consists principally of swamps, and the Isles de Los, near Tumbro Point, French Senegambia, are also included in the sphere of Sierra Leone, which has a total area of about 34,000 square miles, and a population of about 1,590,000, of whom less than 2,000 are Europeans.

Freetown, the capital, has the finest harbour on the whole coast, and is the Imperial



SCREENING BROKEN
PALM-NUTS TO
OBTAIN THE KERNEL



FILLING STEEL DRUMS
WITH PALM-OIL READY
FOR SHIPMENT



SCENE IN A PALM-
OIL TRADING
STATION



naval coaling station in West Africa. The harbour is formed by the estuary of the Sierra Leone River, which is, in many parts, over five miles broad. This fine anchorage, which is sheltered by the mountains on the peninsula, can accommodate vessels of all sizes, as entrance is obtained through a broad, deep channel. The town itself possesses fairly good streets and an excellent water supply, which has already done much, and will eventually do more, to assist sanitation and so remove the worst forms of disease. It is also well lighted and policed. Cape Sierra Leone, which juts out into the sea, is

ever, now quite undeserved, as so much has been done to improve the sanitary arrangements, and a strong Health Board enforces the law relating to hygiene; a by no means easy task in a settlement composed almost entirely of natives from every part of Africa (freed slaves), speaking sixty different tongues, who, in no far distant past, were accustomed to bury their dead under the earth floors of their huts, and even now have but a vague idea of the importance to health, especially in a hot climate, of personal cleanliness and public sanitation.

Freetown is the only town worthy of the



ON THE LOWER NIGER

several miles from Freetown, which lies further up the river. The unhealthy climate of this town is in no small measure due to its position at the foot of lofty hills, which prevent the purifying effect of the south-westerly sea-breezes from being obtained; but on the hills the climate is much more salubrious, although, curiously, white children and horses suffer terribly from the climate in all parts of the colony.

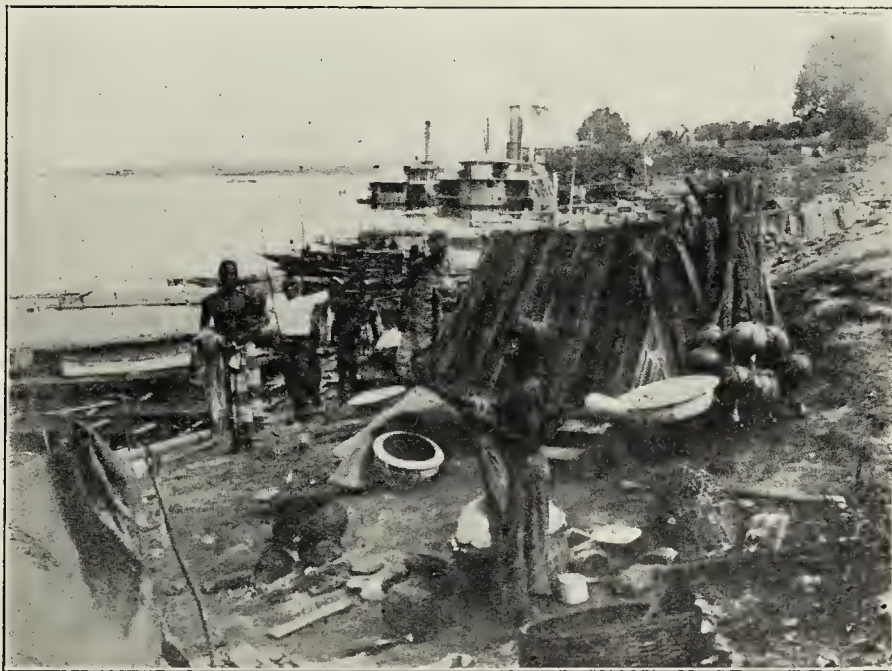
Sierra Leone is, with the possible exception of the highlands around the capital and the hills of the interior, the most unhealthy of the British West African possessions. For many years it was known as "White-man's grave," but such a gruesome title is, how-

ever, now quite undeserved, as so much has been done to improve the sanitary arrangements, and a strong Health Board enforces the law relating to hygiene; a by no means easy task in a settlement composed almost entirely of natives from every part of Africa (freed slaves), speaking sixty different tongues, who, in no far distant past, were accustomed to bury their dead under the earth floors of their huts, and even now have but a vague idea of the importance to health, especially in a hot climate, of personal cleanliness and public sanitation.

Freetown is the only town worthy of the name in this colony, and it possesses a fine harbour of considerable strategic as well as commercial value. Situated midway between Great Britain and the Cape, on the Circle Route to India, Australia, and New Zealand, it is of ever-increasing importance as a port-of-call on the highway of Empire. The chief products of Sierra Leone are, like those of all West African coast colonies, mostly derived from the forest trees, and consist of palm oil and kernels, rubber, ginger, kola nuts, gum copal, ground nuts, benni-seed, coco-nuts, beeswax and rice, all of which are exported. The imports comprise all kinds of manufactured goods, mostly obtained from Great Britain. The

value of the palm kernels exported each year averages over £1,000,000. The natives are chiefly employed in exchanging the sylvan and agricultural products of the interior for imported manufactured goods, and the few white residents in superintending the various branches of the administration, the military and police forces, mission stations and the trading concerns. Education, although not compulsory, has made rapid progress in this colony. The system of government is that usual in Crown colonies (see *Government of the Empire*); the Protectorate is divided into administrative

Its territorial extent, which is approximately 370,000 square miles, is four times as large, and its population—19,000,000—ten times as many as those of any other colony in this portion of the continent, and, what is even more important, it is not confined to a narrow strip of low, malarious, coast land, but stretches for several hundred miles inland to the shores of Lake Chad. Added to the advantages which accrue from the dry and more healthy climate of the interior, are those derived from its position on both banks of the lower and middle Niger, and the many tributaries of this fine river, which



Photo, Niger Co.

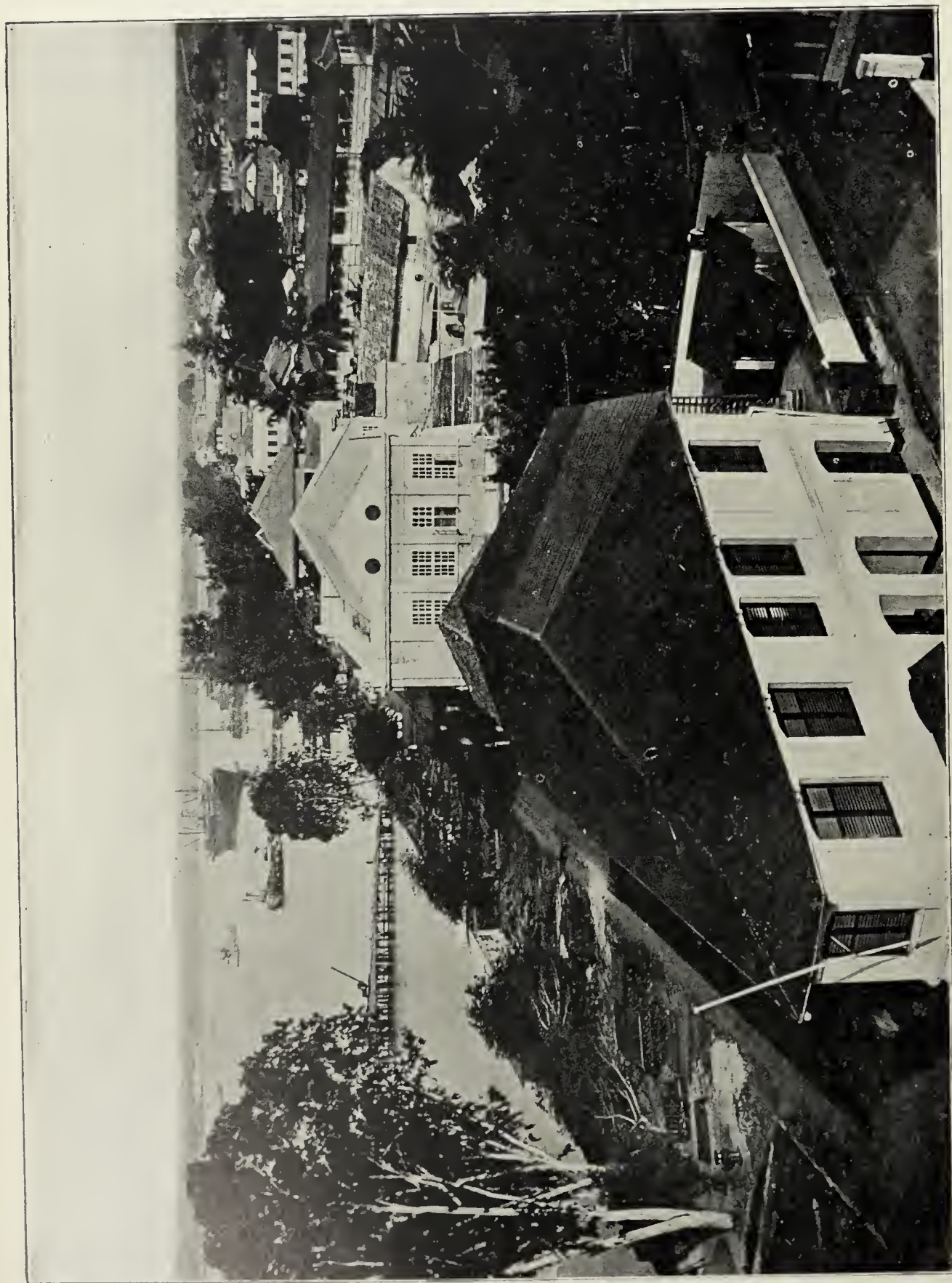
NATIVE TRADERS CAMPING ON THE BANKS OF THE NIGER

districts, each of which is under a District Commissioner. In all the protectorates and country districts of British West Africa the system of territorial divisions, which for administrative purposes are placed under local commissioners, is in vogue. The revenue and expenditure balance at about £900,000 a year; and the annual value of both imports and exports at £1,850,000. (See also *Government, Agriculture, Gazetteer*, etc.).

British Nigeria

The future of Nigeria bids fair to outrival that of any British colony in West Africa.

form extensive fluvial highways for the cheap conveyance of merchandise through country where it would be an extremely costly undertaking to construct a railway system. In the interior of Nigeria there is practically no monetary circulation, and the small export value of the tropical products, with the exception of gold, tin and rubber, makes the construction of an extensive network of railway lines over the vast areas of this colony and its northern provinces an undertaking which would be scarcely likely to prove even self-supporting for very many years. The railway lines at present in operation have a total length of about



LAGOS

Capital of Nigeria, and the most important seaport in British West Africa

Photo, Elder, Dempster & Co. Ltd.



PORT HARCOURT

The new Nigerian port on the Bonny River. Terminus of the Railway to the coal fields and the interior

1,500 miles. The main line runs from Lagos to Kano, the administrative headquarters and chief commercial centre of Northern Nigeria. A train, with sleeping and restaurant cars attached, runs weekly between Lagos, Zaria and Kano, a distance of 705 miles. Branch lines connect Minna, a station on the main line, with Baro, on the Niger river; and Zaria, the cotton-growing centre, with Bukuru and its tin mines. Another railroad runs from Port Harcourt, on the estuary of the Bonny River, through the Udi Coal Fields, a total distance of 151 miles, to Makurdi, on the Benue river, a total distance of about 300 miles from the coast. Several extensions of these systems are in course of construction.

British Nigeria is divided into two halves, the coast portion, including the old colony of Lagos, being called the "Southern Provinces," and the old inland protectorate, the "Northern Provinces"; each is under a Lieut.-Governor, responsible to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Nigeria.

Southern Provinces

By the amalgamation of the old colony of Lagos with the Protectorate of Southern Nigeria this new Division has been formed.

It occupies an area of about 113,600 square miles on the coast of the Bight of Benin. It is divided for administrative purposes into three provinces; the eastern and central divisions comprising the former Protectorate of Southern Nigeria, and the Western Province the Colony of Lagos. The administrative headquarters are at the city and port of Lagos.

The coast line of Southern Nigeria (Lagos), when seen from the sea, appears almost level with the water, and the narrow surf-beaten beach of yellow sand is quickly lost amid a mass of rank vegetation and isolated clumps of trees. Much of the coast is intersected with shallow creeks and lagoons of greenish water in which are sharks and crocodiles innumerable. The damp, low-lying country is covered with every species of tropical growth, and even the water is made brackish by the floating weeds and decaying vegetation. The prolific growth, and, at the same time, unhealthiness of what used to be known as the "Slave Coast," will be understood when it is stated that the rainfall in many parts exceeds 120 in. annually, and that the heat in the shade is often considerably over 100 deg. F. During the rainy season, when the showers are torrential, these coast lands are almost under water,

and whole forests on the numerous islands may be seen rising from the surface. The malaria-carrying mosquito here finds a haunt eminently suitable for its delicate constitution. Nearly the whole coast-line of Lagos, Benin and Calabar is formed of extensive mangrove swamps, which are intersected by numerous rivers, creeks and lakes, and inhabited only by tribes of natives who themselves suffer terribly from malaria and fever.

The capital of the colony is the port of Lagos, which is one of the largest towns on the West Coast of Africa. There are several streets which are beginning to assume a British colonial aspect, and many buildings of considerable proportions have been erected during recent times, but by far the largest section of the inhabitants are natives who dwell in small houses built of sun-dried mud bricks, and much of the town is composed of wharves and "factories."*

The system of lagoons which divide the island of Lagos from the mainland afford interior navigation for many miles, and vessels of shallow draft use these waterways for the conveyance of merchandise to and from Lagos, and the neighbouring territory of Benin, which is also situated in Southern Nigeria.

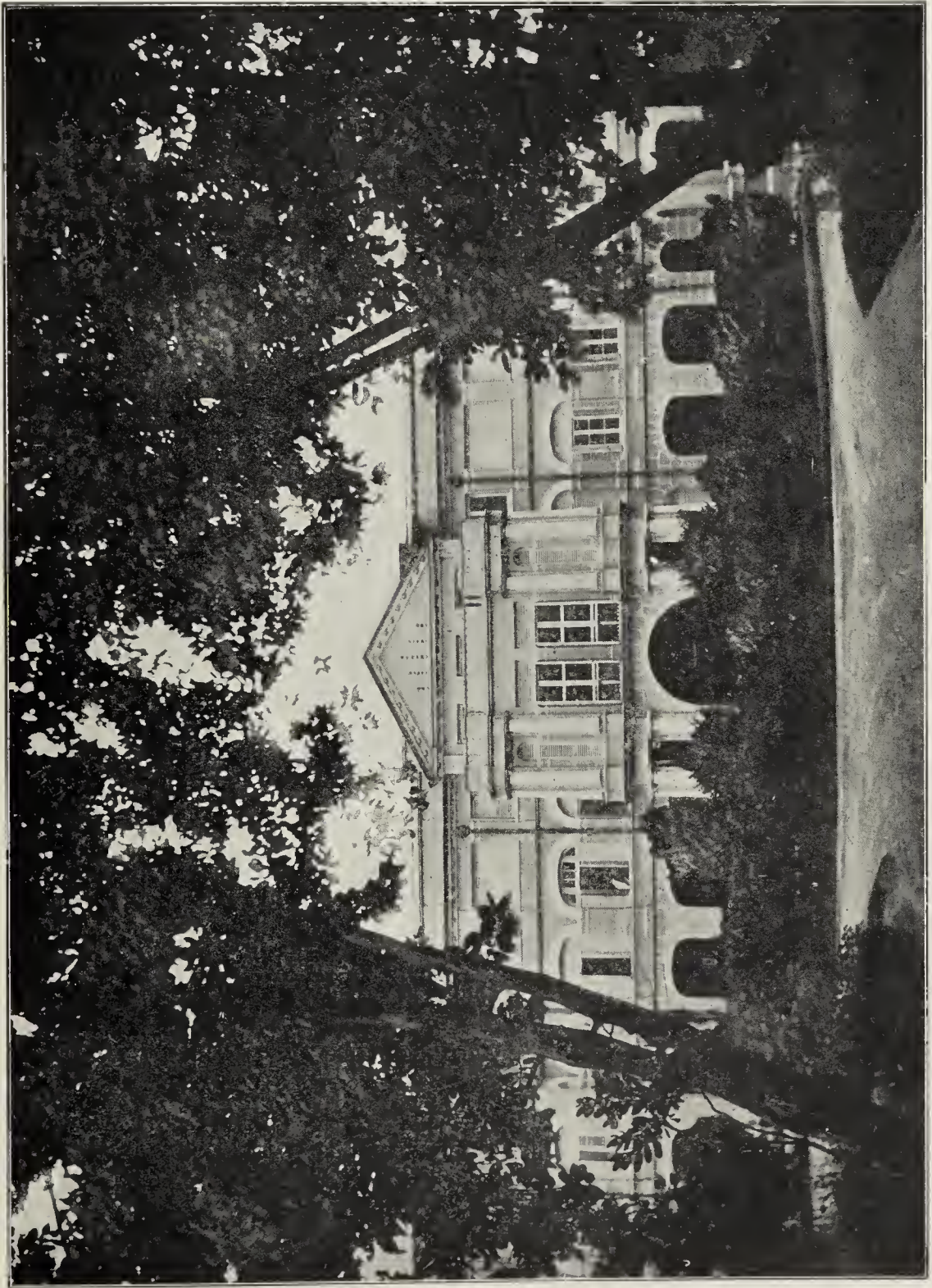
The mainland of Lagos is very productive, tropical fruits are grown in abundance, and in the town markets a few coppers will purchase a considerable quantity of plantains, yams, coco-nuts and other fruit ; but cotton, cocoa and coffee are now largely grown for export. The extensive cultivation of cotton and cocoa have every prospect of forming most lucrative industries. Several rubber plantations have been established, and the collection of this forest product forms an important industry. At present, however, the principal exports are palm oil, rubber, cotton, maize, mahogany, hides, skins, shea-nuts, gum copal and ground-nuts ; and the chief imports cotton goods, hardware, spirits, soap and kerosene.

The chief asset of Nigeria is the great river from which it takes its name. This magnificent fluvial highway runs into the heart of the country, and, with its main tributary, the Benué, forms the principal channel for the conveyance of merchandise to and from the sea-coast. For 900 miles the banks of these rivers are lined with storehouses and trading stations, from which wharves and tiny landing stages project into the broad sheet of brackish water. Many steamboats and native craft convey the produce to the river mouth and take back supplies of manufactured goods imported from Europe.

* Called "factories," but really storehouses for manufactured goods.



ONE OF THE RIVER STEAMERS OF THE NIGER COMPANY



Photo, Elder, Dempster & Co. Ltd.

GOVERNMENT HOUSE, LAGOS, SOUTHERN NIGERIA

The mouth of the Niger was for many years a mystery, although the coast had been thoroughly explored. There is, however, little wonder that the navigable outlet remained unknown until recent years, for the Niger has over 100 mouths which are intersected by mudflats and mangrove swamps, stretching along the coast of Iakri, Oru, Brass and New Calabar. These were formerly known as the "Oil Rivers," this name being given on account of the enormous amount of palm oil collected by the Ibo tribes who inhabit the swamp regions of the Niger Delta.

On the coast of Old and New Calabar and Lagos, the land, which is only a few feet above sea-level, is intersected by numerous rivers, creeks and mangrove swamps, which make the climate very unhealthy and unfit for the residence of Europeans except during the dry season, for at the beginning and end of the rains, which last from May to October, fevers are prevalent, and communication between various parts of the lowlands is made almost impossible by the floods and swamps. Much of the creek, or coast region, is under water, and long journeys become exceedingly dangerous to health, if not quite impossible of accomplishment. Further inland, however, the country rises, and is covered with dense forest, through which the rivers are the only broad highways, but the climate is a little more healthy than that of the coast. Near the boundary of the Northern Protectorate the altitude increases, the country becomes more open, and the air drier, and the climate in consequence, greatly improves.

The chief towns of Southern Nigeria are Lagos, Calabar, Benin, Bonny, Port Harcourt and New Calabar, all of which, with the exception of Lagos, the capital, are native towns of relatively little importance. In addition to these, however, there are the trade centres of Opobo, Brass, Warri, Sapele, Forcados and Akassa, the two latter places being situated on the Forcados and Nun mouths of the Niger.

Northern Provinces

This huge Protectorate has an area of about 256,400 square miles, and a population of many millions. It is divided for administrative purposes into seventeen provinces

under British Residents. The headquarters of the Government are at Kano, on the cool and lofty Nigerian Plateau, 705 miles from the sea.

Northern Nigeria is simply the inland portion of the smaller southern coast sphere of the same name, and topographically the country rises gradually from the central wooded belt, which is composed of immense and almost impenetrable forests, to the bush country and the open fields and prairies, which vary in altitude from 500 to 3,000 ft., and may be considered fairly healthy. At the extreme north of the protectorate the fertile plains give way to sandy deserts with



GIRL OF THE YORUBA COUNTRY,
NORTHERN NIGERIA

isolated clumps of trees and coarse sun-dried grass, which disappear almost entirely as the limits of the great Sahara are reached.

The natives of the forest region, which has a hot damp climate, are of the lowest type of humanity, and cannot be compared with the Mohammedans or Fulani of the Northern Provinces, who are semi-civilised, being descended from the Berbers of the Western Sudan. Many of the towns of the old Fulah Empire, which includes the Hausa States, are walled, as in the east, and the houses of the better classes are solid structures of sun-dried bricks, but the dwellings of the poorer

people consist merely of reed huts surrounded by walls of white clay. The general appearance of several of the larger towns is decidedly Moorish-Berber. The mosques, from which the Muezzin calls the faithful to prayer, the dazzling white houses and walls, surrounded by sandy plains covered with palm groves and other thirstless vegetation, and the jellabas of the passers by, create a vague likeness to some of the inland towns of El Moghreb.

Northern Nigeria possesses no distinctive features with the exception of the Niger River and Lake Chad, which forms the corner

The principal value to Great Britain of the whole of Nigeria, with its millions of semi-civilised natives, is the unrivalled opening it offers for the sale of British manufactures. Although the imports from Great Britain annually amount in average value to only 10 millions sterling (whole of Nigeria), it is not because there is no market for further supplies, but through lack of enterprise on the part of merchants. Nigeria is now thoroughly settled, and every year the requirements of its millions of inhabitants increase. Continual contact with white men causes a growing demand for clothing,



KANO, NORTHERN NIGERIA

Photo, Niger Co.

The terminus of the railway from Lagos. On the frontier of the French Sudan

stone of the British and French spheres. The country principally consists of a series of semi-fertile plains and low hills. In many of the provinces large areas of land are cultivated by the natives, the principal crops being Indian corn, cotton, cassava, guinea corn, rice and wheat; and there are also many small plantations of indigo. The natural sylvan products are shea-butter, palm oil, and other produce.

Perhaps the most important industry in the Northern Provinces is tin mining. The deposits extend over a wide area. There are also the coal mines of Udi, in the Southern Provinces, where the deposits are of vast extent and of good quality.

cotton goods and agricultural implements; there is no reason why the imports of Manchester, Birmingham and Sheffield manufactures into this colony should not far exceed the present value.

The chief difficulty of trade in Nigeria has hitherto been the lack of a currency, which compelled the merchant to accept the products of the country in exchange for the imported goods. At first sight this appears a benefit in disguise, for, by the double transaction of exchange, an additional profit is made by the trade, but it must be remembered that the products of Nigeria (exclusive of minerals), as of nearly all tropical countries, are either sylvan or agricultural, and



PORT OF CALABAR, SOUTHERN NIGERIA

Photo, Elder Dempster Co. Ltd.

consequently of considerable bulk when in their raw state, which so increases the cost of transport as not only to swallow up the additional profit, but also to reduce the value of the actual transaction. This difficulty can only be adequately met in two ways, either simple machinery must be introduced so that the natives may reduce the bulk and increase the value of their products sufficiently to enable merchants to carry on a remunerative business, or else knowledge and circulation of a currency must be slowly introduced, both of which are now being carried into effect.

The value of the exports and imports of the whole of Nigeria average £17,300,000 and £14,500,000 respectively. The revenue averages £8,100,000 and the expenditure about £7,000,000, exclusive of the use of loan funds.

The administrative problems of Nigeria and the whole of British West Africa are in many ways similar to those overcome in the past in other Crown colonies in the Torrid Zone. Although the overseas slave trade has been extinct many years, domestic servitude is still partly permitted in Northern Nigeria and Ashanti. It is impossible in comparatively newly acquired territories—especially so in those which have for centuries been subject to the laws of Islam as laid down by

the Koran—to abolish domestic slavery in the life of the first generation after the country has been brought under the new civilised régime. To do so would open the flood gates of rebellion among the owners who had paid in kind for their slaves and had always considered them as “real estate,” and at the same time paralyse all commerce and industry, throwing millions of helpless freed-slaves out of employment without means of subsistence. The result would be that the populous centres would be crowded with unemployed men and prostitute women. The only way out of this difficulty is the slow process of emancipation which is now being carried on. Children of slave parents are born free, purchase of freedom is encouraged, and any ill-treatment of a slave by his master affords quick legal opportunities for immediate freedom, and, when such is established, homes of refuge are provided.

The sale of trade spirit is prohibited in Lagos and Southern Nigeria, and its importation into the Northern Protectorate is slowly being crushed by the imposition of a heavy duty. During the last decade the average annual consumption per head, as nearly as it is possible to calculate from published statistics, is half a gallon, and the revenue only half a million sterling.

AGRICULTURE

ECONOMISTS have proved beyond dispute that production is the mainstay of every lasting nation and that land is the storehouse from which all wealth is drawn. Certain Empire-cities of the past, such as Rome, Constantinople and Venice, thrived for years without production in any of its forms and grew prosperous on commerce and conquest alone. It was, however, but a passing prosperity, which statesmanship, military power and all else failed to maintain; and the decline of these nations was far more rapid than their rise. The wealth of the British Empire comes, in no small measure, from its ownership and control of the sources of production. Its mines have been the richest ever known, its agricultural resources are almost limitless, and its labour supply amounts to hundreds of millions. It is therefore to mining and agriculture—to that which supplies the raw material for manufacture—which the Empire must look for the stability of its greatness; and of the two agriculture is, economically, the more stable and lasting.

The British Isles

Of the total area of the British Isles, which is 76,641,000 acres, over 46,228,000 acres are under cultivation during an average year. The areas under the principal crops are approximately as follows:—

Corn crops	-	-	7 to 9 million acres.
Green crops	-	-	4 to 6 „ „
Other crops (including permanent pasture)	-	-	30 to 32 „ „
Woods and plantations	-	-	2 to 3 „ „

Of the total quantity of wheat annually produced in the world, which varies from 240 to 260 thousand million pounds, the British Isles produce about 3,360 million

pounds and import about 1,520 million pounds. The British Empire produces each year about 8,640 million pounds more than is required for the consumption of its own subjects.

The following table shows the average annual production of the other principal crops in the British Isles:—

Oats	-	-	-	3,000,000 tons.
Barley	-	-	-	1,250,000 „
Potatoes	-	-	-	7,300,000 „
Hay	-	-	-	14,500,000 „

Australia

The cultivated area of the Australian Commonwealth in comparison with the total area of the country represents only one acre in every 114; and averages over a period of five years just over 16,700,000 acres. The areas under the principal crops are as follows:—

Wheat	-	-	-	10,200,000 acres.
Hay	-	-	-	2,800,000 „
Oats	-	-	-	1,100,000 „
Green Forage	-	-	-	450,000 „
Maize	-	-	-	300,000 „
Fruit	-	-	-	200,000 „
Potatoes	-	-	-	180,000 „
Sugar Cane	-	-	-	300,000 „
Barley	-	-	-	400,000 „
Vines	-	-	-	70,000 „

The average annual production of the principal crops is:—

Wheat	-	-	-	120,000,000 bush.
Oats	-	-	-	13,000,000 „
Maize	-	-	-	7,000,000 „
Barley	-	-	-	7,000,000 „
Potatoes	-	-	-	330,000 tons.
Hay	-	-	-	3,000,000 „
Sugar Cane	-	-	-	4,000,000 „
Wine	-	-	-	5,800,000 galls.

The estimated value of the agricultural production of the whole Commonwealth



A COFFEE PLANTATION
Sherwood Forest, Blue Mountains, Jamaica, British West Indies

Photo, West India Committee

averages 100 millions sterling a year, exclusive of the 50 millions worth of dairy produce.

Bounties have hitherto been paid by the Government, under restricted circumstances and amounts, on the following products in order to stimulate their growth within the Commonwealth: sugar, cotton (ginned), New Zealand Flax, hemp, jute, sisal hemp, cotton seed and linseed (for the manufacture of oil), rice, rubber, coffee, tobacco leaf (high grade), and dates (dried).

Canada

The cultivated area in the Dominion of Canada is approximately 60,000,000 acres, which yields field crops to the average annual value of £250,000,000. The areas under the principal crops are as follows:—

Wheat	-	-	-	25,000,000	acres.
Oats	-	-	-	13,000,000	"
Barley	-	-	-	6,000,000	"
Hay and clover	-	-	-	11,200,000	"
Flax	-	-	-	800,000	"
Potatoes	-	-	-	900,000	"
Rye	-	-	-	700,000	"
Peas	-	-	-	200,000	"
Mixed grain	-	-	-	1,200,000	"
Buckwheat	-	-	-	400,000	"
Corn for husking	-	-	-	240,000	"
Fodder	-	-	-	600,000	"
Alfalfa	-	-	-	800,000	"

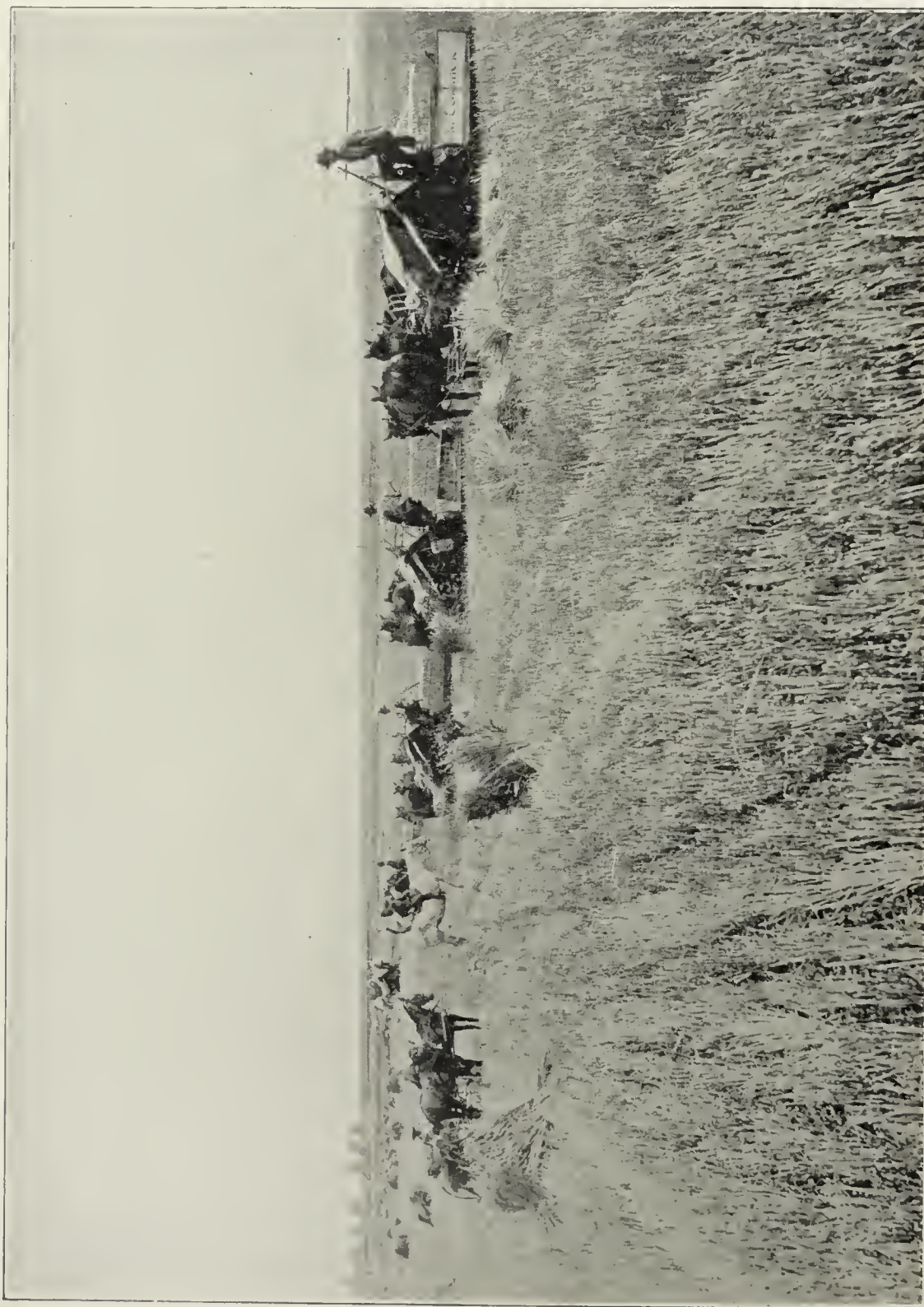
In Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta and the North-West Territories the acreage under oats and barley has been steadily increasing, while the area under wheat, which made such rapid strides between 1900 and 1911, and again between 1915 and 1918, has shown a slight decrease. The dairying industry in Canada has shown a wonderful increase during recent years, and the value of the condensed milk, cheese and butter, produced in the 4,000 factories and creameries now amounts in average annual value approximately to £50,000,000.

WESTERN WHEAT POOLS.

Important developments have occurred in Western Canada during the last five years by the organization of what are popularly known as "Wheat Pools," which represent a form of co-operative marketing by producers. The grain producers of the Prairie Provinces had previously co-operated in the ownership and working of grain elevators, the Saskatchewan Co-operative Elevator Company,



CABBAGE TREES
A Farm in the Illawarra District of New South Wales, Australia



REAPING IN THE PRAIRIE PROVINCES OF CANADA

Photo, Canadian Pacific Railway

established in 1911, and the United Grain Growers, established in 1918, handling between them in a large grain year something like 73 million bushels. The formation of the wheat pools is a further development of the same principle. The inspiration of the enterprise was supplied by the success of the Government control of grain marketing during the war, which control ceased in 1920. The three voluntary western wheat pools began operations, Alberta, on October 29, 1923; Saskatchewan, on September 8, 1924; and Manitoba, on January 28, 1924. In 1924 representatives of each organized a central selling agency, under a Dominion charter, with the title of the Canadian Co-operative Wheat Producers, Ltd. The method of working is to secure five-year contracts with as many wheat growers as possible, for the disposal of all the wheat grown by them, with the exception of the quantities reserved for seed and food. A fixed sum per bushel on the basis of the price for No. 1 Northern is paid by *interim* instalments and by final payments according to the price realized and after the deduction of expenses of marketing and of an elevator and commercial reserve. The claim made for the pools is that better prices are obtained for the members than by the ordinary system of marketing. The Annual Report of the Canadian Wheat Pool covering the crop year 1928-29, shows that the Central Selling Agency of the three Pools handled 253,102,585 bushels of wheat and 35,694,057 bushels of coarse grains that year, involving a turn-over of \$288,097,071. The Pools now operate over 1,600 country elevators and

eleven terminals at Vancouver, Fort William, Port Arthur and Buffalo. The total membership in the Wheat Pools of Canada (in 1930) is well over 140,000 and reserve funds exceed \$25,000,000.*

Ceylon

The total area of this colony is estimated at 16,307,940 acres, of which about 3,200,000 acres are under cultivation, and 670,000 acres are used as pasture land.

The approximate areas under the principal crops are as follows:—

Rubber	-	-	-	470,000	acres.
Rice	-	-	-	820,000	"
Tea	-	-	-	500,000	"
Various grains	-	-	-	133,000	"
Cocoa	-	-	-	40,000	"
Cinnamon	-	-	-	25,000	"
Coco-nuts	-	-	-	880,000	"
Tobacco	-	-	-	14,000	"

In addition there are small areas under cardamoms, cotton, camphor and various fruits and vegetables; the cultivation of these products is slowly extending.

Kenya and Uganda

British East Africa and Uganda are comparatively young colonies and only a tithe of the land available is actually under systematic cultivation. Owing to the topography of the country—which rises up from the low-lying tropical coast lands to the highlands and almost temperate prairies of the interior, and then descends again to the Great Lakes in the heart of Equatorial Africa—the pro-

* *Vide* Dominion Bureau of Statistics, Ottawa.



ON THE DARLING DOWNS, SOUTH QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA

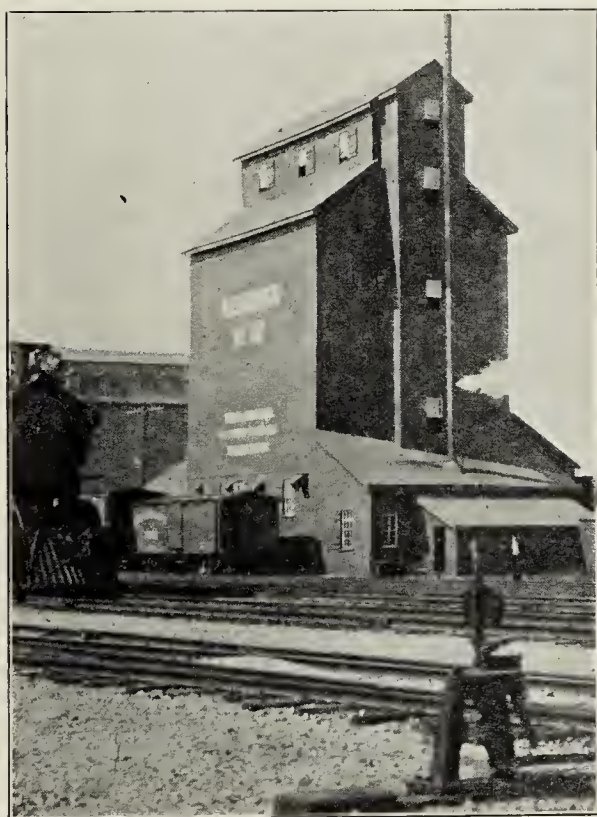


PLOUGHING BY GASOLINE TRACTOR ON THE CANADIAN PRAIRIE
These five tractors are capable of ploughing or breaking 320 acres in 10 hours

Photo, Canadian Pacific Railway

ducts range from the tropical to the temperate in their many varieties. Agricultural industry is as yet in its infancy in East Africa. The opening up of this vast country with its diversified climate and soils presents unlimited scope for all classes of agriculture.

The Agricultural Department of the Government issues a quarterly journal, besides an Annual Report, in which all phases and conditions of agriculture are dealt with at length. The department maintains a stock farm at Naivasha and



A TYPICAL GRAIN ELEVATOR ON THE CANADIAN PRAIRIE

experimental farms at Nairobi, Mazaras and Kibos, where valuable experience is being gradually stored and recorded through the medium of their publications; and the intending settler has at hand the means of ascertaining the classes of crops most suitable for the various districts, whether in the highlands or lowlands.

The Kenya Colony may be divided into two zones, the coastal belt, which is suitable for all kinds of tropical planting, and the interior highlands, which are

eminently suitable for temperate agriculture generally, as well as for cattle and sheep (see *Pastoral Industries*.) The chief coast products are : coco-nuts, sisal hemp, sansevieria fibre, manila hemp, baobab (fibre and paper making), mangrove bark, gum copal, oil-seeds (average annual production 5,000 tons), ground nuts, castor oil, maize, millet, rice, sweet potatoes, manioc, sugar-cane, fruits (pineapple and paw-paws), Seville oranges, limes, and ceara rubber, which is being largely cultivated.

The products of the highlands, which are the principal agricultural region of the colony, include coffee, sisal hemp, wheat, beans, cotton, maize and black wattle. This latter valuable product is also being grown on the lower lands in Uganda, where hand-looms have been introduced. In the region surrounding the Victoria Nyanza, cotton, ground nuts, maize, fibre, oil-seeds and rubber are being cultivated by the once fierce Kavirondo tribes.

The staple food of the 5,000,000 natives in both Colony and Protectorate is mealies. The areas available in the highlands for wheat-growing and the cultivation generally of temperate cereals and vegetables as well as for cattle-breeding and sheep farming are enormous. The land available in the coastal belt and in Uganda for tropical planting is, however, even larger in area. The agricultural products of Uganda include cotton, coffee, chillies, oil-seeds and rubber.

The following figures show the acreage, yield, and export of some of the principal agricultural products of Kenya :—

Wheat	-	-	-	44,000 acres.
Ground nuts	-	(export)	-	2,300 tons.
Coco-nuts	-	-	-	9,000 acres.
Sisal	-	62,000 acres,	yielding 15,000 tons.	
Wattle	-	-	-	9,000 acres.
Tea	-	-	-	4,000 „
Maize	-	-	-	194,000 „
Coffee	-	69,000 acres,	export	144,000 cwts.
Sesume,	-	export of oil	valued at	£86,000.

The following are some of the principal agricultural products of Uganda :—

Maize	-	-	-	100,000 acres.
Coffee	-	(exported)	-	35,000 cwts.
Cotton	-	-	-	180,000 bales.
Bananas and plantains	-	-	-	700,000 acres.

Indian Empire

Agriculture, which has always been the principal industry of India, gives employment to, and supports 230,000,000 people. The total cultivated area amounts to about 290,000,000 acres of which over 260,000,000 acres are situated in British India (see *Indian Empire*).

In each of the British Provinces there is a Department of Land Records and a Department of Agriculture, attached to which are staffs of experts; and in addition there is an Imperial Agricultural Staff with a magnificently equipped Central Station and a Research Institute and College for the higher education of students who have passed through the agricultural course in the colleges of the Provinces.

In British India there are two main systems of land tenure; one is the Zamindari (village communities or single proprietors owning large estates), and the other the Ryotwari (petty proprietors holding their small farms direct from the State). In the former case the land revenue is assessed at an aliquot part of the assessed rental, usually amounting to about one-half. The revenue is payable on each estate as a whole and the assessment remains the same for the entire period of settlement. With the *ryotwari* tenure, however, the system is different. The proprietor having no landlord between himself and the Crown and generally cultivating his own land, the state land revenue is assessed individually on each holding and becomes payable immediately on every acre of extended cultivation, subject, however, to a period of grace in the case of land not properly cleared. But, whereas the Zamindar, or large landowner, must undertake to pay the assessed revenue on his whole estate for the entire period of settlement, the Ryotwari, or peasant-proprietor, may reduce or give up his holding at the beginning of any year, providing reasonable notice is given.

British India, which has a total area of about 748,557,916 acres, is made up of cultivated acres under crop 260,000,000; current fallows 51,000,000; waste land available for cultivation 100,000,000; land not suitable for cultivation 143,000,000; forests 85,000,000; the remainder being either building land, private estates, or broken country.

The total average acreage, taken over a period of ten years, under the principal

crops, together with the average annual yield, is shown in the following table:—

Crop.	Area.	Yield.
Rice - -	79,700,000	620,000,000 cwts.
Wheat - -	23,000,000	8,000,000 tons.
Cotton - -	21,200,000	4,300,000 "
Sesamum (pure) - -	4,000,000	400,000 "
„ (mixed) - -	1,000,000	80,000 "
Rape and Mustard - -		
(Pure) - -	3,900,000	700,000 "
(Mixed) - -	2,500,000	500,000 "
Linseed (pure) - -	2,800,000	400,000 "
„ (mixed) - -	670,000	130,000 "
Jute - -	3,400,000	9,525,000 bales
Sugar Cane - -	2,400,000	2,600,000 tons
Ground-nuts - -	2,300,000	1,147,000 "
Tea - -	600,000	135,000 "
Indigo - -	800,000	100,000 cwts.

The total irrigated area in British India is 49,000,000 acres; of which about 27,000,000 acres are irrigated by canals, 5,500,000 acres by tanks, 10,500,000 by wells, and about 6,000,000 acres by other means. The area irrigated by the State is approximately 23,000,000 acres, and the average annual revenue about £3,200,000, in addition to the charges for interest.

Sir J. Bampfylde Fuller, in his excellent work, "The Indian Empire," says:—

"In India, crops can be cultivated all the year round. During the fiercest heat of the dry months, you may see, clustered about the wells, patches of



WHEAT AWAITING SHIPMENT IN AUSTRALIA



THE FIRST GLIMPSE OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS FROM THE CANADIAN PRAIRIE

small millet—oases in a desert—which, so long as they are watered, can defy the hot wind. Vegetation luxuriates in the warm moisture of the rainy season that follows. The night frosts of the Northern India cold weather do not injure—or greatly retard—the growth of young wheat. It is possible, then, to take two crops off the ground within the year, if they be crops of rapid growth, requiring no more than five or six months between sowing and harvest; so, by double-cropping his land, a cultivator may practically double the area of his holding. In Northern India, wheat often follows a crop of maize or indigo, and, in Southern India, rice follows rice within the year. When a crop requires more than half a year to come to maturity, a second crop may be gathered by sowing it amidst the growing plants. Pulse, for instance, may be sown in standing rice, and rape in standing cotton. In this way, nearly an eighth of the area under tillage is cropped twice within the year.

"There is an idea that much waste land remains to meet the necessities of a growing population. Generally this is incorrect. Statistics exhibit large areas of unreclaimed waste. But, except in the remoter tracts of Assam and Burma, or in the case of expanses of desert—mostly in the Punjab—which may be rendered irrigable by the development of the State canal system, comparatively little of this waste is agriculturally an asset, and over the greater part of India the land can feed a larger population only by the better cultivation of the fields which exist.

New Zealand

The cultivated area in the Dominion of New Zealand is approximately 16,800,000 acres. The areas under the principal crops are approximately as follows:—

Oats	-	-	-	120,000	acres.
Wheat	-	-	-	250,000	"
Rye-grass	-	-	-	45,000	"
Barley	-	-	-	33,000	"
Potatoes	-	-	-	26,000	"
Turnips, etc.	-	-	-	450,000	"

The dairying industry in New Zealand is steadily on the increase. There are in the Dominion about 650,000 dairy cows, and the export of butter and cheese amounts to about £16,000,000 in average annual value.

New Zealand is essentially suited for grazing purposes. Wherever there is light and moisture English grasses thrive when the natural bush and fern are cleared off—in fact, the white clover gradually overcomes the fern, and, from the mildness of the winter season, there are few places where there is not some growth, even in the coldest months of the year. In all parts of the Dominion stock live, although in varying condition, without other food than such as they pick up. Sown grass land, as might be expected, therefore heads the list of cultivation. The total acreage under sown grasses is about 14,700,000 acres.

Rhodesia

Southern Rhodesia is essentially an agricultural country. It is about 95,000,000 acres in extent, and rather less than 43,000,000 acres remain unalienated, and, therefore, available for farming enterprise in one or other of its branches. In addition some 23,000,000 acres are held by land companies, a goodly portion of which is understood to be available for settlement purposes. The agricultural industry is under the direction of the Department of Agriculture, to which is attached a staff of experts responsible to the Director. The various branches of the Department are—Agriculture, Veterinary, Animals, Industries, Tobacco,

Chemistry and Entomology. Laboratories are maintained for veterinary research and chemical and entomological investigation, together with Experiment Stations or Farms in both the provinces of Mashonaland and Matibililand; and a forest Nursery where over 60,000 seedling trees are raised annually. An "Agricultural Journal" is published six times yearly by the Department at 5s. per annum. An Agricultural School has been established and every year a staff of experts gives a set course of lectures in Salisbury on which examinations are subsequently held; while the British South Africa Company has established Home or Train-

creamery at Gwelo, a central point to which cream can safely be railed from any station in the territory. Its capacity is 4,000 lb. of butter per day, and there is cold storage capacity for 150,000 lb. The creamery is so designed that its operations can be extended to cheese-making when required. A bacon factory has been established in Salisbury, and later on a much larger one is to be built at Bulawayo, both at the direction of the British South Africa Company. Proposals have been made for the establishment of a factory for the manufacture of vegetable oils, and one for the making of sugar and sugar products from beetroot.



A TOBACCO PLANTATION IN NORTH QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA
Spraying the leaves to prevent damage by insects

ing Farms at Marandellas and Sinoia, where a limited number of new settlers is received each year, and given every opportunity to study Rhodesian farming conditions. These farm pupils are provided with free lodging, but must provide their own board, which usually costs them about £5 per month. The Department, further, receives applications from persons desiring appointments as farm managers, assistants, or learners and endeavours to bring them into touch with suitable openings.

Ranching and the growing of maize, tobacco, and citrus fruits are at present the principal lines of farming, though considerable attention is also paid to dairying and the breeding of pigs. The British South Africa Company has erected and conducts a

Maize is the staple agricultural product of the country, about 90 million pounds being annually exported, the average yield being seven bags of 200 lb. each to the acre. The type of maize chiefly cultivated is the *White Flat*, of which two varieties are grown, practically to the exclusion of all others—*Hickory King*, and a hybrid derived from it, known as *Salisbury White*. It is contended that Rhodesian White Flat Maize is equal if not superior to any of the same kind grown elsewhere. Rhodesian maize, which in common with that from the rest of South Africa has fetched the highest prices in the London Market, is sun-dried, and yields from 8 to 10 per cent. more flour than maize from the United States and the Argentine, which is kiln-dried.



AN ARTESIAN BORE, QUEENSLAND AUSTRALIA

Over 17,000,000 pounds of tobacco leaf are now produced annually in Southern Rhodesia, chiefly of the Bright Virginia type. The quality is good and is continually being improved. The leaf is cured on the farm. Auction sales of tobacco leaf take place in the early part of each year, and attract representative buyers from all parts of South Africa.

Almost any kind of temperate and tropical fruit grows in Rhodesia, but special attention

priced orange on the market, and Valentia Late, the one fruiting early and the other late in the season. About 200,000 cases of oranges and grape fruit are annually exported.

Sudan

The chief food crop of the country is millet (Arabic, *dura*), a sorghum, known on foreign markets as "*dari*." In the Western Sudan and in some other districts "*dukhn*" (Bulrush millet) is also eaten. *Dura* provides, also, the national drink, "*merissa*," a form of native beer. "*Gasab*" (*dura* stalks) are fed to animals.

These crops are grown for the most part as rain crops and therefore vary considerably in size from year to year, according to the rainfall, which, in the Central parts of the Sudan, is far from reliable. The chief grain producing areas are the Blue Nile, White Nile, Fung, Kassala, and Kordofan Provinces.

Many varieties of *dura* are cultivated, the principal one being "*feterita*." The main crop is sown in July and comes on to the market in November.

About 30,000 tons of *dura* are exported annually on an average to Egypt, England, and the Continent, where it is used mainly for poultry food. It fetches about the same price as maize.

Other edible crops grown under rain cultivation are sesame and ground nuts, but production is still very small, exports amounting to about 10,000 tons per annum respectively, mostly for consumption in Egypt. A good deal of sesame grown is used within the Sudan itself to produce oil for cooking and other domestic purposes.

North of Khartoum a little wheat, barley, beans and chick peas are grown on land watered by pumps and waterwheels.

Dates are grown all over the northern provinces of Halfa, Dongola, and Berber. Three or four thousand tons are exported annually to Egypt, but the bulk of the crop is consumed locally. The number of mature date palms is upwards of 1,250,000. The chief varieties are Barakawi and Gondeila. Nearly all Sudan dates are "*dry*" dates and eminently suited for transport in the Sudan and to the class of consumer amongst whom they are in demand. "*Soft*" varieties are also grown, but production is very small. There is a small trade, also, in dates that have



Photo, Niger Co.

TAPPING A RUBBER TREE IN WEST AFRICA

is paid to the cultivation of oranges, in which it seems possible to build up a big industry. Rhodesian oranges have fetched extremely good prices in the London markets, where they have been spoken of in high terms and compared with the best from recognised and old-established groves. The territory possesses this advantage over most other fruit-growing countries—it can market oranges in Europe when they are not producing at all, *i.e.*, in the summer months. Two varieties of oranges are grown—Washington Navel, a seedless orange which is the finest and highest

been artificially softened. Date growing is increasing, but not at a great pace.

An expert examination has recently been carried out into the conditions of production and various reforms have been suggested, amongst others the provision of a reliable supply of date shoots of good quality and the grading of dates.

Wild coffee is found in parts of the Southern Sudan and is being collected and brought in by natives in small quantities. Cultivation of coffee, as a native crop, in these areas is being encouraged, but it is too early to assume the success of these experiments. The Sudan imports about £E300,000 worth of coffee per annum, nearly the whole

fields, provides ginneries, subsidiary canalisation and roads, as well as financing the cultivator and marketing the crop; and (3) the native tenant, who provides the labour. The tenant's share averages over £E1,000,000 per annum.

Cotton is also grown in the Kassala Province, which has been opened up by a railway to Port Sudan, and also in the Tokar District of the Red Sea Province. The total area of the Sudan cotton fields is about 250,000 acres.

The Sudan produces about 70 per cent. of the world's supply of gum arabic, the main uses for which are in confectionery and stationery. Exports amount to about 20,000



ON THE FAMOUS CANTERBURY PLAINS, NEW ZEALAND

of which comes from Abyssinia. When the Abyssinian supply is short deficiency is made good from Brazilian and Kenya coffee.

The completion of the Sennar Dam on the Blue Nile, and the inauguration of the Gezira Irrigation Scheme on a large scale has enabled from 100,000 to 150,000 acres to be cultivated with cotton. This product now holds first place as the most valuable crop in the country. The average annual value exceeds £E3,100,000. The type of cotton grown is a long stapled Egyptian cotton of a high grade and good average quality.

The cotton is grown on a three year rotation under a partnership system, the three partners being: (1) the Government, which provides the water, the irrigation canals and the land; (2) the Sudan Plantations Syndicate which manages the cotton

tons per annum, valued at £E800,000 (see *Sudan*).

The Union of South Africa

There are schools of agriculture and experimental farms in all the provinces, and irrigation is being resorted to in the Cape Province, Natal, and Orange Free State with very encouraging results; Government assistance is being given.

The average crops are wheat, 8,400,000 bushels; oats, 4,800,000 bushels; barley, 800,000 bushels; maize, 15 million bags of 200 lbs.; potatoes, 5,000,000 bushels; butter, 11,000,000 lb.; cheese, 5,000,000 lb.; cotton, 8,000,000 lb.; tobacco, 15,500,000 lb.; tea, 4,000,000 lb.; sugar, 115,000 tons; and wattle bark, 200,000,000 lb. The area under

vines is approximately 60,000 acres. The value of the fruit exported averages about £800,000. In Natal the total area under cultivation is 952,000 acres, about half of which is cultivated by whites. The principal crops are sugar, coffee, cotton, wattle-bark, tea, tobacco, arrowroot, sweet-potatoes, maize, wheat, barley, oats, lucerne and fruit. The area under cultivation in the Transvaal is 2,900,000 acres. The principal crops are

being Worcester, Cradock, Robertson and Humansdorp. New land is, however, being brought under irrigation every year, as it is impossible to rely upon a regular return from the soil without irrigation; which is also being developed in Natal (Mooi River Valley and Umtovi Division) and, in a lesser degree in the Orange Free State.

Only about one-tenth part of United South Africa is capable of irrigation; and



Photo,

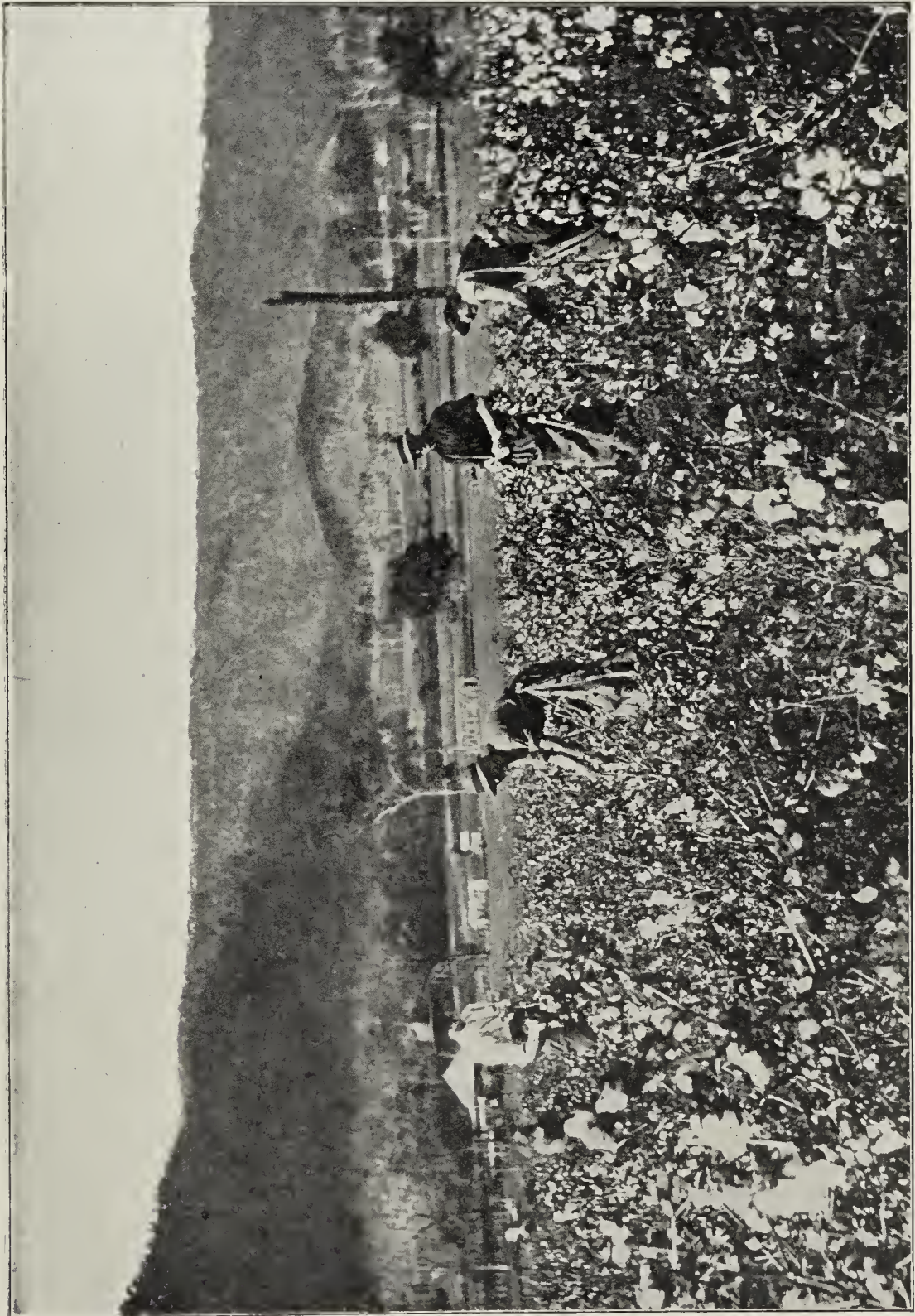
A TEA GARDEN IN CEYLON

Lipton Ltd.

maize, oat-hay, tobacco, cotton and fruit. In the Orange Free State, which is primarily an agricultural country, the total area under cultivation is 2,700,000 acres. The principal crops are maize, wheat, oats, barley, fruit and potatoes.

The farming industry has been greatly stimulated in the Cape Province by the rapid development of irrigation since 1891. This province possesses over half of the irrigated area of the Union; the principal districts

the "Dry Farming" system, demonstrated at the Government Station at Litchtenberg in the Transvaal, is being successfully carried on in many parts. The principle of such farming is to conserve rain, which falls during the non-sowing time, by preventing its evaporation, and to keep it in the ground until the sowing season. Where 10 inches of rain fall during the year, and the soil is not less than 4 feet deep, it has proved quite successful.



Photo, Australian Government

COTTON PICKERS, QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA
One of the Empire's New Cotton Fields

West Indies

The cultivation of the sugar-cane received considerable impetus during the scarcity of beet-sugar owing to the Great War of 1914-18, and although by no means the lucrative industry it was at one time, may still be called the main agricultural industry of the British West Indies; but cocoa, cotton, tobacco, and fruit, as well as other products of tropical and semi-tropical zones, are yearly gaining in relative importance.

The West India Royal Commission, which was appointed in 1896 to inquire into the depressed condition of the sugar-producing colonies of the West Indies, issued their report in 1897. The conclusions then reached are, however, now of little value, as the reduced production of beet-sugar caused by the European War, together with the rise in prices, has given a new lease of life to the sugar-cane plantations of the British West Indies. In past years much of the sugar produced in these Islands went to the United States, but in more recent times Canada has absorbed a considerable proportion of the exports of sugar and other commodities produced in the West Indies. During the Great War the supplies of sugar which had hitherto gone to the United States were diverted to the United Kingdom, and the high prices which have been obtained for this staple food during quite recent years have, to a certain extent, enabled the West Indian planters to maintain their trade with the Motherland. Towards the end of 1923 a Parliamentary Commission was appointed to visit these Islands for the purpose of stimulating inter-Colonial and Imperial trade.

A Convention abolishing bounties on the production of sugar in France, Germany, and other Continental countries came into force in September, 1903. This and other causes, including the carrying out of many of the recommendations of the Royal Commission, have resulted in a very marked improvement in the position of nearly all the Colonies during the past twenty years. Moreover, the position of the sugar industry has been improved by the preference granted in the Dominion of Canada to British-grown sugar, and to the scarcity caused by the Great European War.

In 1898, in accordance with the recommendations of the West India Royal Com-

mission, a special Department of Agriculture, supported by Imperial Funds, was created for the West Indies, and placed under the charge of a Commissioner, with headquarters at Barbados.

The agricultural activity in the important islands of the British West Indies is as follows:—

JAMAICA.—The total area under cultivation is 941,708 acres. This may be divided into land appropriated to pastoral purposes and that devoted to agriculture in the more limited application of the term. The soil of this island is highly fertile. The area under bananas is 82,435 acres; under coffee, 24,500 acres; under sugar-cane, 34,890 acres; coconut palms, 17,000 acres; cocoa, which is steadily increasing, covers 14,000 acres, and ground provisions occupy an area of 105,000 acres. The average annual value of the export of bananas is approximately £2,000,000; of sugar, £600,000; log-wood, £100,000; logwood extract, £170,000; ginger, £60,000; cocoa, £102,000; coffee, £300,000.

TRINIDAD.—The soil of this island is not only highly fertile, but of so diversified a nature as to render it capable of producing almost every vegetable product of tropical and inter-tropical regions. Out of a total area of 1,190,484 acres, there still remain 530,000 acres of unalienated Crown land, of which about 170,000 acres are cultivable. The principal crops are sugar, cocoa, coffee, coco-nuts, fruit, and timber. The area under the first three is very large, and the production is steadily increasing. In addition to the large number of coco-nuts used in the local manufacture of oil and in conversion into copra for export, the colony now exports from 15 to 20 millions of these nuts yearly. The average annual value of the cocoa exported is £1,500,000, and of sugar, £1,000,000.

BARBADOS.—The cultivation of sugar-cane has been the chief industry of this island since the middle of the seventeenth century, and the area under this crop is now about 40,000 acres. Sea Island cotton has been grown in increasing quantity during recent years. The banana industry has been steadily increasing since 1902.

WINDWARD ISLANDS.—The principal agricultural products of these Islands are cocoa, sugar, spices, rubber, cotton, coffee, fruit, coco-nuts, limes, logwood, bananas and arrowroot.



YAMS FOR SALE
Scene in a West African Market

Photo, Niger Co.

LEEWARD ISLANDS.—The production of sugar forms the chief industry of the islands of Antigua and St. Kitts ; cocoa cultivation is increasing in Dominica ; limes are largely grown in Dominica and Montserrat, as well as arrowroot ; and cotton is becoming an important product in all the islands except Dominica.

BAHAMAS.—Many islands of this small group are quite unfit for cultivation. The soil generally shows every grade between the extreme fertility of the pineapple grounds of the Island of Eleuthera and the extreme unproductiveness of the barren lands of Abaco, Andros Island, and New Providence. The only important agricultural industries are pineapple growing and orange and grape cultivation. The production of Bahamas hemp, for which these Islands have become famous during recent years, has an average annual value of about £40,000. Tomatoes are cultivated in considerable quantities, and are exported very largely to the United States.

British Empire

The average annual production, consumption and surplus, or deficiency, of the

staple agricultural products within the Empire is as follows :—

WHEAT—	
Production -	59,040 million lbs.
Consumption -	50,400 „ „
Surplus -	8,640 „ „
	Surplus over requirements.
OATS—	
Production -	20,800 million lbs.
Consumption -	21,440 „ „
Deficiency -	640 „ „
	Supplies against requirements.
BARLEY—	
Production -	14,000 million lbs.
Consumption -	13,600 „ „
Surplus -	400 „ „
	Supplies over requirements.
MAIZE—	
Production -	7,680 million lbs.
Consumption -	12,480 „ „
Deficiency -	4,800 „ „
	Supplies against requirements.

The Empire's supply of wheat is derived principally from the various Dominions and Colonies in the following order : India, Canada, Australia, British Isles, New Zealand, South Africa.

The supply of Empire-grown cotton comes from the following Dominions and Colonies.

Much is, however, still imported into the British Isles from the United States : India, Egypt and the Sudan, East Africa and Uganda, Nigeria, Cyprus, Nyasaland, West Indies, Ceylon and Malta.

The following countries are the chief producers of Empire-grown sugar-cane : India, Mauritius, Australia, South Africa, West Indies, British Guiana, Fiji.

Rubber comes principally from the following parts of the Empire : Malaya, Ceylon, Gold Coast, India, Nigeria, British Guiana.

The principal cocoa growing colonies are : Gold Coast, Trinidad, Grenada, Ceylon, Nigeria, Jamaica, St. Lucia, Leeward Islands, St. Vincent, British Guiana, British Honduras, Fiji, Seychelles.

The principal tea producers are : India, Ceylon, Natal, Nyasaland, Mauritius and Fiji.

Coffee comes mostly from India, Ceylon, Jamaica, Malay States, Kenya, Uganda, Nyasaland, British Guiana, Trinidad, Nigeria, Honduras.*

World

The following table shows the average annual yield of the staple agricultural products of the British Empire compared with those of foreign countries.

WHEAT YIELD IN MILLION POUNDS.

British and Indian Empires	-	59,040	million lbs.
United States of America	-	50,400	" "
France	-	14,000	" "
Argentina	-	13,440	" "
Italy	-	13,000	" "
Spain	-	9,100	" "
Rumania	-	6,700	" "
Germany	-	5,800	" "

(Russian figures over a period not available.)

OATS YIELD IN MILLION POUNDS.

United States of America	-	40,000	million lbs.
British and Indian Empires	-	20,800	" "
Germany	-	14,080	" "
France	-	11,520	" "
Poland	-	6,720	" "

BARLEY YIELD IN MILLION POUNDS.

British and Indian Empires	-	14,000	million lbs.
United States of America	-	12,000	" "
Japan	-	6,000	" "
Germany	-	5,600	" "
Spain	-	4,400	" "

MAIZE YIELD IN MILLION POUNDS

United States of America	-	146,880	million lbs.
Argentina	-	17,760	" "
Rumania	-	12,480	" "
Brazil	-	9,120	" "
British and Indian Empires	-	7,680	" "
Yugoslavia	-	7,000	" "
Italy	-	6,720	" "

For an account of the agricultural activity in the smaller colonies of the Empire, see under their respective headings.

* The above list refers to Empire sources of production, and not to imports into the British Isles (*q.v.*)



ASCENSION

TERRITORIALY this island is little more than a mountain of volcanic origin rising from that desert of waters the South Atlantic. It lies in lat. $7^{\circ} 55' S.$ and long. $14^{\circ} 25' W.$, and has an area of only 38 square miles. It is dominated by a peak which rises 2,820 ft. above the level of the surrounding sea ; but standing in the teeth of the South-east trade wind it enjoys a dry and healthy climate. Up to 1922 it was used as a base hospital for the crews of the West Coast Division of the Cape Squadron. Being

conveniently situated on the trade route to Cape Town it also formed an admirable coal-ing station and victualling base for vessels of the British Navy in these seas.

The Island is supposed to have been discovered first on Ascension Day by one, Joao de Nova Gallego, but it is to the famous Portuguese navigator, Alphonse d' Albuquerque, who visited the island some years later, that it owes its name. No attempts were made by the Portuguese either to colonise or to take active possession of their



"Zodiac"

THE ISLE OF ASCENSION

Photo by A. A. Kirby

On the left are the Three Sisters, highest point 1,500 feet ; in the centre is Green Mountain, and to the right is Cross Hill half-way up the latter is Admiralty Cottage, former residence of the Commandants of the Island

new discovery, and the island remained uninhabited until it was occupied by the British in 1815.

Up to the year 1922 the correct title for this little island naval base was "H.M.S. Ascension," as its population numbered only a few hundreds, composed almost entirely of officers and men of the Navy and Marines, with some of their families, and a few Kroom-boys from the coast of the mainland. It was then under the jurisdiction of the Lords of

island passed into the hands of the Colonial Office. It is strongly fortified, although all the guns are not of the most modern type, and it possesses coaling and victualling yards, hospitals, and a cable and wireless telegraph station. Its garrison formerly consisted of men of the Navy and Marines, as well as a numerous medical and auxiliary staff. The Settlement, which is situated in a tiny bay on the north-east coast of the island, is named Georgetown. Every year from January to



GEORGETOWN

"Zodiac"

the Admiralty, and was governed in exactly the same manner as a battleship, with a naval officer as "Captain-in-Charge." Owing, however, to the economies considered necessary in the fighting services after the Great War the Navy relinquished control in 1922, and the administration of this historic little

May, Ascension is the resort of sea turtle, hundreds of which are caught by the inhabitants. Their weight often exceeds 500 lb. The population of the island is now just over 100, and it is an important cable station.

AUSTRALIA

AND DEPENDENCIES OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA

THE size and modern progress of the Australian Commonwealth, with its premier colony of Papua and the Mandatory ex-German sphere, both on the island of New Guinea, make it necessary—as in the case of the Indian Empire, the Dominions of Canada and New Zealand, United South Africa, Newfoundland and Rhodesia—to consider this country as a separate British nation in the making—an immense, closely affiliated empire in itself. Before plunging into historical, political, geographical and commercial details, it is well to pause for a moment to consider the potentialities of this island-continent, which has been aptly described as the first example in history of “a continent for a nation, and a nation for a continent,” the existence and prosperity of which adds enormously to the wealth and strength of the British Empire.

It is a fertile and healthy country, 2,974,581 square miles in extent, or twenty-five times the size of the United Kingdom, inhabited by 6,200,000 people, 95 per cent. of whom are of British origin ; it is surrounded by the ocean, and protected from foreign aggression, not only by a growing home fleet, but also by the British Royal Navy ; possesses a strong national army, to which a backbone of inestimable value is given by the veteran corps, which did such splendid service in the Great European War ; has a revenue of between 78–85 millions sterling a year ; a rapidly increasing foreign trade of over £310,000,000 per annum, the largest portion of which (130 millions) is happily with the United Kingdom ; possesses mines of gold, silver and precious stones, as well as of coal, iron and tin ; has forty large cities, and has nearly finished the construction of what should prove one of the most magnificent capitals in the world. It already possesses its own colonies in New Guinea and the Pacific Islands, which themselves have an area of about 190,000 square miles, and a native population of nearly 1,000,000. There

are on this island-continent over 763,000,000 acres of unsold State-land, and, although the National Debt is heavy (Federal Government £460,000,000 and States Administration £554,000,000), it must be remembered that the largest portion, viz., £289,000,000, is represented by national railways, and £26,000,000 by tramways, which yield a considerable annual profit, and that the cost to Australia of the war for civilisation was about £474,000,000.

It must be borne in mind that the Australians have determinedly refused imported coloured labour, even for work in the tropical regions, generously reserving the whole continent for the habitation of white men. Such, in brief outline, is the Australian Commonwealth of to-day ; what will it become to-morrow, and what geographically, politically and commercially, is its present condition and future position likely to be in relation to the other portions of the world-wide British Empire ?

DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

In every country past traditions bear a strong relationship to present and future conditions, therefore the correct interpretation of history forms the best master, and the surest guide. This is, perhaps, more especially the case in countries like India and Egypt ; but it must be remembered that many of the Dominions and colonies of Britain have but a comparatively recent history to work upon, the early native customs no longer counting as important factors, as, in cases like Canada, Australia and New Zealand, the aborigines are fast becoming extinct, and the few that are left are either civilised, or confined to native reserves. In Australia, perhaps more than in any other colony, history has but a small bearing on the future, for its early developments were confused, its aristocracy were the landed proprietors, and it has frontiers with no mixed races of past traditions. For these reasons, it is necessary



DISCOVERY OF SITE OF SYDNEY



Photo, Australian Government

STATUE OF CAPTAIN COOK, HYDE PARK,
SYDNEY

to give only a brief resumé of the early history of Australia, reserving the space for its present aspects and future possibilities.

Doubts exist as to who first sighted the Australian Continent, some historians giving the honour to a Frenchman, who they assert, was driven there from the Cape of Good Hope by contrary winds, others holding that the Dutch ship "Duyfhen" first reached these shores and anchored in Carpentaria Bay, which certainly seems most likely, as the Dutch East India Company sent many vessels of discovery into the "unknown seas of the south."

In 1642, Anthony Van Dieman, the Governor of Java, equipped and sent forth two vessels, under Abel Janz Tasman, who, after calling at Mauritius, then a Dutch Colony, sailed away into uncharted seas to discover a new land of promise, and after a stormy voyage, fraught with many dangers, landed at Marion Bay on the west coast of Tasmania. His stay on this island was,

* Previously Cook had been exploring in Canada, and had surveyed and charted the shores of Newfoundland.

† The name "Botany Bay" was given on account of the magnificent collection of flora made later by Sir J. Banks in this portion of New South Wales.

however, very short. Again setting forth, he sailed about until chance carried him to the shores of New Zealand, thus making a second discovery, with which he rested content and returned to Batavia.

The Dutch sent several other expeditions to explore the coast of what they termed the "Great South Land," but the first Englishman to visit Australia was William Dampier, a captain of buccaneers, who, however, made no explorations owing to the mutiny of the crews of both his vessels.

For many years no further efforts were made to explore this new land, owing to the unfavourable reports given by Tasman and Dampier, until, in 1768, Captain James Cook sailed out of Plymouth Sound, in the barque *Endeavour*, on the first of his many famous voyages of discovery in the South Seas.* After remaining some time at Tahiti for the purpose of taking astronomical observations, and calling at the Society Islands, the *Endeavour* sailed into Tawranga Bay, New Zealand, in October, 1769.

Cook explored the adjacent coast and hoisted the British Flag in Mercury Bay; then he headed for North Island, and took possession in the name of King George. After sailing completely round the three islands which now form the Dominion of New Zealand, the *Endeavour* left the land astern at Cape Farewell, and some weeks later dropped anchor in Botany Bay, Australia.†

"New South Wales" still bears the name given to the country by Captain Cook, who annexed it to the Crown of Britain. Many misfortunes attended this adventurous voyage; the *Endeavour* struck a rock, and several months were occupied in the work of stopping and repairing the leak, which was carried out in a small river near Cape Tribulation, with the surrounding country swarming with hostile natives. Eventually the vessel was sufficiently repaired to enable the sails to be set for England.

Captain Cook made many subsequent voyages in the sloops, *Resolution*, *Discovery* and *Adventure*, accompanied by parties of scientists, and an exploration was made of the coast-line and littoral of Australia, Tasmania and New Zealand. For many years, however, nothing was done by the



CIRCULAR QUAY, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES *Photo, Australian Government*

Sailing through Sydney Heads, Captain Phillip established, on the site where now stands the great City and Port of Sydney, the first convict settlement in Australia, over a century ago

Government to occupy these lands, or bring them under administrative control.

CONVICT SETTLEMENTS.

About this time great necessity arose in England for clearing the over-crowded convict establishments by deportation, and at the same time the Governments of Lord North and Lord Sydney were, by duty bound, compelled to assist the loyal settlers who had remained true to the King in the American War of Independence of 1776. A suggestion was put forward for the establishment of a loyalist colony in New South Wales, but owing to the regrettable apathy of the Government nothing was accomplished in this direction for many years. Without entering into details of the founding of the first convict settlement in Australia, it may be said that several excellent memorandums were drawn up as how best this could be accomplished, and many well thought out schemes proposed. In 1786, Lord Sydney's Government forwarded instructions to the Admiralty to carry out this expedition, and Captain Arthur Phillip was appointed the first Captain-General and Commander-in-Chief of New South Wales.

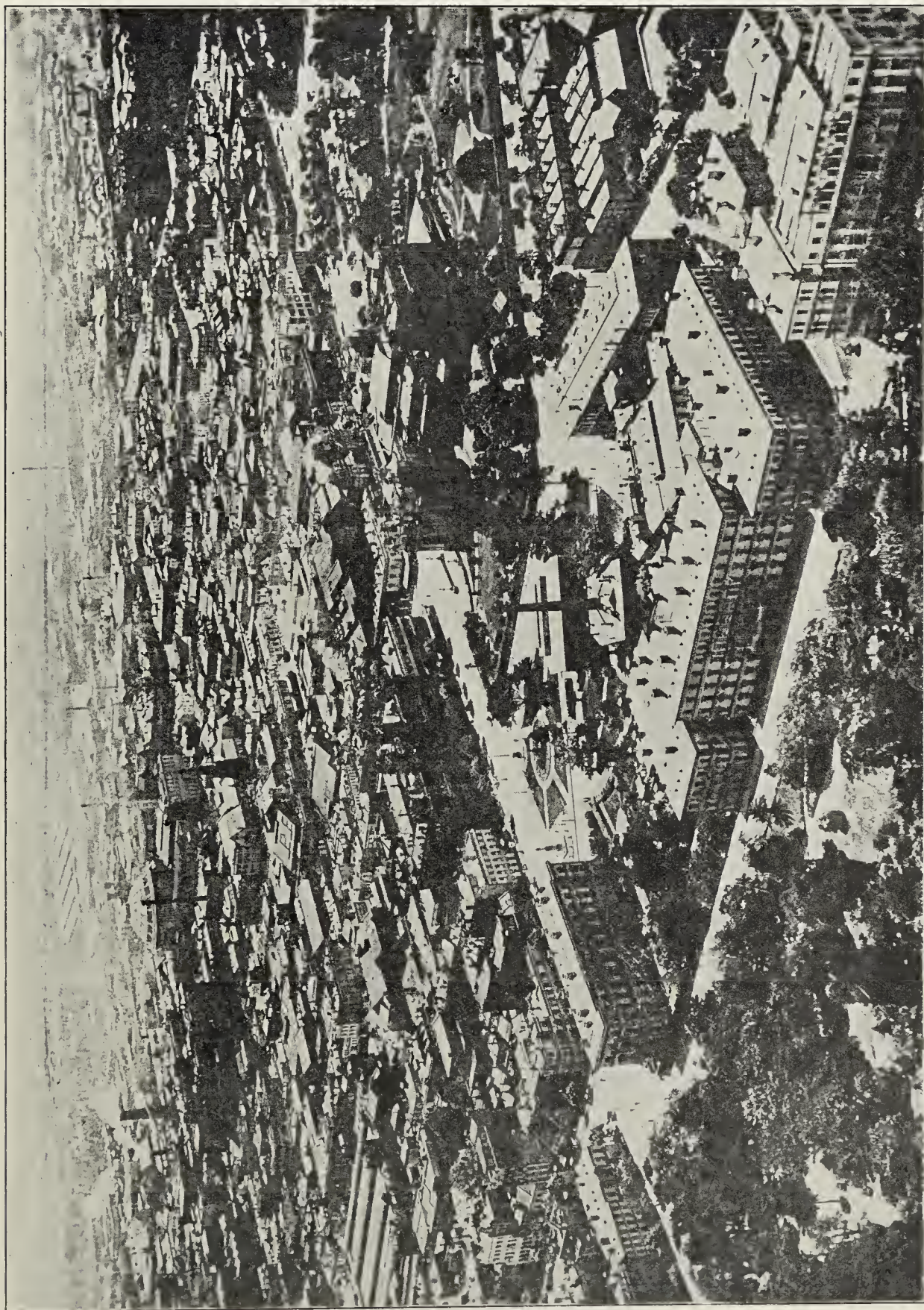
The first fleet, composed of nine ships with 443 officers, crew and marines, and 720 convicts (men, women and children), left English shores on the 13th May, 1788, under the command of Captain Phillip.* After

some delay at the Cape and Rio de Janeiro, where supplies had to be taken on board, Botany Bay was reached in January of the following year. The surrounding country was explored with the object of finding a suitable place for the establishment of the settlement, and sailing through Sydney Heads, Phillip discovered the magnificent harbour of Port Jackson, on the shores of which the convicts were landed, with stores and a guard of marines, and the first colony in New South Wales was founded.

The subsequent trials and troubles of this young colony need not be followed here, nor the founding of similar settlements on Norfolk Island, and in Van Dieman's Land (Tasmania); sufficient to say that the abolition of the transportation of convicts to Australia took place in 1851-3, when responsible government was granted, and to Van Dieman's Land in 1853-4, the name of which, with all its odious associations, was altered in the following year to "Tasmania."

A brief enumeration of some of the most important events in the early progress of this colony may prove of interest to those who have not the time to study the detailed, though interesting, history of Australia, which is so full of unique situations and intricate problems as to make it without parallel in the histories of the nations. First came trouble with the natives; then an insurrection of the convicts which was quickly

* An excellent first Governor, and a thoroughly humane man.



MELBOURNE FROM THE AIR

Photo, Australian Government

suppressed; the alarming growth of the liquor traffic, during which period many labourers received their wages in rum; the difficulties of settling the time-expired convicts as free colonists, and their social status and relation to convicts still in bondage; the construction of public works, which was greatly retarded by want of capital and labour; the first gold rush to Summerhill Creek during 1851-5, when nuggets were found by the score, which after milling exceeded £1,000 in value, and the price of food went up to an enormously high figure (wheat 16s. per bushel, potatoes 21s. per cwt., beer 5s. per gallon); then came the political struggles relative to the passing of the Constitution Bill, and the refusal of the hereditary principle in the formation of the Senate; the question of the land settlement, which gave rise to a difficulty between the Governor and the Ministry, the former granting a land concession which was endorsed by the Secretary of State, and the Cabinet refusing to acknowledge the right of the Governor, using the Royal Prerogative, to make such a grant. Sir William Denison solved the difficulty by obtaining the seal of the Cabinet and refusing the resignation of his ministers.*

RAPID DEVELOPMENT.

From 1880 onward, may be reckoned the period of expansion. Queensland was formed from New South Wales in 1859, Victoria in 1857, South and West Australia received a great impetus from the founding of the Squatting Districts; and the influx of capital from the United Kingdom was followed by a great increase in the export of wool.

The construction of the first railway was commenced in 1850, the line running from Sydney to Paramatta (an early settlement), Liverpool, Bathurst and Goulburn; these and other partly constructed lines were afterwards purchased by the State, and rapid railway construction became the chief practical policy of the government. The suppression of bushranging next became the problem of the day; many daring robberies under arms

were perpetrated, small towns were held up, and life and property became unsafe. In one instance, the gold train from Lachlan was successfully raided, and specie to the value of £14,000 was stolen. This state of affairs, which lasted from 1858-64 brought about the increase in the mounted police forces, and the strengthening of the law against robbery and violence.†

In 1861, the miners at Lambring Flats attacked the Chinese, who were then working on the gold diggings at various occupations, and committed barbarities which were disgracefully accentuated by the refusal of the juries to convict the ringleaders. This was followed in 1868 by the attempted assassination of the Duke of Edinburgh, who was visiting the colony. So infuriated were the people at this unwarrantable attack that they nearly lynched O'Farrell the assassin, and a law was passed sternly suppressing treason.‡

From 1870 to the present day, the whole working population of Australia has been busily engaged in the extension of industrial enterprise, the peopling of the soil, and the general commercial development of the country. The body politic has been wrestling with problems of the union of the several States and Tasmania. With the successful formation of the Commonwealth, the rise of Australia, as a great British nation, may be said to have commenced, therefore it is advisable to deal more fully with this phase of modern colonial history.

FEDERATION OF THE AUSTRALIAN STATES.

The achievement of federation offers the most striking example of Australian constructive policy, and has, without doubt, greatly strengthened the Empire's position in the Pacific. By uniting the five States of the Continent and Tasmania, not only has an era of more sound statesmanship been inaugurated, and inter-colonial commerce stimulated by the abolition of the States customs, but the heterogeneous systems of defence have been welded into a united army under the

* Several successive ministries had refused their sanction.

† Trouble with the 40,000 miners on the Bendigo diggings arose owing to the Government raising the mining licence fees. Riots occurred, but were, however, easily quelled by the military, after a sharp skirmish at Eureka Hill; but the miners obtained their demands, which were a reduction in the price of licences and Parliamentary representation.

‡ It is thought that O'Farrell was connected with some Fenian Society; and this law, although showing in a conclusive manner the loyalty of the Colonies, was disallowed by the Imperial Parliament, as it was of such a drastic character.



STATION LIFE IN AUSTRALIA (1)

compulsory service law ; birth has been given to a growing navy, and thus the true imperial policy of " creating new centres of strength " has been successfully commenced.

A brief examination of the various causes which brought about the federation of New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, West Australia and Tasmania may serve to show that no sentiment of wishing to stand aloof from the family circle of Empire influenced the unification of these colonies under a Commonwealth. Previously to the London Conference of 1887, Australian defence rested solely upon the volunteer organisations in the separate States, and no provision whatsoever was made for naval defence, distinct from that naturally afforded by the Royal Navy. At this conference between the Imperial and Colonial Ministers an agreement was made for the formation of an auxiliary Australian Squadron, under the control of the British Admiralty, to be maintained in Australian waters, half the cost being defrayed by these colonies.

Military necessities and home affairs brought about a conference in Adelaide in 1897, to which each of the States, as well

as New Zealand and Tasmania, sent a representative, the outcome of which was a strong resolve to pave the way for the federation of all the Australian colonies.

New Zealand gradually withdrew from this union. Being a strong and separate colony she rightly preferred to stand alone, as a separate link in the chain of Empire. Before the federation could be carried out, which took longer than would have been the case owing to the strong and natural opposition of many of the States to give up, not only a portion of their autonomy, but also a considerable portion of their revenue, as the abolition of the States Customs was a primary factor in the policy of the Unionists, the Boer War broke out in Africa, and a wave of patriotism spread over these colonies as quickly and as strongly as it did over India, Canada and the other portions of the great Empire. Australia (including Tasmania) sent to the seat of war, 16,175 horse and foot, and the New Zealand contingent numbered 6,171.

Notwithstanding these events the Commonwealth became an accomplished fact in 1900-1 ; and the Federal Parliament, like the States Legislatures, is composed of the House of Representatives and the Senate,



STATION LIFE IN AUSTRALIA (2)

*Photo, Australian Government***SETTLER'S SHACK IN THE MURRUMBIDGEE IRRIGATION AREA, NEW SOUTH WALES**

which is presided over by the Governor-General acting in the name of the King-Emperor. Both houses are elected by the people, the members of the Lower House for three years and of the Upper Chamber for six years, appeal is allowed to the Privy Council of the Governor-General.

The principal original laws provided for the sole employment of white men on all mail contract work (the result of the cry raised by Sir H. Parkes "Australia for the Australians") the illegality of strikes; the prevention of indentured labour, unless the contract be approved by the Government (Labour Party's policy to prevent the reduction of current wages, by the introduction of indentured immigrant labour); the exclusion of Pacific Islanders and all coloured labourers with the exception of Maories (supported by the Labour Party for the same reasons).

The laws passed by the first few parliaments (Sir Edmund Barton, Mr. Deakin, Mr. Watson and Mr. Reid) related principally to the uniformity of the customs duties, systems of defence, postal and telegraph arrangements, the abolition of the inter-colonial duties, and the extension of the suffrage to every citizen irrespective of sex.

Just as, before Federation, full powers of self-government in local matters had been

enjoyed by each separate colony, so now each State retains its former powers of legislation and administration, except in certain matters, over which exclusive control has been surrendered by all the States. The legislative powers of the Federal Parliament embrace among other matter, trade and commerce, navigation and shipping, railways, taxation, naval and military defence, quarantine, light-houses, and fisheries; finance and insurance; postal, telegraph and like services; census and statistics; emigration, immigration and naturalisation; currency, banking, weights and measures; and conciliation and arbitration in industrial disputes.

Various departments and sub-departments have been transferred from time to time from the States to the Commonwealth, while other departments necessary for the due performance of the Commonwealth functions have been created. The Ministerial departments are as follows: Prime Minister, External Affairs, Home Affairs, Treasury, Trade and Customs, Defence, Attorney-General, and Postmaster-General.

Since the advent of systems of responsible government, steady and strenuous efforts have been made by all the States to develop the resources of the country, and to improve the condition of the people. To this end commerce and settlement have been assisted



VESTIBULE OF AUSTRALIA HOUSE, LONDON



ABORIGINES OF AUSTRALIA



CROSSING A RIVER IN QUEENSLAND



A RIVER IN THE TROPICAL NORTH



"SUNSET ON THE BRISBANE RIVER"

Photos, Australian Government



A GLEN IN THE BLUE MOUNTAINS, NEW SOUTH WALES



THE NATIONAL PASS, BLUE MOUNTAINS, NEW SOUTH WALES

Photos, Australian Government



MARTIN PLACE, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES *Photo, Australian Government*

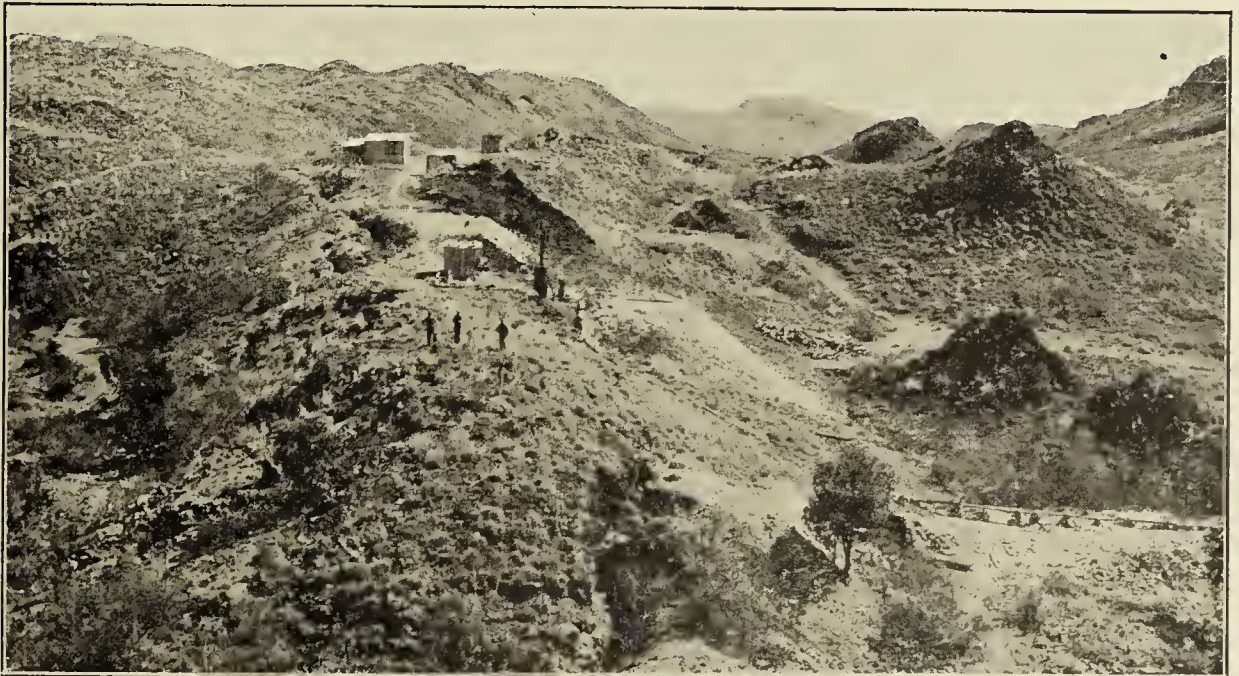


MONALTA GORGE, NEAR ADELAIDE

Photo, Australian Government

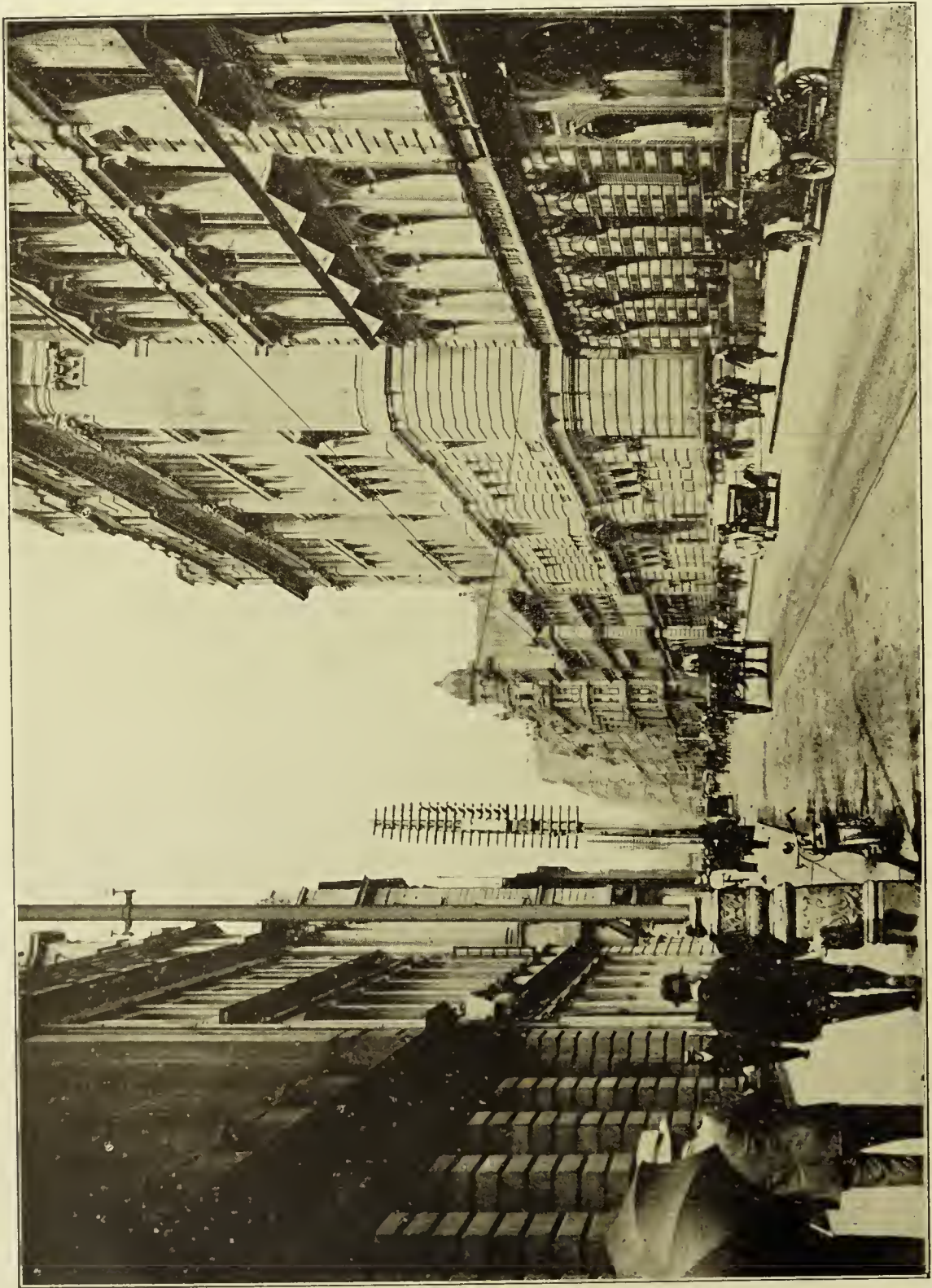


LOADING CAMELS FOR THE WEST AUSTRALIAN DESERT



BAMBOO CREEK, MARBLE BAR, WEST AUSTRALIA

Photos, Australian Government



PITT STREET, SYDNEY, CAPITAL OF NEW SOUTH WALES

Photo, Australian Government

by the construction of railways throughout the States ; by the extension of highways wherever settlement has gone ; by the construction of irrigation works, not only for domestic and stock purposes, but also for the irrigation of the land ; by subsidising steamship services, and by the construction of extensive docks, wharves, and jetties at the coastal towns. The "bush" has in a large part been explored, surveyed and thrown open to settlement. Facilities have been granted both to *bona fide* settlers on the land, and to the working classes in the centres of more dense population, to acquire possession of the soil, and special inducements have been offered to immigrants by the introduction of new forms of tenure on easy terms and conditions. Postal services have been extended throughout the settled portions of the land. Free schools have been established and are maintained in all the States. Thoroughbred livestock has been imported for the purpose of improving the Australian breeds. Agricultural colleges, experimental farms, and technical schools have been established. Money is advanced to settlers by the various governments to assist them in the construction of improvements and in developing their selections. Instruction and advice is given to farmers, dairymen, fruit-growers, and stock breeders in the best methods of conducting their several businesses. It is recognised that the present population of 6,200,000 is inadequate, hence the desire on the part of the government to secure desirable immigrants, who, while assisting in the development of the Commonwealth, may participate in its benefits.

THE FEDERAL CAPITAL.

By the Commonwealth Constitution Act, 1900, provision was made for the establishment of a Federal Capital in New South Wales, and it was also provided that the Commonwealth Parliament should sit at Melbourne until it met at the new seat of Government. In 1910 the Commonwealth Government acquired from the State of New South Wales, an area of approximately 940 square miles in the district of Yass-Canberra, about 200 miles to the south-west of Sydney, and proceeded to take the preliminary steps towards the establishment of a capital city in that district. A large number of survey

operations were carried out ; these included the demarcation of the boundaries of the territory, the determination of the boundaries of privately-owned properties, surveys for engineering works and proposals, and for other necessary purposes. In 1911 competitive designs were invited from architects throughout the world for laying out the city, with the object of embodying in the construction of the Federal Capital the most desirable features from the standpoint of general efficiency for its purposes, of engineering and hygiene. The city, which has been named "Canberra," is the permanent seat of Government of the Commonwealth. A temporary observatory has been established, roads and bridges made and improved, gauge-weirs constructed on the rivers, reafforestation operations commenced.

Adjacent to the city site, and within the Federal territory, an up-to-date Military College has been opened, and at the port which has been established on Commonwealth territory, at Jervis Bay, a Naval College has been erected. A railway line to connect the city with the railway system of New South Wales was constructed, and also a line between the city and Jervis Bay. An appropriation is made in the Budget each year towards the cost of completing the new capital.

NATION MAKING.

Among the important events which followed the formation of the Commonwealth must be mentioned the unification of the administrative system, and the formation of an up-to-date Bureau of Census and Statistics ; the taking over by the Federal Government of the Administration of Papua (British New Guinea) in 1906 ; participation in the Imperial Conference in London in 1907 ; the choice of the Yass-Canberra site for the Federal Capital in 1908 ; the Imperial Defence Conference of 1909 in London, at which the Commonwealth was represented by three delegates, and which was followed by the first step (an order for two Destroyers and one 1st class Cruiser) in the formation of the Royal Australian Navy ; next came the visit of Field-Marshal Lord Kitchener to advise on a system of Military Defence. Queensland opened its State University in 1909 ; and the penny postage was introduced in the following year. Admiral Sir R. Henderson visited

Australia to advise on Naval Defence; and the first issue was made of Commonwealth notes. Compulsory military training in Australia, and the establishment of penny postage to all parts of the Empire, were the events of 1911. These were followed by the opening of the Commonwealth Bank, the beginning of the 'Trans-Australian Railway' (Port Augusta to Kalgoorlie), and the inauguration of the University of Western Australia. These internal events were followed by the outbreak of the Great European War (*q.v.*), the Allied Victory, the signing of the Peace Treaty, and the Covenant of the League of Nations (by Australia), and the mandate to administer a large section of the ex-German sphere in the Pacific. Then came the post-war visit of Admiral Lord Jellicoe

Australia To-day

The Australian Commonwealth includes the island continent of Australia proper and the island of Tasmania, and has a total area of about 2,974,581 square miles, with a population of about 6,200,000. It is situated in the Southern Hemisphere, between longitudes $113^{\circ} 9'$ and $153^{\circ} 39'$ E., and between the parallels of latitude $10^{\circ} 41'$ and (including Tasmania) $43^{\circ} 39'$ S. It is bounded on the north by the Timor and Arafura Seas and the Torres Strait, on the south by the Bass Strait and Southern Ocean, on the east by the Pacific, and on the west by the Indian Ocean. In its vast area, which is about twenty-five times the size of the United



"THE DIVIDING RANGE"

Photo, Australian Government

to advise on naval defence in the light of modern conditions. This was followed by the Imperial Conferences of 1921 and 1923 (*q.v.*). In 1927 that vast and but little developed area, known as "The Northern Territory," was divided for administrative purposes into two sections: *North Australia* and *Central Australia*. The headquarters of the Government are at Darwin and Alice Springs respectively (see *North and Central Australia*).

In 1927 also occurred the visit of T.R.H. the Duke and Duchess of York and the institution of the Commonwealth Parliament at Canberra; the transfer of the Government departments to the new capital and the establishment of Beam Wireless. In 1928 the British Economic Mission visited Australia and the Empire Forestry Conference was held there. In 1929-30 the Commonwealth proposed to take over the state debts and H.M.S. *Canberra* was added to the growing Australian Navy.

Kingdom, it contains nearly every description of soil and every variety of climate, from temperate to sub-tropical. Of the total area of Australia the lesser portion (1,149,320 square miles) lies within the tropics. The States of the Commonwealth having portions of their territory in the tropical zone are: Queensland (339,000 square miles in tropical zone, and 311,500 square miles in temperate zone), Western Australia (364,000 square miles and 611,920 square miles), and North and Central Australia (426,320 square miles and 97,300 square miles). The States of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia and Tasmania are all within the temperate zone.

From north to south the Australian Continent extends for nearly 2,000 miles, while its greatest breadth from east to west is about 2,400 miles. The coast-line of the Commonwealth, exclusive of minor indentations, measures 12,210 miles.

MOUNTAINS.

The "Dividing Range," a series of ridges of varying elevation, broken by broad valleys, runs from north to south of the continent, forming the principal watershed, which starts eastwards and gives rise to the Murray River and its many tributaries. The extensive valleys of this system of waterways form the most fertile portions of Australia. The main mountain feature of the country is the great Dividing Range, which, starting in the Cape York Peninsula in Queensland, runs parallel with and close to the eastern shore of the continent through the states of New South Wales and Victoria. In the south, one branch of the range sweeps westwards toward the boundary of Victoria and South Australia, and the other—the main

laide and terminates in the Flinders Range, near Lake Torrens, while the plateau in Western Australia is traversed by ranges in various localities.

RIVERS.

The Burdekin and the Fitzroy are the two largest rivers in north-eastern Queensland. Other important Queensland rivers are the Burnett, the Mary, and the Brisbane. Of New South Wales rivers, the Hunter, which drains about 11,000 square miles, and empties itself at Newcastle, is the most important, while other large rivers are the Clarence, the Hawkesbury and the Shoalhaven. The largest Victorian rivers, apart from tributaries of the Murray, are the Latrobe, the Hopkins and the Glenelg. The River Murray,



"ON THE SLOPES OF MT. KOSCIUSKO, 7,300 ft."

Photo, Australian Government

branch—ends in Tasmania, which is to a large extent covered by ramifications of the range. The greatest height attained is in New South Wales near the Victorian boundary, where Mount Kosciusko reaches an altitude of 7,300 ft. The Dividing Range, with its lateral spurs, receives various sectional names in the states through which it passes. The seaward slope of the range is generally sharp and precipitous, and in places marked by extensive chasms and lofty precipices. On the continental side the descent is more gradual, the mountains merging into great plains stretching towards the middle of the continent. In South Australia a chain of mountains runs northward from the neighbourhood of Ade-

which drains a considerable part of Queensland, the major part of New South Wales, and a large part of Victoria, is one of the longest rivers in the world. It forms for a considerable distance the boundary between New South Wales and Victoria, and subsequently entering South Australia flows into the ocean on the southern coast of that State. In good seasons, with its tributary the Darling, it is navigable for a considerable distance from its mouth, the total length, including the Darling, being 2,310 miles. The chief tributaries, besides the Darling, are the Murrumbidgee and Lachlan. Some of the rivers flowing into the sea on the north-west coast of Australia—*e.g.*, the Murchison, Gascoyne, Ashburton, Fortesque,



ROMA

A Ranching Centre in the far West of Queensland



BUNBURY, WEST AUSTRALIA

Photo, Australian Government

DeGrey and Fitzroy—are of considerable size, as also are those of the northern coast—*e.g.*, the Victoria, Daly, Gregory, Leichhardt, Cloncurry, Gilbert and Mitchell Rivers. The Victoria River, estimated to drain 90,000 square miles, is said to be navigable for the largest vessels for 50 miles.

PLAINS.

Much of the Australian interior is occupied by vast waterless plains, such as the Great Sandy Desert in Western Australia ; Old Man Plain, situated north of the Murray, which divides the States of Victoria and New South Wales ; the Stuart Plains, near Mount Stuart, which is considered the exact middle of the continent ; the Victoria Desert, and the Mullaber Plains. These vast stretches of arid waste are almost entirely devoid of grass and trees ; for leagues nothing can be seen except a monotonous succession of sandy hillocks covered with salt-bush—a growth which prevails throughout the whole interior of Australia.

There are many kinds of salt-bush, but the predominant one is much like English spinach, and affords excellent food for cattle and sheep during the droughts which are the curse of the plains of Western Australia.

On the Victoria Desert and the Great Sandy Plain, nothing grows except the coarse quilt-like grass known as spinifex, and a few gum or eucalyptus trees, which afford but little shade. On these great stretches of sand the sun beats down with tropical heat, not even night-dews moisten the ground, and rain is unknown. The only oases are salt-lakes, which exist in many parts of Australia, and afford no relief to the parched ground or the thirst of man and beast. Sandstorms are the scourge of these regions.

The less barren plains are covered with coarse grass, salt-bush, scrub and clumps of eucalyptus trees, which are characteristically Australian. These giants are often over 300 ft. high, and, although evergreen, afford but little shade from the blazing sun, which gives the earth and grass a parched appearance and casts a hot golden glare all around. A haze overhangs the distance and the intervening plains flicker in the hot dry air ; gaunt blue gums rear their heads towards the colourless sky, and the river-beds are as parched as the sand of the Sahara. Nature stands still in the sweltering heat ; occasion-

ally a shrill “Coe-ee” will sound from some far off sheep-run or cattle station, and huge white or black patches on the sun-lit plains denote the gigantic herds and flocks grazing on the coarse dry grass.

The upland plains, which occupy by far the largest portion of the Australian interior, are sprinkled with dwarf-gums, callia mallee, tea-trees and acacia, which provides not only drink for travellers and food for beasts, but also wattle for fences. Kangaroos, opossums and rabbits form the principal denizens of these regions.

THE FORESTS.

In Australia the forests are composed of giant trees, but the undergrowth is not nearly as thick as in West or Central Africa, and the atmosphere, being both hot and dry, is consequently much more healthy. The rainfall rarely exceeds 10 in. in the year, except on the coast. In the south-west there are forests of Jarrah, which forms one of the finest kinds of timber in the world, and is much used for wood-paving ; and in the Backwood Country there are enormous numbers of Karri trees, which are among the tallest in the world.

IRRIGATION.

Although even in the arid belts of the interior, which have been termed the “Dead Heart of Australia,” the cultivation of certain commodities is by no means impossible, and it is a lucrative business to rear large herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, which do not suffer much from the drought if the locality is carefully chosen, and adequate provision made to tide over this period ; at present, population and industry only fringe the enormous coast-line, which is swept by cool breezes and blessed with a fair rainfall.

The condition of the interior is, however, being rapidly changed by the introduction all over the country, of artificial methods of irrigation. In Queensland, alone, considerably over 600,000,000 gallons of water are daily obtained from artesian wells, and in West and South Australia fresh borings are constantly being made. There are also big schemes in varying stages of maturity for the employment of reservoirs, canals, barrages and other extensive irrigation works, which are all that is needed (except population) to make what is now fallow land highly productive and revenue-producing territory.

Though much of the rainfall received over the vast area of the Australian continent passes off by evaporation or finds its way to the sea, a large volume sinks into the earth and helps to swell the store of artesian water contained in subterranean channels and reservoirs. The most important artesian basins are (a) the Great Australian Basin, about 570,000 square miles in area, extending over parts of Queensland, New South Wales, South Australia, Central Australia and North Australia, and (b) the Western Australian Basins. Numbers of bores have been sunk by the Governments as well as private individuals, the water obtained proving invaluable for watering of stock and irrigation purposes. The discovery of artesian water has completely changed the outlook over

however, both the extremes of the tropical and the frigid zones.

Australia may generally be divided roughly into three belts or zones marked by broad climatic differences, which are, perhaps, more noticeable in the productions of the orchards than in any other of the fruits of the soil. In the southern belt—comprising Tasmania, the greater part of Victoria, and considerable parts of New South Wales, South Australia, and Western Australia—the climate is similar in many respects to that of the south of France or the north of Italy. In these lands are the farms and the wheatfields, and the apple, pear, plum and cherry grow to perfection. In the south of Victoria the thermometer rises about 100 deg. in the shade on the average on five days during the year,



CROSSING A WEST AUSTRALIAN DESERT

Photo, Australian Government

thousands of square miles of country where surface water was the only want, and has opened the way for the development of areas as yet barely touched. It has also enabled stock to be travelled where formerly such a thing was difficult or impossible.

CLIMATE.

As the south of Tasmania is in a latitude corresponding roughly to that of the south of France, or of New York, in the northern hemisphere, while the northern extremity of the Australian continent corresponds to the south of India or Ceylon, it is obvious that the Commonwealth must have a great variety of climatic conditions. Its climates, in fact, range from tropical to temperate, missing

and generally on about three nights during the year it falls to some two or three degrees below freezing point. The middle belt—comprising parts of all the continental States—was, in the early days, with the exception of the coastal districts, devoted almost entirely to sheep stations, and is the natural home of the peach, grape, fig and olive; while in the northern belt—comprising North and Central Australia and the northern parts of Queensland and Western Australia—the mango, pineapple, coco-nut and banana flourish, the inland districts being mainly occupied by cattle runs. Even to these broad climatic zones there are numerous exceptions. The farms and wheatfields of the southern belt stretch north through New

South Wales to the plateaux and coastal districts of Queensland, and even in the far north dairying is a profitable industry. Again, the sugar plantations and other sub-tropical vegetation come down from the northern belt and blend with the vegetation of the middle belt.

The following table shows the variations of temperature in the capitals of the various States :—

THE STATE CAPITALS.

Place.	Mean Summer.	Mean Winter.	Highest on Record.	Lowest on Record.	Average Hottest Month.	Average Coldest Month.
	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.
SYDNEY - -	70.9	53.9	108.5	35.9	71.6	52.3
MELBOURNE - -	66.4	49.9	111.2	27.0	67.5	48.5
BRISBANE - -	76.6	59.5	108.9	36.1	77.1	58.0
ADELAIDE - -	73.1	52.9	116.3	32.0	74.2	51.5
PERTH - -	72.8	55.8	107.9	35.3	74.1	55.0
HOBART - -	61.3	47.0	105.2	27.7	62.2	45.7

The range of summer and winter temperatures in Australia, as in other countries, increases with the distance from the coast, but even in the interior, where the heat is greatest, the nights are cool, and the extreme dryness of the air renders the heat easily bearable and very healthy.

The average annual rainfall varies from about 5 in. in the Lake Eyre District to about 166 in. on the north-east coast of Queensland. The following table shows the rainfall in the districts around the State capitals:—

THE STATE CAPITALS.

Place.	Average.	Highest.	Lowest.	Place.	Average.	Highest.	Lowest.
	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.		Inches.	Inches.	Inches.
SYDNEY - -	47.97	82.81	23.01	ADELAIDE - -	21.06	30.87	13.43
MELBOURNE - -	25.60	36.51	15.61	PERTH - -	33.26	46.73	20.48
BRISBANE - -	47.05	88.26	16.17	HOBART - -	23.57	40.67	13.43

Though droughts have occurred in past years, and agriculturists have suffered considerable loss, the fact that £90,000,000 worth of crops of all kinds on the 17,000,000 acres of the farming belt at present under cultivation, exclusive of over £50,000,000 worth of dairy products and a vast amount

of wool and meat, are annually produced, affords positive proof of the suitability of climate and soil for farming purposes.

New South Wales

This, the parent State of the whole of Australia, has an area of 310,372 square miles, being nearly three times the size of the United Kingdom, and the population is

about 2,400,000, of whom considerably over a third reside in Sydney and its suburbs.*

The great variety of climate and soil found in this State enables both semi-tropical and temperate agricultural products to be grown within its borders. On the coast plain, which has an area of 50,000 square miles, wheat and maize grow in abundance, and sheep and cattle are reared in thousands. The production of wool in New South Wales alone averages over 400 million pounds a year. In the North, on the Queensland frontier, sugar-canes, grapes, tobacco and tropica

fruits are largely cultivated, and the manufacture of wine is a growing industry ; on the lofty plateaux of the " Dividing Range," which crosses the western portion of this State and follows a northerly course through Queensland, the vegetation of temperate climes flourishes.

* The overcrowding of the cities to the detriment of the vast areas of agricultural land in Australia, as well as in Africa, Canada, and New Zealand, has assumed such proportions as to call for special measures to induce the agricultural population to remain in the country districts.

A large portion of the interior is covered with mallee scrub, and is subject to long periods of heavy rainfall followed by a drought of equal duration, but the numerous rivers make up for the scarcity of water during certain seasons. The principal rivers are the Lachlan, the Darling, the Murrumbidgee, the Hawkesbury, the Hunter, and the Macintyre, several of which are tributaries of the first two mentioned.

The Blue Mountains and the Liverpool Range cross New South Wales almost parallel to the coast, at a distance inland varying from 25 to 150 miles. In the south many peaks rise above the snow-line.

That portion of the interior which lies between the Rivers Murray and Lachlan is

the homestead ascends like a scaffold pole in the hot, still air, and blurred by the blue haze of distance are gigantic patches of wool, for sheep are so plentiful in Australia that their principal value lies in the wool obtained from shearing.

The climate of New South Wales is so equable that stock may be left in the open even during the winter months, always providing that the surrounding country is not sufficiently low to cause it to be subject to the floods which are prevalent in certain parts during the wet season. The Valley of the Darling, which may be considered one of the most fertile portions of the western plain, has on several occasions been flooded over an area 20 miles broad and



ON THE CATTLE PLAINS OF QUEENSLAND

Photo, Australian Government

known as "Riverina," and being well-watered, as its name implies, is a fine agricultural district and well timbered. The far west is occupied by the "Great Plain," which presents a characteristically Australian contrast to the eastern slopes of the Dividing Range. The grass seas are dry and burnt, and scarcely a single clump of trees breaks the succession of parched coarse grass and mallee scrub. Nevertheless, this huge portion of New South Wales is rich in flocks and herds; on the seemingly endless plains millions of sheep find sustenance. Spread far out over the rolling prairies the tiny houses, or out-stations, of the sheep-runs may be seen surrounded with pens, corrals, and all the appliances of the pastoral industry. A thin column of blue smoke from

300 miles long; but this calamity seldom happens, and when it does the enormous size of this State and its still comparatively unexploited condition make it no difficult matter for the farmers to drive their flocks to a higher region, and there wait for the waters to subside. One great advantage here derived from floods and rains is that in less than a month after the disappearance of the water the country is covered with rich grass, and turned into a veritable garden.

It must not be supposed that the whole of New South Wales is liable to inundation and drought, for, although much of the western plain suffers from the rigour of the seasons, the eastern slopes of the Blue Mountains, and the great coast plain, are exceptionally fertile and enjoy a fairly regular rainfall.

The area of this state, and its diversified surface and climate, enable the settler to choose an almost ideal locality for either pastoral, agricultural, or horticultural industry.

West of the Darling River, on the frontier of South Australia, lies the Barrier Range, which contains the Broken Hill Mines, the richest silver-lead region in Australasia. The deposits extend over an area of about 2,000 square miles.

The largest portion of the trade with these mines, and also with the towns of Broken Hill and Silverton, two of the most important centres in the interior, is carried on with Adelaide, the capital of South Australia, for,

Sydney, the capital of New South Wales, is one of the finest cities on the continent, and occupies the site of the original settlement established by Governor Phillip in 1789. British cities all the world over are much alike, and Sydney is no exception to the rule. It is the third white city of the Empire, having a population of 1,100,000. Only London and Glasgow give a bigger count of heads if the Indian centres of Calcutta, with 1,300,000 people, and Bombay, with 1,200,000 are left out of the reckoning as belonging to the coloured Empire. It possesses magnificent parks, squares, hotels, clubs, public buildings and shops, which display in profusion all the latest feminine



Photo, Australian Government

MOSMAN BAY, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES. A favourite suburb of the Capital

although these places are really within the New South Wales border, they are situated much nearer to Adelaide than they are to Sydney. (See *Map*.) Gold mining is carried on in the Grey Range, which lies across the frontiers of three adjoining States.

To describe all the pastoral and agricultural towns which are dotted over the enormous area of the sheep-lands of New South Wales and the other even larger States would occupy undue space, and is quite unnecessary, for they closely resemble small country towns in the United Kingdom. It must be remembered that the composition of the population of Australia is more truly British than the inhabitants of London; over 90 per cent. being of British origin, of which a considerable portion were born in the "Old Country."

lingerie and creations of the world of art, science and industry. It has been termed by many the "Queen City of the South."

The harbour, known as Port Jackson, is the finest natural anchorage on the coast of New South Wales, and could accommodate without let or hindrance the combined fleets of the world. It was this fine, well-sheltered bay which induced Governor Phillip to establish the first settlement on its shores; and Sydney owes its present prosperity not only to the fertility of the surrounding country, and the extensive system of railway lines which link this city to the great commercial centres of Victoria and Queensland, but more than anything else to the square miles of placid water composing the harbour of Port Jackson, wherein tramp and liner may ride in peace and safety.

Newcastle, in the Hunter Valley, is not the only coal-field in New South Wales. Mines, which produce a quantity of iron, are now being worked at Lithgow, Katoomba, and Wallerang, all of which are within easy reach of Sydney, and use that port as their emporium. There are many good-sized towns in this State; the most important of which, other than those already mentioned, are Maitland, an agriculture centre in the "Black Country," near Newcastle; Liverpool, Paramatta, and Morpeth, on the coast,

and cereals grow in abundance. The chief towns of this well-watered region are Port Macquarie, Kempsey, Gladstone, Grafton, Maclean and Richmond, on the coast; and Lismore, Tenterfield, Armidale, in the interior.

The country surrounding Sydney is not rich in gold, there are no fields like those of Bendigo and Ballarat, near Melbourne, but it possesses some of the most valuable coal, copper and tin mines in Australia. At Cobar, which is connected by



A SYDNEY SURF CARNIVAL

Photo, Australian Government

The Volunteer Life Saving Brigade on Manly Beach, Sydney, New South Wales

which are small ports for inter-colonial trade; Bathurst, Liverpool, Goulburn, Orange and Wellington, all railway centres, and important towns on the fertile slopes of the Dividing Range.

On the coast, in the north of the State, lies the large district known as "New England," which is composed of fertile lands encircled by the Hastings, New England and Macpherson Ranges. Here horticulture has assumed considerable proportions, and wheat

railway with Sydney, the copper deposits almost equal in value those of Mount Lyell in Tasmania. The country around Glen Innes, which is about 300 miles north-west of the capital, is famous for its tin mines; and the coal-fields of Newcastle, one of the most important towns in New South Wales, are of the greatest possible value to Sydney and the whole State.

Although the manufacturing industry is rapidly increasing in many of the towns,

*Photo, Australian Government*

OYSTER BEDS ON THE GEORGE'S RIVER, NEW SOUTH WALES

(output between 100–200 millions sterling) and there has long been considerable activity in mining undertakings, New South Wales relies principally upon the pastoral and agricultural industries which flourish all over the State. The slightest fall in the price of wool has its reflex in Sydney and many other towns in Australia ; but the steady increase of the cultivated area on the coast plain and the development of semi-tropical plantations in the north are rapidly giving a greater economic stability to this portion of Australia.

Victoria

This State, which has an area of 87,884 square miles, is a little smaller than Great Britain, and has an approximate population of 1,750,000, of which over one half reside in Melbourne and district ; the remainder are scattered over the whole fertile area, or collected in large inland towns, like Bendigo, Geelong and Ballarat. Nevertheless in Victoria, as in every State in Australia, there are vast plains on which every man has at least three square miles to himself, and some, like the Ninety-Mile Desert—which is not a desert as such is generally understood, but is a broad plain covered with mallee scrub and dwarf gums—where the population averages

only about one person to every ten square miles.

Victoria is the most fertile State in Australia. It produces more wheat than is required for home consumption, and a considerable amount is exported. Tobacco, fruit and hops are grown in large quantities, as well as barley, oats and hay. The dairy industry is a growing and highly profitable one, and viticulture flourishes ; but the staple products are gold and wool. The latter is the chief export from every State in Australia, and in Victoria all the north and north-west territory is occupied by rich pasture lands. The scourge of these plains are rabbits and rats, which breed so rapidly that it is difficult to prevent them overrunning the country and clearing the herbage necessary for grazing. In many cases the government has offered a bounty for their wholesale destruction.

Victoria is divided into two distinct portions by the mountain ranges which traverse the country in several directions. The western half is composed of plains with a few low hills, and the eastern portion, known as "Gippsland," is mountainous and contains many forests which yield an abundance of timber. Nowhere do the mountains attain a higher altitude than 6,000 ft.

Bendigo in the days of the gold rush was composed of mining camps, piles of tailings,

and a large number of "juice-shanties," or spirit saloons. The diggings extended for nearly 50 miles, but as the extremities of the field were worked out the miners concentrated on the town which had rapidly sprung up, and in its transformed condition now forms one of the chief towns of Victoria. There is little in the modern streets and buildings to denote that this was once the scene of a typical mining camp in the wilderness, but the surrounding country is still the richest gold region in the State and reefs are being actively worked. During quite recent years the output of gold has, however, suffered a severe decline and averages only £200,000 in annual value.

At Ballarat, which is on the western gold-field of Victoria, a modern metropolis has long since taken the place of the town of shanties and mining camps, although work on deep reefs is still being carried on. Gold mining

also forms an industry in the country surrounding the towns of Ararat, Stawell, Beechworth, Raywood, Rutherglen, Creswick, Maryborough, Avoca, Heathcote, Tarmagulla and Daylisford.

Melbourne proper, the capital of Victoria, is situated a few miles up the Yarra Yarra River, but this city, which is one of the finest in the Commonwealth, includes the suburbs of Williamstown and Port Melbourne, on Hobson's Bay. Ocean liners mostly land passengers at these places instead of proceeding up the river to the heart of the capital, and they bear the same relation to Melbourne as greater London does to the City.

About 950,000 people reside within the Melbourne area, which, with its many suburbs possesses all modern conveniences, including electric light, tramways, theatres, libraries, clubs and a good University.



A LAKE IN GIPPSLAND, VICTORIA

Photo, Australian Government



MELBOURNE, VICTORIA, AUSTRALIA
Collins Street



MILDURA, VICTORIA, AUSTRALIA



THE PUBLIC LIBRARY, MELBOURNE, VICTORIA

Photo, Australian Government

Victoria possesses more inland towns of importance than any of the other States. Cities like Bendigo, Ballarat and Geelong, with over 30,000 inhabitants, give a stability to the whole State, and greatly stimulate the manufacturing industry, which in turn promotes agriculture.

The coal mined in the Outrim district is largely used, not only by the numerous factories in this State but also by coasting steamers, many of which have their headquarters in Melbourne.

This State is crossed, midway from east to west, by a range of mountains and hills, which form a boundary between two distinct climatic zones, the climate of the northern zone being warm and dry, while that of the southern zone, subject to the influence of the surrounding southern seas, is cooler, and blessed with a more regular and abundant

rainfall. On the north-eastern plains the winter is mild and sunny, and even the excessive heat of January and February causes no inconvenience to the local population, owing to the small percentage of relative humidity in the atmosphere, which is characteristic of the climate of these localities.

The south-western district of Victoria is open, and, to a great extent, unsheltered by land elevations from the influence of both the ocean and the interior of the continent. The Dividing Range in its trend from east to west gradually vanishes, and there are relatively small areas of hilly country. The Otway Forest is a region of heavy rains; some of the wettest stations in Victoria are found in this locality. Its climate is essentially maritime and moist, with a relatively cool summer, a wet winter, and a very small range of temperatures. The other coastal districts possess



ALEXANDRA GARDENS, MELBOURNE, VICTORIA



COLLINS STREET, MELBOURNE, VICTORIA

Official Photos

the same maritime climate, but with less rainfall.

The climate of the Midlands is dry, with a moderate and very regular rainfall evenly distributed throughout the seasons, abundant sunshine and moderate temperature. The upper lands have a cooler climate, dry and bracing, and a greater rainfall than the lower lands.

The total area of Victoria in acres is 56,245,760, out of which there still remain unoccupied, including large areas of waste land, over 15,000,000 acres.

There are in this State 15,000,000 sheep, 1,400,000 head of cattle, and over 500,000 horses. The average annual export of wool amounts to about 120,500,000 lb.



A QUEENSLAND RIVER

The approximate areas under the principal crops are as follows :—

Wheat	-	-	-	2,900,000	acres.
Cereals	-	-	-	1,000,000	„
Hay	-	-	-	1,200,000	„
Oats	-	-	-	302,000	„
Orchards (and fruit)	-	-	-	59,900	„
Barley	-	-	-	52,000	„
Potatoes	-	-	-	48,000	„
Maize	-	-	-	18,000	„
Market Gardens	-	-	-	10,000	„

Queensland

The British Isles have but a fifth of the territorial area of Queensland, which consists of 670,500 square miles, with a coast line of over 2,300 miles. The population of this enormous country averages less than two per square mile (920,000), and government statistics give the number of people which Queensland could easily support at the high figure of 50,000,000; thus there is room in this one State of the Commonwealth for many millions of British emigrants.

Topographically as well as climatically Queensland is divided into two distinct portions. The Dividing Range, which maintains its northerly course from New South Wales, crosses this State to the Cape York Peninsula in the extreme north of the continent, and gives the coast-lands and hillsides a considerable rainfall. On the east the sea-breeze tempers the heat. North Queensland lies within the tropics, and has a climate in accordance with its position.

Many ridges supplementary to the chain composing the Dividing Range give the whole coast a mountainous aspect, but most of these are low hills covered with forests and rich agricultural and pastoral lands.

The western portion of the State, beyond the mountains, is occupied by undulating downs with occasional clumps of trees, and, in common with the whole interior of Australia, has the drawback of an uncertain rainfall. The climate of these vast plains is decidedly tropical but, the atmosphere being dry, owing to the absence of forests, is much more healthy than the equatorial portions of Africa and South



CAMP LIFE IN THE NORTH QUEENSLAND BUSH

America. In fact, the death rate in Queensland is only 9 per 1,000, whereas in Sweden, which is generally accepted as the European average, it is over 18 per 1,000.

The most fertile portion of Queensland lies on the western slopes of the coast range in the south of the State, and is known as the "Darling Downs." The area of this region, which contains some of the finest soil in the world, is over 4,000,000 acres; and the production of grain averages over 1,000,000 bushels a year. On the wheat-lands of Australia, just before the harvest, golden corn stretches like a rippling yellow sea all around the numerous homesteads, which have a look of comfortable prosperity. Here, barley, lucerne, wheat and maize grow luxuriantly, and dairying is largely carried on. The Darling Downs are undoubtedly the richest agricultural region in the whole of Australia. To thoroughly appreciate these fertile slopes one must have sweated on the "Great Sandy Desert," wandered for days in the Australian bush, or ridden, dust-choked and parched, across the waterless plains of the tropical interior.

The coast lands are generally fertile and well suited for all kinds of farming, but over half the area of this portion of the country is covered with forests of cedar, pine and other useful woods, and the rainfall in many parts exceeds 60 inches in the year. Among the agricultural activities of this State must be mentioned the cultivation of maize, and in the north, of sugar cane.

The mining fields of Queensland, which is immensely rich in minerals and precious stones, already cover a total area of over 50,000,000 acres, although much of the more remote interior still awaits geological examination. The value of the gold already produced may be estimated at over 100 millions sterling, and that of other metals at 50 millions sterling.

The chief gold-fields are at Charters Towers, 80 miles from the port of Townsville, on the Queensland Northern Railway; Gympie, 107 miles north of Brisbane, to which it is connected by railway; Mount Morgan, one of Australia's richest gold mines, situated just over 24 miles south-west of Rockhampton; and the Cape Field, west of the Coast Range.



BRISBANE, CAPITAL OF QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA *Photo, Australian Government*



CAIRNS, QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA
Abbot Street

Photo, Queensland Government

The most productive copper districts are the Cloncurry Field, near Townsville, and the Star River region. Tin in considerable quantities is obtained from the Walsh and Tinaroo Fields in the north of the State. Coal is mined on the Borrum Field, near Maryborough, and around Ipswich, the capital of West Moreton and a growing city of over 20,000 inhabitants. Opals and sapphires are found all over Western Queensland, especially on the Auakie Fields.

Thursday Island, off Cape York, is the headquarters of the pearl fisheries, which are largely carried on in the Torres Strait and around the coast of Papua and the adjacent Pacific Islands. The average value of pearl shell annually exported is approximately £50,000. *Bêche-de-Mer*, or sea slug fishing forms an important industry of the North Queensland coast, and the catches are sent to China where certain species fetch a fabulous price as table delicacies. The headquarters of the Oyster and *Bêche-de-Mer* fisheries are at Cooktown.

The most important industry of this State is sheep and cattle breeding, which is conducted on a very large scale. The vast plains, west of the Dividing Range, are especially suitable for sheep-raising, as pastoral land in certain parts can be rented at a very low rate. There are in Queensland about 21,000,000 sheep, 7,000,000 cattle, and 640,000 horses. Many of the "stations" owned by private persons or public companies are larger than an English county.

The cultivation of all kinds of tropical and temperate fruits is greatly on the increase. In the north bananas and pineapples are grown in sufficient quantities to make their export an important asset, and the production of grapes in the districts around Brisbane, Maryborough and Gatton, where the government have an experimental and training farm, is very large.

The isle-dotted Moreton Bay, a pretty sheet of blue water surrounded by low, verdure-clad hills, forms the approach to Brisbane, the capital of Queensland, which is situated about 18 miles up the Brisbane River. Ocean steamers have been able, since the deepening of the bar, to proceed right up to the city and moor alongside the wharves and warehouses which line the river banks for several miles.

Brisbane, which is a thoroughly up-to-date town of over 300,000 inhabitants, forms the outlet for the produce of the fertile coast lands of south Queensland, and the coal-fields around Ipswich, which stands a few miles further up-stream. Although some of the produce from the Darling Downs, lying on the west of the Dividing Range, filters across the New South Wales border, the principal portion of the exports from this region also finds its way to this port for shipment.

The growth of Brisbane has been slow but sure. No gold rush or other human phenomenon has contributed largely to the population of this city or the surrounding country; nevertheless it has steadily risen on the solid foundations of agricultural prosperity, maritime accessibility, and proximity of coal-fields. Sixty years ago the population only numbered about 5,000, and to-day the city, which is divided into two municipalities, occupies an area of many square miles, and possesses 170 miles of streets, fine shops, electric tramway and lighting systems, and all that goes to make up a twentieth century capital.

The chief coast ports on the north are: Rockhampton, on the Fitzroy River, a thoroughly modern town with a fine natural harbour; Bowen, Mackay and Townsville, in Cleveland Bay, important outlets for the sugar-growing and mining districts; Cairns and Cooktown, the northernmost ports with the exception of Thursday Island. In the south are the seaports of Maryborough, which is connected by railway with the Gympie gold-fields and the Borrum coal mines; and Bundaberg and Gladstone, which are principally agricultural centres.

Toowoomba, the capital of the Darling Downs, is the most prosperous agricultural town in Queensland. Ruthven Street, which is the main thoroughfare, presents a lively scene from sunrise to sunset, and the buildings are of massive architecture, which cannot be said of all the inland towns in Australia. Warwick is the only other important town on the Darling Downs. The centres of the pastoral industry in the far west are Roma, Charleville and Richmond.

The total area of Queensland in acres is 429,120,000, of which about 526,388 acres are actually under cultivation, and nearly 280,000,000 acres are being used for grazing and pastoral purposes generally. Many

million acres of good land are still available for settlement.

One of the most important industries of Queensland is the cultivation of sugar-cane, over 130,000 acres being devoted to it. The average annual yield is 500,000 tons of sugar ; and large bounties have been paid by the Federal Government on cane grown entirely by white labour. The principal sugar-growing areas are in the Wide Bay and Burnett districts. An interesting development of quite recent years is the cultivation of cotton. Over 72,000 acres have been planted with this commodity, and the Government has guaranteed the growers a fixed price.

The coast of Queensland is protected some 30 miles from the shore by the Great Barrier Reef, which runs parallel with the coast for over 1,000 miles, and affords a protected

channel for ocean-going as well as for coasting vessels.

The climate of Queensland provides the most perfect winter season in the world. It is far superior to the Riviera. The Spring commences in September, and the Summer ends in February. November, December, January and February are the hot months.

Broadly speaking, there are three climates :

(1) The coastal climate, marked by comparative evenness of temperature and a high degree of moisture.

(2) The western climate, which is characterised by a wide range of temperature between summer heat and winter cold.

(3) The far interior climate, with the heat of summer and the cold of winter of a more intense kind, and also with great extremes of moisture, but a general tendency to



Photo, Australian Government

VIEW OVER BRISBANE, CAPITAL OF QUEENSLAND



GYMPIE, QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA



IPSWICH, QUEENSLAND, AUSTRALIA

Photos, Australian Government

extreme dryness of atmosphere. This climate prevails in the far south-west, west and north-west of Queensland. In Brisbane the monthly mean shade temperature ranges from 77.1 deg. F. in January to 58.0 deg. F. in July.

The mean annual rainfall varies considerably. Along the Pacific slope it runs approximately from 48 in. at Brisbane to 150 in. in the far north. West of the great dividing range the rainfall diminishes from 30 in. to about 10 in., according to the distance from the main range. The country is also occasionally visited by droughts. Railway extension is every year rendering losses less severe from this cause by enabling stock to be trucked to relief country. The recuperative nature of the land is wonderful. A week after rain the dry areas are clothed with waving grasses.

South Australia

This State, which occupies a portion of the southern coast line, and extends inland to the centre of the continent, where it joins the old Northern Territory, has an area of 380,070 square miles and a population of over 600,000. Much of the interior is composed of vast plains, salt lakes, and low scrub; splendid country for the rearing of big herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, and of undoubted mineral wealth, but of a peculiar topographical sameness. On the South Australian plains one may ride for days without seeing the slightest change in the general aspect of the country. Vast stretches of undulating prairie with occasional trees roll away until lost in the uncertain haze of distance and heat. All through the garish noon the semi-tropical sun glares on the dry, cracked earth, and then sinks beneath the horizon in a blaze of ruddy glory. Twilight lasts but a fleeting hour, and during the darkness which precedes the rising of the moon a feeling of loneliness takes brief possession of the traveller amid the silences of the Australian interior.

The edge of civilisation is, however, being slowly pushed further and further out on to the broad plains, and sheep and cattle are usurping the happy hunting grounds of the kangaroo and opossum. In the northern

portion of this State, mining, cattle-raising and sheep farming form the chief industries, but in the south vineyards may be seen in many parts, and fruit-growing is rapidly increasing in favour.

The climate of the southern part of South Australia closely resembles that of Spain or Southern Italy. The weather for the greater part of the year is agreeable and balmy, with



GOAT JUMPING

Official Photo

A favourite pastime in Australia

clear skies and bright sunshine. The winter season is, for the most part, mild, and something like a wet autumn in England. The coldest month is July, the mean temperature of which at Adelaide is 51.6. The average maximum temperature (or greatest temperature in the daytime) for July is 58.7, and the average minimum (lowest night temperature)

is 44.4. The lowest reading ever recorded at Adelaide was 32.0, on 24th July, 1908. Winter mornings are frequently frosty, especially in the hills and high-lying plains. Snow is a very occasional phenomenon in the higher altitudes. The spring and autumn months, and a portion of the winter, are, however, generally marked by delightful weather, and the rainfall during the whole period is excellently adapted for the agriculturist. Hence wheat-farming is one of the great industries of the country, though by no means the only one for which the climate is suitable. The average rainfall at Adelaide for the seven months, April to September, is 16 in. North of Adelaide the rainfall is lighter in character, and south of the capital it is heavier. The average annual rainfall at Adelaide is 20.33 in. The greatest yearly fall on record is 30.87, in 1889, and the least 13.43 in 1876. The hottest months of the year are marked by clear dry heat, tempered by frequent cool changes. Some trying heat waves are often experienced, but, as the air is very dry, these hot spells cause merely temporary discomfort, and do not stop outdoor work. The mean 9 a.m.

humidity at Adelaide in January, the mid-summer month, is 42 per cent. The mean temperatures in December, January and February are 71.4, 74.1, and 74.0 respectively. The mean maximum temperatures are 83.7, 86.5 and 86.0; the mean minimum temperatures 59.0 and 61.7 and 61.9. The highest temperature ever recorded at Adelaide during a heat wave was 116.3, on 26th January, 1858. These bursts of heat usually occur with dry north winds blowing from the interior. Near the coast, however, the summer heat is greatly reduced by cool breezes from the sea. Thus, at Adelaide, the prevailing direction of the wind in the summer months is south-west, *i.e.*, off the sea. In winter, on the contrary, north and north-east winds prevail.

As a maritime port Adelaide, the capital of South Australia, cannot be compared to either Sydney or Melbourne. The city itself is situated on the banks of the shallow Torrens River, but Port Adelaide, on Salt Creek, is some miles distant from the heart of the capital, and it is here that ocean liners disembark passengers and cargo. As a commercial centre, however, its position is decidedly good, being surrounded by some of the most fertile land in this portion of the continent.

Adelaide, which has a population of about 350,000, is a well-laid-out and thoroughly modern city. Like all the capitals of the States of Australia, it possesses excellent public works and every modern convenience. The buildings are of solid construction, the streets broad and well-lighted; it has, in fact, been termed "The Model City," and in many respects it deserves its title, for there is a clean, open and yet solid appearance about the capital of South Australia which many cities, although famous for the grandeur of their architecture, are entirely without. The chief suburb is Glenelg.



ON THE MURRAY RIVER

*Photo, Australian Government*

KING WILLIAM STREET, ADELAIDE, CAPITAL OF SOUTH AUSTRALIA

Twenty miles to the rear of Adelaide stands a ridge of mountains about 2,000 ft. high; and dominating the entrance to the St. Vincent Gulf, which forms the ocean approach to the capital, lies Kangaroo Island.

The Gambier district, adjoining the south-western corner of the State of Victoria, is known as the "Garden of South Australia"; and it is here that the fruit-growing industry has attained a high degree of development. The chief city is Mount Gambier, which has a population of over 6,000, and is rapidly becoming one of the most important towns in the State. Dotted all over South Australia there are a large number of small pastoral, agricultural and mining centres, mostly composed of wooden houses, with a population which seldom exceeds 1,000. The exceptions

are: Port Pirie, with 13,000 inhabitants, and Port Augusta, with 4,000. The only other towns of importance are: Kapunda (3,000), Gawler (5,000) and Peterborough (3,000). All of these towns are on the railway running north from Adelaide.

Looking at the map of South Australia, one would naturally imagine the interior to be blessed with a magnificent system of navigable lakes and waterways. Large patches of blue denote Lakes Gairdner, Torrens and Amadens, and little streaks the Rivers Marshal, Hay and Todd. The truth however, is that these lakes are salt-bogs, and the rivers seldom have a drop of water to cover their dry beds. Lakes Eyre, Gregory, Hope and Frome, are also salt, and situated below sea-level, which effectually prevents them from ever becoming

the source of fine river systems, or of being of any material value for irrigation purposes. Nevertheless, the surrounding country, although dry, is covered with excellent pasture, and affords magnificent grazing ground for the ever-increasing herds of cattle and flocks of sheep.

The interior of South Australia is crossed by railways and telegraphs, and the important

Vast areas of country in various districts are being surveyed by the Government and thrown open to settlers; and it is computed that 5,000,000 fresh acres of good agricultural land within the line of ample rainfall will be ready for settlement during the next few years. There are, in addition, about 20,000 square miles of pastoral land being offered for selection.



ADELAIDE FROM THE GENERAL POST OFFICE

Photo, Australian Government

towns, as well as many of the small pastoral centres, are connected with the capital, and also with other States by an extensive network of lines, which will do more than anything else towards bringing population and prosperity to these vast tracts of pasture land.

The total area of South Australia in acres is 243,244,000, of which only 6,000,000 acres are actually under crop. The unoccupied areas amount to about 90,500,000 acres.

The total areas under various crops in South Australia are approximately as follows:

Wheat	-	-	-	2,800,000	acres.
Hay	-	-	-	521,000	"
Oats	-	-	-	207,000	"
Green Forage	-	-	-	33,600	"
Barley	-	-	-	200,000	"
Orchards (and fruit)	-	-	-	33,200	"
Vines	-	-	-	50,000	"
Beans	-	-	-	11,000	"
Potatoes	-	-	-	7,000	"

This State is the chief exporter of wine in the Commonwealth, over 17,000,000 gallons being annually produced, together with 110,000 cwts. of currants and 130,000 cwts. of raisins.

The wool industry of South Australia dates back almost to the foundation of the State, and to the South Australian Company the credit is due for the first introduction of

ists, and within about four years the South Australian flocks totalled 200,000.

The first shipment of wool was made at the end of 1837, and consisted of 4 bales ; within ten years the exports exceeded 500,000 lb., worth £75,000 ; and now the number of sheep in this State exceeds 7,300,000, and the average annual production of wool amounts to about 73 million pounds.



PRIVATE RESIDENCES, MT. LOFTY, NEAR ADELAIDE

Official Photo

sheep. This Company purchased pure-bred Merino sheep from Tasmania and New South Wales, in addition to a number of rams from Saxony. About the same time Leicester and Southdown sheep were also introduced by the Company, but the Merino proved itself best adapted to local conditions, and has ever since remained the principal breed. In addition to these importations, large numbers of sheep were brought from the neighbouring States by the pioneer pastoral-

The pastoral areas of the State may be roughly classified into three types : (1) the saltbush plains of the north, where the average rainfall is low, and large areas are unoccupied. Water conservation and careful stocking are the chief factors in the profitable utilisation of this country. (2) The well-grassed plains and hilly country of the north and middle north. The conditions of these districts are more favourable, and the carrying capacity greater than is the case

with the saltbush country. (3) The south and south-east comprise a different class of country. The rainfall is much heavier, and the herbage more luxuriant. South Australia enjoys a remarkable immunity from serious losses of sheep from disease.

This State is not nearly so rich in minerals as New South Wales or West Australia, and its average annual production is valued at about £1,100,000. Copper accounts for £700,000, salt for £40,000, gold for £15,000, ironstone flux for £26,000, and gypsum for £7,000. The value of the total copper

fringe the mainland, rendering navigation intricate and dangerous. On some of the islands guano deposits are worked, and others are visited at certain seasons of the year for turtles and *bêche-de-mer*, that filthy looking sea slug which is more delicate than nightingales' tongues to the mysterious palate of the Chinese gourmand. The two islands of most importance are Dirk Hartog, to the west of Shark Bay, now a large sheep station, and Rottnest, 12 miles from Fremantle, formerly a penal establishment for natives, but now a popular summer resort,



SHARKS BAY, WESTERN AUSTRALIA

production, since the beginning of statistical records, is estimated at about £34,800,000.

West Australia

This State, which is the largest of the Commonwealth, has an area of 975,920 square miles, and a population of about 420,000. It is eighteen times the size of England and Wales, and embraces nearly one-third of the Australian continent. In the north it is tropical, and yet Albany, on its southern coast, possesses a cooler summer climate than any place on the Australian coast. It has a coast-line 5,200 miles in length.

The north, north-west, and south-east coasts of West Australia derive no small amount of picturesque interest from the profusion of islands, small and large, which

for which its many natural beauties admirably qualify it.

Regarding the better known portion of the Western Australian coast, it may be said that it fully excuses the misjudgment of the early discoverers. It is for the greater portion low-lying, bald, unpicturesque and uninviting, and never does it suggest the pleasant stretches of fertility and the realms of forest wealth lying a few miles inland. Strangely enough, the greatest attractions are at the very extremities of the immense coast-line, the north and the south-east, and there the scenery develops from the commonplace into something imposing and grand—rugged and menacing walls of rock upon which the rollers lash themselves in impotent fury, and myriads of islands, some scrub-covered and inviting to the sportsman or artist, and others, hundreds of them, mere rounded

hills of granite, resembling immense cannon balls, and in their profusion suggestive of spent ammunition on the battle-ground of prehistoric giants.

Western Australia is not a mountainous country, and the highest known point in the State reaches an altitude of only 3,800 ft. But many of the mountains, rising abruptly from low-lying plains, present a striking appearance. In the north-west, high rugged hills outcrop precipitately from the dead level of the plain, seemingly as artificial an imposition as the Pyramids, and stimulating the imagination to thoughts of some black Australian Cheops, ambitious to

being perfectly isolated, and ascending steeply from the plains, is impressively visible for a great distance. The highest altitude in this range is 3,640 ft. Some of the most rugged country of the interior is in the north and north-west, where, in parts, the bareness of the hills, the long diabase dykes resembling broken Roman walls raised by nature across the continent, and other strange geological characteristics, relieve the otherwise palling monotony of the landscape.

"Of navigable rivers there is practically only one, viz., the Swan River, on the picturesque shores of which the capital city



PERTH, CAPITAL OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

leave behind him imperishable reminders of his transient self. The best known and most important elevation is the Darling Range, running north and south about 20 miles inland from the sea for a distance of some 300 miles, and affording in the blue distance an admirable perspective for the picturesque beauties of the metropolis. There are no peaks over 1,500 ft. in height, yet, as the range rises suddenly from the low coastal plain and its slopes are thickly wooded, it appears more imposing than other ranges of greater altitude; also, it has no little influence on the climatic conditions of the most closely settled areas. The Stirling Range, situated about 40 miles to the north-east of Albany, is the loftiest range in the southern portion of the State, and

reposes, and at the mouth of which Fremantle gives a kindly reception and quick despatch to the shipping of the world. The Swan is a shallow, almost currentless stream, but it is navigable by small boats in the estuarine portion for some 20 miles, and is capable of being deepened to accommodate extensive shipping, should the necessity ever arise for bringing the maritime commerce nearer to Perth. Many of the rivers in the south-west are perennial; they follow a sinuous course for hundred of miles, and present scope for irrigational adaptation; but the majority of the others are simply immense storm-water channels which carry off the floods after the rainy season. Thus in the north-west, where the largest and longest rivers are, the flooded stream, welling

from its shallow channel over a flat country may, after the heavy rains, have a width of two or three miles, and be impassable for weeks. But in time the flood subsides, the stream shrinks back into its narrow bed, and in the rainless season there is only the sandy course where the river ought to be, except for the occasional wide pools where wild fowl in myriads congregate. As with the rivers, so often it is with the lakes. There are times when the traveller may ford lake after lake and river after river, as shown on the maps, and yet see no water. He is merely calling at the winter or summer residence, as the case may be, of the river or lake ; in the wet season the water is there in

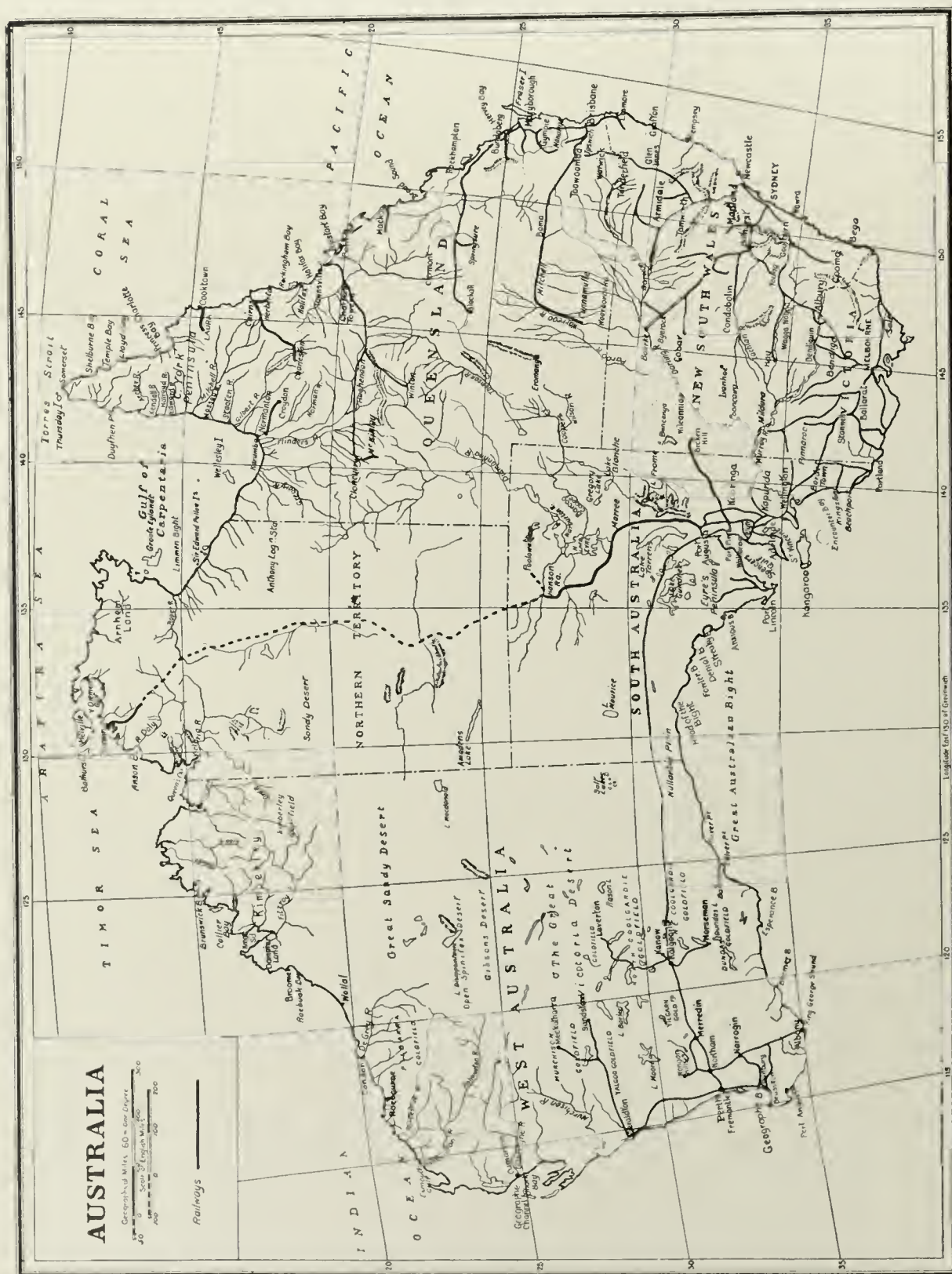
quantity and area, but as the months go by it either percolates downwards to quench the fires of internal earth, or evaporates into the ether and enjoys a few months of aviation travel. But of a certainty the time of precipitation comes, and, as regularly as the return of the swallows, the moisture comes back to the the thirsty earth again."

In a country of such immense area the general contour is difficult of definition, but so widely and daringly has exploration been conducted that, except for obscure portions of the interior, the total area of nearly 1,000,000 square miles is fairly completely mapped. Naturally there are graduations of soil and climate with every degree of



ST. GEORGE'S TERRACE, PERTH

Photo, Australian Government]



SPECIALLY DRAWN FOR THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE BY A.H.L.E.E.

latitude and longitude. The north, truly tropical in climate and vegetation, and the north-west, practically untimbered, may both be described as mountainous, consisting of alternating high and low-lying plateaux of either sandstone or granite formation. On the other hand, a large portion of the south-western and southern seaboard is of a flat, sandy character, and is in reality a vast forest, the timbers of which are of great commercial value, while the soil is provedly capable of profitable husbandry.

capacity of Western Australia generally has still to be learned. Vast in area, with a wide range of climate and soils, with manifold known resources, and an endless number of others yet to be translated from prophecy to fact, it is inevitable that a veil of indefiniteness should hide from seers of the present day many of the characteristics and qualities which will tell in directing the ultimate destiny of this young giant of the Australian Commonwealth.

Some of it is known to be a desert, sandy and waterless, and somewhere in its un-



LANDING PEARL SHELL ON THE COAST OF WEST AUSTRALIA

Of the vast hinterland, the characteristics but not the capabilities are known. This great tableland has an altitude of 1,000 to 2,000 ft. above sea-level, and, whilst in parts the surface consists largely of sand dunes, there are other considerable areas of clayey soils. So far settlement has proceeded only some 600 miles inland from the seaboard, and whether the rich mineral area on which the existing gold-fields are situated will be continued, and whether pastoral possibilities are contained in the untamed area, are questions which are still to be determined by exploration and experiment. In fact, the ultimate

dulating distances, where, in the treacherous mirage, phantom lakes, rivers and mountains rise to lure the traveller to destruction, the bones of lost explorers, the valiant vanguard of civilisation, bleach white in the sun. Yet of recent years further exploration has circumscribed the desert considerably. Portions of the area over which that hopeless term was written large in bygone times when knowledge was less, have been found to be eminently suited for pastoralism. The pastures are good and water has been found regularly at shallow depths, whilst the limits of the artesian basin have yet to be deter-

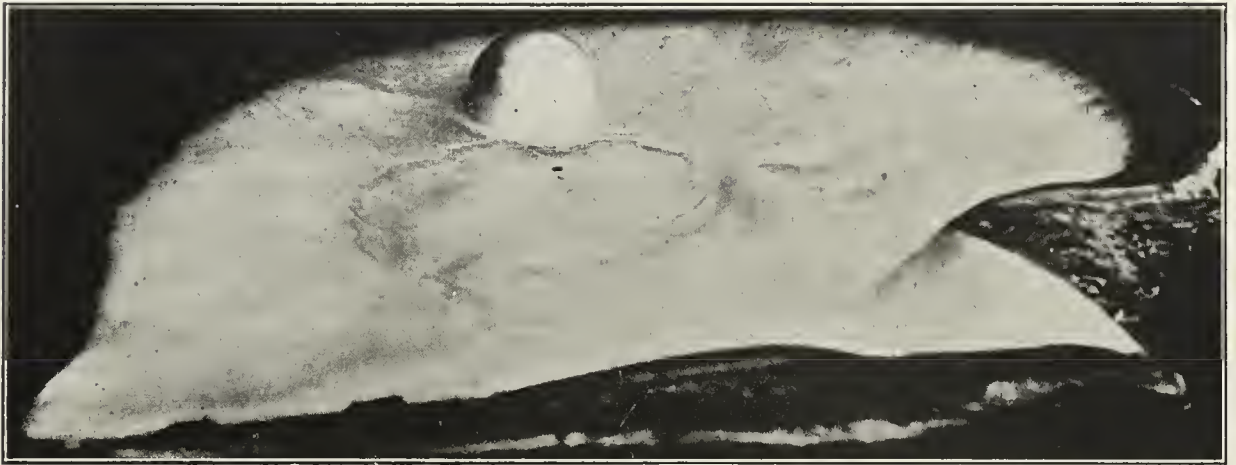


OPENING PEARL SHELL

*Photos,*

PEARLING LUGGERS AT BROOME, WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Australian Government



A VERY FINE BLISTER PEARL

mined. Over the so-called desert the Explorer, Canning, passed in 1908 on his 900 miles trip from Wiluna to Hall's Creek; over the so-called desert between Kalgoorlie and the South Australian boundary the surveyors of the transcontinental railway route passed in the same year, and the reports of both gave a new value to the hitherto profitless interior.

The climate of the south-western portion of the State, of which Perth may be taken as the centre, is excellent. During the summer months the warm days are tempered by the sea breeze which comes up at noon, and makes the remainder of the day pleasantly cool. This breeze extends at least 150 miles inland over the whole of the agricultural areas. The mean temperature of Perth for twenty-two years is 64.8. The rainfall is heaviest in the south-west, diminishing thence northward and eastward. It also decreases in the coastal ranges as we proceed further inland. On the coast it is approximately 30 in., while it is necessary to go nearly 200 miles inland before the 10-inch limit is reached. The average rainfall, taken over a period of twelve years, is, in the Eastern districts, 9.70; in the South-western district, 24.95; and the Eucla district, 18.72, or an average of 17.7. The following table shows the average rainfall and temperature at the various places:—

			Inches.	Mean Temp. Deg. F.
Geraldton	-	-	18.95	67.6
Perth	-	-	31.21	64.8
Bunbury	-	-	34.47	62.8
Albany	-	-	30.52	60.6
Northam	-	-	21.63	64.4
Kalgoorlie	-	-	8.57	65.3

An area of between 40,000,000 and 50,000,000 acres in the southern portion of the State is eminently adapted for the cultivation of wheat, oats, or barley. Commencing at the Darling Ranges, where the annual rainfall is 35 in., the wheat belt extends eastward, with a gradually diminishing rainfall, to Merredon, where the average rainfall is over 10 in. The whole of the land served by the Great Southern Railway and the Midland Railway, as far north as Northampton, lies within a rainfall belt of 10 in. as the minimum, and, as the rains come regularly just at the time crops require them, it is safe to grow cereals anywhere inside this area. In fact, the only limit to the wheat-growing area within this belt is the distance from railway connection, from 20 to 30 miles being the utmost limit at which it will be profitable to haul wheat. An enormous area of wheat land has been made available to the selector by the construction of spur railways, and when those lines which it is intended to construct are completed a further large area will be opened.

The south-western portion of the State, which enjoys a fairly heavy rainfall of over 30 in. per annum, is particularly well adapted for the growth of fruit, especially apples for export.

The elevation of the country—it is 1,200 ft. above sea-level, even at Kalgoorlie—is responsible for the salubrity of the climate.

The north-west and northern portions of the State are almost entirely devoted to the production of meat and wool.

The climate in the tropical areas is divided into two seasons, wet and dry, the former

lasting from the middle or end of November to the end of March—the maximum temperature being in this period 100 deg., occasionally more. In the winter months, the weather is for the most part fine, clear, calm and pleasant. The rainfall is from 10 to 33 in., the heaviest falls occurring in the extreme tropics. The regularity of rainfall has placed the pastoral industry of this State in a flourishing condition.

ROMANCE OF THE GOLD-FIELDS.

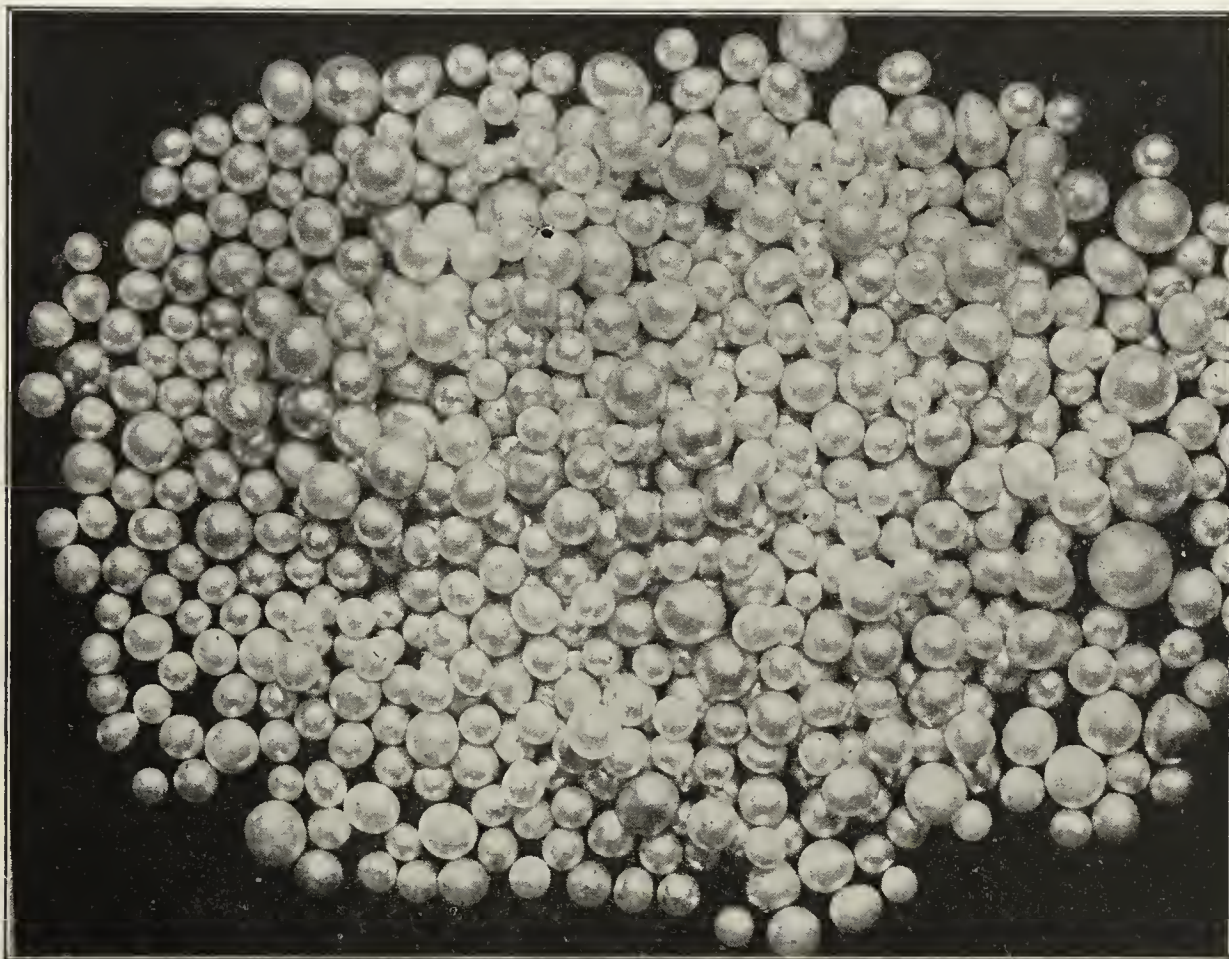
No survey of Western Australia would be complete without an account of the romantic discovery and development of the famous Western gold-fields of Australia, those which eclipsed Bendigo and Ballarat, and drew to the Far West millions of capital and thousands of people.

The existence of mineral wealth had always been suspected, and the prospects of a pros-

perous mining era dawning upon the country was the burden of oft repeated predictions, as explorers returned from the dark interior with report of auriferous areas traversed, but seemingly inaccessible to the practical miner. Yet prospecting in various portions of the State had produced only intangible results, and it was not until the actual discovery of payable gold in Kimberley in 1885, and the subsequent rush of population into the wild interior of tropical north-western Australia, that the colony felt the first heart-flutters at the thought of the imminent inheritance of unexpected riches. But the golden age was not yet. Kimberley rose, flourished, and set ingloriously. The grand revelation was yet to come. The imagination, however, had been excited, the eye had been sharpened to look for gold, and the public mind had acquired the habit of thinking of gold. In addition, to make the prospects brighter,



LANDING, SORTING AND PACKING PEARL SHELL



PEARLS FROM WESTERN AUSTRALIA

the population, since the Kimberley rush, had been augmented by some thousands of adventurous spirits from outside the State, and their efforts continued to permeate the atmosphere with the germs of gold fever. Soon the prospectors were scattered through the interior from Yilgarn to Kimberley. The discovery of the Yilgarn gold-fields in 1887, the Pilbara field in 1888, and the Murchison field in 1891, was a natural consequence of the prevailing sentiment. By 1890 Western Australia possessed a recognised mining industry, and the production for the year totalled 20,402 oz.*

Two years later the State showed signs of awakening from its lethargy in the fact of a telegraph line to Southern Cross, the centre of the Yilgarn gold-field, being opened, and a bill for the construction of a railway to that centre being passed. The mining population

was by this time a leavening factor in the community, and the fact that gold was being won in profitable quantities was enough to put a great proportion of the population on the alert. They were prepared for something sensational, but the whole community was turned topsy-turvy by the almost incredible riches unearthed by Bayley and Ford in April, 1892, at a place in the wilderness which, in a month, the whole world knew as Coolgardie. These two daring spirits, fired by the lust of gold, had pushed out east of Southern Cross on a prospecting expedition. Over the waterless desert they pursued their quest, and, as if by a miracle, camped on a spot the richness of which was in a few months to throw the Australian people almost off their balance. Prospecting across the adjacent flats they found abundant traces of alluvial gold, and in two or three weeks had

* "*Western Australia*"—official.

specked and dry-blown over 200 oz. Running short of supplies they made back to Southern Cross, but immediately returned to the scene of their find. On the evening of regaining their camp they attacked the cap of a reef with a tomahawk, and lo ! it was as though they had broken the seal which kept the secret of King Solomon's mines. In the space of a few hours they chopped off the surface of the earth solid chunks of bullion, weighing in one instance 50 oz., and giving them a parcel of 500 oz. of almost pure gold as the total result of their evening's inquisitiveness. Coolgardie was discovered, and the history of the West Australian gold-fields, amongst the most notable in the world, had begun. The find was reported at Southern Cross, and within three days that centre was deserted and its population was frantically hurrying through the trackless desert to the scene of this reef of pure gold. Along the newly opened telegraph line the news was flashed to Perth, and the capital was caught in the throes of the gold frenzy. A newspaper paragraph on the following day stated : " In

Perth or Fremantle everyone seems to be either carrying tents, picks, shovels and dishes or otherwise preparing for the road." Throughout the country the news spread like wildfire, and from every town in the State men departed into the new land of Ophir. The railway to Southern Cross was still a thing of the future, but along the unmade track to the eastward a motley procession was moving—coaches, teams, horses, camels, pedestrians (some of them conveying their whole fighting outfit in a wheelbarrow), were straggling into the interior, and braving with a resoluteness born of feverish hope the hardships which beset a great portion of the 350 miles of track between Perth and Coolgardie.

But the find was not merely a local sensation. If Western Australia was dazzled by the splendour of her latest inheritance, Eastern Australia was no less astonished, and no sooner had confirmatory testimony been adduced as to the genuineness of the Coolgardie discovery than the young manhood of the Continent heard and answered the call of the West. The Continent seethed



A BORING AND PROSPECTING OUTFIT. Getting ready for the Desert Gold Fields

Photo, Australian Government



A PROSPECTOR AT WORK

with excitement, and a fever was in the air. Imaginations were fired by the telegraphed reports of Coolgardie's almost fabulous wealth and this remote spot in a sterile desert became the Mecca to which every eye and mind hourly turned. Pilgrims rushed to the ports in thousands, and the few steamers engaged in the West Australian trade were all too inadequate to meet the demand for passage accommodation. Every boat that touched Western Australian shores discharged hundreds of adventurous souls—men of youth, courage, strength and enterprise, the very pick of Australian manhood. All that had

been denied to Western Australia in the past—attention, population and capital—the world now stumbled over itself in its eagerness to give.

Coolgardie became a word to juggle with in all quarters of the globe, and Europe, as well as Eastern Australia, flooded its population into the embarrassed West. And not only population, but money as well. Unimproved acres in a waterless desert, hundreds of miles beyond the nearest railway line, and without an improvement visible in the vicinity of greater substance than a hessian humpy, sold at many pounds per foot, and companies floated almost of their own volition on to the buoyant markets of London and Australia. Money flowed into the country in millions, and probably nowhere else had there been such an accretion of wealth, population and commerce, as Western Australia enjoyed in those stirring days. Perth, Fremantle and Albany were overrun with new arrivals, house accommodation was at a premium, and prices rose to famine heights. All this time adventurous gold-seekers, merchants, tradesmen and labourers were swarming into the interior in an interminable queue. Coolgardie beckoned them on, and across the sterile plains they swept, outpacing civilisation without a regret, and facing without fear the perils of the inhospitable bush, the barren stretches of salt lake and dreary spinifex, the waterless wastes of desert sand, and the burning rays of a semi-tropical sun. In a few months the foundations of a city—the industrial and human foundations—had been laid in the desert, and a community of some thousands were established in an aggregation of brush, hessian and galvanised iron shanties.

Then followed in the course of the next year, in a manner equally as sensational as the finding of Coolgardie, the discovery of Kalgoorlie, one of the wonders of the world. Just as Coolgardie had eclipsed Southern Cross and robbed it of much of the financial nourishment needful for its development, Kalgoorlie in turn was to make Coolgardie pale into insignificance. But for a few years



GOLD! LOADING CAMELS FOR A NEW RUSH IN THE EARLY NINETIES

yet Coolgardie, growing in size and comeliness, was to continue to wield a magic influence, and to attract like a magnet from all parts of the earth. The Government had come forward nobly to the aid of the people, and, whilst mile upon mile of the railway was being gradually pushed inland, public officers were busy improving the road facilities, opening up water supplies, and making

easier for man and beast the invasion of the desert.

It was not until July of 1894 that the railway to Southern Cross was opened, but within the next few months telegraphic communication was established with Coolgardie and Kalgoorlie, and a Government, greatly daring, resolved to take the tide of the State's affairs at the flood, and on the 18th June,

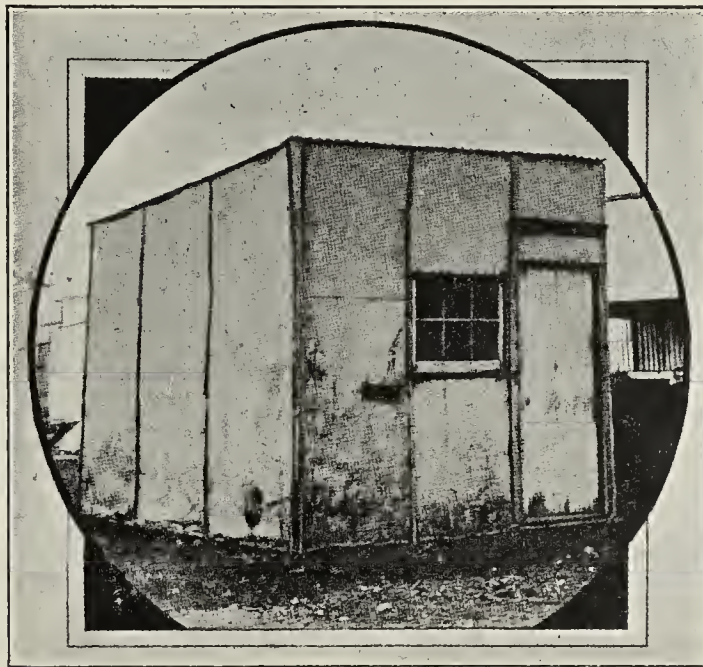


COOLGARDIE CELEBRATES THE OPENING OF THE RAILWAY IN 1896

Photos, Western Australian Government

1895, let a contract for the extension of the railway to Coolgardie. In the following March the railway was opened and six months later the iron horse entered Kalgoorlie. There is no need to dwell here on the wonderful metamorphosis of Kalgoorlie. The galaxy of wonderful mines that constitute the Golden Mile had begun to reveal their riches, and the crude mining camp was already a thing of the past. In its stead the elements of a modern city were visible. Buildings of brick and stone were already in evidence, and the amenities of civilisation had been

workers, fossickers, investors and gamblers from all parts of the world. As the bonanzas of Kalgoorlie opened up with golden promise population continued to surge in. Towns sprang up in a few days far and wide throughout the State, property values multiplied themselves hourly and fortunes were made with almost incredible suddenness. A romantic glamour was over the land. Poverty was converted into opulence as by the touch of a magician, and no country ever saw more thrilling changes of fortune than were of daily occurrence in that modern Eldorado.



Photo, Western Australian Government
KALGOORLIE POST OFFICE, 1898

established in this spot, 375 miles inland from Perth, and in the midst of what up till three years before had been regarded as a profitless waste of hungry sand. Coolgardie, too, had been rising, and was now an established town of up-to-date features, but the "old camp" was speedily surpassed by its younger and more brilliant rival. Money and muscle arrived in the desert by train-loads to play a part in the exploitation of the gilded wilderness. In 1895, over £50,000,000 was subscribed, chiefly in London on behalf of Westralian flotations, and for several years thereafter the State was to become the happy hunting ground of the

It is but natural that the huge production of gold during the years of surface working should not have continued. From an output valued at £1,148 in 1886 it rose to £8,770,719 in 1903. Since then it has shown a steady decline, but the working of other ores has enabled this State to maintain a high rate of mineral production. The gold output averages 450,000 ounces.

The total area of Western Australia in acres is 624,588,800, of which about 3,400,000 acres is under crop. The area under wheat is approximately 2,600,000 acres.

The pastoral industry in Western Australia is one of the most important. The area of



Photo, Western Australian Government

KALGOORLIE POST OFFICE TO-DAY

land held under pastoral leases amounts to about 166,000,000 acres, in addition to nearly 2,500,000 acres under homestead and grazing leases. The number of live-stock in this State is as follows :—

Horses	-	-	-	170,000
Cattle	-	-	-	830,000
Sheep	-	-	-	7,500,000

The average annual value of the export of wool is approximately £3,500,000, and of hides and skin £800,000.

Perth, the capital of West Australia, is situated a few miles up the Swan River and stands in the middle of the fertile coast belt. It is the emporium of the whole State, and has a population (including Fremantle) of about 210,000. There are many fine buildings; the capital value of the city property, alone, amounting to considerably over £15,000,000. The river develops into a large lake fronting the city, and on the south bank of this beautiful sheet of water stands South Perth and Victoria Park. A

wide area of country, amounting to about 1,000 acres, has been reserved for the public in West Perth, and a drive through this beautiful domain, which is known as King's Park, is *the* sight of the capital.

Perth possesses all the most modern improvements. Electric trams serve the city and suburbs; the streets are illuminated by electric light; the water supply is on the antiseptic system; and there are cathedrals, theatres, clubs and fine stores.

About 12 miles distant from the capital stands Fremantle, the principal port of Western Australia, which has superseded Albany as the calling place of many ocean liners. It stands at the mouth of the Swan River and has a fine harbour.

The other ports on this portion of the Australian coast are Roebourne, Onslow and Geraldton, in the north, and Augusta and Albany in the south. The anchorage at Albany could accommodate the combined fleets of the world's navies.

The chief towns of the gold-fields are Kalgoorlie, Coolgardie, Leonora and Menzies. Gold, copper and coal are the chief products. Around the towns of Perth, Fremantle and Northam, fruit is largely grown and the manufacture of wine is an important industry. The richest pastoral districts are around Yatheroo, and on the Victoria plains, some few miles north of Perth. The great Kari forests are situated near Mount Barker, and Jarrah wood is shipped from Rockingham.

South, or temperate Australia, it is the time of heat and drought. The chief industries of the North are gold-mining and pearl-fishing; and the ports are Broome, Wyndham and Derby, all of which are very small towns having only a sluggish coasting trade.

Tasmania

Across the Bass Strait, about 100 miles from the coast of Victoria, lies Tasmania,



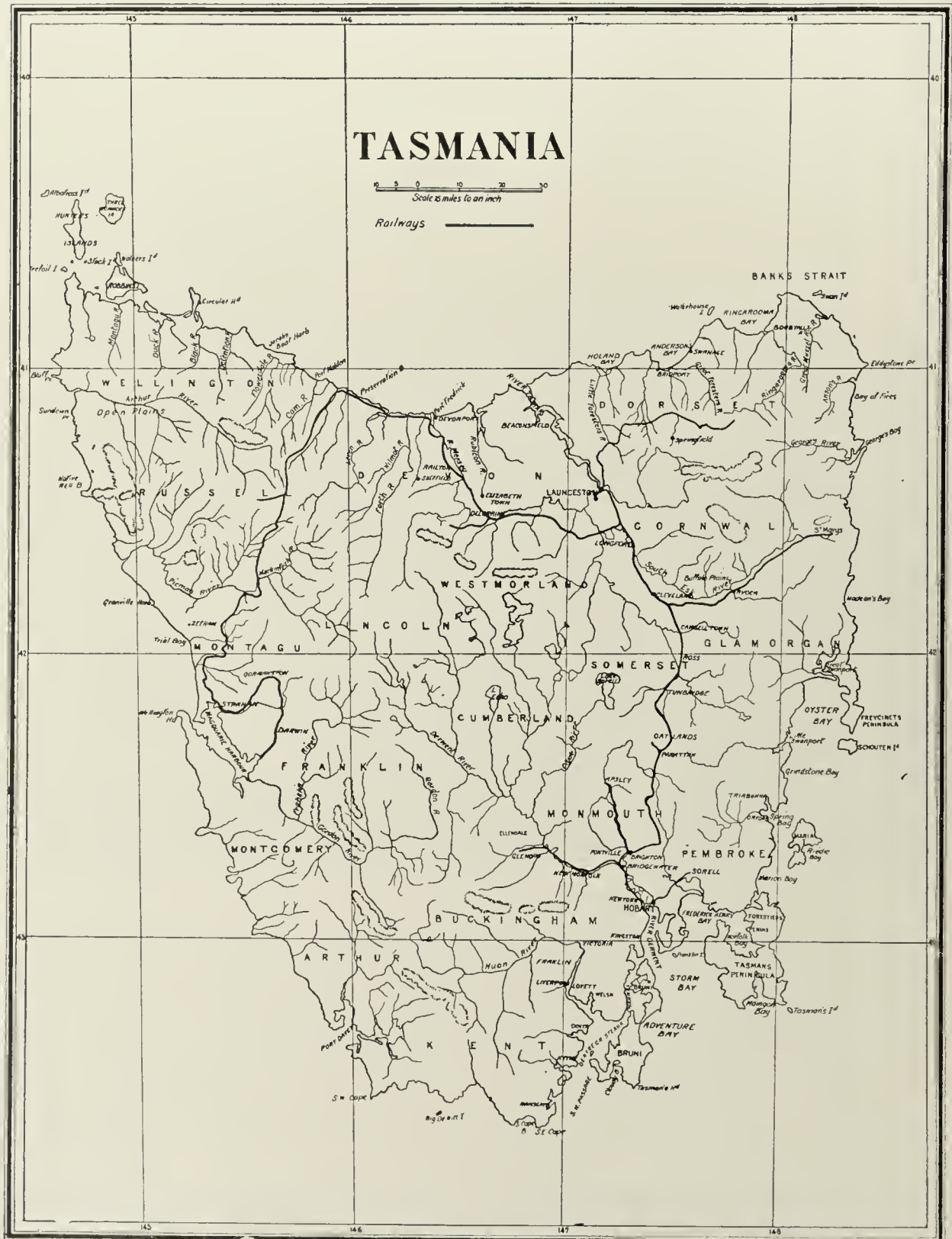
Photo, Australian Government

"THE GOLDEN MILE," KALGOORLIE. The Desert City of West Australia

The extreme north of Western Australia is to all intents and purposes a region separate from the remainder of the State, being divided on the sea-shore by the "Eighty-mile Beach," and in the interior by the "Sandy Desert"—two barren tracts which are crossed only by the telegraph wire—it belongs more closely to Northern Australia than to the fertile West Coast. Kimberley, the principal district, lies completely within the tropics, and in common with the whole of Northern Australia possesses a hot climate, and is subject to heavy summer rains with occasional hurricanes. In the tropics summer is the rainy season, whereas in

the island State of the Commonwealth, which has an area of 26,215 square miles and a population of nearly 300,000. This island possesses the most salubrious climate of all the seven States. Unlike the dry plains of the Australian continent the surface of this island is diversified, the rainfall is normal, and the large number of deep running streams ensures a constant water supply. Tasmania, which is about the size of Ireland, is a land of fruit, flowers and hedgerows, and possesses rich mines of gold, silver and copper.

Of all the Australian colonies Tasmania is most like Great Britain. It is divided into eighteen counties, many of which are named



SPECIALLY DRAWN FOR THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE BY A.H.LEE.

after those in the "Old Country." In the north lie Devon, Dorset and Cornwall, which are all fine agricultural counties ; and here also we find the towns of Launceston, Devonport and Torquay, with dashes of Scotch like Ben Lomond and Ben Nevis. Ireland is represented by St. Patrick's Head and River ; and Tasmanian residents enjoy a trip on the Tamar as much as the inhabitants of Plymouth. Although there is a village of Exeter there is no cathedral with massive carved front, but cider is a speciality, and

the ground is hidden beneath a profusion of wild flowers, Sassafray and fern. Around Circular Head cattle and sheep are reared in considerable numbers ; wheat, oats and potatoes are grown, and creameries are rapidly springing up ; but the climate of this county, generally, is wet and windy, which causes it to be less suitable for agriculture than those on the east coast.

Dorset, in the extreme north-east, is well covered with forests, which, however, must be cleared and "burnt off" before more land for



GRAVELLY BEACH, TAMAR RIVER, TASMANIA

Photo, Australian Government

cream is by no means an unknown quantity. Devon is thickly covered with forest, but there are more prosperous farms in the clearings than there are in any other county of the island. Cattle-breeding also forms an important industry, and fruit growing on the lower Mersey is, judging from its rapid growth, a very profitable undertaking. Around Beaconsfield, near Port Dalrymple, gold mining is largely carried on. The general aspect of this county, and also of Cornwall and Dorset, is decidedly picturesque ; and in Wellington, which forms the north-western corner of Tasmania, there are magnificent forests of eucalyptus, myrtle and musk, and

cultivation is available ; but near Scottsdale, Ringarooma and Georgetown, there are some magnificent farms ; and dairying is a paying industry. The chief wealth of this county lies in the gold-bearing stratum around Lefroy and "Nine Mile Spring," and the tin mines near Derby and on the Thomas Plain.

The most important county in the north of the island is Cornwall, which possesses the city of Launceston. Situated on the broad River Tamar, which runs through Devon to Port Dalrymple, this town has direct steamship communication with Melbourne and Sydney, and is linked by railway with



A COUNTRY ROAD, TASMANIA

Hobart, the capital of Tasmania, and the chief port on the island. Cornwall, however, does not rely solely on the industries, manufacturing and otherwise, of its principal city, for it possesses the rich gold-fields and coal

Launceston and Avoca, but the development of the cultivable area is slow, and pastoral farming is here only a minor industry.

Thick myrtle and brake forests occupy the principal portion of what is left by the



SETTLER'S HOME, TASMANIA

mines around the bright little town of Fingal, as well as the "Black Boy" and "Tower Hill" gold-fields. Agriculture forms an important industry of the districts around

rugged mountain ranges of the county of Russell, which, in common with the whole west coast, has a very wet climate. It is no exaggeration to say that rain falls on 300 days



MT. WELLINGTON, HOBART, TASMANIA

Photo, Australian Government

out of the 365 in the year. The mining industry is, however, important. Near Mount Bischoff are situated some famous tin mines, where the machinery is entirely operated by hydraulic power, and the ore is worked from the out-croppings in the cliff side. The rivers of this county yield a considerable quantity of gold and silver-lead; but the climate prevents the development of agricultural and pastoral industries.

The "Lake District" of Tasmania lies in the counties of Lincoln and Westmorland, which are certainly appropriately named; although the scenery around the shores of Lake St. Clair far surpasses for wild beauty the banks of Lake Windermere; and the "Great Lake," with its wild mountainous surroundings, more closely resembles Loch Lomond than Ullswater; but, unfortunately, the climate of the Tasmanian Lakes, except during certain months, is even worse than November in the English Lake District.

This region, which is situated in the heart of the island, is but little known. The mountain gorges answer only to the ring of the miner's pick or the woodman's axe, and the broad sheets of water, one of which, the "Great Lake," is over 13 miles long and 8 miles broad, are silent and undisturbed save for the birds and breezes from the mountain sides. The banks are completely hidden by thick native grass and trees, and a million leaves are mirrored on the placid waters, which hide their depth in innumerable devices of weeds and water flowers. High on each side rise the mountains, dappled almost to their summits with giant ferns and trees.

Lincoln, which surrounds the northernmost lakes, is rich in gold, silver and copper, and bids fair to become the most important mining county in Tasmania. The Middlesex gold-fields are being actively worked, silver is found on the banks of the Dove River, and

copper in large quantities near Baron Bluff. Cradle Mountain, 5,000 ft. high, and the most lofty peak in Tasmania, rears its mighty crest above the county of Lincoln.

The summer climate and soil of the northern portion of Westmorland lend themselves more favourably towards cattle-breeding, sheep-raising, and agriculture, than do those of the county of Lincoln, although the rainfall is very heavy in both counties. Notwithstanding this fact wheat is more extensively grown in the northern portion of this county than it is in any other part of the island. The country around the lakes in South Westmorland is, however, very mountainous and but little exploited.

The counties of Montagu, Franklin, Montgomery and Arthur, on the west coast are principally given over to mining. They are traversed in all directions by mountain ranges, and have a wet, stormy climate. The

copper mines of Mount Lyell, situated a few miles inland from Macquarie Harbour, to which they are connected by railway, have sprung into fame during recent years. The production of copper is considerable, especially in the vicinity of Swansea, a growing coast town, facing Oyster Bay. Coal is also found in extensive seams in this county.

Pembroke and the Tasman Peninsula enjoy a mild and somewhat humid climate well suited to the horticultural industry. All kinds of fruit, especially apples and pears, are exported in large quantities from this region. Almost the same is the county of Kent, which, however, possesses the finest orchards in Tasmania, and is thickly wooded with eucalyptus and myrtle. There are many excellent agricultural lands, and wheat and cereals are largely exported.

Hobart, the capital city and chief port of the island, lies in the county of Buckingham,



HOBART, CAPITAL OF TASMANIA

Photo, Australian Government



ELIZABETH STREET, HOBART, TASMANIA

Photo, Australian Government

12 miles up the Derwent River, and, with its suburbs, has a population of over 60,000. A fine harbour, entered by way of the appropriately named "Storm Bay," gives to the Tasmanian capital an ever increasing prosperity, which, however, is largely due to the fertility of the surrounding country, covered with orchards and trees, and also to its position, on the navigable Derwent, down which, and its affluents, large quantities of produce are brought from the interior. Hobart is also the centre of the railway system which runs almost completely round the island.

There is nothing mediæval about Hobart. It possesses all the latest appliances for the convenience and comfort of man, but lacks the noise, bustle and dust of places like Melbourne and Sydney, which is certainly more an advantage than a drawback.

Much of the arable land in Buckingham has now been brought under cultivation, and orchards and hop gardens are dotted all over this county. The chief agricultural centres

are New Norfolk, Brighton, Kingston and Glenorchy.

In Tasmania there are many small coast ports and over thirty towns of more than 500 inhabitants. The fauna includes the Tasmanian Devil, the duck-billed platypus and the kangaroo, as well as the opossum, wombat and wallaby, which are valued for their skins.

Around the Tasmanian coast there are over fifty small islands, the most important of which are King Island and the Hunters group in the Bass Straits, and Flinders and the Kent group off the north-east coast. Although extensive fisheries are carried on along the coasts of these islands they have at present but little commercial value.

The Dividing Range, which continues its course from the continent uninterrupted by the Bass Straits, skirts the east coast of Tasmania and completely alters the climate, reversing the Australian characteristic by causing the country west of the range to suffer from a very wet climate, and the eastern coast-line to enjoy a warm and

salubrious one with a fair rainfall. Tasmania on the whole possesses a remarkably good climate, which causes it to be generally preferred to many parts of the Australian mainland. The winters are much warmer than in England, and snow seldom falls, or remains on the ground more than a few hours, except on high levels. The summers, though rather warmer than in England, are much less oppressive than those in Australia, and the air is dry and seldom sultry. At Hobart the mean maximum temperature for a month is 64 deg., and the mean minimum 46 deg.; the extremes range from about 30 deg. to 100 deg. At Launceston the mean maximum is about 65 deg., and the mean minimum 44 deg. The rainfall is very variable; that at Hobart is from 18 to 30 in. a year, each month having some rain. Launceston and the north coast

have more rain. In the interior there are on an average about 21 in. at Oatlands, and 18 in. at Hamilton. On the east coast Swansea has 27 in., and Southport on the south coast has about 40 in. The west and south-west coasts are always wet, Mount Bischoff having about 80 in. a year, Zeehan 92, and Mount Lyell 117. Many diseases, which in England are often serious, are in this climate comparatively slight, and the rate of infant mortality is particularly low. So generally recognised in Australia is the pleasantness of the Tasmanian climate, that a great number of persons go there every summer from Melbourne and Sydney to escape the heat and dust of the continent. The seasons are nearly the opposite to what they are in England, the summer commencing in December.



Photo, Australian Government

FRANKLIN SQUARE AND STATUE, HOBART, TASMANIA



LAUNCESTON, TASMANIA



NEWCASTLE, NEW SOUTH WALES, AUSTRALIA

Photos, Australian Government

The growth of the population of Tasmania is very slow ; emigrants from the Motherland seem not to realise the attractions offered by this beautiful little island, where extreme poverty, consequent on inability to obtain employment, is all but unknown, and where wages, in proportion to the cost of living, are very high.

The rapid growth of the export of fruit has greatly increased the prosperity of Tasmania, but the country looks to the copper, silver and iron mines for a future unsurpassed by any State in the Commonwealth.

The total value of the annual mineral production is approximately £1,490,000.

The total area of Tasmania in acres is 16,777,600, of which about 9,018,000 still remain unoccupied. The area under crop is about 270,000 acres, and the areas under the principal crops are as follows :—

Hay -	-	-	-	77,400 acres.
Oats -	-	-	-	57,600 "
Wheat	-	-	-	37,300 "
Orchards (and fruit)	-	-	-	28,000 "
Beans and Peas	-	-	-	24,000 "
Potatoes	-	-	-	22,000 "

The live-stock in Tasmania is shown in the table below (approximately) :—

Horses	-	-	-	39,000
Cattle	-	-	-	217,500
Sheep	-	-	-	1,624,000

The export of wool amounts to about 12,600,000 lbs.

North and Central Australia

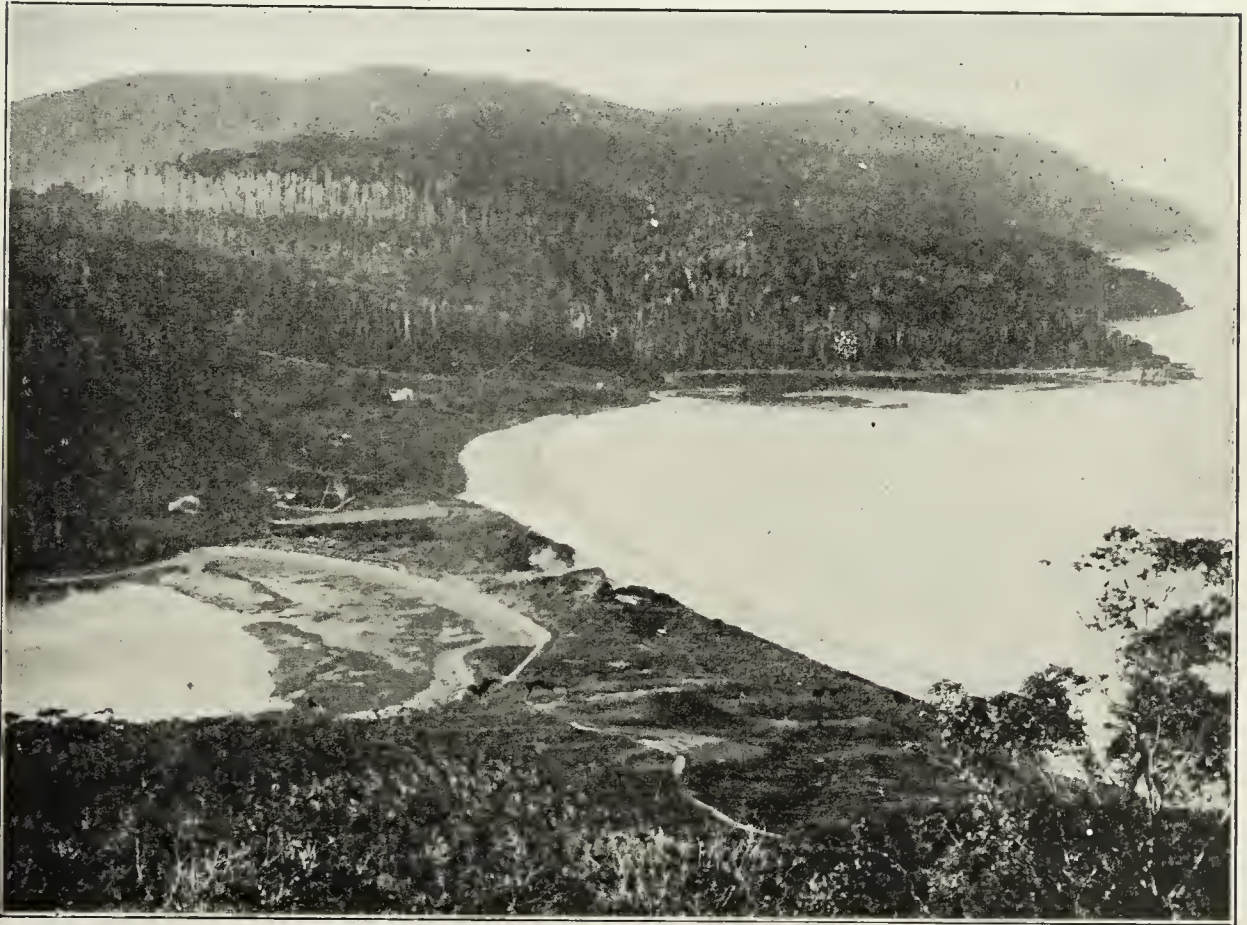
The great area comprising one-sixth of the island continent of Australia, and formerly known as the Northern Territory, is destined to be not only an important part of the Commonwealth but of the great Empire of which it forms no inconsiderable portion. Its dimensions can, perhaps, best be gauged by stating that it is four and a half times the size of Great Britain, with her 45,000,000 people, two and a half times the size of France, with her 35,000,000 inhabitants, and nearly as large as the whole pre-war German Empire, Italy and Austria combined, with their total population of well over 100,000,000. Two and a half days' steam from Northern Australia there is an island with 30,000,000 people, about 400 to the square mile;

yet these two vast territories have a population of less than 4,000 white people. It comprises an area of 523,620 square miles, and, with the exception of a strip 150 miles in width, it is situated in the torrid zone. In these days, where there is, in certain parts of the globe, a very serious overcrowding and congestion of the population, and when millions of people find it increasingly difficult to earn their bread, to get room for advancement, or even to live in a decent civilised state, one might well ask why such an area as this, beneath the British Flag, should be allowed to remain unoccupied. There are several answers.

A VAST LONE LAND.

Australia is recognised by scientists as one of the oldest of land surfaces, yet it is among the youngest of all continents, so far as settlement and development go ; it is to-day probably only in its infancy, and its geographical isolation was undoubtedly for many years a very serious obstacle to its progress. As that isolation has been overcome, as Australia has been brought into closer communion with other countries, it has made progress. It proved that Australia can produce—and produce successfully—almost anything that can be obtained in any other part of the world. And what applies as a whole to Australia applies, in the main, to the Territories of North and Central Australia. Their isolation has been their chief drawback. Of their fertility, of their ability to produce goods for which there is an ever-ready market, there is ample evidence. Darwin has been called the Front Door of Australia, and a glance at the map and a survey of the great trade routes of the world will show how apt is this name.

It has been said that the country has been too long permitted to remain a gigantic wedge of no man's land which Australians would not exploit themselves or allow others to exploit, but, when it is remembered that the total population of Australia was less than 6,500,000 and her total area nearly 3,000,000 square miles, it was hardly fair to say that Australians would not exploit the then Northern Territory. As a matter of fact, the all too scanty population of the Commonwealth has, up to the present, had just as much as it could do to handle the more



EAGLESHAWK NECK, TASMAN PENINSULA

Photo, Australian Government

conveniently situated and rich areas of the southern portions of the continent without going either into the extreme interior or the very far north. It is regarded as an important position, however, and the time is fast approaching when, if Australia is to be kept "white," if her system of defence is to be made effective, the North and Centre, lying so near the countless millions of China and Japan, must be successfully settled.

EXPLORATION AND DEVELOPMENT.

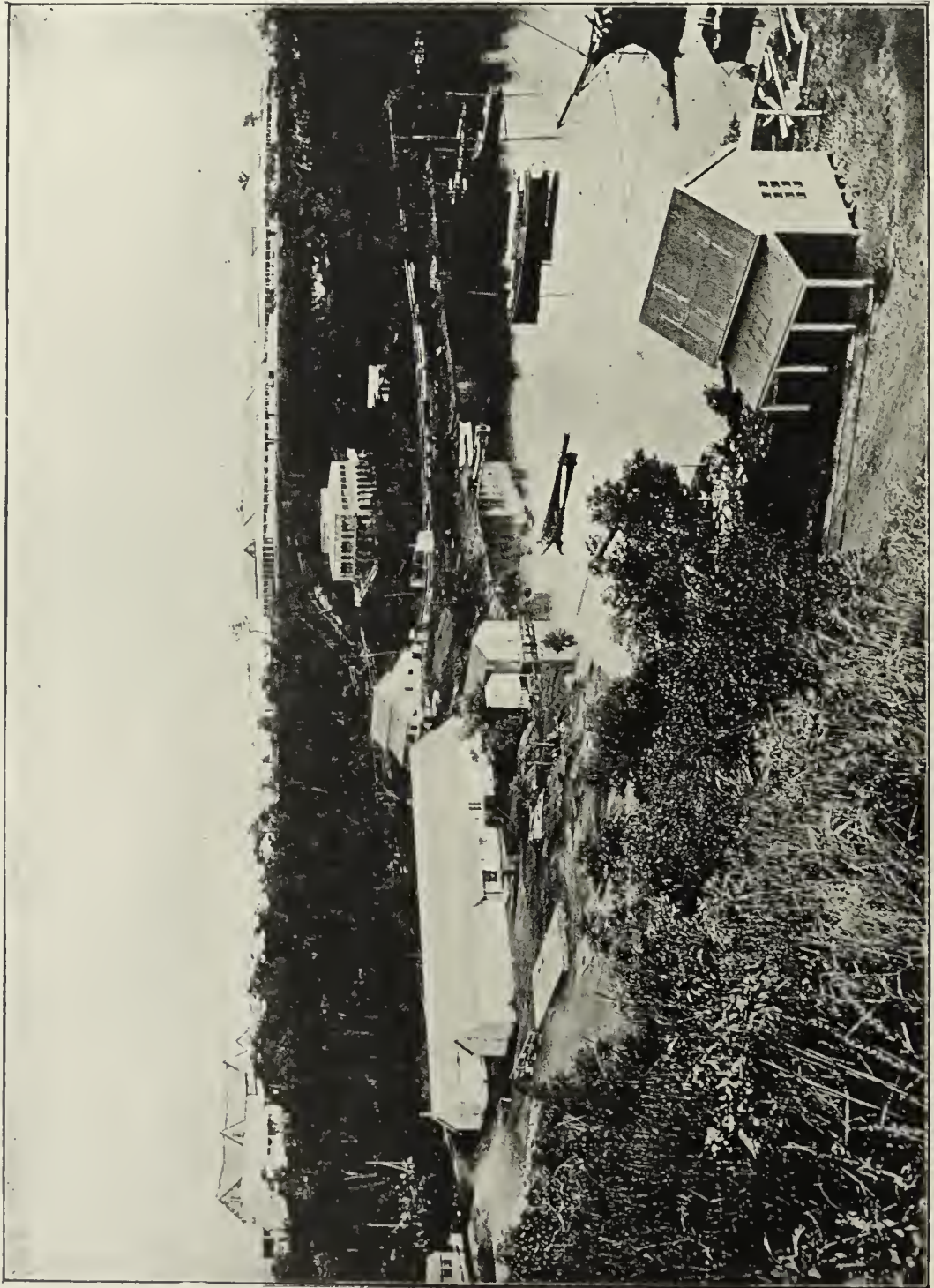
The combined length of this belt of country from north to south, is 900 miles, and the breadth from east to west, 560. It has a coast-line of 1,040 miles, and is bounded on three sides by the States of Western Australia, South Australia and Queensland. The old name, Northern Territory has, to Australians particularly, not stood for progress. One explorer, however, after leading an expedition through the country and after having seen the great stretches of fertile land awaiting

settlement, suggested it should be renamed Kingsland.

In 1881 there were fewer than 670 Europeans in possession of this vast area, and in 1929 there were under 5,000 white people. There were several thousands of natives in the interior, and some of them were engaged on the cattle stations, but the great bulk preferred the roaming, lazy life. Where they come into touch with civilisation they seem to be dying out.

In 1863 the Territory was annexed by South Australia, and was administered by that State until 1911, when it was transferred to the Commonwealth, or National Parliament. It is now controlled by that authority, and it will be seen that its development is more a national problem than one for any individual State.

As early as 1817 the coast was surveyed by British officers, and in 1840 a British force was sent there, or to an adjacent island, but the position was afterwards abandoned. In



Photo, Australian Government

DARWIN. CAPITAL OF NORTH AUSTRALIA

1861 Stuart, one of Australia's most daring explorers, pushed his way right across the continent from south to north, a distance of nearly 2,000 miles, and along his route a telegraph line was built which cost £500,000. This made the first connection by telegraph between Australia and England, *via* Darwin. During Stuart's journey across the continent, and the subsequent construction of the telegraph line, it was found that the country possessed well-grassed pastoral lands and mineral resources that were likely to prove of value. Large areas were taken up for pastoral purposes and spasmodic attempts were made to test the mineral deposits, but it is claimed that up to the present these have not been given anything like a fair trial. Chinese miners from time to time in a most haphazard fashion worked on the auriferous areas in the north, and went back to their native land. They probably took with them enough gold to maintain them for the rest of their lives. English companies were formed years ago to work some of the mines there, but most of the capital seems to have been

spent on elaborate surface equipment and machinery without first testing the mineral deposits. Up to the beginning of the Great European War there was probably not a mining shaft more than 200 ft. deep there, and when it is realised that in other parts of Australia payable minerals are being obtained at a depth of 2,000 ft. and 3,000 ft. and more, it will be seen that this vast area has surely not yet had a fair trial. The slipshod, uneconomic methods of the Chinese fossickers are the chief characteristics of the mining work in several parts, yet it is known that almost every mineral has been found in different places and varying quantities.

A WHITE AUSTRALIA.

When the Commonwealth took over the control of this area, it also assumed the responsibility for the indebtedness that had been incurred on behalf of it by South Australia, chiefly in building railway lines from the South Australian railway system north to Oodnadatta, and from Port Darwin south to Pine Creek. These two sections now form



A TRAVELLING SALESMAN IN THE BACKBLOCKS

Photo, Australian Government



STATION LIFE IN THE INTERIOR

Photo, Australian Government

portions of the north to south transcontinental line, which the Commonwealth Government also undertook to construct in accordance with the terms of transfer from South Australia. Recognising the responsibility, and knowing that in the past little or nothing had been done properly to develop this important part of the Commonwealth, the Australian Government at once adopted a very active policy in respect to it. They had taken over a debt of three millions, interest on which had to be found, and they soon set about making preparations for permanent and successful settlement. It would have been easy, as one of the ministers said, to make up an alluring prospectus by culling extracts from reports and by chartering steamers to convey people so attracted to the Northern Territory, to have populated the place, but to make colonisation a success it was necessary that thorough inquiry should precede action, and that before people were invited to go there, definite avenues of employment should be found for them. Experts were instructed to make exhaustive investigations, and most of their reports have been furnished. They are decidedly favourable.

Foremost of all considerations was, of course, the question of the climate, in so far as it affected the health of the residents, for,

no matter how rich the minerals or how fertile the soil, if the country itself could not sustain the health of the people it could not be regarded as the future home of a white race. The results showed that the health of the people there was remarkably good. Although in the tropics no diseases such as malaria or dysentery, generally so common in hot countries, were endemic in the Northern Territory, and life in the interior was healthy. Though in the torrid zone, the country was not, owing to the absence of jungle, tropical in nature.

In 1927 the old *Northern Territory* ceased to exist from an administrative point of view. This country was divided into North Australia, with Darwin as its capital, and Central Australia, with Alice Springs as the administrative centre. The actual dividing line is the 20th parallel of S. Latitude.

Certain parts of these territories are quite suitable for tropical agriculture, and the Commonwealth Government grant areas to settlers rent free for the lifetime of the settler.

The railway line from Darwin extends southwards for about 360 miles to Daly Waters. Alice Springs, the capital of Central Australia is pleasantly situated in the MacDonnell Ranges and enjoys a particularly fine climate.

CLIMATE.

In an annual report the Government medical officer for Darwin said the climate was equable. The highest temperatures were recorded just before and after the wet months, when the mean maximum dry bulb temperature was about 94 deg. and the wet bulb in the neighbourhood of 80 deg. These were the least pleasant months. During the wet months, from November to March, the mean maximum dry bulb reading was 90 deg. and the wet bulb 83 deg. The minimum temperatures for these months mean was 77 deg.; the lowest temperatures were recorded in July, when there was a mean maximum dry bulb reading of 67 deg.

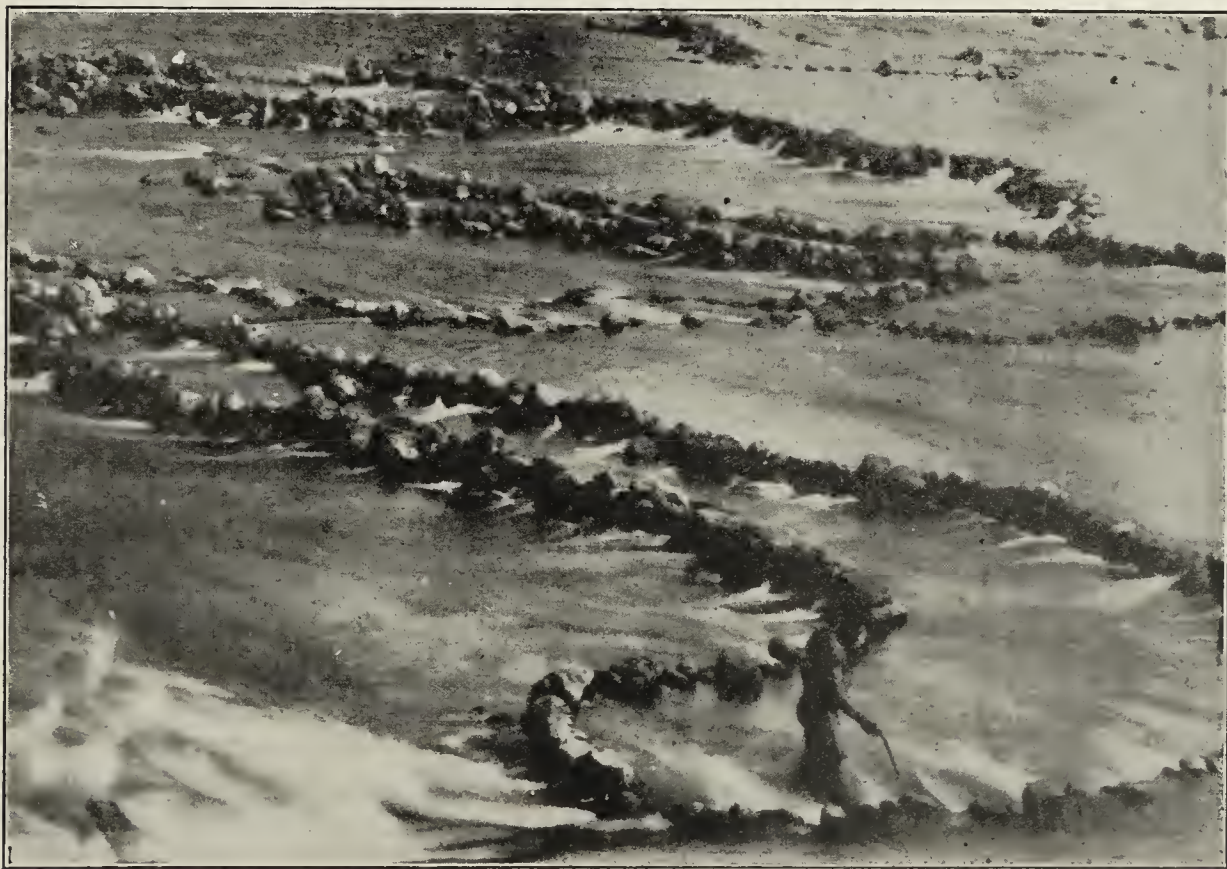
The moist heat of the wet season, in persons who did not take sufficient exercise, was productive of a feeling of languor and a distaste for exertion, either physical or mental. To those who took exercise, however, these months, though they could not be called bracing were far from being unhealthy.

The health of the community generally was as good at this time of the year as at any other.

The dry months were characterised by a succession of bright, warm, sunny days, followed by cool nights. The relative humidity was low and energy correspondingly increased. The climate during these months the medical officer stated, was little short of perfect.

To people of ordinary health, who did not neglect the necessary daily exercise in the open air, and who were moderately temperate in their habits, the climatic conditions of North and Central Australia were absolutely compatible with the continued maintenance of the highest standard of health.

Work in the tropical part is certainly more arduous than in the temperate climates, and the heat during the mid-day hours is at times great, but there is not the least necessity for working during these hours. For those who work in the open the common-sense principle



NATIVE METHOD OF FISHING

A maze of rocks are placed across the river so that the fish coming down with the stream are trapped in the "blind alley" and easily captured by spear or net

is that of an early beginning to the day's work, with a prolonged rest during the hot mid-day hours, work being resumed later in the afternoon and carried on till sunset. In this way eight hours work per day may be maintained during the hottest weather under perfectly agreeable conditions. This noon-day siesta is, of course, no new scheme or suggestion. It is observed by Europeans in tropical countries. Investigations showed that the second generation did not display any signs of degeneration as the result of residence there, and in many cases the children, although they exhibited a somewhat pale skin, were as well developed as those of temperate climates. Sickness was rare among the children and the mortality rate low.

On the northern coast, as in the tropics generally, there are two climatic changes. The wet season is from November to April, and the dry from May to October. The changes are uniform and regular. Immediately after the vernal equinox the wet season is heralded by the cessation of the east-south-easterly monsoon, which gives place to calms and light variable winds. Intensely hot weather prevails for a few days, then thunderstorms occur frequently until the end of November, when they come daily, as much as an inch of rain falling during each storm. During December the north-west monsoon sets in gradually and then the rain comes daily until the end of January. The monsoon dies away and is followed by light variable winds until April, when the dry season commences again. Nearly the whole of the rain falls during the summer months.

The rainfall varies from 60 inches in the tropical north to 5 inches in the arid southern portion, and the capacity of the different parts of the country for carrying stock varies as widely as the rainfall. In the north there is an abundance of moisture and fine rivers. In the south the rainfall is scanty and occasional, and the rivers justify their names only for a brief period each year. The Institute of Tropical Medicine has taken up the question of the effect of the climatic conditions upon the health of the white people, and, as population increases and settlement extends, scientists may be expected to have ready the means for preventing or at any rate minimising the effects of the outbreak of tropical diseases. There is increasing evi-

dence that tropical diseases are not so much the result of tropical conditions and climate as of minute parasites, with which it is possible to deal just as with the germs of other diseases. It is only fair to expect that the Government and the health authorities, if they are anxious to induce the white people to settle in those parts, should assure them that they will be safeguarded from a health point of view, and that the coming generations will not be impaired in health as the result of residence in the tropical north.

It is agreed that the conditions in North Australia are very different from those obtaining in other tropical parts of the world, and that it is rather a question of *will* white people settle there than one of *can* they.

At the opening of the Institute of Tropical Medicine in Queensland, the Governor of that State in referring to the value of the study of tropical diseases and their effects upon the white races, said the question was one of far-reaching political importance and round it would centre the destiny of tropical Australia, if not of the whole Commonwealth, for there was little doubt that, if the northern part of Australia were not effectively held by Australians or by white people, it would at no very distant date be occupied by an alien race that might threaten the very existence of the Australian people. This would seem to be a matter that concerned the Empire as a whole and not Australia alone.

Darwin

The next question one would reasonably ask is, what is there to encourage white people to go there; what are the resources, the opportunities, the possibilities? One would require more than a single article adequately to present these. Every year, following up the development of the country, there should be unlimited opportunities for industry and enterprise.

Darwin, the capital of North Australia, from its geographical position, is surely the front door of the Continent, if the markets of the north, east and west are considered, and should become the chief port of Australia's trade from the north. It is situated on a promontory raised some 50 ft. above the sea-level, with steep perpendicular cliffs covered with dense cultivation. Port Darwin is a magnificent, open, deep water harbour,

extending fanwise many miles into the sea. The town is so situated as to be surrounded on three sides by the sea, and occupies a most advantageous position from hygienic points of view. It is laid out with broad open streets, running at right angles, and the building areas are cut regularly with a street frontage of 100 ft. by a depth of 200 ft. The town is well provided in the matter of open spaces and reserves, and its elevated position with regard to the sea ensures a plentiful supply of pure air for all parts. The cliffs are beautifully wooded, and the provision of recreation facilities and of open air entertainments for the evenings, when the people should be out in the open as much as possible, will add to the attractiveness of the place and to its health. Darwin is the headquarters of all operations, and the official residence of the Administrator.

LIFE OF THE PIONEER.

It has already been stated that one of the chief drawbacks to the development of this country has been its geographical isolation. Those who have gone up from southern Australia were to a certain extent cut off from all previous associations and connections. There certainly was a mail service, but of the three boats that served to carry the mails one ran monthly and the other at irregular intervals, so that one could correspond with people in London from certain parts of Australia more easily than with people in these northern territories.

Inland there was a quarterly mail service between Darwin and Boorooloola, and a half-yearly service between Roper River and civilisation, so that the young man on the Roper River with a sweetheart in Melbourne need only trouble about writing twice a year. There was also a mail service every two months between Darwin and Wyndham on the north-west coast of Western Australia.

The postman or mailman's lot there was by no means a happy one. He began out from Darwin, and from the Katherine telegraph station went south as far as Renner Springs, a distance of many miles, and probably would not meet a living soul on the way. Then he went off easterly to Anthony Lagoon, many miles, where he would meet the Queensland mailman. Frequently the mailman has had to swim streams in flood time. One of the best known characters in

these parts, a man who had carried the mails for years over the lonely places, and whose rugged appearance was always welcome at the out-back stations, lost his life in trying to cross a stream in floodtime with his mail bag. Now, a more frequent service has been provided along the coast, and the construction



NATIVES OF NORTH AUSTRALIA
A Boomerang Thrower

of the north-to-south transcontinental railway will do more than anything else to break down this isolation and make accessible valuable tracts of country now beyond the reach of the mining prospector or the settler.

Pioneering life there under the old order was certainly lonely, and there was perhaps a natural tendency to become melancholy, although on the few big, successful stations the conditions were comfortable and time passed fairly merrily.

Another important feature attached to the construction of the north-to-south transcontinental railway is the fact that it will reduce by several days the time occupied in reaching London from the Australian capitals. Passengers and mails may be taken across Australia in about 70 hours. Fast steamers could then connect with the railway through Siberia. The cost of the transcontinental line in Australia will be about five millions. Sections have been built and the whole length has been surveyed, and soon places now blank on the map should be filled in as prosperous productive areas as the result of facilities which the line will afford.

RANCHING.

It is difficult to decide the most attractive features of the industries there. For years it has been recognised as a fine country for horse and cattle-raising, but the lack of transport facilities has retarded progress. It has been necessary to drive cattle overland hundred of miles to the adjoining States to find a market. In the long tedious journey heavy losses were sustained, whereas, if these cattle could be sent by rail direct to either the south or the northern ports and there either slaughtered, frozen or exported, a larger trade could be done. This the transcontinental railway alone will make possible. From Darwin it should be easy to send large quantities to America regularly as well as to the hungry markets of the East. India takes large numbers of horses annually for military purposes, and given proper facilities no place should be better able to supply these than North and Central Australia.

Mr. Wells, deputy Commissioner of Land-tax in Australia, spent a long time in these territories, and he states that in the Victoria River district and east from the river's source there are 20,000 square miles of fertile valleys and downs highly suitable for horse

and cattle raising. In the vicinity of Sturt's Creek there are similar lands in large areas. For the most part natural waters are plentiful.

From the south-east corner of these belts of country, for a distance of 150 miles north there are parallel ridges suitable for raising sheep, cattle and horses. Fine pastoral land also extends from Cammoweal right through to the Anthony Lagoon and on to Newcastle Waters.

Physiographically, the country down to the Roper River practically comprises one vast plateau about 1,000 ft. above the sea-level, intersected here and there by perennial rivers with rich alluvial flats often as much as 40 miles wide, land specially suitable for cattle-raising. Beyond the Macdonnell Ranges, in Central Australia, there are large areas of table-land to the east and west, including the Barclay Table-land, suitable in parts for sheep. Only the isolation of this country has prevented its progress. The climate is right and the soil is right, but there have been no facilities for getting the products to market. Thousands of head of cattle could be raised if it were possible to take them economically to civilisation.

There is no doubt concerning the capacity of the country near the northern rivers. The geologist accompanying one expedition says: "In no part of the world have I seen grass grow so luxuriantly. An aggregate of five million acres came under the observation of the party, all well-watered pastoral lands." This opinion has been confirmed more than once by others, and one visitor declared that the Victoria River country contained some of the finest pastoral lands in Australia. The Victoria River station alone carries over 100,000 head of cattle. In one season as many as 30,000 calves have been branded. This is probably one of the largest stations in the world.

There are in these two territories approximately 31,000 horses, 450,000 cattle and 50,000 pigs. Although little or no dairying has been carried on yet, the country is well suited and the establishment of factories and facilities will help this industry materially.

At the Batchelor Farm, which is situated close to the railway, about 57 miles from Darwin (an experimental farm controlled by the Government), it has been proved that

sheep, cattle and pigs will thrive, and that various fodders, such as lucerne, maize, sorghum, cow pease, oats, and sweet potatoes, which are suitable for them at all seasons of the year, can be grown successfully, also that the natural pastures are susceptible to vast improvement by stocking the country.

All these great tracts of land are available on very easy terms. Pastoral lands are divided into three classes and the maximum

the holders are expected to effect certain improvements in a specified time.

In order to assist the settlers the Government provide funds under which advances are made. Money is advanced by the Government on mortgage and the settler pays as he is able.

There are numerous rivers, some of which are navigable for a considerable distance, sometimes up to 100 miles. On the head



ABORIGINAL SETTLEMENT, YARRABAH, AUSTRALIA

Official Photo

area which one applicant may take up is 300 square miles for first class, 1,000 square miles for second class, and 1,500 square miles for third class. In agricultural lands one may hold 1,280 acres of first class or 2,550 of second class, and for mixed farming, 12,800 acres of first class and 38,400 acres of second class land may be held by one settler.

Pastoral lands are granted for fixed terms instead of in perpetuity. Lands may be held under leases for terms varying from 21 to 42 years at a peppercorn rental, and

waters of these and their tributaries there is splendid country where mixed farming could be carried on. Mixed farming in this instance, includes the growing of tropical products and the breeding of certain animals such as the angora goat and pigs. It is also claimed that the area suitable for tropical growths is about the size of Java (the tropical garden of the world) and Madura combined. These are comparatively close to the territory and have over 30,000,000 inhabitants.

The Roper and Katherine Rivers are the principal streams. The former, being fed by large springs at its source, it should be possible, by the making of locks, to render navigable for very long distances, while immense volumes of water would be available for irrigation if required.

Dealing with the Victoria River, Captain Carrington has said that from the point of view of its capacity as a harbour and its easiness of access it is superior either to the Thames or to the Mersey, and the land of which the river is the natural outlet comprises about 90,000 square miles.

In their work entitled "Across Australia," Messrs. Spencer and Gillen say that all that is necessary to transform the greater part of the centre of Australia into a valuable territory is firstly some scheme of water conservation on a large scale, and secondly adequate means of communication with the coastal ports.

All kinds of tropical fruits grow to perfection in both North and Centre, and splendid specimens of fresh fruit have been produced from Alice Springs.

In the southern states of America rice has been grown successfully with white labour and up-to-date machinery, and in the same way white labour should succeed in these regions. Even in the western part, one member of the Federal Parliament stated that the land was superior to portions of Canada. No comparison, he said, could be made between a country where the stock had to be housed several months every year and one like Australia, where the stock thrives all the year round in the open and practically on the natural grasses.

MINING.

A well-known geologist, the Rev. T. E. Tenison Wood, after many years of exploration work said: "I confidently assert that the Northern Territory is exceptionally rich in minerals, only a small portion of which has been made known to the public. I do not believe that the same quantity of minerals, veins of gold, silver, tin, copper and lead will be found in any equal portion of Australia. In fact, I doubt if many provinces will be found in any country so singularly and exceptionally favoured as Arnheim Land in respect to mineral riches. Of the mines that have already been worked for gold especially they cannot be said to have gone to any

depth, but nearly all have shown unusually good ore, and it is unquestionable that not 25 per cent. of the veins visible have been worked at all. Years will not exhaust the discoveries to be made there, and when the difficulties of labour (population) have been overcome, Arnheim Land will be one of the greatest mining centres in Australia." The Government is doing a good deal to develop the mining industry. Licences are granted giving miners exclusive rights to search for minerals in areas not exceeding five miles of Crown Lands. Prospecting areas may be declared by the Administrator, and if a Government prospector discovers payable minerals the area may be worked on behalf of the Government. Reward claims as well as cash may be granted to the discoverers of new mineral areas. For the establishment of new mining towns, as the result of mineral discoveries, rewards are also to be paid in sums up to £5,000. Subsidies may also be granted to miners by the advance of money or the loan of Government machinery. Mining is also encouraged by the payment of rewards for the invention of new processes for the treatment of minerals.

In addition to gold, copper, wolfram, tin, silver and lead have been found. The minerals produced in one year have been valued at £59,000, and for that year only 676 miners were at work, 500 of that number being Chinese.

NATIVES.

Special arrangements have been made for dealing with the natives. Numbers of these are employed on the stations looking after sheep and cattle. They make good shepherds and are paid only a small wage. Their employment is also controlled by the Government, so that there shall be nothing approaching slavery. For those who are not inclined or not able to do this kind of work, areas are reserved, and to these particular areas they are supposed to keep. Protectors see that they are provided with food and taught to cultivate the land. Where they come into touch with civilisation they often pick up the vices of the "whites" and are slow to adopt the more worthy habits and customs. So far as these territories are concerned they are not a menace, but as larger areas of land are taken from them or absorbed it is

only fair that some provision should be made for them in return.

Most types of Australian fauna are to be found in these territories, with crocodiles and fresh water tortoise in the northern rivers. Water frogs are common inland. Fresh water fish also abound in some of the rivers. The white ants are a pest. Anthills sometimes reach a height of 25 ft. with a diameter of 10 ft.

Malayan and oceanic regions are represented in the tropical flora of these territories, and in the ranges pine, fig and orange trees flourish. On the higher steppes there are varieties of eucalyptus, while a very wide range of fibre plants are indigeneous.

In 1884 mother-of-pearl shell was discovered in the harbour of Port Darwin, but there was difficulty in working owing to the heavy tides and muddy water. In later years, however, new patches led to a revival of this work, and there are now about 31 boats with 130 men engaged in the work, over 70 tons of shell worth £13,000 being annually obtained.

The cost of labour and transportation renders work such as clearing and fencing

expensive, and therefore it is essential that settlers either should possess a fair amount of capital, or should be assured of substantial financial assistance from the Government. The cost roughly exceeds that in the other States of the Commonwealth by about 40 per cent.

Even if there is a percentage of inferior land in these territories, and some even regarded as valueless for productive purposes, it will be seen that of the half million square miles there must be an immense amount well worthy of serious attention.

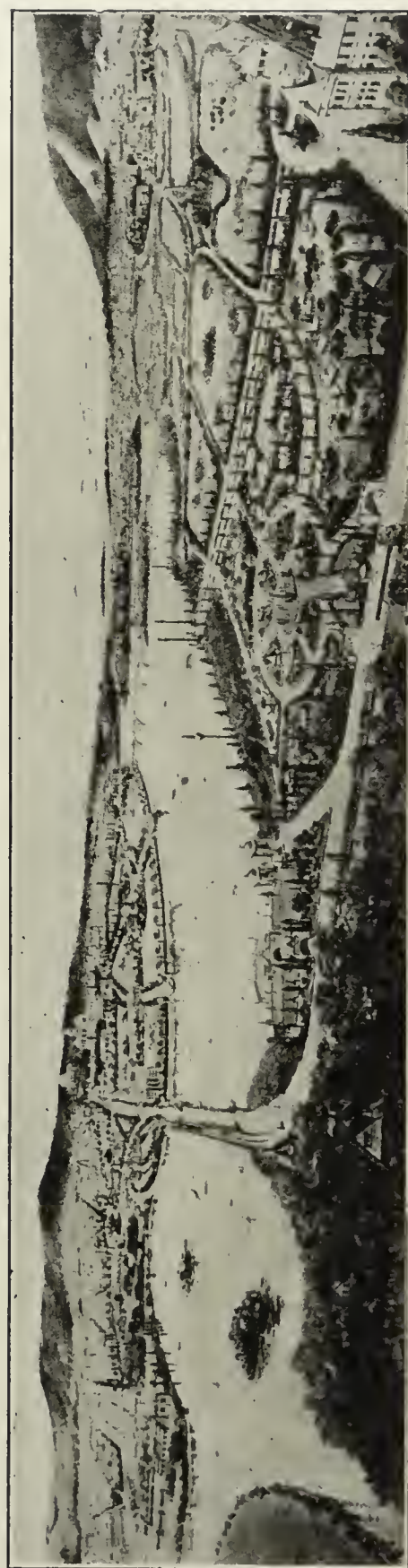
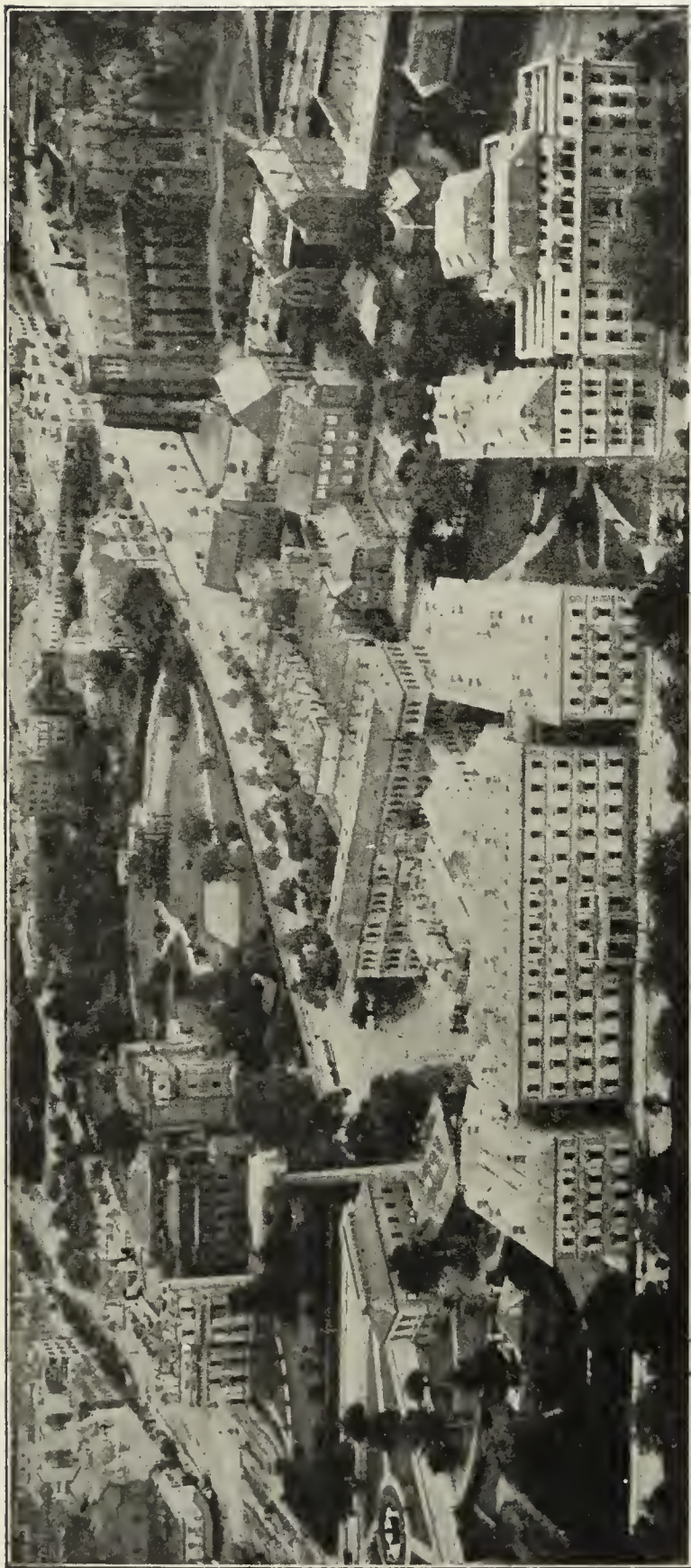
The work certainly demands solid men, not easily daunted by difficulties, who are content to live for a time in comparatively comfortless surroundings, but who can nevertheless look forward under the liberal land conditions of these territories to becoming lessees themselves and establishing a home which they can call their own.

Mr. Alfred Searcy, who spent something like seventeen years in the Northern Territory, and was later a prominent official in the House of Assembly in South Australia, in his book, *By Flood and Field*, which deals entirely with life and his experiences there,



A TURTLE'S NEST

Natives of North Australia uncovering turtle's eggs in the soft, warm sand of the nest



1. THE OLD FEDERAL CAPITAL, MELBOURNE, FROM THE AIR, SHOWING GOVERNMENT OFFICES
2. THE PRESENT FEDERAL CAPITAL. A Perspective Sketch of Canberra as projected by the Departmental Board

says : " To the young man with courage and industry, I would say, ' Go to the Northern Territory. I know of no better place for such as you.' "

Australian Railways

In a great continent like Australia, with its three million square miles of territory, and its comparatively meagre supply of inland waterways and rivers, railway facilities were at an early date recognised as essential factors in the development of the country's resources. The first line, however, was not completed until 1885, and for the next 20 years very little progress was made in railway construction.

There were many difficulties in addition to those always inseparable from the opening up of a new country. Settlement, of course, began along the eastern and southern coasts, and until the pioneers and explorers pushed their way inland there was no very pressing demand for railways. Shipping facilities enabled those settled along the coast within reasonable distance of the water-front to conduct their commercial pursuits. It also happened that Sydney, New South Wales, was the scene of the first permanent settlement, and the range of mountains running for some distance comparatively close to the coast presented a serious obstacle to the extension of the railways in those times. Both capital and labour were available only in very limited quantities, so that costly tunnelling through hills and difficult engineering projects in connection with railway construction were handled very charily, and in 1871 there were only a little over 1,000 miles of railway working in the whole continent. The next ten years saw the mileage increased fourfold, and from that time good progress has been made, until there is now in the eastern, south-eastern and southern portions a network of lines converging from the various agricultural, pastoral and mining districts towards the principal ports, which are themselves connected by systems of lines running almost parallel to the coast. In the east, lines radiating from Townsville, Rockhampton, Brisbane and Sydney extend inland in different directions, and run for distances up to 600 miles. In the south-east one system converges towards Melbourne. From Melbourne three main lines run out and

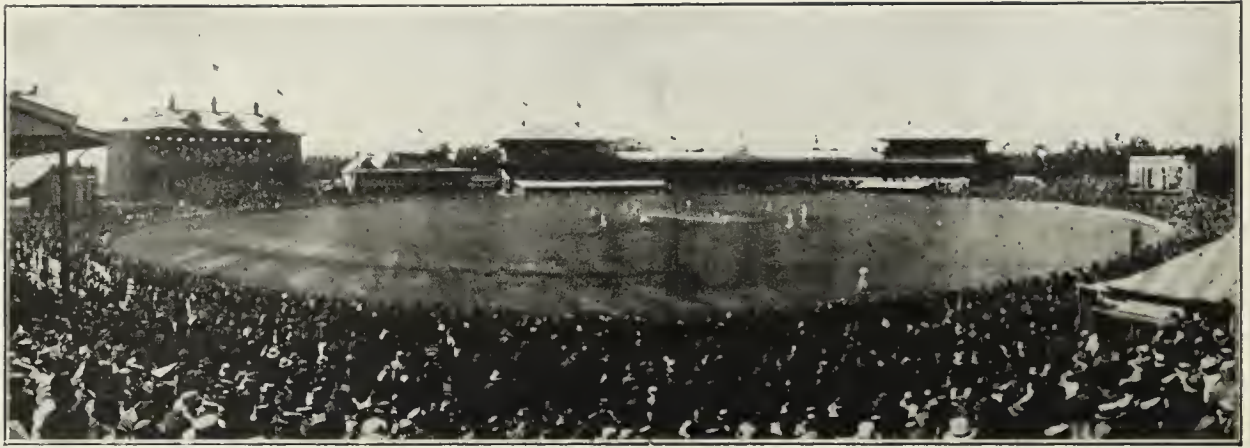
embrace large areas in the southern portion of the continent, and from Adelaide further southern areas are tapped while a line runs north through South Australia for nearly 900 miles. This is to form a portion of the great north-and-south transcontinental line. The five principal mainland capitals, Brisbane, Sydney, Melbourne, Perth and Adelaide, are connected by railways, a total distance of 3,342 miles. The east-to-west transcontinental line connects five of the six Australian State capitals, or the whole of those of the mainland, Hobart, Tasmania being the other capital whose geographical position makes a complete connection impossible. To connect Perth, the capital of Western Australia, with its neighbouring eastern capital Adelaide, over 1,550 miles of railway were required. Before this great stretch was built, bringing Perth in the west, and Brisbane in the north-east, into touch the longest railway journey in Australia was from Longreach, in Queensland, to Oodnadatta in South Australia, a distance of over 3,300 miles. The distances, by railway, separating the Australian capitals are as follows :—

	Miles.
Perth to Adelaide - - -	1,550
Adelaide to Melbourne - - -	482½
Melbourne to Sydney - - -	582½
Sydney to Brisbane - - -	725

Tasmania, the island State, also figures prominently in railway matters. The principal towns there are connected by a system of lines, and there are also, more especially in the western districts, several lines which have been constructed for the purpose of opening up the mining districts. The total length of the railway system of Australia is over 32,000 miles.

The Aborigines

The greater part of Australia was originally occupied by a number of aboriginal tribes, who lived in distinct communities. Although they were expert fishers and hunters, and were skilled in the use of implements of war and the chase, no traces of agricultural instinct have ever been discovered in them. As regards their laws, habits, customs and language, the tribes were very diverse. Since the advent of the white man, the natives have gradually decreased in number, and have now



AUSTRALIA AT PLAY

1. Melbourne Cricket Ground
2. A Skating Party on Lake Catani, Mt. Buffalo, Victoria
3. Manly Beach, Sydney, New South Wales

been practically submerged by the wave of civilisation which has spread over the country, notwithstanding the many attempts which have been made by the States, as well as by private individuals, to regulate their lives and to promote their welfare.

Naturally, no proper census of the aboriginals exists, but at the last census the number of full-blooded natives living in a civilised or semi-civilised condition was in New South Wales, 2,012 ; in Victoria, 196 ; in Queensland, 8,687 ; in South Australia, 1,439 ; in Western Australia, 6,369 ; and in North and Central Australia, 1,223. In Tasmania the last full-blooded aboriginal native died in 1876. In the less settled parts of Queensland, South Australia, Western Australia, and North and Central Australia, on the other hand, there are considerable numbers of natives still in the "savage" state. The total number of aboriginal natives at present in Australia may be roughly estimated at 100,000. The whole matter, however, is involved in considerable doubt.

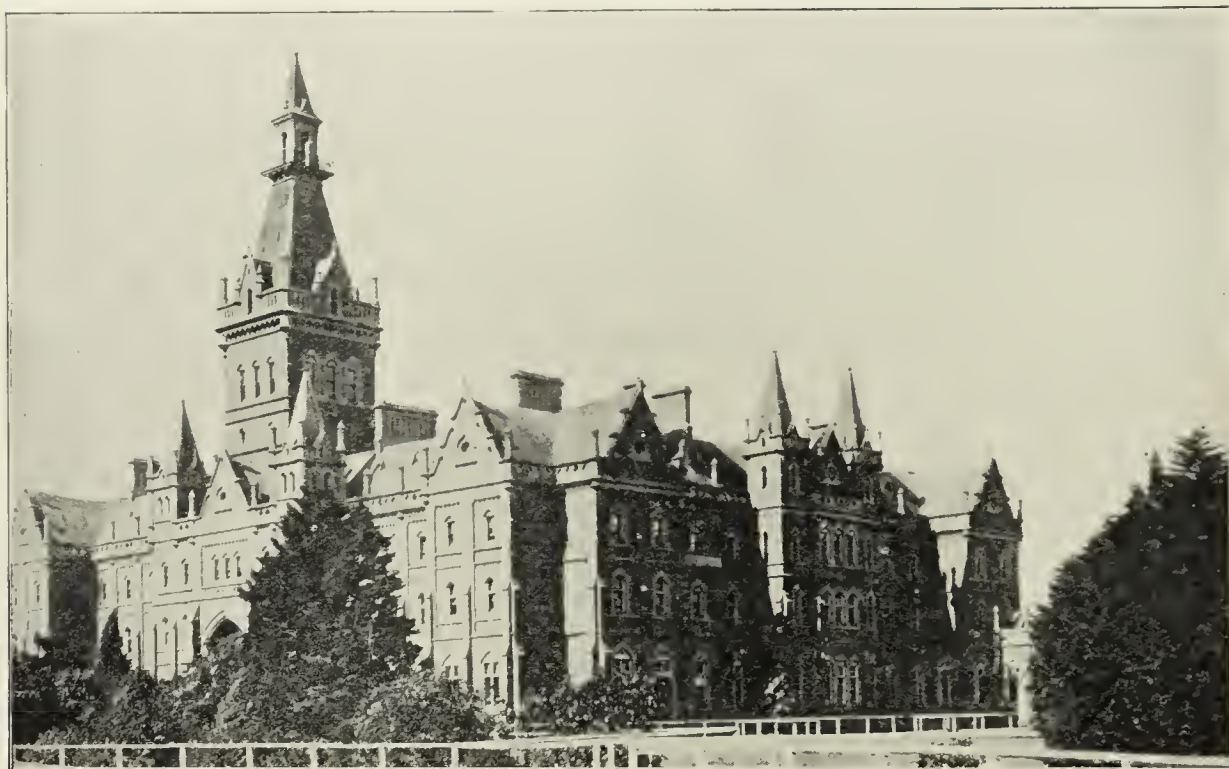
Forests

It has been estimated that the forests of the Commonwealth cover about 102,000,000 acres, or 5.35 per cent. of the total area, while the area specially reserved for timber is 27,750,000 acres, or 1.45 per cent. of the total. Special areas have been set apart in all the States as "State forests," or "timber reserves," the reservation being made in perpetuity in some cases, in others for a definite period, while in some instances the reservation may be cancelled at any time. The present abundant natural supplies are in most of the States supplemented by the establishment of forest nurseries and plantations. Limits of space preclude more than a passing reference to the number and variety of the forest timbers of Australia. It may be remarked *en passant* that the Australian forest is not always "a continuous assemblage of mournful-looking gum trees," as has been sometimes supposed ; for the beauty and diversity of bush and undergrowth in many parts of the coastal jungles are often very



BUSH CHILDREN OFF TO SCHOOL, BURRAGORANG VALLEY, NEW SOUTH WALES

Official Photo



ORMONDE COLLEGE UNIVERSITY, MELBOURNE

striking. Amongst hardwood timbers the various species of eucalyptus, popularly known as ironbarks, are very highly prized for all work requiring great strength and durability. Builders prefer ironbark girders in many cases to those made of steel or iron, for the ironbark does not burn easily, nor does it bend or buckle with heat. Large quantities of other species of eucalyptus are used locally, as well as exported abroad, for wood-paving, such as jarrah (*E. marginata*), karri (*E. diversicolor*), Murray red gum (*E. rostrata*), and others.

The stringy barks and the turpentine (*Syncarpia laurifolia*) are valuable timbers for wharves and bridges. There are vast numbers of other "gums," "boxes," and "mahoganies," all of more or less value for industrial purposes. Then there are the pines of various sorts, which give valuable timber for ceilings and box-making. Amongst furniture and cabinet-making timbers may be included red cedar (*Cedrola australis*), a beautifully marked and easily worked timber, rosewood, white beech, silky oak, tulip wood, red bean, figured blackwood and hosts of others. Sandalwood in considerable quantities has been

exported from the Commonwealth for over half a century.

The Commonwealth Government encourages the development of the timber industry by extensive use of local products in connection with its buildings and works. Moreover, tests have been made as to the suitability of Australian woods for rifle stocks and telephone switchboards. The estimated quantity of timber hewn in the Commonwealth each year is 591,000,000 super feet, and the export is valued at £1,500,000, most of which goes to Hong Kong.

The Pearling Industry

Pearl shell is obtained in Western Australia, Queensland and North Australia, the two last mentioned places also exporting fair quantities of bêche-de-mer and tortoise shell. The boats engaged in these industries number about 578, and the men employed 4,100. The quantity of pearl-shell obtained on an average each year is 2,200 tons, valued at (approximately) £339,000. The value of the pearls obtained varies considerably, ranging from £50,000 to £94,700

per annum. The value of the *bêche-de-mer*, or sea-slug, catch is £17,700, and the tortoise-shell about £800.

Education

In all the States of the Commonwealth public primary education is free, while in those States possessing public Higher Schools and Universities free admission is granted to the children of parents unable to pay the fees. There is very liberal provision also in the way of scholarships and bursaries, which are open to all children without distinction of class or religion. It has always been the aim of the Australian Parliaments to spread the advantages of primary education as widely as possible. All the capital cities and larger towns are, of course, well provided with schools, which in respect of general design and equipment are very similar to schools of the same class in the United Kingdom. Then, in the more sparsely peopled country districts, there are smaller public or "provisional" schools. In still more thinly-peopled areas, half-time schools are to be found, *i.e.*, schools which are visited alternately by the one teacher, while itinerant teachers visit the scattered settlers in the "back blocks." In some States the plan has

been adopted of closing clusters of small country schools and replacing them by a larger central institution, to which the children are conveyed each day in comfortable vehicles.

That the States have been successful in spreading the benefits of primary education is shown by the fact that the State schools of the Commonwealth have an enrolment of about 650,000 pupils, and an average attendance of nearly 479,000. The schools themselves number about 8,050, or one public school for 560 inhabitants.

There is at present no direct means of ascertaining the quality of the bulk of the private schools in Australia, as they are, for the most part, independent of any State control, but, indirectly, an idea can be gained of their worth from the highly successful results obtained by many of them at the various University public examinations. Considerable sums of money have been spent on the building and equipment of the higher grade institutions, the buildings and sites of thirty-seven of the most important schools being returned as worth £911,000.

In Australia, the State concerns itself mainly with primary and University education, most of the larger secondary schools not being under State control. How best to



PORT MORESBY HARBOUR, PAPUA (NEW GUINEA)

Photo, Australian Government

secure an effective co-ordination and orientation of all branches of educational activity is a problem which is now challenging public attention. There is a University in the capital city of each of the States. Courses of extension lectures are given in the various centres.

The development of technical education has so far been somewhat uneven in Australia, but the results achieved give every promise of greater success in the near future. Excellent technical instruction in agriculture and mining is given at various institutions throughout the Commonwealth, while with the increase of population and the development of the manufacturing industry further extension of technical training in the arts and crafts will become a necessity. There are 1,700 libraries containing 3,000,000 books, the fine institutions at Sydney and Melbourne, respectively, containing 241,000 and 236,000 volumes. Of the numerous Scientific Societies, one of the most important is the Royal Society of New South Wales, which has over 300 members and possesses a library of about 21,000 volumes. The Royal Geographic Society is another equally important institution.

Dependencies of Australia :

Papua

That portion of New Guinea now known as Papua (or British New Guinea) forms an interesting outpost of the Empire. The island of New Guinea lies to the north-east of Australia between $0^{\circ} 25'$ and $10^{\circ} 40'$ S. latitude and between 130° and $150^{\circ} 35'$ E. longitude, and contains an area of over 300,000 square miles. It has a length of 1,490 miles and a breadth of 430 miles.

THE PARTITION OF NEW GUINEA.

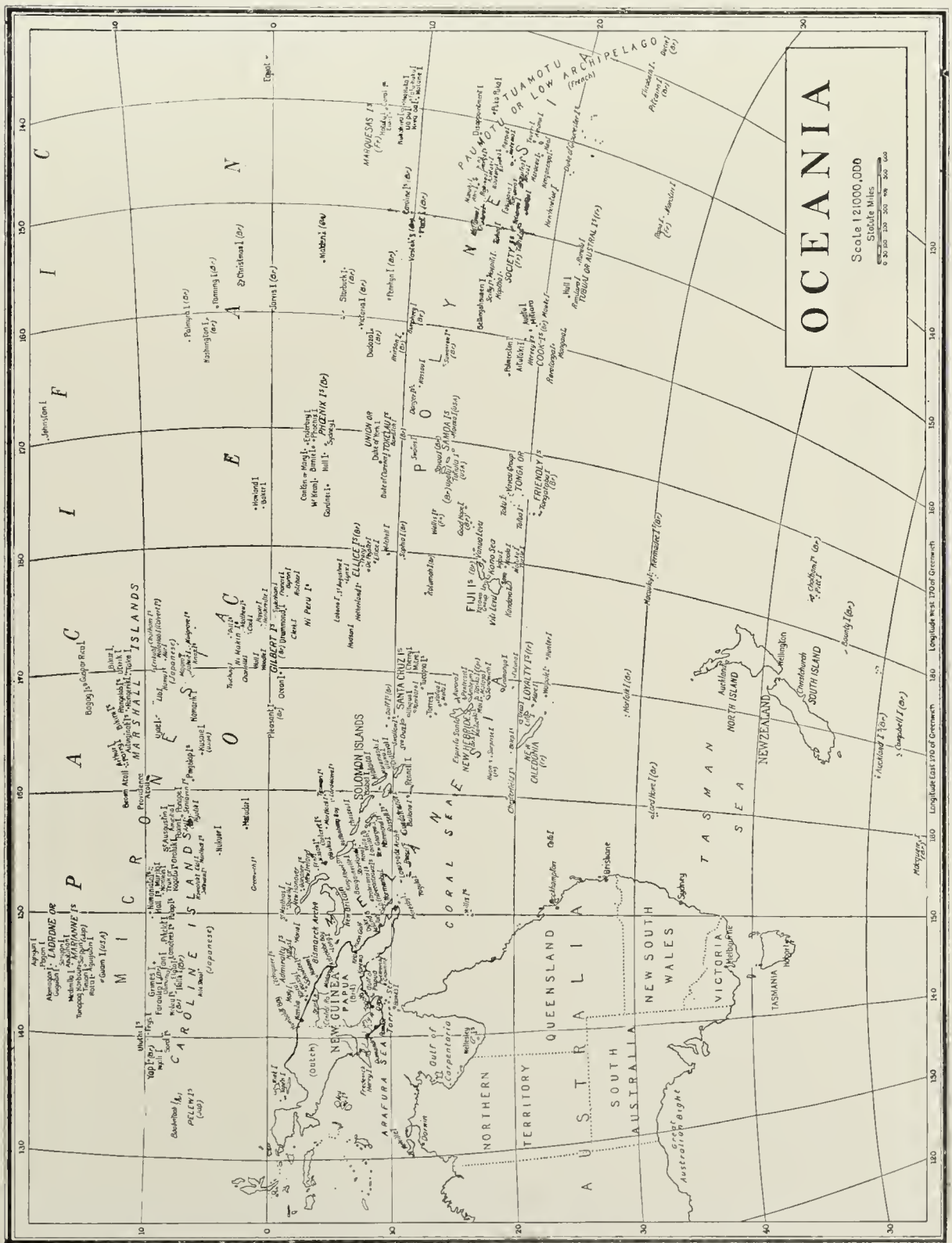
The Portuguese were probably among the first to make use of this great island. As was the case with the early discovery of most of the places in that part of the globe, the Dutch came soon after the Portuguese, and eventually the British people were represented there. Difficulties of navigation and the hostility of the native islanders were responsible for the small amount of progress made in the development of the island. The German, Dutch and English authorities claimed por-

tions, the Dutch confining their operations to the western division of the island, and the British and Germans to the eastern end. By agreement each power had suzerainty over its own territory, and the numerous small islands adjacent.

An area of about 150,000 square miles comprised in that portion to the west of the 141^{st} degree of latitude is owned and controlled by the Dutch, while the eastern portion was divided among the British and Germans, with about 90,000 square miles each. With the outbreak of the Great European War in 1914, Australia despatched an expedition to that portion of New Guinea which was in German hands, and was known as Kaiser Wilhelm's Land. It was captured on 12th September, 1914, and it now forms one of the lands of the British Mandates (*q.v.*).

In this way over half the large and highly fertile island of New Guinea came under the Commonwealth administration. It is, however, the south-eastern portion which is known as Papua, or British New Guinea, and forms the premier colony of Australia, the adjoining German sphere being administered by the Commonwealth under a mandate from the League of Nations (*q.v.*). With considerable difficulty the actual boundaries of the various divisions have been defined, and it is that south-eastern portion lying nearest to Australia which is known as British New Guinea, or Papua, and which has become a dependency of the Commonwealth.

From its geographical position it will be recognised that the possession of this portion of New Guinea is of great importance to Australia, commanding, as it does, a strategic and valuable position so far as the northern waterways and channels of commerce are concerned. In 1883, in fact, Queensland actually annexed a portion of the territory, but the British Government at the time disallowed this action. The following year, however, a British Protectorate was proclaimed, and the British assumed, by agreement with Germany, the area lying between the limits of 5° and 12° S. and 141° and 155° E. Several of the Australian States, or colonies, as they were then, subsidised this protectorate until 1888, when it was proclaimed an Imperial possession. It is administered by a Lieutenant-Governor, with an executive and legislative council and a native regulation Board. Port Moresby





PORT MORESBY TOWNSHIP, PAPUA

was made the official headquarters, and there is a force of armed native constabulary in addition to village constables, employed by the Crown.

On 1st September, 1906, the Commonwealth assumed the administration of Papua by proclamation issued in pursuance of Letters Patent of 18th March, 1902, and accepted by the Commonwealth by the Papua Act of 1905.

Papua lies entirely in the tropics, and is cut off from the mainland of Australia by Torres Strait. The greatest length and breadth are 800 and 200 miles respectively. The islands comprised in the dependency include the Trobriand, Woodlark, D'Entrecasteaux, and Louisiade groups. Over 87,000 square miles of the total area are on the mainland. A chain of mountains runs from the eastern extremity and forms a central ridge, Mount Victoria (13,200 ft.) being the highest point. Low, swampy land characterises the western portion of the territory, and the mountainous parts are heavily timbered. The chief rivers empty themselves into the Gulf of Papua; the Fly River drains a large area, and with its tributaries has a course of over 600 miles in the Protectorate. It is navigable by steam launch for over 500 miles, and in places is over 30 miles in width.

The last census showed the white population to number about 1,400. The estimated native population is between 200,000 and 300,000. Various languages and dialects are spoken by these natives. The employment of native labour is controlled by Native Labour Ordinances, and ample protection is provided for the natives, who may only be

recruited voluntarily. A magistrate has power to terminate any agreement under which natives are working if he is satisfied they are not being fairly dealt with, and under this protection the Papuan makes a good worker. For the construction of roads and similar work, under the Administration, native labour has proved most satisfactory. Between 7,000 and 8,000 natives have been employed at one time under contract.

PAPUA TO-DAY.

Some idea of the range of products of Papua may be gleaned from the display made in the Papuan Court in the Imperial Institute, London. They include products of the mining, agricultural, fishing, forestal and manufacturing industries. Properly developed, the dependency is regarded as being capable of enormous production. The natural features favour agriculture. Tracts of fertile lands, rich alluvial and volcanic soils cover a large area. Splendid rainfalls are recorded in various parts, while in the areas where the rainfall is lighter the conditions are favourable for the cultivation of fibres, cotton and tobacco. There are several meteorological stations throughout the territory, and an agricultural library, as well as an economic museum have been established. Since the Commonwealth Government took over the control of Papua a genuine attempt has been made to overcome the initial difficulties inseparable from the opening up of a tropical country. Experiments have been carried out by the Government with a view to checking the very heavy growth of weeds in several parts. The course adopted was to plant grasses to take the place of the weeds.

There were about 268 plantations covering an area of 24,707 acres, in Papua in 1922. Although they were spreading to other parts, the agricultural settlements were at that time mostly in the Central and Eastern divisions. Rubber, coco-nuts, tobacco, sisal hemp and coffee comprised the chief growths. The areas under cultivation in 1929 were approximately as follows :—

Coco-nuts	-	-	60,100 acres.
Rubber	-	-	9,200 „
Sisal -	-	-	4,100 „

By an ordinance the natives are compelled to plant coco-nuts for food, so that with the Government plantations and the areas cultivated by the natives it is estimated that over 300,000 acres are under coco-nuts. To encourage cultivation the Government supply settlers with suitable trees, plants and seeds from the nurseries. There are indigenous plants also which are of considerable commercial value, comprising sandal-wood, sugar cane, cotton plants, rubber-vines, nutmegs, ginger, bamboos, palms, bananas, breadfruit, sago palm, and other fruits and vegetables.

Papua is rich in natural, useful timbers, over 120 varieties having been classified. Many of these have successfully stood the

test for resisting heavy strains and others are eminently suitable for coach and carriage building, flooring, lining and joinery. From the roots of the local sandal-wood tree santal oil is distilled, and ebony wood is cut for export. From a species of tree grown in the hills gutta-percha is obtained, while drugs, dye-woods and spices are taken from other indigenous plants. Fairly large quantities of timber are exported to Australia and to the United Kingdom. During one year, 474,000 superficial feet of log-timber were sent to Australia.

Pearl-shell fishing is also a promising industry in Papua. Until recent years the operations had been practically controlled from Queensland. Bêche-de-mer is obtained along the shores and reefs, and a species of tortoise-shell of commercial value is got from the native tortoise. On the coast of the Western division there is a dugong fishery.

It is generally believed that the mineral deposits of Papua will prove of great value when properly developed. Gold, copper, silver, tin, lead, zinc, cinnabar, iron, osmiridium, gypsum, manganese, sulphur, graphite, and petroleum have already been found there. During 1913 Dr. Wade, an oil expert, visited Papua on behalf of the Australian Govern-



AIRD RIVER, GULF OF PAPUA

Photo, Australian Government

ment and reported favourably concerning the possibilities of oil being obtained there in payable quantities. From the gold deposits, however, the best results have so far been obtained, the annual yield being worth over £100,000. Gold-dredging along the rivers has been successfully carried on. Up to the present time gold to the value of £1,930,000 has been won. An area of about thirty square miles has been worked in a spasmodic way for copper. Only comparatively few white men have worked the mineral deposits

Department, Treasury and Postal Department, Lands and Agriculture, Public Works, Medical Service, Department of Native Affairs, Central Court, Legislative Council and Government Plantations.

An interesting system of land tenure has been adopted for Papua. No land can be alienated in fee simple, and the rental of the leased land is assessed on its unimproved value, being subject to reassessment at certain periods. Very easy terms are provided for taking up the land. For a lease



Photo, Australian Government

ELEVERA, A NATIVE VILLAGE BUILT ON BAMBOO PILES NEAR PORT MORESBY

and they have relied upon indentured native labour, as many as 1,000 being employed in the mining industry at one time.

With a view to encouraging development the Commonwealth Government has from time to time made grants to Papua. In 1912 for instance, the sum of £25,000 was voted for ordinary expenditure and £5,000 for Government plantations. The revenue is derived chiefly from customs, post office, native labour fees, and mining receipts. The expenditure is made up chiefly of disbursements for the Lieutenant-Governor and Civil list, Government Secretary's

extending for 99 years a settler may obtain some of the land on the following conditions:

(a) A deposit fee of from £1 per 100 acres to £5 for 1,000 acres, and £5 for every additional 1,000 acres, must accompany the application for the land. This is subsequently refunded when the holder has effected certain improvements to his land.

(b) No survey fees are charged to the lessee for areas not exceeding 100 acres, and no fee is charged for the preparation or registration of the lease.

(c) If the lease is not for more than thirty years, rent must be paid during the whole term at the rate of 5 per cent. per annum on the unimproved value of the land.

(d) If the lease is for more than thirty years, the rent payable is determined at 5 per cent. per annum

of the unimproved value of the land, but no rent is payable for the first period of ten years.

(c) The unimproved value of the land is to be appraised every twenty years during the currency of the lease, and the rent determined accordingly; but if on any appraisal the rent is raised by more than one-third the lessee may disclaim the lease, and is thereupon entitled to receive compensation for his improvements.

Settlers are required to plant one-fifth of their agricultural holdings within five years of the commencement of their lease; two-fifths within ten years; three-fourths within twenty years; and during the remainder of

The lands of Papua are held as follows :—

		Acres.
Held by natives	-	56,563,582
Crown Lands	-	1,023,049
Freehold	-	26,547
Leasehold	-	332,422
Area of Territory	-	57,945,600

When planters require land the procedure is for the Government to purchase the land from the natives and to lease it to the planters. The latter are not allowed to have direct dealings in land with the Papuans.



CANNIBALS OF THE GULF OF PAPUA

Photo, Australian Government

the term three-fourths of the suitable land must be kept properly planted. The maximum area which may be granted in any agricultural lease is 5,000 acres.

Land for pastoral purposes may be had in larger areas, well watered and carrying good natural growths of blady kangaroo, crows-foot, couch, scurvy and other grasses. It is provided that the rent for pastoral leases for the whole term of 99 years shall be on the following terms: First twenty years—first ten years, nil; second ten years, 1s per 100 acres; second twenty years 3s 1½d. per 100 acres; and increasing by one-third for every succeeding twenty year period.

CLIMATE.

The misconception as to the unhealthiness of the climate of Papua for Europeans is fast dying out. Settlers and officials who have lived almost continuously in the Territory for the last fifteen or twenty years enjoy excellent health. White people may successfully avoid serious illness and live comfortably and healthily if reasonable precautions are taken. Malarial fever is not uncommon, but, owing to the discoveries made in recent years regarding the cause and treatment of malaria, it is now possible by using quinine as a prophylactic, to obviate all serious danger from malaria. In two of

*Photo, Australian Government***CANNIBAL CHIEF PRESENTED WITH HIS FIRST SHIRT**

the most populous centres, Port Moresby and Samaria, malarial fever is not of common occurrence. Measures should be taken to prevent the breeding of mosquitoes by placing screens of wire gauze over the inlets of tanks, or pouring a small quantity of kerosene over the water; by burying empty tins and other receptacles which would otherwise hold rainwater and so form breeding places for mosquitoes; and always by sleeping under a mosquito net at night. Pools and puddles should be drained as far as it is possible to do so. Houses should never be built within half a mile of stagnant water, and never within a quarter of a mile of houses inhabited by natives. This precaution is rendered advisable owing to the fact that natives generally have malarial parasites in their blood, and native huts abound with infected mosquitoes.

Dysentery seldom attacks healthy persons in Papua. Provided that malarial fever is avoided, precautions taken against chills and the drinking of doubtful water, the chances of contracting dysentery are very small indeed. Since dysentery sometimes assumes an epidemic form, due most probably to the pollution of drinking water by the specific germ, it is advisable that a careful supervision be kept over the supply from which native

employees draw their water. Natives are apt to be careless in such matters. The territory is remarkably free from the dangerous diseases of other countries, such as typhoid fever, cholera, diphtheria, plague and scarlet fever.

The health of a white community in the tropics, especially in a new country, is often more a question of diet than climate. A regimen of tinned meats and biscuits or bread is obviously unsuitable, and yet these have been largely the staple articles of diet in this Territory. Now that plantations are springing up in all parts, fruit and vegetable gardens are being more largely drawn upon, and fresh meat, eggs, and poultry are becoming plentiful.

The well-drained lands of the Territory, where the plantation industries and other settlements are taking place, will be found to be quite as healthy as places such as Java, the Malay States and Ceylon, when better living conditions are attained.

THE PAPUANS.

In many of the Papuan villages communal houses are built, the "man-houses" being very large, those built for the women and children being smaller. In certain districts, such as the estuary of the Fly River, a great

number of families live each in a separate stall of one large communal dwelling, sometimes as long as 520 feet and 30 feet wide. In the villages of the Papua-Melanesians each family has its own house. Generally speaking, the native architecture throughout the Territory is of a fairly high standard for a primitive people.

From the Dutch boundary to Hall Sound the principal weapon is the bow and arrow. The bows, from 5 to 7 ft. in length, are made of bamboo or palm; the arrows, sometimes 6 ft. in length, are made of reed, tipped with hardwood, bone or the claw of a cassowary. They are not feathered or poisoned. A gauntlet is used for protecting the arm holding the bow. Stone clubs are used practically everywhere on the mainland, but are not common where stones are hard to obtain. Stone clubs are rarely used in the islands east of the mainland. In the Louisiade and Nara Islands wooden clubs are made. The spear is the principal weapon amongst the Papua-Melanesians. It is not thrown with the "womera" as in Australia. The spearmen generally use a shield when fighting. In the D'Entrecasteaux Islands the sling is used in addition to the spear.

The women usually wear a grass or fibre petticoat from waist to knee. Inland from Hall Sound, and in the Purari delta, they wear a perineal band. The men wear a perineal band as a rule, though sometimes an apron, bag, or shell is substituted.

A belief in spirits, generally malignant, appears to be universal. In almost every village there is a sorcerer, who propitiates or exorcises the evil spirits with incantations or offerings. Totemism appears to be practised only amongst the Massim. Polygamy seems to be sanctioned by native custom everywhere, but it is not very largely practised, the great majority of men having only one wife. The practise of eating human flesh, formerly in vogue in certain parts of the Territory, has been entirely stopped in all the settled districts.

In parts of the Western Division, west of the Fly River, a mildly narcotic and stimulating drink (kava) is made from the *Macropiper methysticum*. No fermented liquors are manufactured by the natives, and the use of European intoxicants is strictly and successfully prohibited. The chewing of the betel-nut, the fruit of the areca palm (*Areca catechu*) is largely practised.



A NATIVE BRIDGE OVER THE FLY RIVER

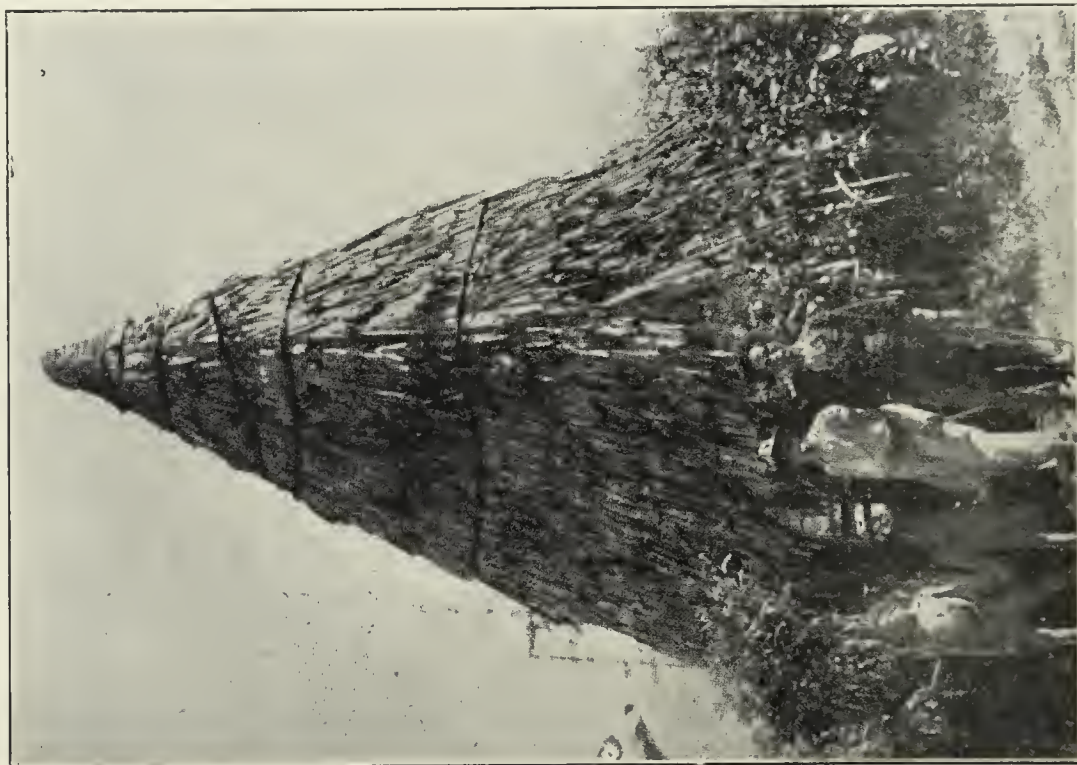
Photo, Australian Government



Photos, Australian Government

NATIVE WATER CARRIERS

At a Government Post on the Fly River



NATIVE BUILDING

The use of which is at present unknown

PLANTATIONS.

There is probably no country better suited for rubber growing than Papua. It possesses an immense area of easily accessible virgin forest and scrub land lying along a great portion of its 3,000 miles of coast-line, as well as equally good land, though at present less accessible, situated further inland. The rainfall is heavy and evenly distributed, and the trees seem to be remarkably free from disease. Messrs. Greene and Garrioch introduced the first Para rubber plants into the Territory. On the 24th December, 1903, they planted eight acres at Sageri, and the following year five acres. The Government imported 100,000 seeds in October, 1906. The world-wide depression in the rubber industry has, however, temporarily retarded the cultivation of this commodity in Papua.

As soon as possible after the planter has obtained his land he should order his rubber seeds. The seeds should be obtained from healthy, well-grown trees that have a good lactiferous system. All seedlings that have twisted tap-roots or stems, or which have a sickly appearance, or have been attacked by disease, should be removed and destroyed. In some respects the best system is to plant the seeds at stakes, one to three in each filled hole, and shade slightly. They should be watered each morning or evening in the absence of rain. If more than one plant grows in any hole, the less vigorous should be removed.

One advantage of this method is that no injury is done to the root system by transplanting. It is, however, not desirable to adopt this system if rats are troublesome, or if the plantation is not fenced so as to exclude pigs and other animals.

In preparing the nursery for the seeds, good, rich, loamy, well-drained soil should be chosen. All vegetation should be cleared off, and the ground dug to a depth of 18 in. to 2 ft. The seeds should be planted at least 6 in. apart in beds 4 ft. wide, and should be soaked in water for two hours before planting. They should be laid horizontally and not perpendicularly, the flat or scarf side downwards, and just covered with earth. The ground should be kept moist, and the young sprouts lightly shaded from the sun. The seeds, if fresh, should sprout in from two to seven days.

In five months from the planting of the seed, the young rubber-trees can be transferred from the nursery to the plantation. They can, however, be left in the beds, if not too thickly planted, for any term up to two years, and transferred as stumps; but this latter method is not recommended.

The conditions that appear to be most suitable for rubber cultivation are a rich, friable, loamy, well-drained soil, with a well-distributed rainfall of about 100 in., an average mean annual temperature of approximately 80 deg. F. and elevation from near the sea-level up to 500 ft.

THE WILD INTERIOR.

Some of the difficulties which attended the extension of Government influence in Papua may be gauged from the following extract, taken from an official report issued in 1913 by the Lieutenant-Governor of Papua :—

“The western part of the Territory presents the greatest problem, perhaps only because it is so little known. The present intention is to put one or two stations on the Fly and Strickland, and a police camp at a distance up the Kikori River; probably the information that will be supplied by the officers at these points will enable us to decide which other sites would be preferable. The object of extending Government influence is primarily to put an end to cannibalism, head-hunting and other horrors, the existence of which is, it is felt, a disgrace to Australian Territory. Incidentally, it will have the effect of extending the area open to recruiting, and so increasing the number of labourers available for employment, but the suppression of crime is the principal object; and it must be remembered that, outside the limits of Government influence, scenes of violence and bloodshed are probably just as frequent to-day as they were fifty years ago, though, of course, we rarely hear of them, and then only in the vaguest way. It is not until a station is established in the neighbourhood, or the district is regularly patrolled, that these atrocities are brought to light, so that the inhabitants of a part of the country which was apparently quite peaceful may, on the establishment of a station close at hand, appear suddenly to abandon themselves to a saturnalia of bloodshed and rapine, and when this happens, sympathetic people, in-



Photo, Australian Government
A SINGLE FROND FAN PALM. Headwaters of Vailala River

sufficiently informed, are inclined to imagine that the Government officers who are stationed in the districts are in some way to blame for the change; but this is not so. There has, in fact, been no change; these atrocities have been going on all the time, but there has hitherto been no one to report them, no one to arrest the culprits. So, when these new stations on the Fly River and elsewhere are established, it is not improbable that the Territory will seem to be ablaze with crime; if so, it may be concluded that all is well, and that the patrol officers are doing their duty.

ANNEXATION OF GERMAN SPHERE.

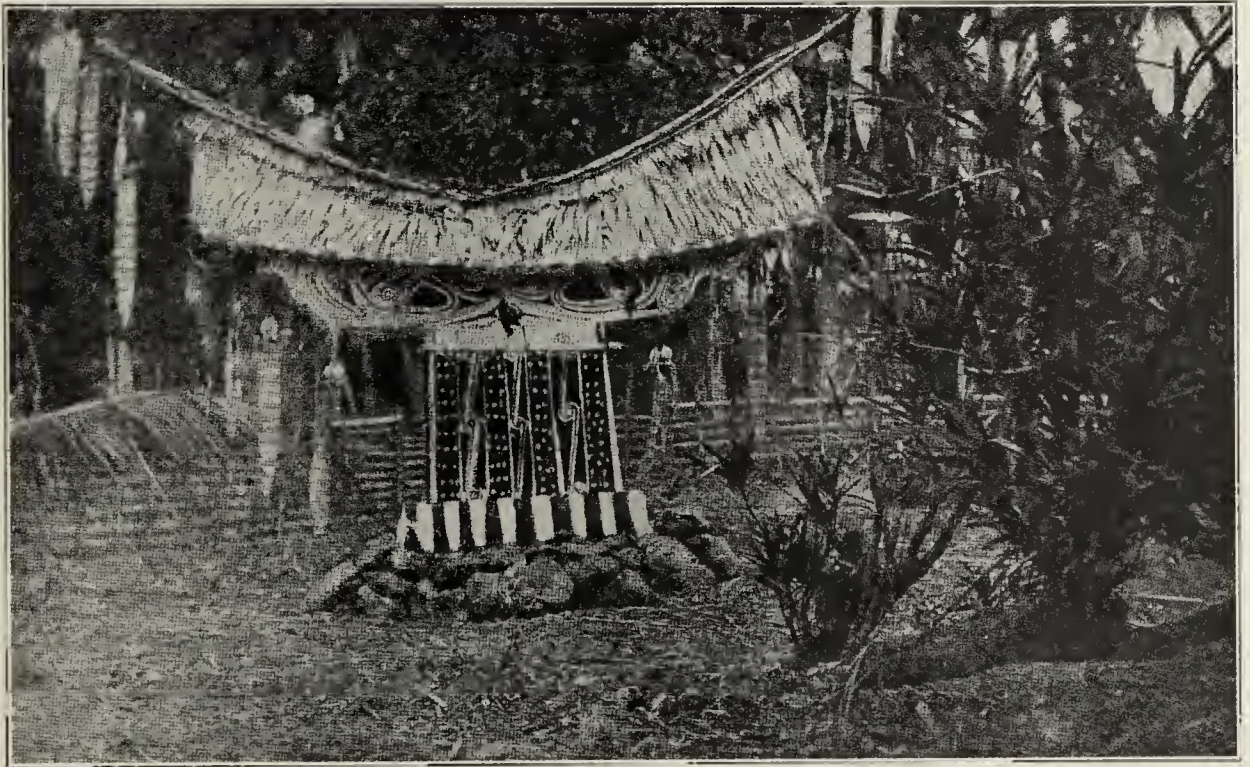
Before the Great War, the Eastern half of New Guinea was almost equally divided between Great Britain and Germany, each holding approximately 90,000 square miles. In 1909 an Anglo-German Boundary Commission defined the boundary between those two territories, the total length of which was $66\frac{1}{4}$ miles. The task of deciding this line was a difficult one. At times, it is stated, operations were conducted over a range at an elevation of over 11,000 ft. The portion allotted to Germany, known as the German Protectorate, included the northern and

eastern half of the mainland, called Kaiser Wilhelm's Land, and the large islands of the Bismarck Archipelago and the Solomon Group, as well as nearly 200 smaller islands. Among the largest of these islands were New Pommern (New Britain), New Mecklenburg (New Ireland), New Hanover, and New Lauenburg (Duke of York Island). The Solomon Islands are in the northern group, while there is also the Archipelago of the Carolines, Pelew, Marianne and Marshall Islands (allotted to Japan). The total population of the German Protectorate in 1914 was probably 500,000. Quite half of this number lived in the Bismarck Archipelago, which was the centre of the Protectorate.

In the work of reclaiming the country and developing the interior, slow progress was made under German rule. The smaller archipelagoes comprise many coral islands. From the Marshall Isles, the West Caroline phosphates have been obtained in considerable quantities, and gold has been exported in varying amounts from Kaiser Wilhelm's Land. Coco-nuts, bread-fruit, yam, taro and tobacco are grown by the natives, who also

obtain trepang, tortoise shell, gutta-percha, skins and plumes of birds for export. Large areas are regarded as eminently suitable for the cultivation of rubber trees. Copra ranks as the most important of the items of export, most of which comes from the established plantations. There is now ample room for the development of this form of production. As early as 1909, over 40,000 acres were planted for cocoa and 2,300 with rubber, under European supervision and with native labour. The labour problem—the successful use of native labour—has been an important one in German New Guinea, as with the area administered by the Commonwealth.

The geographical position of the Protectorate makes the climate very rainy and not healthy under certain conditions. Very dense growth of virgin forest covers a great portion of the country. Malaria has been common in Kaiser Wilhelm's Land, but the conditions in the Bismarck Archipelago are more favourable. Up to 1914, the German shipping company (Norddeutscher Lloyd) had connected this German colony with the Singapore service, while Australian trading



Photo, Australian Government

GRAVE OF A NATIVE GIRL, MAIWARA, MILNE BAY, PAPUA



HOISTING THE BRITISH FLAG OVER THE GERMAN HEADQUARTERS IN THE PACIFIC

Official Photo

ships touched at Rabaul and the small archipelagoes *en route* from Sydney to Hong Kong.

On 11th September, 1914, ships of the Australian Navy visited German New Guinea in accordance with the British operations in the Pacific, and on the following day, Vice-Admiral Patey, of the flagship, H.M.A.S. *Australia*, reported as follows: "Herbertshohe was occupied and the British flag hoisted on 11th September, at 7.30 a.m.,

Eventually the Australians secured complete possession of the German territories on behalf of Great Britain, and added to the Empire an area that is capable of great development and of becoming very valuable in tropical production. As the Commonwealth of Australia had already adopted a vigorous policy of development in connection with Papua (previously known as British New Guinea) it was thought that the newly acquired area might well be administered



ARMED NATIVE POLICE, PAPUA

[Photo, Australian Government]

without opposition. Simpsonhafen has been swept clean, and is ready to be entered on 12th September." Thus the first step was taken to annex from Germany her interests and possessions in and around New Guinea. The report also stated that a naval force had been landed to destroy the German wireless station. This force, however, had met with opposition, and bush fighting was indulged in over a distance of four miles. In this encounter, the first in the history of the young Australian navy, there were four of the British force killed and two wounded.

and developed with Papua and along similar lines.

In 1929 there were just over 180,000 acres under cultivation, of which 170,000 acres were under coco-nuts. The white population numbered about 1,700 and the native population about 320,000; but much of the interior is still unexplored.

The exports have already reached an average annual value of £1,250,000 and the imports £600,000. The headquarters of the administration are at Rabal. (See *Lands of the British Mandates*).



By kind permission

NASSAU AND THE HARBOUR FROM WEST HILL

of the West India Committee

BAHAMA ISLANDS

THE Bahama Islands, which form the most northerly group in the British West Indies, really comprise an entirely separate colony, both from the geographical and administrative points of view, hence their inclusion here instead of with the more southerly islands of the British West Indies (*q.v.*). They lie off the coast of Florida, and are separated therefrom by a strait through which flows the Gulf Stream in its course from the Mexican coast to the Atlantic Ocean. The nearest island is dis-

tant only 40 miles from the Port of Miami, on the American mainland.

The Bahamas consist of a very large number of small coral islands, only about twenty of which are inhabited. They extend over several degrees of both latitude and longitude, lying between $21^{\circ} 41'$ and $27^{\circ} 34' N.$, and $72^{\circ} 40'$ and $79^{\circ} 5' W.$ Their position, at the northern extremity of the West Indian semi-circle, gives them a certain strategic importance, as they block the entrance to the Gulf of Mexico, and lie



By kind permission of the West India Committee

RIDING ROCK, WATLING'S ISLAND

The Bay into which Columbus first sailed in 1492. This view was taken from the verandah of Government House, the official residence of the Commissioner

close to the track of vessels coming down the United States coast to Central America and the Panama Canal. This strategic position is, happily, of little actual value, because the Empire has only maritime interests in these waters, and the blood-ties with the United States are sufficiently strong



Photo, West India Committee
STATUE ERECTED AT NASSAU IN HONOUR
OF THE DISCOVERER OF THE BAHAMAS

to prevent any misunderstanding between the two great English-speaking nations.

The principal islands of the Bahamas group are : New Providence (Government Headquarters), San Salvador, Andros Island, Abaco, Long Island, Grand Bahama, Eleuthera, Exuma, Great Inagua, Harbour Island, Watling's Island, Rum Cay, Long Cay, Ragged Island, and Biminis. The smaller islands include Crooked Island, Acklins Island, Mayaguana, and the Berry Islands. The whole group has a total area of 4,403 square miles, and a population of about 58,000, composed very largely of negroes.

The Bahamas have an unusually complete form of government. First there is the Governor, who is aided by a Council of nine members for executive purposes, then comes a nominated Legislative Council (or Senate) of nine members and a Representative Assembly of twenty-nine members. These islands were first colonised by the British, but in 1781 they were captured by the Spaniards, but were given back to the Empire after the Peace of Versailles. In a small book published by the Development Board at Nassau, occurs the following account of the romantic history of these islands.*

THE LORDS PROPRIETORS.

"The story of the Bahamas is a story of the old-time piracy. Their history began with the discovery by Columbus in 1492. Watling's Island was the first land sighted in the Western Hemisphere. The islands were inhabited by a friendly and indolent race of Caribs. These were soon carried off into slavery by the Spaniards, and put to work in the mines of Cuba, and for more than a century the islands were without population.

"In 1629 Sir Robert Heath, a British sea captain, took possession of them and raised the British flag. Shortly afterwards a few English adventurers from the Bermudas settled on Eleuthera and founded the town of Governor's Harbour. In 1647 these adventurous spirits incorporated a company to settle the islands and start plantations.

"This caused wild rumours of the economic wealth of the islands to spread in England, and in 1670 the whole group was granted to a Company known as the Lords Proprietors, composed of the Duke of Albemarle, Earl

* *Isles of June.*

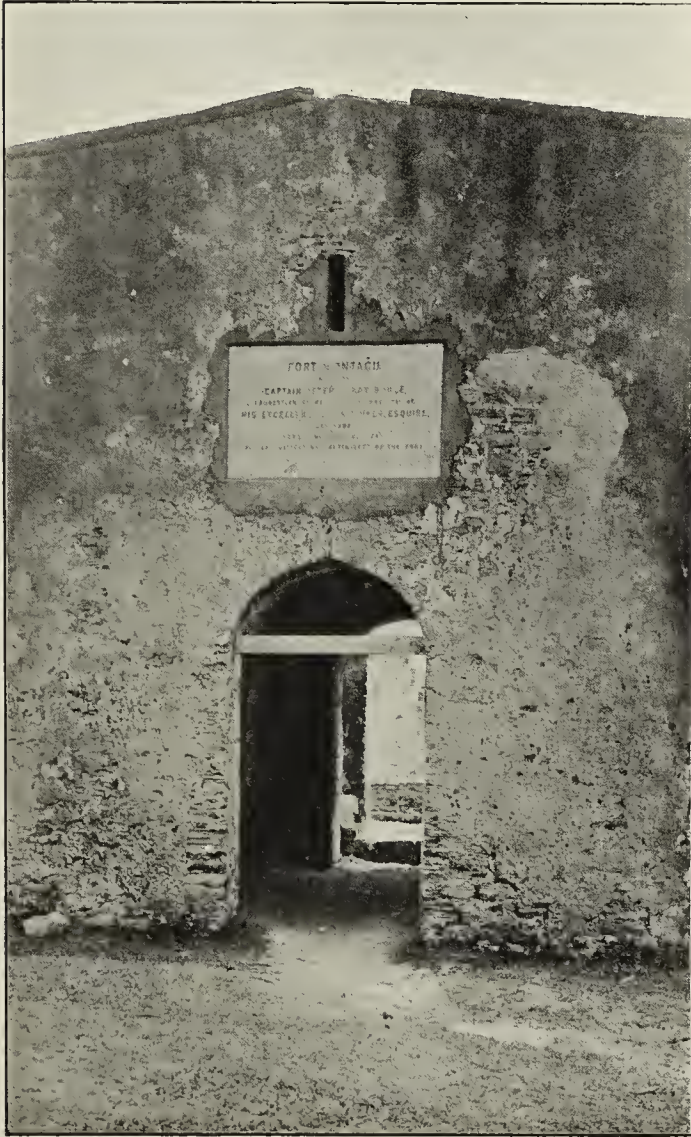
Craven, Lord Berkeley, Lord Ashley, Sir George Cartaret and Sir Peter Colleton. During this period England and Spain were almost continuously at war, with France occasionally dipping in on the side of Spain. England's strength lay in her marine, and

than pirates, deriving the name 'Buccancers' from a French word meaning 'beef-eaters.' These merry gentlemen dodged in and out of the islands and coral reefs, with their treacherous winds and currents, to prey upon the rich Spanish commerce of the Caribbean.

THE BUCCANEERS.

"The only harbour that amounted to anything in the group was at Nassau, on New Providence Island, and thither the old pirates dragged their Spanish galleons and scattered their loot. In 1684 Spain sent an expedition of warships which captured New Providence in January. After razing the little forts, the Spaniards left, but more buccaneering activity brought a second visitation in November of the same year, and Nassau was sacked and burned. In 1695 the Lords Proprietors started to rebuild the city. Privateering had grown so rampant, and the pirates had come to make so little distinction between English, French and Spanish merchant ships, that the English Government endeavoured to suppress them in 1700, and four of the most notorious of them were executed at Nassau. In 1717 the Lords Proprietors found coping with the pirates too arduous a job, and turned back the authority that had been vested in them to the British Government. The next year England sent out Woodes Rogers, who proved to be 'pizen' to the Buccaneers. He captured and hanged eight of their leaders, had another of them appointed Governor of Jamaica, and got still another one an appointment as a bishop of the Anglican Church. Both of these merry pirates rose to their new responsibilities in splendid shape, and died full of honours. Ostensibly, this ended the Buccaneers, two hundred of the pirates taking the oath of allegiance on August 1, 1718, but, as a

matter of fact, piracy never died out completely in the Bahamas until about fifty years ago, when Thomas Ap Rees, the last of the pirates, was robbed of his new profession of 'wreck master' and died in disgust at the early age of ninety-four. In February, 1719, Nassau was again attacked by the Spaniards,



Photo, West India Committee

ENTRANCE TO FORT MONTAGU

This old fort on New Providence Island was built in 1741-2 and has witnessed many changes in the fortunes of war

practically every English sea captain was armed with *letters of marque* giving him the privilege of privateering; that is, preying upon the commerce of England's enemies. These privateers found the Bahamas a happy hunting ground, and they soon developed into Buccaneers, who were nothing more nor less



A DAY IN NEW PROVIDENCE ISLAND
 (1) Early Morning (2) Sunset (3) Moonrise

Photo, West India Committee

but they were beaten off and the islanders lived in peace until January, 1776, when Admiral Hopkins made Nassau the first objective of the baby American Navy. He captured the town without trouble and hoisted the American flag. The next day it occurred to him that the islands had no particular strategic value, and he hauled down the flag and sailed away. In 1782, while England was sore beset with the combined attacks of France and Spain, the Bahamas were surrendered to Spain, but the next year they went back to Great Britain by the Treaty of Versailles.

"Slavery was abolished in the islands in 1838, and from that moment they were economically dead until the American Civil War broke out, and Nassau enjoyed very great prosperity as the centre of the blockade running for the Confederate States. This period ended with the close of the Civil War, and since that time the development of Nassau has been in the direction of a great winter resort."

CORAL ISLANDS.

These Islands are all of coral formation, and three different kinds of soil are found in those parts of the several islands which are fertile and fit for cultivation. (1) Near the coast, and sometimes in the interior, a white, sandy soil is found which is well adapted for the growth of the coco-nut palm, corn and maize, and also for potatoes, onions and vegetables; (2) a darker soil, suitable for the growth of potatoes, fruit trees, cotton,

tobacco, and rubber; and (3) a red-coloured soil peculiarly adapted to the growth of pineapples, vegetables, tobacco and cassava.

Generally it may be said that the loose, loamy soils found in many districts of the Colony are well adapted to the growing in abundance of all kinds of vegetables, especially onions and tomatoes. It is to be remembered, however, that only in favoured localities can very good soil be found. Every grade exists between the extreme fertility of the pineapple and tomato fields of Eleuthera and the unproductiveness of the barren pine-lands of Abaco.

Eleuthera, the principal seat of pineapple and tomato cultivation; Exuma and Long Island, where stock farming is carried on to some extent, and San Salvador, are the most fertile islands in the group. At Inagua, the most southerly of the Islands, there is a considerable extent of cultivable interior. At present it is put to little use, and is chiefly of prairie condition, serving as pasturage for herds of wild donkeys, ponies and cattle. Considerable tracts of undeveloped land exist at Acklins and Mayaguana. The soil in these islands is principally black loam, admirably adapted for citrus fruit and vegetables. Acklins has also a large area of pasturage for stock.*

CLIMATE.

The climate of the Bahamas exhibits the usual characteristics

* *The Bahamas.* Published by the Development Board, Nassau.



Photos, West India Committee

THE QUEEN'S STAIRCASE, NASSAU



A GARDEN IN NASSAU



THE BUTTRESSED ROOTS OF THE SILK COTTON TREE

Photos, West India Committee



Photo, West India Committee

VICTORIA AVENUE, NASSAU

These Royal Palms were planted in memory of Queen Victoria

of a sub-tropical ocean climate, with a temperature varying from 80 to 90 deg. F. during the summer months (May to November) and in winter (from December to May) averaging 70 deg., with prevailing south-easterly and easterly breezes. The lowest recorded temperature is 51.5 deg., on January 26th, 1905. Occasionally cool and strong north-easterly and north-westerly winds are

met with, in sympathy with cold spells in the north ; at such times five or six degrees of frost will be felt in the neighbouring peninsula of Florida. The warmth of the Gulf Stream, across which any cold wind must pass before it reaches the islands, however, serves to maintain the temperature of the Bahamas at least 20 degrees above freezing point. This is an important climatic condition in favour of the Bahamas, because it is the occasional occurrence of several degrees of frost which has, on many occasions, proved detrimental to the fruit industry of Florida, and the absolute exemption from such unfavourable chances and risks is of considerable benefit to the planter in the Bahamas.

The climate, especially from November to May, is extremely fine, and probably unsurpassed. Many northerners make these islands their winter home. Although the Bahamas lie within the hurricane belt, they have rarely been subject to these unpleasant visitations.

The physical features of the islands are such that no permanent supply of fresh water, either in the form of running streams, ponds or lakes, is to be found upon the surface. Lakes Cunningham and Killarney, in New Providence, and similar pieces of water in other islands, are supposed to be formed by the filtration of the ocean waters through the coralline limestone formation of which all the islands are composed, and many of such inland sheets of water are affected

by the action of the tides ; consequently the water is brackish and useless for drinking purposes, and, if used for irrigation, is hurtful to vegetation. Many wells sunk near the sea are found to have the same defect, but there are others which give an abundant supply of good, palatable water, though highly charged with lime, and wells are sunk and kept in constant repair at



THE SPONGE FLEET IN NASSAU HARBOUR
The Catch is sold on the Sponge Exchange

Photo, West India Committee



SPECIALLY DRAWN FOR THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE BY A.H.LEL.

the public expense wherever the wants of the people demand them; private houses are usually supplied with both wells and cisterns for collecting the rain-water from the roof.

NASSAU.

On New Providence stands Nassau, the capital, and the seat of the administration, which has a population of about 5,000. It is a pretty little West Indian town overlooking a small though safe anchorage sheltered by Hog Island. Andros, which has an area of about 1,500 square miles, is the largest island—or, more correctly, collection of small reefs practically joined—in this group. On Harbour Island stands Dunmore Town, which is second in size and commerce to Nassau. According to history it was on Columbus Point, on the Island of San Salvador, that Columbus first landed in the New World.*

The sights of the Bahamas are many. There are three historic old forts, one of which has an interesting labyrinth of dungeons and underground passages. There are

the sea gardens, usually visited in a glass-bottomed boat, through which the wonders of tropical submarine growth are distinctly visible in the clear water. There is the Queen's Staircase, cut out of the living rock, the old slave-market, and Grant's Town, the Negro settlement. Hog Island, across the narrow harbour, has one of the best bathing beaches in the world. There are several fine hotels, tea-gardens, tennis lawns and a golf course.

The harbour of Nassau is a fashionable yachting centre during the tourist season, and it certainly deserves to be, because the combination of transparent sea, luminous sky, beaches of golden sand and palm-fringed coves makes it a veritable scenic paradise.

The natural features of the Bahamas are similar to those of other West Indian Islands, but they are of coral formation and not volcanic. Being situated further north the climate is less hot and enervating; and Nassau, which lies just beyond the region of the tropics, is a favourite winter resort of residents on the North American mainland.

* Although Watling's Island was the first land sighted.



FORT CHARLOTTE, NEW PROVIDENCE ISLAND

Photo, West India Committee



SPONGE FISHERS



THE FAMOUS BATHING BEACH ON HOG ISLAND

Photos, West India Committee

SPONGE FISHING.

A large amount of capital is invested in the sponge fishery, an industry which employs a whole fleet of schooners and sloops and probably about 7,000 men. Skill and knowledge on the part of the crews are required not only in the management of the vessels, but in hooking the sponges off the beds and cleaning them for the market, in which operations the whole of the crew are engaged. Government control is to some extent exercised over this industry by the Marine Products Board appointed by the Governor. The sponges are sold in parcels to the highest bidder at the Sponge Exchange in Nassau, the crews receiving a share in the proceeds. The Mud is the principal sponge field. During the months of February, June and November, almost the whole sponging fleet is to be found there. It is a body of water about 200 miles long and 64 miles broad, situate to the west or north-west of Andros. Sponge grows in the mud from which the sponge field takes its name. This is a peculiar white marl. The sponge is obtained by means of hooks attached to staves, which are lowered in the water until the hook catches the root of the sponge. As its hold on the mud is very slight, it is easily extracted. The Mud produces about four-fifths of the entire sponge crops. Other important sponge fields are Abaco Bight, Acklins and Exuma Cays. Many minor fields are fished itinerantly. A number of Greek merchants are engaged in the trade, and are heavy buyers of sponge. The principal market is Europe. The cheaper are largely exported to Germany, while France and Belgium are customers for the better class. The sponge trade is continually increasing in value and importance. Artificial sponge growing is an industry which has great possibilities, and very successful experiments have been made in this direction by the

Marine Products Board. The average annual value of the sponges exported is £140,000.

OTHER INDUSTRIES.

Turtle shell is another marine product of which large quantities are exported annually. The turtle are captured in an area of sea known as the Bahama Banks, and good prices are obtained for the shells. The industry next in importance to sponge fishing is, however, the cultivation of sisal hemp. Notwithstanding keen competition from Mexico and other places, this industry has proved of great benefit to the Bahamas. Machine-cleaned sisal finds a ready and lucrative market. About 17,000 acres are now under this crop, and the value of the export averages over £45,000 a year.

Although the staple products are sponges, sisal, pineapples, oranges and grape fruit, increasing attention has been paid during recent years to the cultivation of tomatoes, for which there is a constant demand in the United States during the winter season. Large areas of land are being utilised for this form of production, and several American firms are financially interested in the business.

In the forests there are several valuable woods, including mahogany, iron-wood, ebony, satin-wood, log-wood, mastic and lignum-vitæ. On the islands of Andros, Abaco and Grand Bahama there are extensive pine forests which are being worked under an exclusive licence.

A considerable portion of the overseas trade of these islands is with the United States and Canada. The exports average about £500,000 and the imports £1,600,000 a year; about one third coming from the United Kingdom. The revenue is £540,000 and the expenditure £480,000 a year. There is a small Public Debt of about £150,000. ((See also under *Government, Agriculture, etc.*)



BERMUDAS

NEXT to Gibraltar and a few quite unimportant islets, the Bermudas are the smallest British possession, having a combined area of only just over 19 square miles, and a population of about 32,000, of whom some 16,000 are whites. They are situated in the West Atlantic, in lat. $32^{\circ} 15'$ N., and long. $64^{\circ} 51'$ W. ; under 700 miles from New York and about an equal distance from the Bahama Islands (B.W.I.). They form a half-way guard-house on the route from Canada to the West Indies.

This cluster of 100 tiny islands, variously known as the Bermudas, or Somer's Islands,

derive their name from *Bermudez*, a Spanish navigator, who first sighted them in 1527. They were, however, not colonised until over eighty years later, when a British Admiral, Sir George Somers, was shipwrecked there while on his way to Virginia.

The Bermudas may be described as a circle of coral reefs, only the southern portion of which is habitable, and even this part consists of many small islands ; the largest being Bermuda, or Long Island, Ireland and Somerset, in the north-west, and St. David's and St. George's in the east. The chief navigable entry into this circle of reefs is the



HAMILTON, LONG ISLAND, BERMUDAS

Photo, R.M.S.P. Co.



ST. GEORGE'S, BERMUDAS



BERMUDA EASTER LILIES

Photos, R.M.S.P. Co.

"Narrows," or ship canal, which lies to the east of St. George's Isle, and is commanded by strong fortifications, as the chief value of the Bermudas lies in their utility as a naval station in the Atlantic.

The two harbours, both of which are inside the reefs, are, St. George's, lying between the two eastern islands, and the Great Sound with its sheltered inlet, Hamilton Harbour, situated in the south-west. The naval dock-yards are on Ireland Island, which is also fortified, while the military headquarters are

amounts on an average to about £300,000 per annum. The chief products are onions, potatoes and fruit; mostly shipped to New York to supply the early spring demand. The total value of the imports amounts to about £1,400,000 a year, while the exports seldom exceed in value £240,000 a year. The commerce with the United Kingdom is also of a very one-sided character, the annual value of the imports from the homeland amounting on an average to £300,000, and the exports to only a few thousands. This



ST. GEORGE'S, BERMUDAS

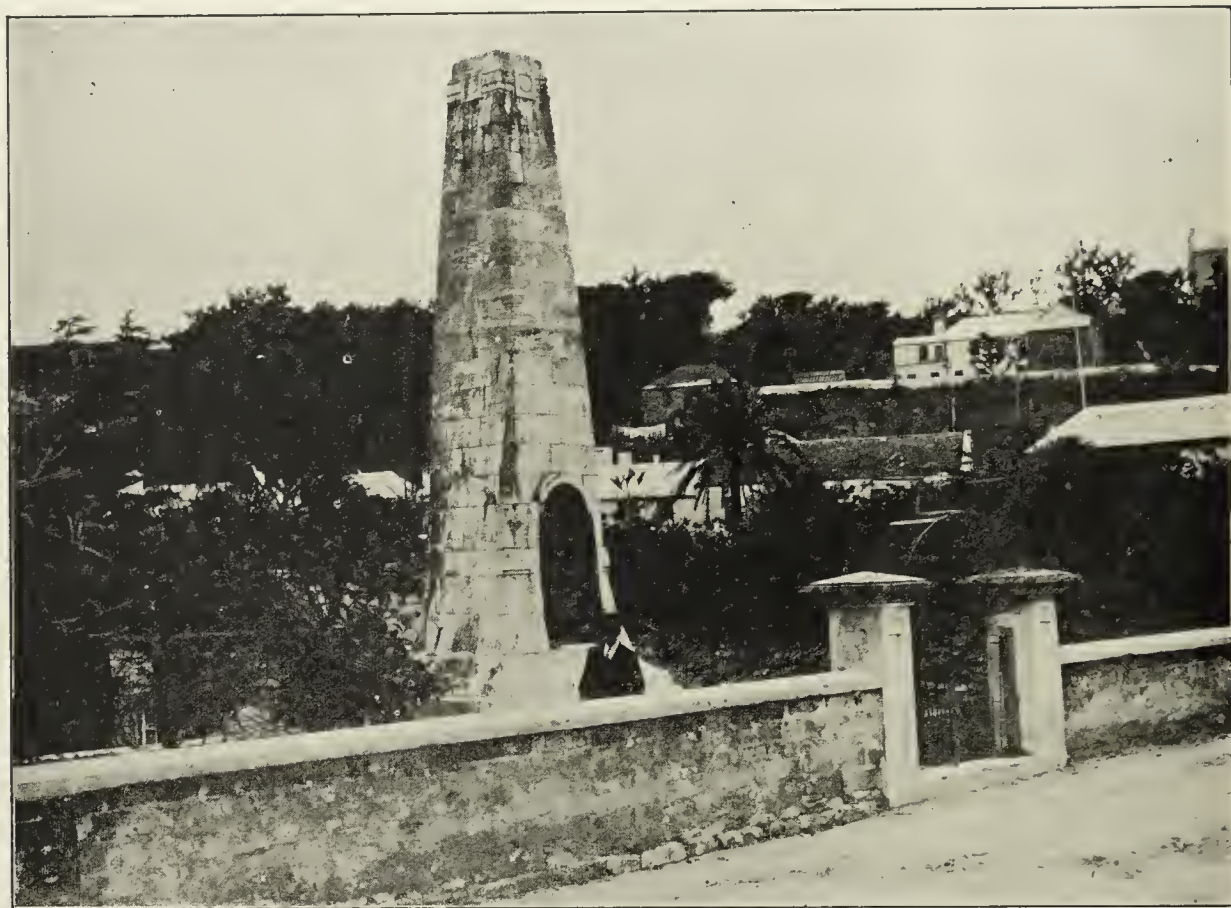
Photo, R.S.M.P. Co.

beautifully situated on Prospect Hill, Long Island; but there are detachments of troops in several others of this group.

The capital is Hamilton, Long Island, which has a population of over 2,578, exclusive of the military, and is the seat of the administration. The Bermudas were one of the first to obtain a measure of representative government, but although there is an elected assembly the executive is appointed by the Crown. The Governor being also Commander-in-Chief of the garrison, is, consequently, of high military rank. The revenue is usually slightly in excess of the expenditure, which

may, however, be partly accounted for by the purchases and supplies of the garrison and to the fact that Bermuda derives much of its income from tourists. There is a public debt of £50,000. These islands are in direct cable communication with Halifax, Nova Scotia; the Turk's Islands and Jamaica. The only other town in the Bermudas is St. George's, on the island of the same name, which was at one time the capital of the whole group.

These coral isles of the Atlantic are the favourite resort of large numbers of Canadian and American visitors, who go there from



ST. GEORGE'S, BERMUDAS

November to April to escape the cold of the North American mainland. In this respect they are regarded by the people of North America much as Madeira is regarded by the people of the United Kingdom. Their scenery and climate is of the brightest and pleasantest, although from an agricultural point of view the soil is poor. During the season the temperature ranges from 60 deg. F. to 70 deg. F., and the air is dry notwithstanding the tepid sea-breeze. Invalids derive considerable benefit from the even temperature and mildness of the winter climate; large hotels have been built for the Canadian and American tourists. The nearest

point on the mainland is Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, which is just over 579 miles distant. A speciality of these islands is the Bermuda Easter Lily; the bulbs of which are largely exported to the United States. Turtles are also fairly common.

The size and soil of the Bermudas prohibit their development into anything like a flourishing agricultural and commercial colony, but their climate and scenery are assets of no mean value; and their position midway between Canada and the West Indies, gives them importance from an Imperial point of view.

(See also under *Defence, Trade Routes, etc.*)

BIG GAME HUNTING

AMONG the different countries of the Empire in which big game still abound the Sudan is, perhaps, the most accessible to the sportsmen of the British Isles. About fifty species of Game animals occur within its limits, but, as might be expected, several of these are of very local distribution, and must be made the object of special journeys.

In so large a territory the hunter has a very varied choice of shooting grounds open to him. He can visit the swamps and jungles of the White Nile, travelling by steamer and sailing boat; or, using camel transport, he can journey through the drier country of the Blue Nile tributaries, and on either of these

expeditions he should meet with a large variety of game. Or, again, if content with less shooting and a smaller "bag," he can leave the rivers, and shoot on the sandy wastes of Kordofan—the home of the *Leucoryx* and *Ril*—or, starting from Port Sudan, he can hunt *Ibex* among the barren hills of the Red Sea coast. The two latter are also camel trips.

It may help sportsmen in choosing their lines of travel by giving here a list of the Game animals of the Sudan, with a brief sketch of the range of each.

1. **ELEPHANT.**—More or less abundant in the Kassala, Sennar, Upper Nile, Mongalla, and Bahrel-Ghazal Provinces, and in Southern Kordofan.



SETTING OUT FOR THE HUNT, CENTRAL AFRICA



GIRAFFE, EAST AFRICA

Ivory runs heaviest on the Upper Nile, where tusks considerably over 100 lb. weight apiece are occasionally obtained.

2. **BLACK RHINOCEROS.**—Somewhat the same distribution, but much less numerous and very scarce in the Kassala and Sennar Provinces, where shooting them is prohibited.

3. **WHITE RHINOCEROS.**—Occurs on the west bank of the Upper Nile, extending into Sudan territory in the south of the Bahr el Ghazal Province.

4. **GIRAFFE** and

5. **BUFFALO** have also approximately the same range as the Elephant. The shooting of Giraffes is not encouraged, and an additional fee is charged for killing one.

6. **HEUGLIN'S HARTEBEEST**, locally known as **JACKSON'S**, with which it is not quite identical, occurs in the Upper Nile, Mongalla, Bahr el Ghazal and Kordofan Provinces.

7. **TORA HARTEBEEST.**—This replaces the last mentioned in the Kassala and Sennar Provinces.

8. **NEUMANN'S HARTEBEEST** occurs locally on the White Nile.

9. **TIANG.**—The most widely distributed of the Hartbeest group, found in most of the riverain game districts. A larger desert race inhabits waterless country in Western Kordofan.

10. **WATERBUCK.**—Very widely distributed in the vicinity of rivers or other water.

11. **MRS. GRAY'S WATERBUCK.**—Upper Nile and Bahr el Ghazal only. It does not extend further north than Tawfikia.

12. **WHITE-EARED COB.**—White Nile, Zeraf, Bahr el Ghazal.

13. **UGANDA COB.**—Upper Nile and Bahr el Ghazal.

14. **VAUGHAN'S COB.**—Mongalla Province.

15. **BOHOR REEDBUCK.**—Kassala, Sennar, White Nile, Mongalla, Bahr el Ghazal.

16. **COMMON REEDBUCK.**—Bahr el Ghazal Province.

17. **ROAN ANTELOPE.**—Kassala, Sennar, White Nile, Mongalla, Bahr el Ghazal.

18. **ORYX BEISA.**—Only straggles into the Sudan along the boundary of Eritrea.

19. **ORYX LEUCORYX.**—Deserts of Northern Kordofan and W. of Dongola.

20. **ADDAX.**—Waterless deserts of Dongola.

21. **FLAND.**—Bahr el Ghazal Province, and rarely near Mongalla.

22. **KUDU.**—Of local occurrence in the Kassala, Sennar and Kordofan Provinces.

23. **SITATUNGA.**—Upper Nile and Bahr el Ghazal, in the swamps only.

24. **HARNESSED BUSHBUCK.**—Upper Nile and Bahr el Ghazal Provinces.

25. **ABYSSINIAN BUSHBUCK.**—Takes the place of the last mentioned in the Kassala and Sennar Provinces.

26. **ARIEL OR SOEMMERRING'S GAZELLE.**—Abundant in the Kassala, Sennar and Red Sea Provinces, reaching north to between Khartoum and Halfa.

27. **ADDRA GAZELLE OR RIL.**—Desert country in Kordofan and Dongola Provinces. Only West of the Nile.

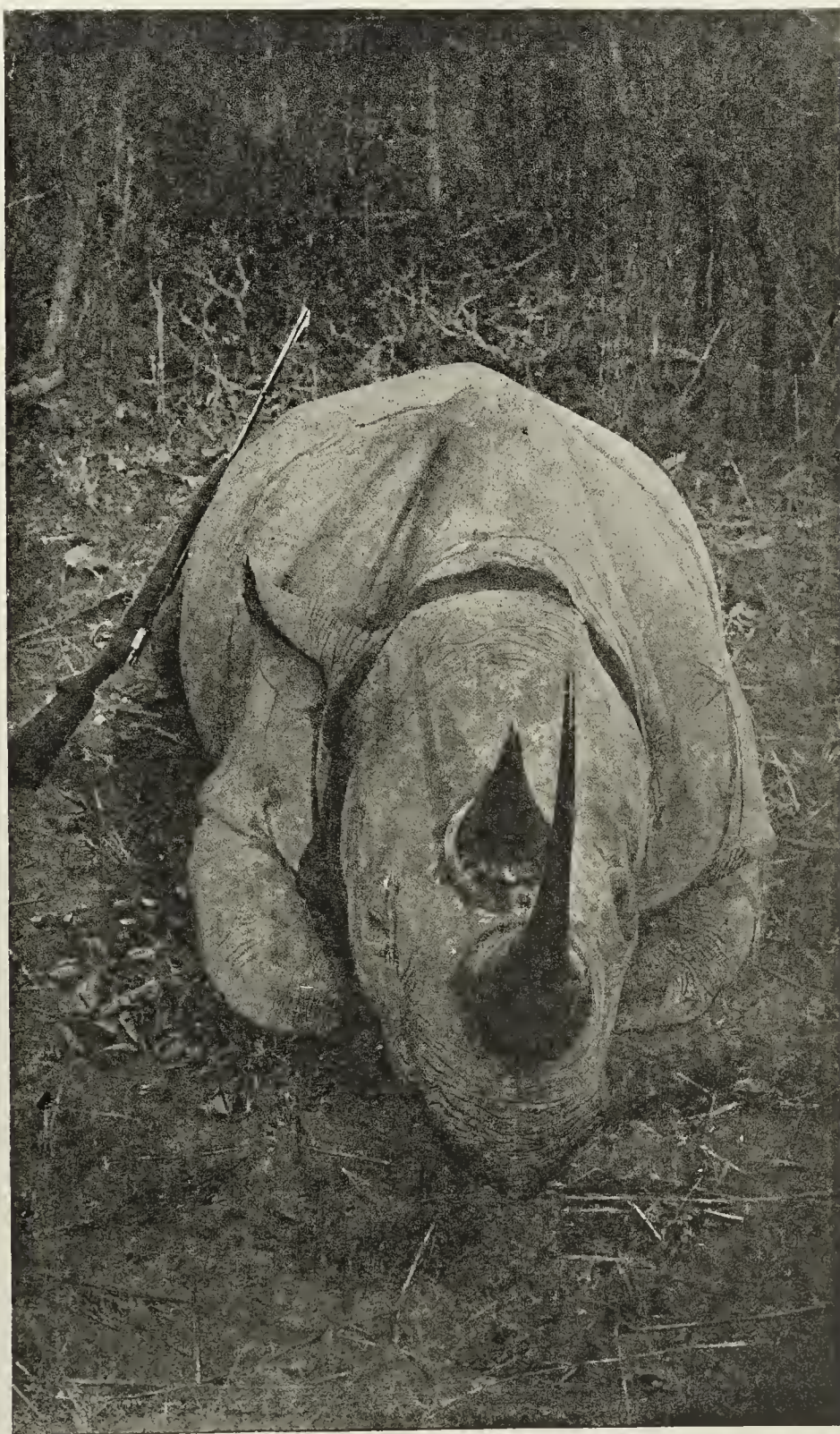
28. **RED-FRONTED GAZELLE.**—Kassala, Sennar, White Nile, and Kordofan, in bush country rather than desert.

29. **ROTHSCHILD'S GAZELLE.**—Upper Nile and Bahr el Zeraf.

30. **HEUGLIN'S GAZELLE.**—Kassala Province, principally East of the Atbara.



"HEAVY IVORY." Elephant Hunting in Uganda



British South Africa Co.

TWO-HORNED RHINOCEROS, NORTHERN RHODESIA

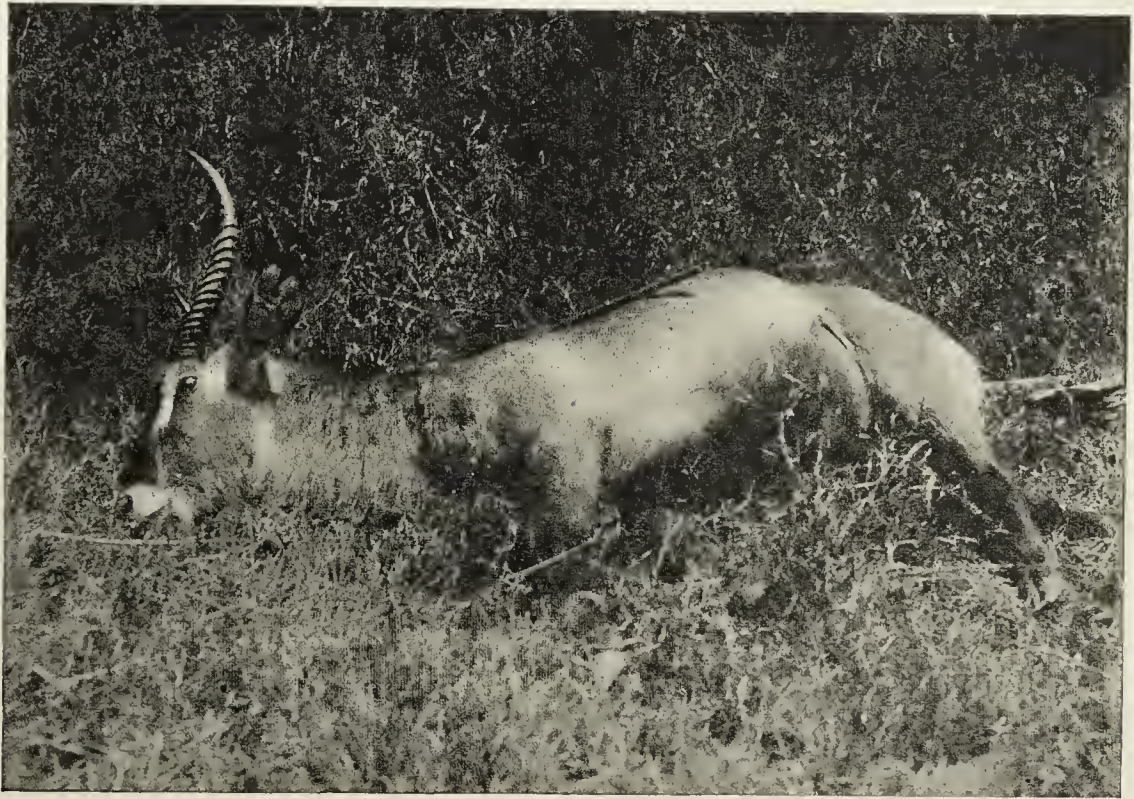
31. DORCAS GAZELLE and
 32. ISABELLA GAZELLE.—Desert Gazelles widely distributed over the northern part of the Sudan.
 33. KLIPSPRINGER.—Certain hills in the Red Sea Province. Very local.
 34. BEIRA ANTELOPE.—Has been obtained in the Sennar Province. Apparently very scarce or local.
 35. ORIBI.—Widely distributed south of the northern desert region.
 36. ABYSSINIAN DUKER.—Kassala, Sennar, Mongalla, Bahr el Ghazal, and Kordofan.
 37. BLUE DUKER.—Bahr-el-Ghazal.
 38. SALT'S DIG-DIG.—Kassala and Red Sea Provinces.
 39. IBEX.—Mountains along the Red Sea Coast.
 40. BARBARY SHEEP.—Occurs on desert hills here and there across the northern Sudan from the Red Sea Province to Kordofan, but is scarce and local.
 41. HIPPOPOTAMUS.—All rivers of any size.
 42. WARTHOG.—Widely distributed.
 43. RED BUSH PIG.—Bahr-el-Ghazal Province.
 44. SENNAR PIG.—A pig, neither a Warthog nor a Bush Pig, is said to occur in the Sennar Province.
 45. GRANT'S ZEBRA.—Mongalla Province. (Entirely protected.)
 46. NUBIAN WILD ASS.—Deserts of the Berber, Kassala, and Red Sea Provinces. (Entirely protected.)
 47. LION.—Widely distributed through the country south of the northern deserts.
 48. LEOPARD.—The same applies.
 49. CHEETAH.—Much the same distribution as, but rarer than, Lion and Leopard, and not often bagged.
 50. OSTRICH.—Widely distributed, but only abundant in certain districts. (Entirely protected.)
- In addition to the above, Striped and Spotted Hyenas, Wild Dogs, Jackals, Foxes, Lynxes, Servals, and Wild Cats are more or less plentiful, and occasionally find their way into the bag as "extras."
- GAME BIRDS include Bustards of several species, Guinea Fowl, Francolin Sandgrouse, Snipe, and a large variety of Geese and Ducks.

British Somaliland, lying to the east of the Sudan, is noted for its lion-hunting. For accessibility, climate, and variety of big game no part of the Empire can, however, compare with the Kenya Colony and Uganda. To be "on Safari" in the game regions of these countries is the experienced sportsman's ideal. To those who know East Africa, the word "Safari" will have no strange meaning, but for those to whom this pleasure has



THE DEAD LIONESS, EAST CENTRAL AFRICA

British South Africa Co.



WATER BUCK

Uganda Railway

been denied it is necessary to say that "Safari" is a word which comes from the Arabic, and, according to Mr. Longworth, an experienced East African traveller, seems to have a close alliance to the word "m'safara," a caravan, and "msafiri," a traveller. It has evidently been corrupted through a Swahili medium to its present form, and means a camping party. "To travellers who have experienced the pleasures of that charming *al fresco* existence which the word 'Safari' conveys, it will not be inapropos to animadvert on the charms of life in the woods or on the plains, by gurgling brooks or rushing mountain streams, where big game of many varieties abound in numbers sufficient to arouse the enthusiasm even of those Alexanders who have ransacked the wide world, eager for new fields in which to match their nerve and skill against brute cunning and ferocity, whilst to those unlucky ones to whom the word 'Safari' conveys no definite meaning, it will be well to open a glimpse of an existence teeming with possibilities of delight, of which they have hitherto not had the faintest conception."

The game region of Kenya Colony may be said to begin at Makindu, a station on the Uganda Railway, about 209 miles inland from Mombasa. The altitude of the country ranges from 3,000 to 5,000 ft. The Makindu district makes an ideal shooting country. The game is not perhaps so plentiful as on the Athi Plains, some 50 miles further inland, but the excellent natural cover enables the hunter to practice to perfection the art of stalking, that most necessary of accomplishments for successful big game shooting. The open bush, relieved by lofty trees, provides a succession of surprises. Now a bush buck will start up and bound away, now through the foliage will be seen the graceful horns of the stately water buck as he crops the herbage unconscious of impending danger. In the open glades will probably be found a herd of the massive eland, or, perhaps, the oryx, with their almost zebra-like markings, and tapering horns. The delicate-looking impala is also sure to be seen bounding gracefully along, whilst the chance of coming on rhinoceros or lion lend additional excitement.



WILDEBEESTE, EAST AFRICA

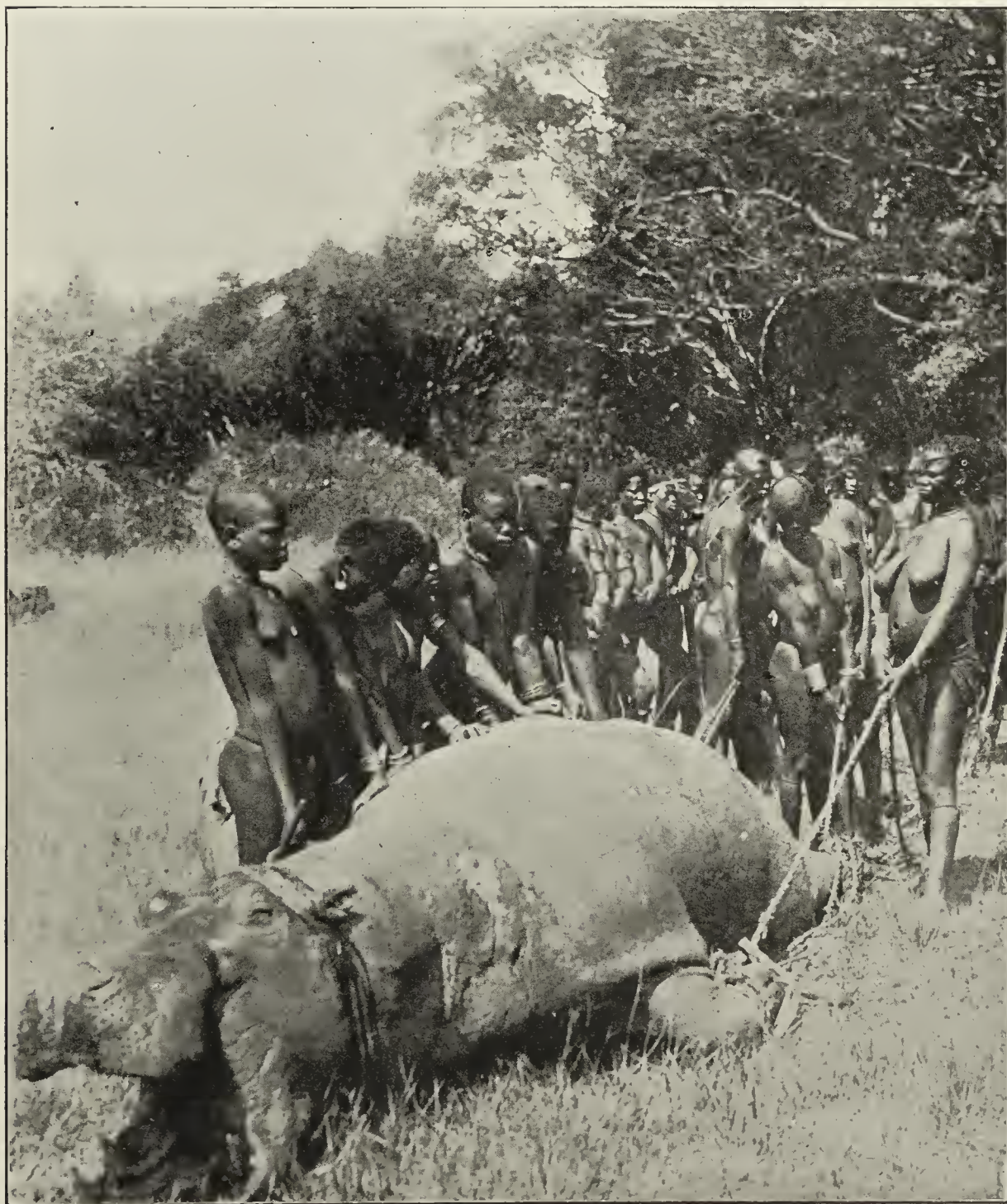
The following description of the railway journey across the Athi Plains will not be without interest to the sportsman. "We can see a long way in this clear air, and the country is open but well wooded as we make for the next station, 'Simba,' or 'the place of the lion,' a name which bears testimony to the haunts of the king of beasts. Nineteen miles further on we pull up at Sultan Hamud, called after the Sultan of Zanzibar, who opened the station for traffic in 1898, and another run of 20 miles takes us to Kin and an altitude of 4,861 ft. above sea-level, which means a rise of more than 1,500 ft. since leaving Makindu. And we have not been disappointed in our expectations of this natural zoological park. We have seen game practically the whole way, not in the distance merely, but close up to the line, as the animals hardly seem to take any notice of the train. They raise their heads and gaze mildly at this now familiar snorting monster, and hardly interrupt their grazing. In fact, from the train it is possible to get much closer than on foot, as they do not stay long to allow their enemy to criticise them. The game is thicker at some periods of the year than at others, varying accord-

ing to the condition of the grass. If we are lucky enough to pass through at a favourable time, we shall see zebra as far as the eye can stretch, not in hundreds, but in thousands, with the sun glittering on their black and white striped backs. No less numerous are the hartebeeste, that most awkward and ungainly of antelopes. They are feeding in large herds, with their sentinels posted on the flanks to give warning of approaching danger.

"In striking contrast are the graceful little Thomson's gazelle, which are also to be seen in vast quantities. The pretty white and black streak on the roan skin, and the delicate poise of the little head and shapely horns, make us at once fall in love with this little beast, though our feelings are doubtless mingled with a desire to shed its blood for the possession of these self-same horns. His bigger relation, the Grant's gazelle, is not



A SMALL RHINOCEROS, EAST AFRICA



LANDING HIPPOPOTAMUS ON THE SHORES OF VICTORIA NYANZA

Underwood

nearly so common, but we are sure to see a good many of them scattered about. Ostriches, singly and in pairs, or in groups of five or six, stare at the train and then hurry off with their long stride—occasionally breaking into a run, with a great fluttering of feathers. The shaggy blue wildebeeste, or gnu, will also be seen in large droves. He looks more like a wild bull than an antelope, and is surely first cousin to the buffalo, who used to be as numerous as any other species

too, is still in evidence, as we notice by that flock of vultures soaring in the air in the distance, ready to pick the bones of his latest 'kill'."

Practically any time of the year will do for shooting in Kenya, but the season of the "big rains," from the end of March to the end of June, is not one to choose willingly from the point of view of comfort. These months, however, offer the great advantage of a country free from shooting parties; and



AFRICAN BUFFALO

of big game, but who is now rarely to be seen in this part of the country, although they are exhibiting an inclination to return.

"These plains are also the habitat of the huge African rhinoceros, who hunts his enemy by scent, and is extremely short-sighted, so much so that on several occasions he has tried conclusions with the railway engine, much to his discomfiture. Giraffes, warthogs, jackals, hyenas, and a host of other four-footed beasts, cranes, and bustards, and other feathered varieties, all help to swell the population of this animal kingdom. The lion,

while it must not be supposed that in so vast a field other seasons are so crowded as to render sport difficult, it cannot be denied that the rainy months offer a large variety of game for less strenuous work than can be obtained at other times of the year, and are particularly favourable for visiting the more waterless parts of the country where game is always plentiful. There is also a spell of rainy weather about October and November, which, however, is not looked upon as an obstacle to a "safari," and it may be said that from June to March constitutes the shooting season.

The books of Mr. F. C. Selous and other famous hunters testify, with a "menu," or programme that it is hard to match elsewhere, to the variety and number of big game in Rhodesia. It has been said many times and it is every whit a fact, that in the matter of big game this country is a veritable paradise for sportsmen. Game and carnivora of all kinds abound both north and south of the Zambesi, more so in the northern territory than in the southern, and there are no unreasonable restrictions against hunting it.

The following table gives the native names and Cape Dutch names in most general use for the more common of the big game in North-Western Rhodesia :—

COMMON NAME.	CAPE DUTCH NAME.	NATIVE NAME.
Giraffe -	Kameel -	Tuthla
Eland -	Eland -	Pofu, <i>occasionally</i>
Koodoo -	Koodoo -	Tolo [Sefu]
Hartebeeste -	Hartebeeste -	Kokotombwi
Wildebeeste -	Wildebeeste -	Kokong
Sable Antelope	Swart-ven-pens	Kwalata m'tsu
Roan Antelope	Bastard Eland -	Kwalata tsneu, or Kwalata tsumu



"ON SAFARI" IN EAST CENTRAL AFRICA

The game includes the following varieties : bustard (including Koorhan and paauw), dikkop, francolin (including pheasant and partridge), guinea fowl, sand grouse (commonly known as Namaqua partridge), bushbuck, hartebeeste (rooi and lichtenstein), impala, lechive, pookoo, roan and sable antelope, sitatunga, tsessibe, waterbuck, gnu or wildebeeste, klipspringer, buffalo, elephant, eland, black and white rhinoceros, hippotamus, springbuck, giraffe, gemsbok, inyalal, koodoo, ostrich, zebra, Burchell zebra, or quagga, duiker, bushpig and warthog.

Hippopotamus	Zee-koe -	-	M'vu or m'vuvu
Lechwe -	Lechwe -	-	Barotse Lechwi, plural Mazwi
Pookoo -	Puku -	-	Mutinya
Waterbuck	Kringhat -	-	Matutwa
Zebra -	Quagga -	-	Pitsi or Mwana- heng
Buffalo -	Buffel -	-	Nali
Palla -	Palla -	-	Palla
Bushbuck	Gosclibok -	-	M'balabala
Reedbuck	Reitbok -	-	Mutobo
Duiker -	Duiker -	-	Puti
Oribi -	Oribi -	-	Kamunda
Steinbuck	Steinbok -	-	Puluhulu
Grysbuck	Grysbok -	-	Timba
Leopard -	Tigre -	-	N'kwe
Spotted Hyena	Wolf -	-	Setongwani

Lion - - - Leuw - - - *Barotse* Tau. *Less frequent names—*
N'guenyama,
Shumba

Lions are fairly well distributed throughout the whole of the game areas, though they may occur less in the Njoko and Zambesi districts than in the others. It is, however, so much a matter of luck to come across them in day-time, and they are such wanderers that it is no use laying down any definite laws as to habits or districts. The same remarks apply to both leopard and cheetah (the Indian hunting leopard). A plan that is well

be removed, disturbed, or destroyed without special permission; females with their young are similarly protected. Game sanctuaries have been proclaimed both in Northern and Southern Rhodesia, and shooting over private land without permission is, of course, prohibited. The best game districts in Southern Rhodesia are: Tuli, Gwanda, Lower Belinqwe, Hartley, Wankie, Mafungabusi, Sebunqwe, Lomagundi, portions of Gwelo, Victoria, and Bubi, Lower Mangwe, and North Mazoe. In Northern Rhodesia there are: The Batoka plateau district lying generally north of Victoria Falls and south of the Kafue River valley, of which the Government station of Mapanza may be taken as the central point; the Kafue River valley, which is, approximately, a belt 50 miles wide, following the river for, roughly, 200 miles of its course west of the railway; the "hook" of the Kafue, which is the area north of the valley outside the great bend of the river; the Njoko country, an area extending some 30 miles north and south and 20 miles east and west of the confluence of the Njoko and Morobetsi Rivers; and the Zambesi valley, lying between the Katima-Molilo rapids and Sin-



ELEPHANT

Uganda Railway

worth following is to leave some part of a buck on the veld where it has been shot, the entrails and perhaps the less valuable flank pieces and ribs are often sufficient, and then to visit the remains late in the afternoon and very early in the following morning. It is, of course, necessary to advance most carefully under cover; often a leopard and occasionally a lion or a cheetah will be found at the meat.

There are defined seasons in Southern Rhodesia extending from May to November inclusive, except in certain cases in Hartley District owing to the prevalence there of tsetse fly. In Northern Rhodesia no close time or fence season has been prescribed yet, but the eggs and young of any game must not

anga; most parts of the north-eastern province of the territory are "game country."

With regard to the most suitable battery for Rhodesia, a famous big game hunter has said: "Putting the heaviest kinds of game out of the argument, I am strongly of the opinion that every African sportsman would be well advised to use only one rifle for every other kind of game, including lions. Using the same rifle constantly one gets to know it thoroughly, to feel confidence in it, and to shoot accurately with it; and I am sure of this, that in the case of a lion, a shot in the right place from a small-bore rifle—such a shot as any of those with which one has been accustomed to kill large antelopes and zebras day after day—is far more effective than a

shot a foot too far back, or too high or too low, from a much more powerful weapon. For lion-shooting, therefore, I consider that the best rifle a man can use is the one which he knows best, and with which he feels confident that he can shoot with tolerable accuracy."

In India tigers are the most hunted of the big game. Although gradually becoming more scarce, they are still fairly common in the dry forest regions, especially in the vicinity of hill pastures where cattle feed in summer. Contrary to general belief tigers do not attack human beings in cold blood. The comparatively few beasts which take to man-eating are usually old and infirm; but, nevertheless, are so ferocious that they frequently terrorise the countryside. "Organised tiger-hunts with the aid of elephants and native beaters are the vogue in India, especially in the Native States, where magnificent sport can be enjoyed. Leopards are to be found in considerable numbers in rocky forests, but they are now seldom hunted. The Indian lion, once so numerous in the deserts of Rajputana and the western Punjab, is now found only in small numbers in Kathiawar. Hyenas, wild cats and jackals, are common, and a species of black bear (*mellivora indica*) abounds in forests containing rocky hills. In the dry forests of Central India wild elephants are common, but they roam the damp forests of Burma and Assam in herds. Wild buffaloes are found in the grass jungles of the peninsula; and in the higher regions the *Gaur*, or Indian bison—a fine beast standing 6 ft. high and with horns up to 3 ft. in length—is occasionally seen. In the dry forests of the hill country a four-horned antelope and many species of deer abound. The civet cat is found on the coasts of Malabar and Burma; and in the dense grass jungles of Assam there are two kinds of one-horned rhinoceros. In

Burma there is also a small species of two-horned rhinoceros. Burma is famous for its bear-cat, or tree civet, which is the only animal of its kind endowed with a prehensile tail. In the Himalayas wild sheep and goats are common, and there are two kinds of bear. The birds of India vary from the parrot to the partridge (*Chikor*). The laws relating to the shooting of big game in India vary considerably, especially in the Native States. Permission either in the form of a licence or otherwise must always be obtained."

A peculiar feature of Australia is the fact that the native animals are distinct from



REEDBUCK

those of the rest of the world, and many animals that have been found in almost every other part of the globe are not to be found unless they have been taken there. It has been proved by scientists that at one time the seas rolled over the highest of Australia's mountains and that the sites of former lands are now beneath the waves. This great change probably accounts for the distinct feature of the Australian fauna. It is to be regretted that the native fauna of Australia is in danger of disappearing before the inroads of introduced animals, although the various Governments have taken steps to protect it by creating reserves where these animals may live free from molestation. Nearly all the quadrupeds belong to the

those of the rest of the world, and many animals that have been found in almost every other part of the globe are not to be found unless they have been taken there. It has been proved by scientists that at one time the seas rolled over the highest of Australia's mountains and that the sites of former lands are now beneath the waves. This great change probably accounts for the distinct feature of the Australian fauna. It is to be regretted that the native fauna of Australia is in danger of disappearing before the inroads of introduced animals, although the various Governments have taken steps to protect it by creating reserves where these animals may live free from molestation. Nearly all the quadrupeds belong to the



WILDEBEESTE

marsupial or pouched order of animals, such as the Kangaroo and Opossum. The dingo or native dog abounds, and is very troublesome to flocks and herds. The birds include eagles, parrots, cockatoos, and the emu, or Australian ostrich. There is very little big game suitable for shooting as a sport.

The Federated Malay States have a very complete game law, which classifies the game birds and the game animals, and provides that licences are necessary to shoot either. A special temporary permit to import arms and ammunition into the States may be obtained on application to the chief police officer at Singapore or Penang.

Snipe arrive in the Peninsula, at the earliest, towards the end of August. They become more numerous in September and October, and are at their best in November and December, gradually declining in numbers until May. The Native States afford the following game : elephant, rhinoceros, seladang (*bosgaurus*), tiger, panther, sambar and other deer, wild pig and crocodile, snipe, teal, and many varieties of pigeon.

In New Zealand deer-stalking can be enjoyed at very small expense, and some of the finest stags' heads in the world are taken from the

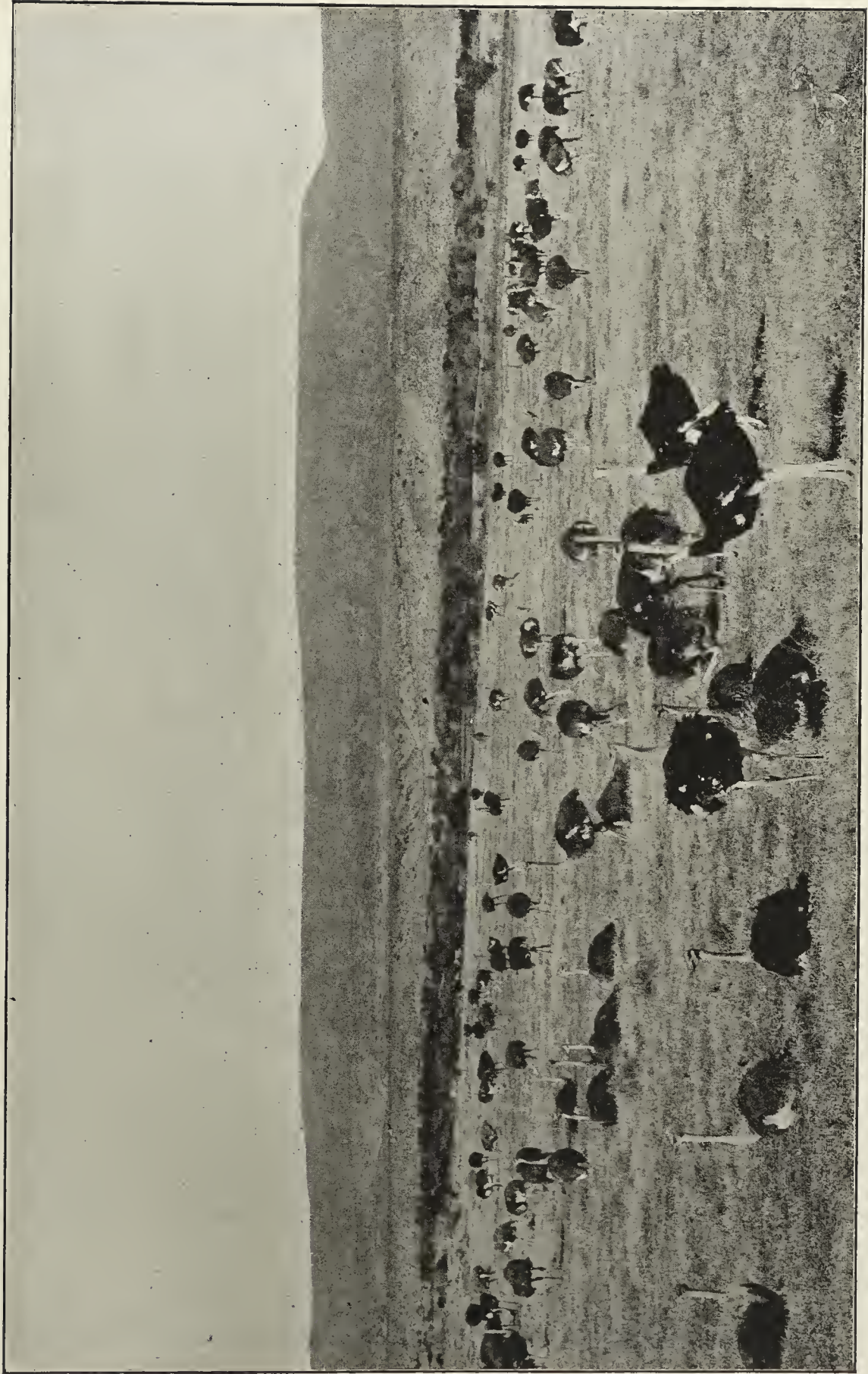
deer-forests of the Wairarapa, Canterbury, Nelson, and Otago. The season varies in different districts, but throughout the Dominion it is generally open from the end of February to the end of May. The two best shooting months in the Wairarapa and Otago forests are April and May. In addition to deer-stalking, feathered game, wild cattle, pigs and goats afford good sport in certain localities.

The best deer-stalking in the North Island is that in the South Wairarapa district, a rugged region of forests and mountains within easy distance of Wellington by rail and coach. The chief headquarters is Martinborough. Red deer in thousands roam the hills and bushy valleys between the Wairarapa Valley and the East Coast, and find in this favoured region of abundant feed an even more congenial home than in their ancient Scottish glens. Splendid antlers, often showing a phenomenal growth of horns, are annually obtained. Most of the best herds here are on private lands ; so permission to stalk must be obtained from the owners. The Haurangi Forest, Government reserve, is now open to stalkers.

In the South Island red deer are to be found amongst other varieties in the rugged



BUFFALO



THE AFRICAN OSTRICH

Wild Ostriches are exceedingly dangerous during the breeding season

Photo, South African Government

bush localities, around the shores of Lake Rotoiti, reached by train and vehicle from Nelson; and in the rough forest region extending thence to the Wairau Valley, Marlborough. Red deer are more numerous still round the shores of Lakes Hawea and Wanaka, and on the Morven Hills, North Otago. The hilly forest region known as the "Dingle," Lake Hawea, is probably the best shooting



BORNEAN HUNTER WITH CURIOUS TROPHY
(Wild Cattle)

district, and provides the stalker with splendid food for his rifle.

Fallow deer abound in the Maungakawa Ranges and adjacent hills, South Auckland, and are to be found in more limited numbers on the lower part of the Wanganui River, 14 miles from Wanganui town. In the South Island fallow deer are to be shot in parts of Nelson and Marlborough, and are numerous on the Blue Mountains, near Tapanui, Otago.*

* Extract from "The New Zealand Guide," published by the New Zealand Times Co. Ltd.

In Canada the "king of beasts" is the moose, which exists in varying numbers in very many parts of the country. The forests of New Brunswick are alive with big and small game. There are moose—in more plentiful numbers than in any other part of America—caribou, bear, wolverine, coon, deer, mink, otter, and lynx. Among feathered game wild geese, duck, grouse, curlew, plover, snipe, and woodcock, are but a few of the specimens to be found. The Game Laws in this province are liberal and well-framed. The number of moose which any hunter may kill is limited, and the open season lasts only from 15th September to 1st December. An interesting feature in the Game Law is that an outsider is compelled to take with him on his hunting excursions a registered guide, and to employ in his camp only residents of the province. Feathered game are protected by close seasons, but no licence is required for shooting or trapping them.

In Quebec, moose, caribou, grizzly bear and deer abound. Among the places where big game are plentiful are the districts surrounding Lake St. John, L'Islet, Rimouski, Bonaventure, Gaspé, Temiscouata, and the St. Maurice district, as well as the north and west near the lakes of Temiscaming and Abitibi. In the far north of the province the polar bear is to be met with, while at many places the interesting little beaver is to be found. Smaller game such as duck and partridge are numerous.

Northern Ontario presents a great attraction to the lover of sport. Here are found the lordly moose, caribou, red deer, black bear, grey wolves, Canadian lynx, beaver, fisher, marten, mink, muskrat, ermine or weasel, wolverine, otter and porcupine. Moose roam over the whole area from the Quebec boundary to that of Manitoba, and from the north shore of Lake Superior to Moose Factory on James Bay. The principal game birds are: wild geese, Canadian geese, Brant, wild ducks, ruffed grouse, pine grouse, ptarmigan, and prairie chicken.



ELEPHANT. A fine pair of tusks



ELAND

Photos, British South Africa Company

Since the days of the early explorers, the plains of Saskatchewan have been a field full of interest to the sportsman, hunter, trapper, and naturalist. Once the home of the mighty herds of bison, the wide stretches of prairie are now being rapidly converted into cultivated fields by the rush of immigrants from all parts of the world. Notwithstanding the rapid increase of population, there are yet vast areas to the north-west in this province where wild game of the larger species may be hunted, and where sportsmen may have most enjoyable outings amongst the lakes and the timber. Moose, elk or wapiti, caribou, black-tail, and whitetail may be found ; and good

their broods, about the lakes and fields in the fall, furnishing the best of shooting for the sportsman, and birds fit for the table of an epicure. It has been noted that the pinnated grouse is to some extent replacing the prairie sharptail in many of the settled sections of the country. The ruffed grouse and the ptarmigan are found in the northern woods, where also, in the proper season, the varying hare darts among the bushes in unnumbered plenitude.

On the plains, the jack rabbit gives an opportunity for good sport with dogs or gun ; and in the fall and winter the hunting of coyotes with horses and dogs provides



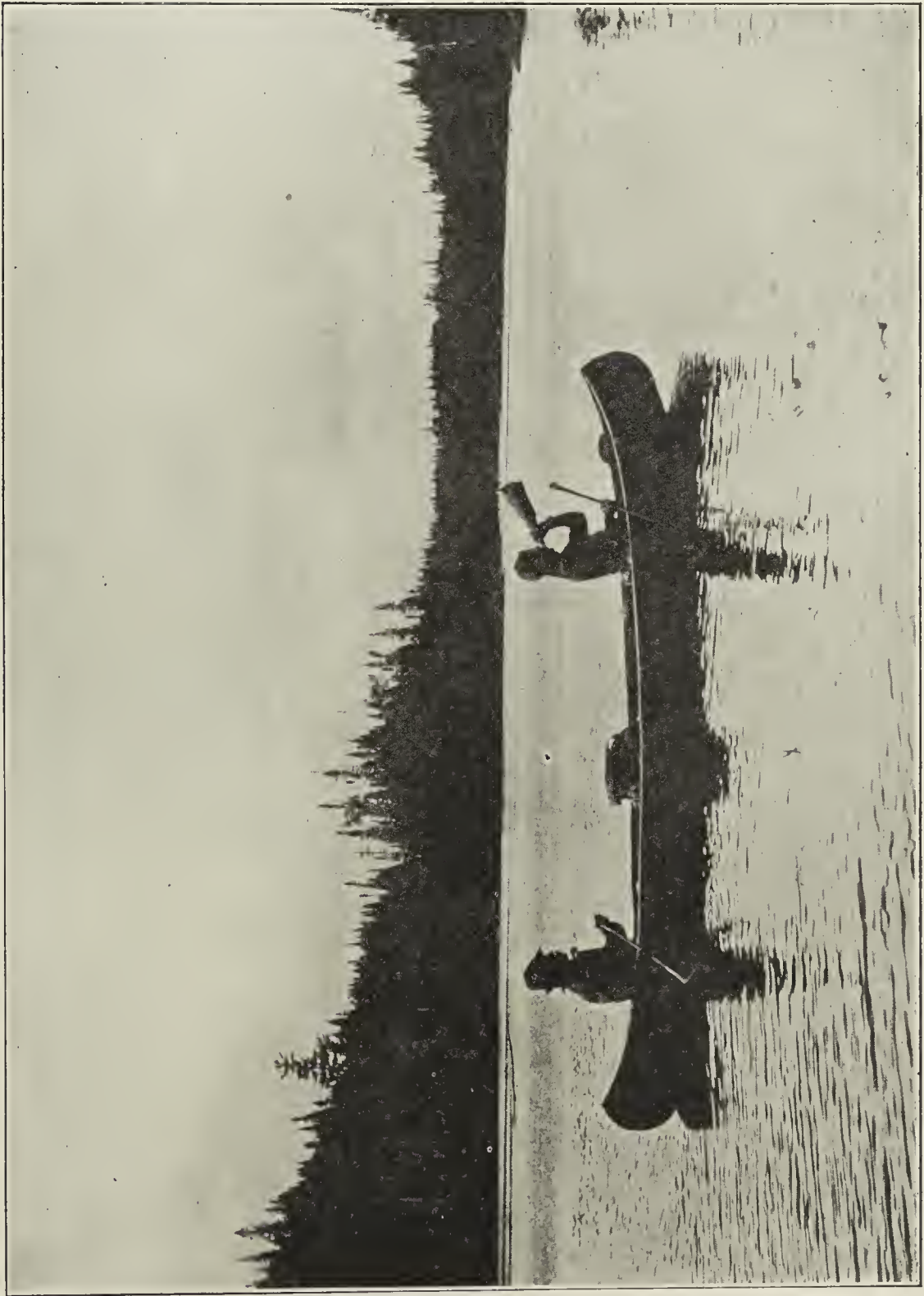
ZEBRA

Photo, British South Africa Company

heads for trophies are there for the skilful hunter. The graceful pronghorn buck is still to be seen on the open prairies in scattered herds, bounding away in the distance or slowly approaching, with head erect and eyes blazing with curiosity, while gazing at some unusual object which may have attracted his attention, but all the while ready to spring rapidly away at the first appearance of danger.

Waterfowl in immense numbers breed about the prairie lakes, the effect of the prohibition of spring shooting being quite apparent in the increase of nesting birds in comparatively settled districts. In addition to the birds that have been hatched here, there are the migrants from the north, with

many an exciting chase. The grey wolf is found in some numbers on the southern cattle ranges, doing damage to such an extent that a bounty is offered which should make the hunting and trapping of these animals profitable to those qualified for the work. The wolves have also been reported as more numerous recently in the far north than usual, where many of the more valuable fur-bearing animals still furnish a living to Indian and Half-breed, although pursued and trapped for centuries for trading with companies whose servants had penetrated the wilderness. The value of the furs exported during these centuries must represent many millions of dollars ; but no species of these animals has, so far, become extinct, although



MOOSE CALLING ON A CANADIAN RIVER

they have their years of scarcity and plenty. The beaver seemed, years ago, to be destined to early disappearance; but although there are many stretches of country where deserted beaver meadows may be found, these interesting animals have, under the protection afforded them by a few close seasons, again become numerous in some suitable parts of the country.

The sportsman will find a greater variety of fish and game in British Columbia than in any other part of North America; there are, indeed, few regions that can boast of anything like the same variety of species. Whether with rifle or smooth-bore, or with rod, there is an almost bewildering choice. The three great parallel ranges of the Mainland hold an immense amount of big game. In the Rockies there are big-horn sheep, goat, caribou, and deer; in the Selkirks, goat and caribou; and in the Coast Range, goat and quantities of the true blacktailed deer. Grizzly bears are found in several districts, while black bear are to be

found in numbers throughout the Province. The mule deer, miscalled blacktail, is so abundant in East Kootenay, the Boundary country, Okanagan and Lillooet as to be a very certain source of supply for the ranchers and miners to draw upon. Elk (wapiti) shooting may be indulged in by those visiting the northern end of Vancouver Island. It is believed that the elk is extinct upon the Mainland, with the possible exception of the south-east corner of the Province, but on Vancouver Island it is tolerably abundant, although it frequents a densely forested region, so that the hunting means hard work.

Although few persons, however keen, would visit British Columbia merely for the sake of its wing shooting, yet it is undeniable that, with the exception of Manitoba, Alberta and Saskatchewan, a man may find as much work for his breech-loader in the Province as he would abroad anywhere. Five species of grouse and vast quantities of wild fowl from swans to teal, abound in suitable localities.



CARIBOU



MOOSE

Photo, C.P. Rly.

The marshes of the Columbia swarm with mallard and other choice duck in the autumn ; the Arrow Lakes and the upper Valley of the Fraser form a trough much frequented by the wild geese during their migrations ; and the fiords and sounds of the coast shelter great flocks of wild fowl throughout the winter—for it must not be forgotten that the winters of the Pacific are very much less rigorous than those of the Atlantic, and that a very large proportion of the birds do not go further south than Vancouver Island.

Although irrelevant to the subject of this article, it is impossible to leave British Columbia without saying something in praise of its fishing. So remarkably good is it that no one can realise the quantities of salmon and trout to be found in the streams of this province until he has visited it. The quinnat and coho salmon may be taken in salt water at certain seasons in large numbers by means of a spoon bait, and a few crack fishermen

have succeeded in taking the quinnat in fresh water, but as a rule British Columbia salmon, with the exception of the Spring, or Tye, do not rise to the fly. However, the trout will more than make up for the salmon's lack of appreciation. The rainbow trout is, possibly, the finest fish for his inches of all the trout family, and, happily, he is extraordinarily numerous in many of the inland waters. Where he is not found, his place is taken by a black spotted trout, an excellent fish, though hardly the equal of the rainbow. Very heavy lake trout are found in all the larger sheets of water. Shuswap Lake may be mentioned as especially good and easy of access. An excellent hotel has been built at Sicamous, on the very edge of the lake, at which many sportsmen reside each summer for weeks at a time, in order to enjoy the fishing and shooting of the neighbourhood.



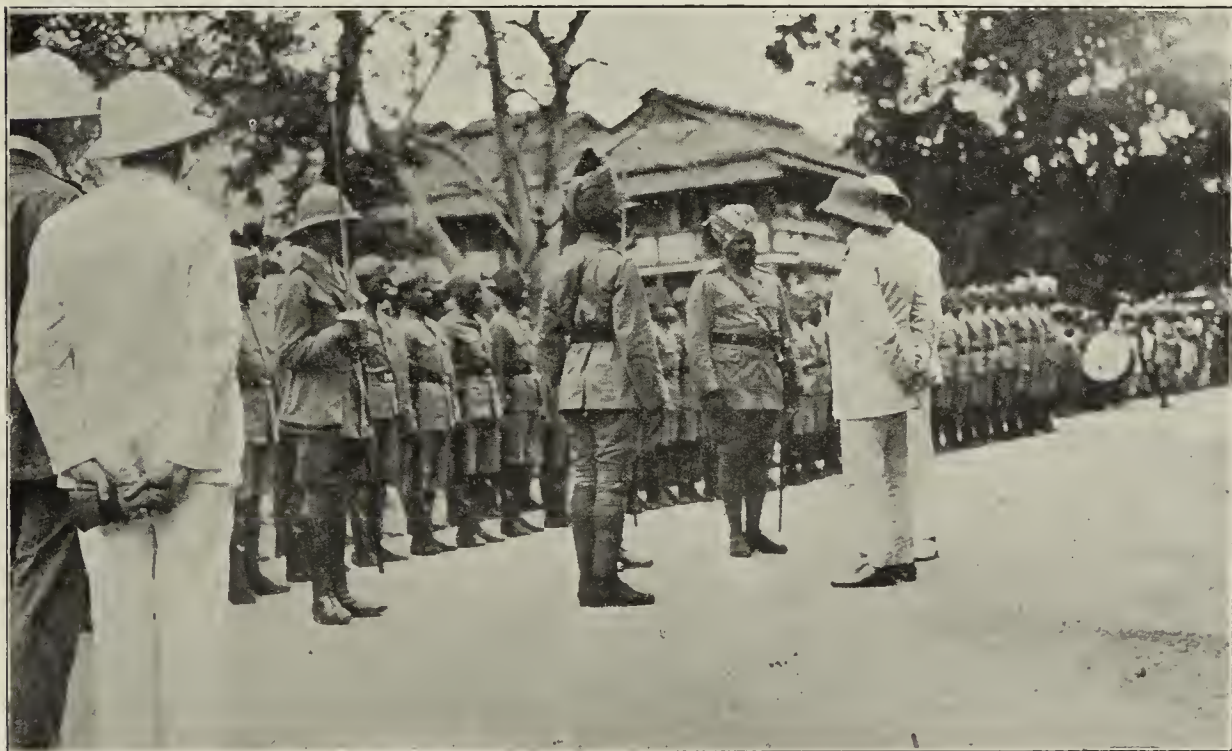
Photo, British North Borneo Co.

A NATIVE HUNTER IN THE WILDS OF BRITISH NORTH BORNEO

BRITISH NORTH BORNEO

THE three separate States forming the British North Borneo Protectorate are : British North Borneo, which is administered by a Chartered Company ; Sarawak, a native State with a white Rajah ; and Brunei, a tiny native State ruled nominally by a Mohammedan-Malay Sultan under the guidance of a British Resident appointed by the Imperial Government. The first two

States are " independent " as regards their internal administration, but form part of the Imperial Protectorate. The State of British North Borneo holds a position in the Empire similar to that of Rhodesia (previous to the granting of self-government), while the States of Sarawak and Brunei are political entities similar to the Native States of the Indian Empire.



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

AN INSPECTION OF THE BRITISH NORTH BORNEO ARMED CONSTABULARY



SANDAKAN, CAPITAL OF BRITISH NORTH BORNEO

BIRTH OF THE CHARTERED COMPANY.

The State of British North Borneo occupies the northern part of the island of Borneo, and has an area of about 31,000 square miles, and a coast line of about 900 miles. The population is 258,355, but the actual number is considerably in excess of this, as there are still many tribes in the interior with whom the Government is not yet fully in touch, and who are therefore not included in the census returns. The inhabitants consist chiefly of Mohammedan Malays on the coast, aboriginal tribes inland, and a large number of Chinese traders, artisans and agricultural labourers. The European population, including men, women, and children, numbers only 355.

The territory of British North Borneo was leased by the Sultans of Brunei and Sulu to Sir Alfred Dent and others, who assigned their rights to the British Borneo Provisional Association. This body, in turn, transferred

its interests to the British North Borneo Company, and on the 1st November, 1881, a Royal Charter was granted to the Company to take over, develop and administer the territory, and the State of British North Borneo came into being. From time to time further territory has been acquired by treaty, and in 1888 the State became a British Protectorate.

By its Charter the Company must remain British, and is bound to respect the religions and customs of the inhabitants. The State is a sovereign power, and is administered by a Court of Directors in London and a Governor in Borneo. The Governor is appointed by the Court of Directors, but the appointment is subject to the approval of the Secretary of State for the Colonies. All appointments to the fixed establishment of the Civil Service are made by the Court of Directors. The flag of the State is the Sabah Jack, which is the Union Jack with the Borneo Badge (red lion on yellow ground) in the centre.

The laws of the country are based on the Indian Penal Code and Codes of Criminal and Civil Procedure, adopted and amended by local Ordinances. There is a Chief Justice, and all Residents are Sessions Judges. The Courts of the State, both Civil and Criminal, are: the High Court, the Sessions Courts, the Magistrates' Courts, and Native Courts for the trial of breaches of native laws and customs and certain other minor offences (Imam's Court for Mohammedan Law).

There is a constabulary force of about 700 men (Indians and natives of the country), under European officers. Very little trouble is given by the population. Since the Mat Salleh Rebellion, which ended in 1900, there has been no serious rising.

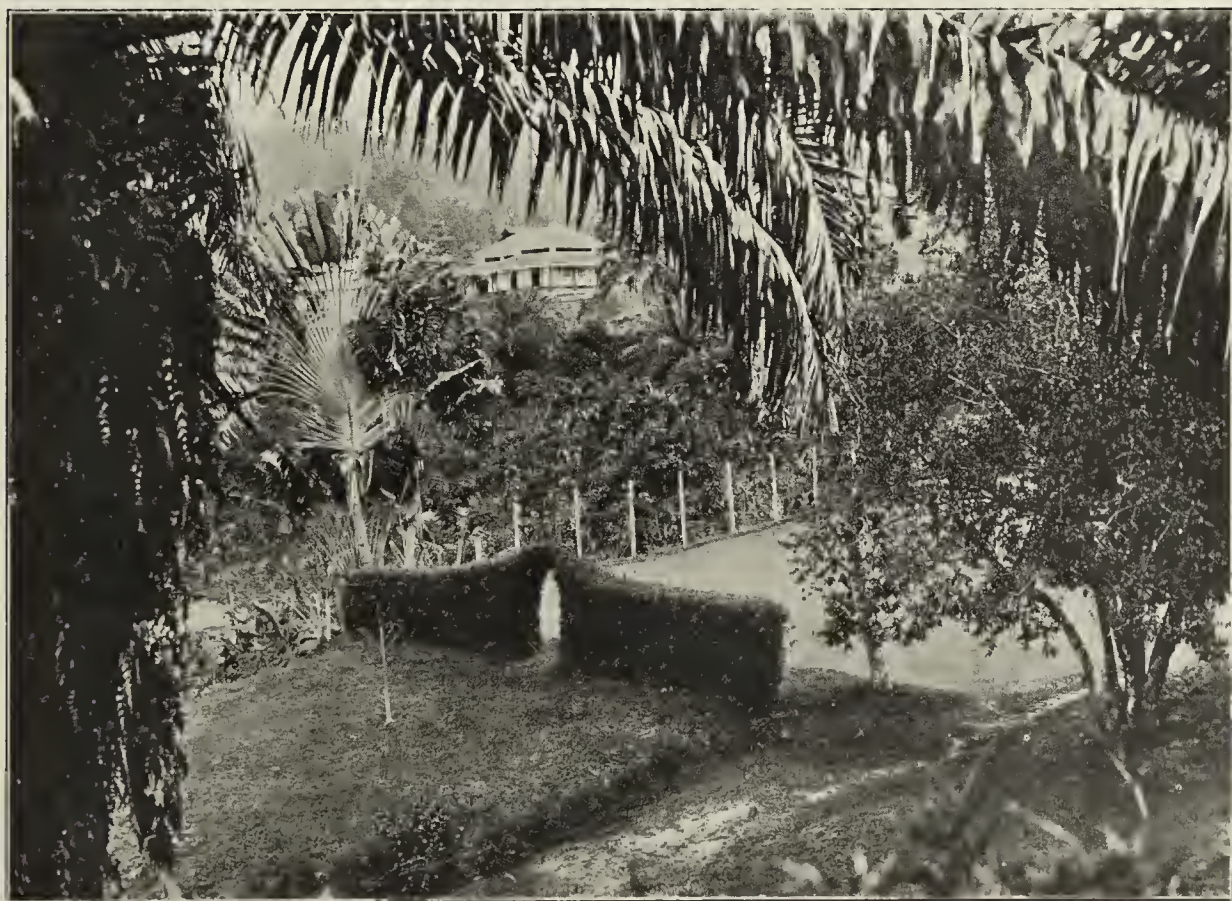
COUNTRY AND PRODUCTS.

The land near the coast is, generally, flat, but the interior is hilly and mountainous, the

highest point being Mt. Kinabalu (13,455 ft.). There are immense tracts of extremely fertile land both near the coast and in the interior. The coast-line contains many excellent harbours, the largest being that of Sandakan, which is about 15 miles long and 7 miles broad.

The principal townships in the State are Sandakan (the capital), Jesselton (the sea-coast terminus of the railway), Kudat, Beaufort, Tenom, Lahad Datu, and Tawao. The Governor's official residencies are at Sandakan and Jesselton. Sandakan is about 9,000 miles from London. There are several long rivers, the principal ones being the Kinabatangan, the Padas and the Segama.

The country is principally an agricultural one, but many coal deposits exist, and one Company is working coal mines at Silinipon, with coaling depôts at Sebattik and Sandakan. The coal is very favourably reported on by ships using it. The production is about 90,000 tons a year. Traces of alluvial



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

IN THE GARDENS OF GOVERNMENT HOUSE, SANDAKAN, BRITISH NORTH BORNEO



THREE SHY MAIDS OF BORNEO
(Girls of the Dusun Tribe)

gold are to be found in most of the rivers, but the matrix has not been located. Oil has been found in several places. Copper and other minerals have often been discovered, but owing to the distance from the coast, and difficulties of transport, no mineral is at present worked.

The principal agricultural products are tobacco, coco-nuts and rubber. There are large areas of land available for these products, and the Chartered Company offer every inducement for companies to take up and develop the land. There are a number of tobacco and rubber estates. Coco-nuts are planted by companies, natives, and Chinese settlers. The climate and soil are excellent for the growth of these products, and rubber from North Borneo has often obtained the highest price on the London market.

the native will not, as a rule, plant more than sufficient for his own immediate needs. With an increased number of Chinese settlers, there is no reason why rice should not form a valuable article of export. The country is also suitable for the cultivation of sugar, tapioca, pepper and gambier on a large scale. There are ship-building works for the construction and repair of small steamers, launches and lighters, at Sandakan.

The bulk of the trade is with Singapore and Hong-Kong. The principal imports are rice, flour and grain, cloth, provisions, iron-ware and machinery. The principal exports are rubber, tobacco, timber, cutch, coal, damar, sago flour, dried fish, and rattan.

Shipping returns show a considerable increase in the tonnage entering and clearing Borneo ports. The average during the last



ABOVE THE CLOUDS ON KINABALU (13,455 ft.) Photo, British North Borneo Co.

Padi (rice), fruits and vegetables, are planted by the Chinese and natives, and land is offered to Chinese immigrants on specially advantageous terms. Large areas of sago are worked by the natives on the west coast, and considerable quantities of sago flour are exported.

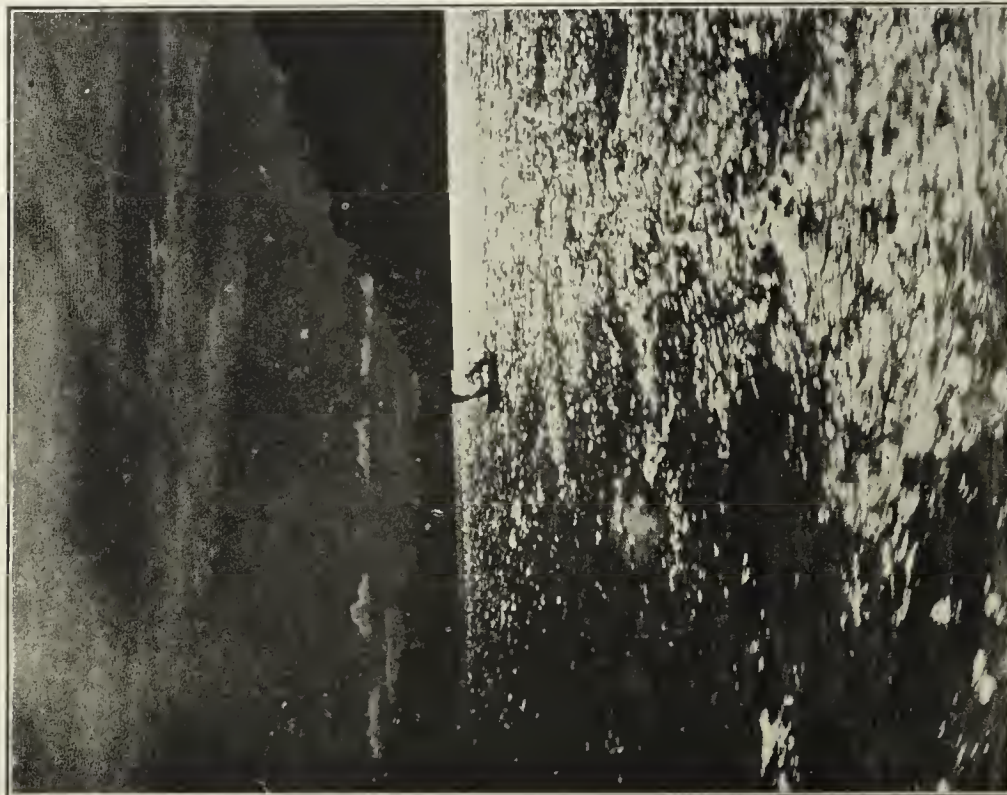
A great part of the country is covered with forests of valuable timber, and a considerable trade in this commodity has been opened up with China and other parts of the East; the amount of timber exported in one year was 1,452,027 cubic feet. This product is now receiving serious attention, and Forestry Officers have been appointed. Among the other products are sago, gutta-percha, rattans, and all varieties of jungle produce.

Padi (rice) is not grown on a sufficiently large scale to supply the local demand. There are large tracts of excellent padi land, but

few years is approximately 200,000 tons entered and cleared.

The revenue of the country is derived principally from land rents, royalties, Customs duties, general farms, licences, taxes, post and telegraph receipts. The taxation of the natives is very light. The revenue is approximately four million dollars, and the expenditure just over two million dollars. Large and increasing sums have also been spent yearly on capital account in opening up and developing the country, in reclaiming land, and in constructing roads, railways, waterworks, and wharves. There is a trunk road across the country from Jesselton to Sandakan.

A regular line of ships maintains a weekly service between Singapore and the Borneo ports, and a fortnightly service between Borneo and the Philippines. A local line of



Photo, British North Borneo Co.
MOONLIGHT ON THE COAST OF BORNEO

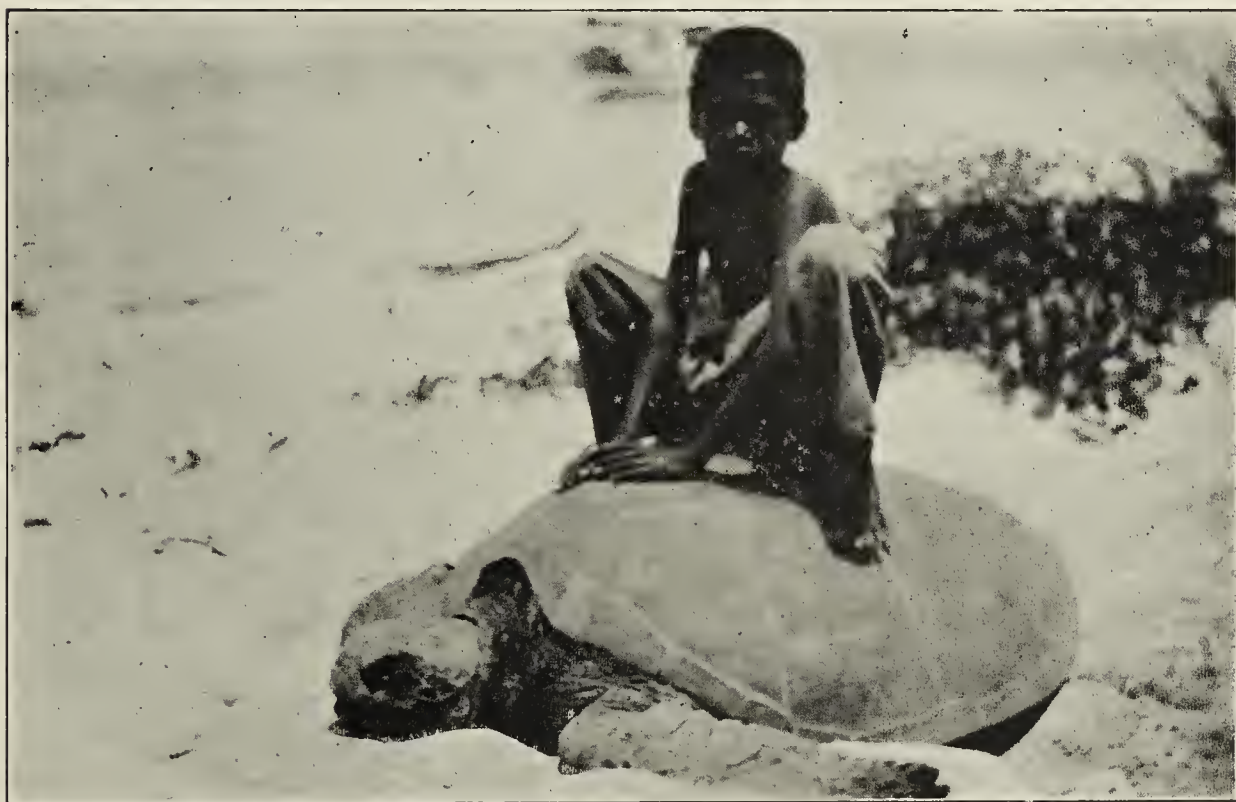


Photo, British North Borneo Co.
A BANJOW VILLAGE

ships, the Sabah Steamship Company, supplies a regular inter-port service.

There is a land telegraph line between the principal Stations in the State, which connects, by sea cable, with the Eastern Extension Company's system at Labuan. Wireless Stations have now been erected at Sandakan, Jesselton, Tawao, and Kudat. The State is in the Postal Union, and mails to and from London take about twenty-eight days. There are over 127 miles of State-

and spread over the whole year. In one year the rainfall varied from 120.02 inches in 209 days at Rundum, and 118.13 inches in 130 days at Beaufort, to 42.49 inches in 104 days at Kaningau, and 49.75 inches in 121 days at Kudat. The year was, however, a dry one, as there was a prolonged drought during the early months. The annual mean maximum temperature over the whole State is about 86 deg. F., and the annual mean minimum temperature is about 75 deg. The



A SEA TURTLE

Photo, British North Borneo Co.

owned Railway on the west coast, and some extensions of the system are contemplated.

Missions have been established by the Church of England, the Roman Catholic and the Basel Missions, and there are churches at Sandakan, Kudat and Jesselton. Schools are attached to most of the Missions, and receive a capitation grant from the Government.

CLIMATE.

The climate of North Borneo is, on the whole, healthy for a tropical country. The seasons are not clearly defined into the "wet" and "dry" seasons, rainfall being irregular

temperature, however, varies considerably in different parts of the country.

British North Borneo offers good opportunities to the sportsman and to the botanist. Elephant, rhinoceros, tembadan (wild cattle), deer and crocodiles exist in considerable numbers, whilst many rare orchids and other tropical plants are to be found.

North Borneo is administered in a manner very similar to that of an ordinary Crown Colony. The Governor is the head of the Executive, and is responsible to the Court of Directors sitting in London, who control the financial and general internal policy, and

act as a kind of "Court of Appeal." But when determining the relations of this State, commercial or otherwise, with Dutch Borneo, China, Siam, or other foreign country, the Imperial Foreign and Colonial Offices have the final voice. The Imperial Agent and Consul-General for this territory, and also for Sarawak and Brunei, is the Governor of the Straits Settlements and British Malaya. For administrative purposes this State is divided into districts under British Residents of the B.N.B. Co.

thereby gave the best foundation possible at that time to a warlike Eastern nation, which, not content with spreading its influence over a considerable portion of Borneo, embarked on foreign enterprises, conquering the Philippines and many other islands in these seas.

When Pigafetti visited the country in 1521 the Sultans were still very powerful, and the town of Brunei was looked upon as the capital of the northern portion of the island. The gradual decline of this Malay State



COLLECTING TURTLE'S EGGS

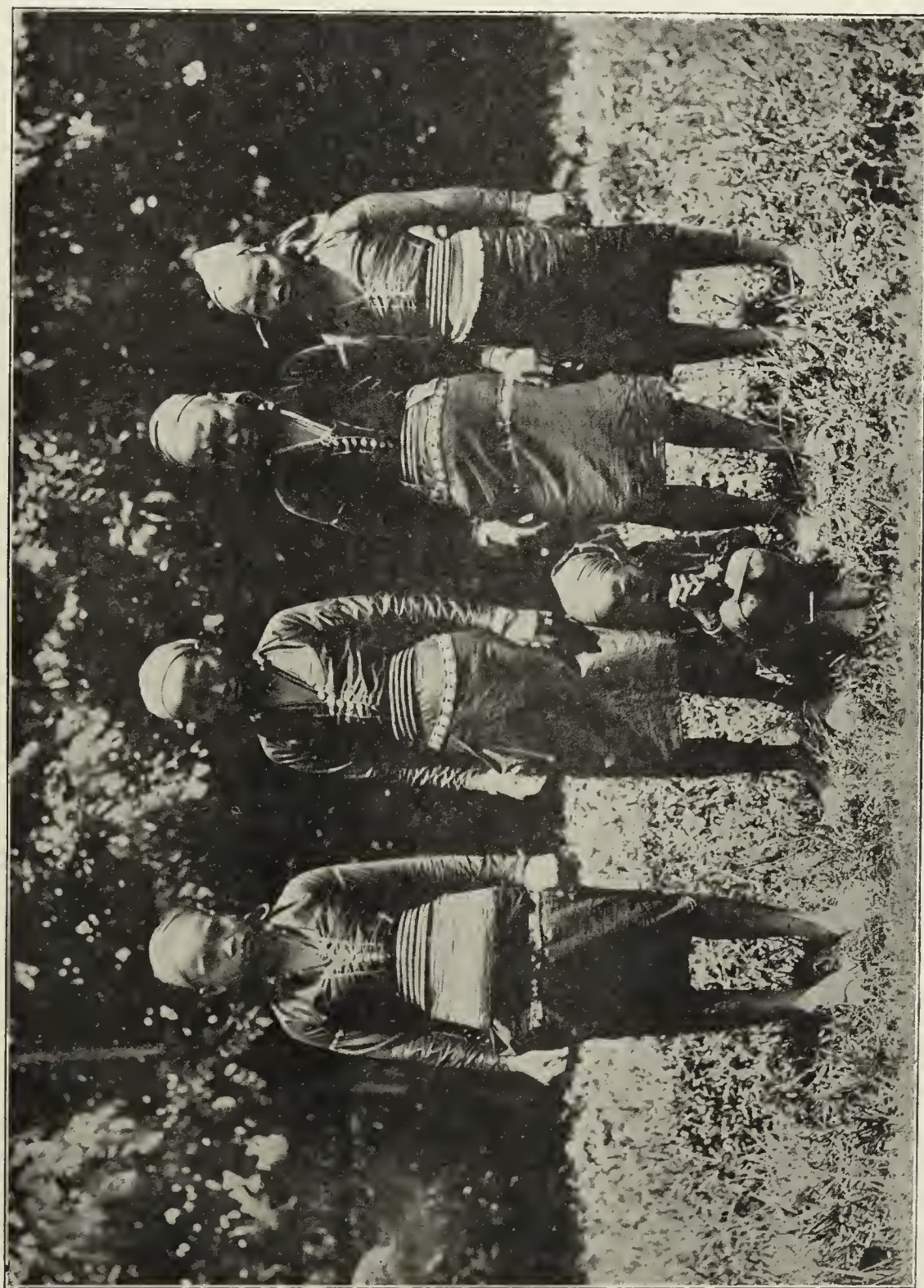
Photo, British North Borneo Co.

Brunei

The natives of Borneo, at the time of the Malay invasion, which could not have been less than six centuries ago, were savages of a low type compared with the half-civilised Malays, who, owing to a lack of cohesion among the opposing tribes, had little difficulty in conquering and establishing themselves at Brunei, and from there extending their power in all directions until much of the northern littoral of the island came under their sway.

The Malay Sultans, although pagans at first, wisely became converts to Islam, and

appears mainly due to that which has been the primary cause of the fall of empires and states since the dawn of history—indulgence in ease and peace; luxury and sensuality sapped the energy, superiority and fighting power of the Malays, as it did that of the Romans, Spaniards, and many another once-powerful nation. But Brunei did not fall, only shrunk slowly and steadily until crushed by the more civilised and less oppressive rule in the neighbouring territories of Sarawak and British North Borneo, which caused many of the Malays, themselves, to petition to be taken under the wings of one of these



BELLES OF BRUNEI

Governments. The actual area of the State of Brunei was gradually reduced to about 3,000 square miles, but a yearly sum of money was paid annually to the Sultan by the Rajah of Sarawak and the British North Borneo Company for territory ceded.

In 1906 the Sultan placed the administration of Brunei in the hands of a British Resident, but his son, Sir Mohammed-Jemal-ul-alam, K.C.M.G., still retains the position of a feudatory Sultan of the Empire, and receives an allowance of about £1,400 a year from the revenue. His two Ministers also receive State salaries.

It is situated on the shores of Brunei Bay, but is, however, almost completely shut in by the delta islands of the Limbang and several smaller rivers. It consists of a mass of dilapidated wooden, palm-thatched houses raised above the dark, still waters of the estuary on a forest of poles. Slim canoes glide among the piles, and then dart out into the open water, and a few minutes later are lost again in the dark shadow cast on the brackish river by another mass of shed-like houses.

A few buildings are clustered on the shores of the creeks, and there is a small Chinese



"THE VENICE OF THE EAST"

Photo, Harold J. Shepstone

The town of Brunei is composed almost entirely of pile dwellings built over the river

THE VENICE OF THE EAST.

Brunei is a portion of North Borneo, and its general appearance, climate, and characteristics are consequently the same as those of the Company's territory and of Sarawak. The population numbers over 30,000, made up principally of Malays, Kandayans (coastal aborigines), and Chinese. It is, however, customary among Europeans in Borneo to give the name "Dayak" to all natives except Malays and Chinese.

The town of Brunei is still one of the largest on the north-west coast of this huge island, and has a population of over 10,000.

bazaar, but there is certainly very little of interest in Brunei, except, perhaps, its beautiful background of thick foliage and rolling hills. It has been called the Venice of the East because it is built almost entirely over the shallow water, and is a perfect maze of canals and lagoons. (See *Sarawak, British Malaya, Finance and Commerce.*)

Sarawak

This is an independent Raj or State under British protection, situated on the north-west coast of the great island of Borneo.



KUDAT, BRITISH NORTH BORNEO

Photo, British North Borneo Co.

Its coast-line of some 500 miles, extends from Cape Datu ($3^{\circ} 5\frac{1}{2}'$ N. $100^{\circ} 29'$ E., distant 350 miles from Singapore), which marks its western boundary with Dutch Borneo, to Baram Point, and from beyond the Brunei River to the Lawar River, on the further side of which is the territory of the British North Borneo Company. The country between Baram Point and the Brunei River, is, including that river, all the territory that now remains to the old, and, in by-gone days, once prosperous Sultanate of Brunei, which, now a small enclave in Sarawak, formerly included the whole of Sarawak and the greater part of British North Borneo. The divide or watershed of the great rivers that have their sources in the mountainous highlands of Central Borneo, and flow northward through Sarawak and southward through Dutch territory, forms the southern boundary of the Raj. As this boundary has been only approximately demarcated an exact estimate of the area of the State cannot be formed, but it is generally said to be about 50,000 square miles.

EARLY CHINESE SETTLEMENTS.

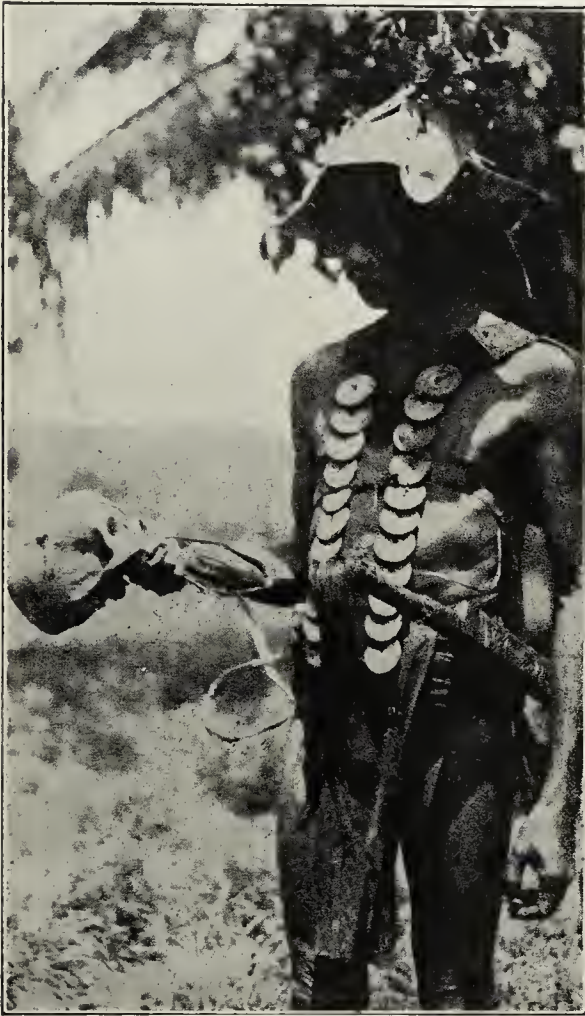
Little is known of the early history of the State, and the country is not rich in historical lore. That the Chinese, whose relations with Borneo have existed for many centuries, visited Sarawak and had a settlement at Santukong in ancient days, is fairly evident, but beyond a number of ancient coins found at that place, they have left no trace. Santukong may have been only a place of call, and for such a purpose it would have afforded them many advantages. A mountain rises sheer from the sea, forming a landmark visible seawards for many miles; there is also a plentiful supply of fresh water, and in those days it was remote from savage tribes. The name Santukong in the Hokien dialect means the "Mountain of wild pig."

Subsequently, as already noted, an Hindu settlement was established at Santukong, but when, and for how long it existed, is shrouded in obscurity. The Hindu Empire of Majapakit, in Java, fell in 1478, but the settlement was certainly abandoned long before that date.



A BORNEAN RIVER

Photo, British North Borneo Co.



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

**A MURUT INDIAN HEADMAN HOLDING THE
SKULL OF HIS PREDECESSOR**

EUROPEAN ADVENTURE.

The early European merchant adventurers paid no attention to Sarawak, though its coast was not unknown to them, but it afforded no convenient harbours to the unweatherly ships of those days, and for a large part of the year it is surf-lashed and dangerous of approach. The neighbouring countries, the economic resources of which had been greatly developed by the Chinese, held out greater prospects of profitable trade, and at Samkas, to the south-west, the Portuguese established a factory towards the close of the sixteenth century. They were displaced by the Dutch in 1609. With Brunei to the north-east, the Portuguese commenced to trade still earlier in the same century, and maintained exclusive

commercial relations with that State for over 200 years.

The British East India Company followed the Portuguese. They had obtained a concession on the northern coast in 1763, and ten years later attempted to establish themselves on Balamkangan Island, from which, however, they were expelled by the Sulus and Sanuns after a short occupation of about two years. Having obtained a monopoly of the pepper trade, then considerable, the Company had opened a factory at Brunei, but this, as well as their settlement at Balamkangan, was abandoned in 1802. By then the decadence of Brunei, of which Sarawak was a province, had well set in, and the east was infested with pirates. Trade



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

A MURUT WOMAN



with Borneo had become a dangerous pursuit, and no doubt it was for this reason that the Portuguese merchants had some years before forsaken Brunei.

Before the arrival of the Portuguese, Spanish and Dutch, piracy in its true sense had not become an institution among the inhabitants of the Archipelago. The oppressive commercial and political systems adopted by the Portuguese, and then by the Dutch on the one side, and by the Spaniards on the other, resulted in the extinction of internal development and of honest trade. The

powerless to suppress this evil, and the British were indifferent to it, though British trade and British ships suffered severely. So indifferent were the British, that even after Singapore had become a British colony, in 1819, captives were openly sold at that place, and the pirates bartered their plunder there for arms and ammunition. A period of over twenty years elapsed after the founding of Singapore before any active steps were taken to rid the seas of these pests, and it was then only, on the initiative of a private English gentleman, James



ELEPHANTS DRINKING IN A RIVER

Photo, British North Borneo Co.

natives, deprived of the benefits of production and of the means of obtaining their requirements by legitimate methods, were provoked to piracy, which they soon found could be practised with impunity.

The coasts of Borneo and the adjacent China Sea were periodically swept by large fleets of Sanun and Balenini pirates, the former, from Mindanan (a peaceable enough people up to the close of the seventeenth century), and the latter from the Sulu Archipelago. Practically all the Malays of the Bornean States and also the Sea-Dayaks of Sarawak, were pirates of a most fierce kind. The Dutch and the Spanish were

Brooke, that this long-delayed action was commenced.

The Raj takes its name from the River Sarawak, upon the banks of which, 20 miles from the mouth, the capital town, Kuching, is situated. The Sarawak River district, including the Eundu and the Samarahan Rivers, contains some 2,500 square miles, and is now known as Sarawak Proper. It is the little province over which James Brooke became the Ruler by the will of the people in 1841, and which in the following year became an independent State under his absolute sovereignty, with succession to his heirs, by an unconditional grant from the

Sultan of Brunei. Successive cessions have increased the Raj to its present dimensions. In 1853 the districts between the Samarahan and the Kalaka Rivers were ceded to Sarawak, and this cession was extended to Kedwong Point in 1861. Since his accession in 1868, the late Rajah doubled the territorial area of the Raj by the addition of the Baram region (in 1882), the Truscan (1884), the Limbang (1890), and the Lawas (1905).

A LAND OF RIVERS AND FORESTS.

The interior is hilly, with isolated mountains ranging up to 9,000 ft. There

trees, and broken here and there by a solitary hill or mountain.

Perhaps the most striking topographical feature of Sarawak is its numerous rivers, which, with their many branches, form the sole highways and by-ways of the country. On the banks of these rivers are situated the towns, villages, and scattered hamlets, communication between these being carried on entirely by water. The largest of these rivers is the Rejang, which is navigable by steamers nearly up to the first rapids, a distance of 170 miles, and by small boats for a further 500 miles. This river finds issue into the sea



A BLOW-PIPE HUNTER

may be, and probably are, some of even greater height in the remote interior, but that part of the country has not yet been fully explored. Between the interior highlands and the coast plains the country is much broken up by low hills, amid which wind a network of rapid-running rivers and streams, and there is but little level land. Only at Cape Datu do the hills come down to the sea, and the coast-line generally presents a long monotonous line of low-lying country, fringed with sandy beaches and casuarina

through five mouths, and its delta region of some 1,200 square miles is an unbroken swamp, often completely flooded during the north-east or rainy monsoon; but it contains a fairly large population, the soil being most suitable for the cultivation of the sago palm.

The next most important river is the Baram, which, like the Rejang, rises in the central highlands. It is navigable by steamers for 70 miles, but has an exposed and dangerous bar, and during the N.E.

monsoon is entirely closed to navigation. The Batang Lupar is another fine river, but, from a point about 15 miles from its mouth, it is obstructed by numerous shoals and has a large and dangerous tidal bore. The rivers situated both east and west of this stream, the Sarikas and Sadong, also have tidal bores. The Sarawak River, which has two main entrances at Santukong and Muara Tekas, is navigable by steamers of 1,000 tons as far as the principal port, Kuching, which is also the capital of the State. There are many other rivers, as a reference to the map will show, all of which are available as

Along the river-banks, however, scarcely any old jungle now remains, and a thick and scrubby secondary growth has taken its place. This is almost entirely due to the primitive methods of rice cultivation employed by the natives, which enables good crops to be grown only on virgin soil, or on land which has been allowed to be waste for some years.

The products of the jungle are of considerable commercial value, and together still form one of the principal items of the export trade. The principal of these sylvan products are gutta-percha, india-rubber, camphor, damar,



NATIVE GRAVE (Banjow Tribe)

Photos, British North Borneo Co.

fluvial highways for trade and communication with the interior, but many are closed to all but small craft during the N.E. monsoon.

Sarawak is not only a land of rivers, but also a land of forests, vast, evergreen and almost impenetrable. The heavy rainfall is the cause of the first feature, and, combined with the tropical heat, of the latter also. Practically the whole country is clothed with a primary growth consisting of noble forest trees with a thick tangled undergrowth.

cutch, vegetable tallows, rattans and other canes, beeswax, edible birds' nests, and valuable timber. The collection of jungle produce and the working of timber for local purposes as well as for export afford the natives a large and profitable industry. Tree-ferns, graceful wild palms of several varieties, bamboos, orchids, and beautiful flowering creepers are common. Some of the palms are of economic worth, especially the nipah palm, which grows thickly on the mud-banks of the lower reaches of the rivers and

supplies the natives with many and varied wants, such as sugar, salt, and thatching for roofs. The wild sago palm affords food as well as thatching, and the *ni' kong* palm and bamboos supply house-posts and flooring.

JUNGLE LIFE.

The jungles are full of life and the sounds of life. Birds are very plentiful, some of beautiful plumage; notably the Argus and Bulwer pheasants, the egret, kingfisher, and pigeon, but there are few songsters. There are in all about 800 species, many of which are very rare. The bird cultus of the ancients still prevails among all the inland tribes, by whom several species of birds are held sacred. Omens, favourable or unfavourable, in regard to any contemplated undertaking, are deduced from the direction of the flight of these birds or from which their notes may be heard. From the movements and calls of some animals, reptiles and insects, auguries are also sought, though but a few of these creatures are held sacred.

Insect life is abundant; and the usual tropical pests, mosquitoes, sand flies, painted flies, stinging ants and white ants, are common. The most characteristic of all are the stick and leaf insects, which are difficult to distinguish from the sticks and leaves they mimic. There are many varieties of beautiful butterflies and moths. Fireflies and noisy insects are numerous.

There are frogs and toads of many kinds, among which must be mentioned the flying frog, and the one with the longest legs. Lizards, large and small, from the monitor or iguana down to the little house lizard, are numerous. There is also a flying lizard.

Rodents are well represented; rats, mice, porcupines, and squirrels. One of the rarest

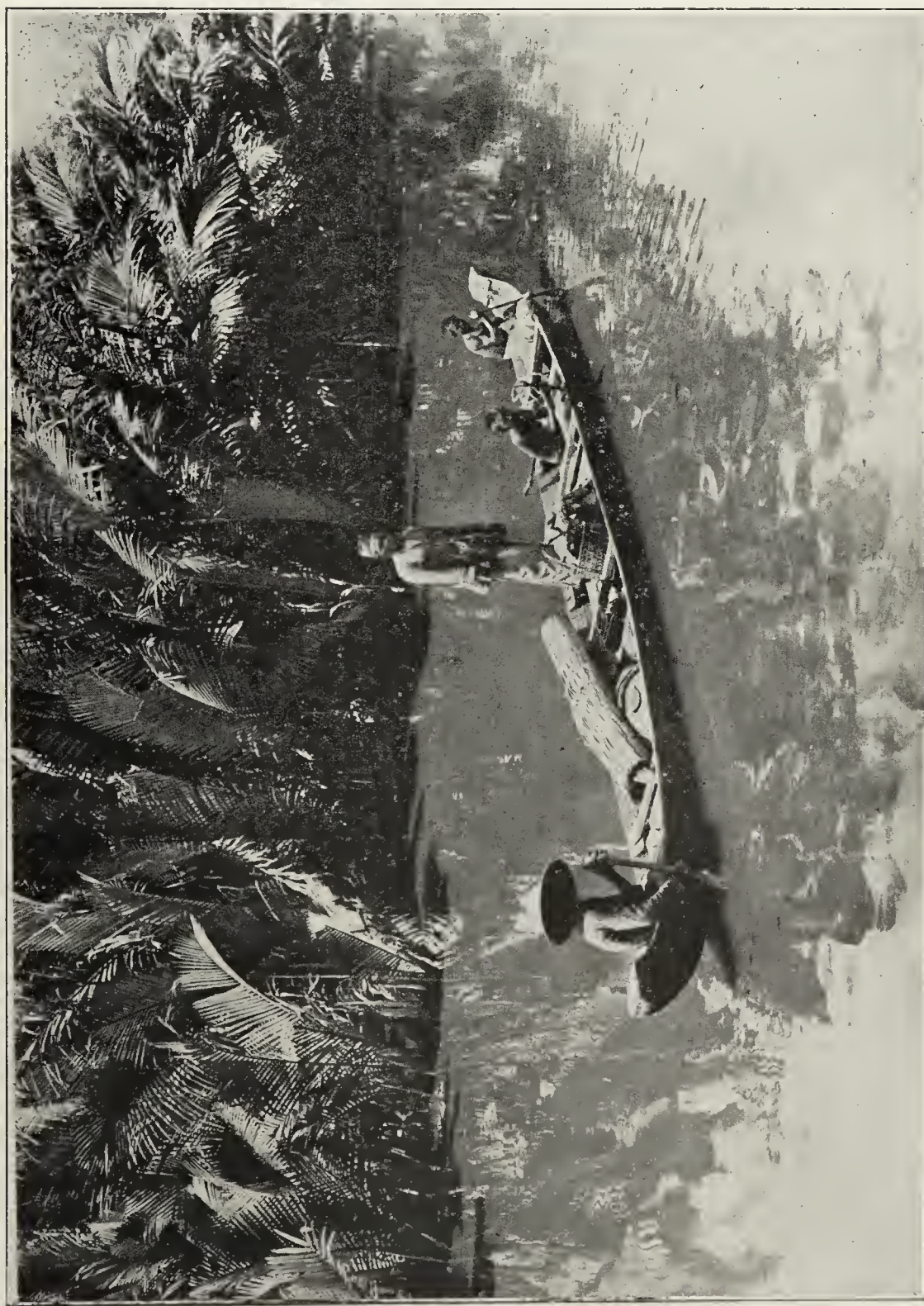
of Bornean curiosities is the pentail (*Plilocercus Lowii*), a small rat with a tail closely resembling a feather or quill pen. There is



Photo, British North Borneo Co.
ORANG-OUTANG, OR MAN-APE
Sadong River Region, Sarawak

also a flying squirrel, as well as a flying fox (large bat), which is the only one of all these flying creatures that can fly for any distance.

Snakes, although plentiful, being wary of man, are seldom seen. There are many varieties, some venomous and even deadly, especially the hamadryad, which is aggressive. Water snakes also abound, and many of these are very venomous. The pythons, which seldom attack man, attain a length of over 20 ft., the longest so far recorded is 26 ft. 2 in.



Photo, British North Borneo Co

ON A BORNEAN RIVER



Photo, British North Borneo Co.
A DUSUN GIRL

Of mammals, wild cattle and the small rhinoceros, were formerly plentiful, but are now seldom seen, except in the far interior. Deer, barking-deer, and little mouse-deer abound, also wild pigs. There are two kinds of diminutive black bears, the tree-leopard, several species of wild cat, the otter, scaly ant-eater, and the mongoose or civet. The great man-ape, or orang-outang, of which there are two varieties, was once common, but is now to be found only in the Sadong District. Monkeys are numerous, and there are several species, the most characteristic being the long-nosed monkey, a species confined to Borneo.

There are two types of crocodiles, the broad and the long snouted. Both of these varieties are numerous and cause loss of life among the population.

Fish are abundant along the coast, but less so in the rivers, which is chiefly due to the destructive method employed by the natives when fishing. Poison obtained from the roots of the taku plant is used to stupefy the large fish and render them an easy prey to the skilfully used spear, but, unfortunately, this also destroys all the small fry and spawn. The fishing industry is an important one, and gives employment to many natives and Chinese.



Photo, British North Borneo Co.
A HEAD HUNTER OF NORTH BORNEO



A WILD TRIBE OF CENTRAL BORNEO

MINERALS.

The mineral wealth of Sarawak is considerable, especially in comparison with that of neighbouring states. After the pacification of the country by the late Rajah the gold-fields of the upper Sarawak River district were for many years extensively worked by Chinese, but this industry gradually declined as the alluvial deposits became exhausted, and it was almost moribund when the Borneo Co. Ltd., after the discovery of the cyanide process, re-established it in a far higher position than could ever have been attained under the primitive methods of the Chinese.

Mineral oil is now figuring very largely in the commercial prosperity of the State. The rich oil-yielding tract around Miri and Bakong, near the mouth of the Baram, has been successfully exploited and indications of other oil-fields have been found. The quantity of oil now exported averages 700,000 tons.

Coal of good steaming quality occurs in different parts, but is mined only at Semunjan on the Sadong River, where the Government established a colliery some years ago. Sara-

wak possesses extensive coal-fields in other parts of the country, notably at Selantik.

The production of antimony and quicksilver, which was at one time considerable, has now almost ceased. Rich deposits of antimony ore and cinnabar have so far been found only in Upper Sarawak, and these have been worked out. Indications of other lodes have, however, been met with in other parts of the State; but in a country thinly populated, and covered by jungle, the discovery of these is mainly a matter of chance.

It was antimony that first attracted the attention of commercial Singapore, in the early days of that colony, to the then little-known territory of Sarawak, from whence the ore was imported to the former place in native prahus. The mines were then being worked by forced labour, and that incited the rebellion of the Sarawak Malays and land Dayaks against their Brunei Rajahs, which was subdued by James Brooke, and which was the primary cause of Sarawak becoming an independent State under his rule.

Iron ore is fairly common but is smelted only by the Kayans and Kenyahs for the

manufacture of weapons and implements. Both silver and arsenic occur ; and diamonds of good water are occasionally found in the river beds of the upper reaches of the Sarawak and Sadong.

AGRICULTURE.

The principal industry of the country is agriculture. The sago palm is very extensively cultivated by the Melanans. Between the mouth of the Rejang and Kidderrong Point large swampy tracts of coast land are covered by these palms, and the markets of the world are mainly supplied with sago from the State of Sarawak. From the pith of the palm the natives obtain the raw or crude sago, which is shipped in the form of moist pulp to the Chinese sago factories in Kuching, where it is converted into sago flour, in which form it is exported.

Rice, being the staple food of the natives, is largely cultivated, although, owing to the primitive and casual method of farming, with but poor results, the return being insufficient to supply the home demand, and therefore rice figures as the biggest item in the imports of a country which should pro-

duce a quantity considerably in excess of its own needs.

In days gone by pepper was extensively cultivated in Borneo, especially in the adjacent State of Brunei, which 100 years ago exported 3,500 tons a year, a very valuable crop in those days. But as Brunei was then in an advanced state of decadence the output must have been considerably more before that period. In Sarawak the cultivation of pepper was not introduced until 1876 ; it is now a large industry, entirely in the hands of the Chinese, and up to 5,000 tons have been exported in one year.

Gambier, the cultivation of which is also a purely Chinese industry, is largely grown in almost all parts of the country.

The cultivation of Para rubber, with the exception of the large estates belonging to the Borneo Co., Ltd., has so far been confined to the Chinese and Malays. Returns of the area under cultivation are not available, but it is now fairly considerable. The average annual value of the rubber exported during recent years amounts to £260,000.

Coco-nut palms, which flourish best on sandy soil, near the sea, are largely grown by



AN HISTORIC INCIDENT

Photo, British North Borneo Co.

The surrender of a Native rebel Chief to the forces of the British North Borneo Co.



A DAYAK GIRL IN FESTAL ARRAY

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose

She is encased in silver and brass. The head-dress is of silver, the ear-rings are silver bells, and the corset is made of rattan hoops covered with small brass and silver rings. The girdle is ornament with precious stones (of little value)



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

BANJOW WOMEN RICE PLANTING

natives, but mostly in the vicinity of their habitations, though there are some estates of a fair size, and the Chinese have turned their attention to the cultivation of this valuable palm, the main products of which are coir, copra and oil. The areca palm forms one of the features of all native villages, embowered as these generally are in groves of these graceful palms, with an admixture of fruit trees. The young nuts, wrapped in a leaf of the areca-vine, smeared with shell lime, is chewed by all natives, old and young, as a stimulant. The nuts are also used for making a vermifuge and a kind of catechu, and for this purpose a considerable quantity is exported.

Cotton, tapioca, sugar-cane and pineapples for canning are also grown. There are many kinds of fruit, bananas and plantains of several varieties, dukus, jack-fruit and, most notably, the durian. Nearly all of these have been grown for generations by the natives mainly in the fruit groves surrounding their houses. Of more recent intro-

duction are oranges, limes, pumeloos, guavas and mangoes, mainly grown by Chinese and Europeans.

On their rice farms and gardens the natives grow a small quantity of vegetables such as yams, sweet potatoes, Indian corn, pumpkins, cucumbers and water melons along the seashore, but the vegetable markets are supplied entirely by Chinese gardeners.

Sarawak has no mechanical industries of importance or capable of much development. Many Melanans are able carpenters, boat-builders and blacksmiths. Some Malays are good shipbuilders and coppersmiths, and a few are fairly skilful as silver and goldsmiths, but nearly all the skilled labour is supplied by the Chinese. In such domestic arts as weaving cotton and silk cloths and plaiting mats, baskets and hats, the native women are expert, and produce excellent decorative work.

CLIMATE.

The seasons are marked by the north-east and south-west monsoons,* and these

* A corruption of the Arabic word *musim*, used by the Malays, meaning a season or period.

are constant in their alternation. The former, or the wet monsoon, the season of storms and rains, prevails from October until March, and the latter, or fine monsoon, the season of fine weather and partial droughts, from April to September. The months of most rain are December, January and February. From February the rainfall decreases until July, the month of least rain, and increases gradually after that month. The average annual rainfall is 160 inches, and rain falls on an average of 226 days in the year. The maximum average temperature is 92 degrees, and the minimum 71 degrees. The temperature rarely rises above 95 degrees, or falls below 70 degrees. The mornings, evenings and nights are generally cool, and it is only during the early hours of the afternoon that the heat is at all oppressive. The climate is healthy for Europeans.

NATIVE TRIBES.

As no systematic census of the population has yet been attempted, its number can only be approximately estimated, and this may be safely placed at a little over 600,000.

Probably in no other country in the Malayan Archipelago is to be found a more heterogeneous population than that of Sarawak. There is also a great diversity of languages, some of which are quite distinct and of dialects, some remotely, and others more closely related, and these, though belonging to the same linguistic family, are mostly mutually unintelligible. There are two distinct races, Indonesian and Malayan, but both are intermingled with other types.

It is reasonable to suppose that there were earlier inhabitants than those now existing, but if there have been, they have left no trace behind them. The earliest inhabitants of whom we have any knowledge are probably the Ukits*, Punans and Bukitans†, and other fast disappearing tribes, considered, and probably rightly so, by Beceari to be the remnants of an ancient Bornean people. Whence they came we know not, and this can be said of all the tribes of Indonesian stock, except with regard to the most dominant of these, the Kayans and Kenyaks, who flowed into Sarawak from the

south, and being of common stock, all these tribes, in very remote times, had a common home from which they dispersed over the Malay Archipelago.

The Ukits, Bukitans and Punans, driven from their homes by the incursion of the Kayans, became a wandering people, living in rude huts, of boughs and leaves, and subsisting upon the products of the chase and of the jungles. Of late years they have taken to building houses and to farming, and this is especially the case with the Punans, who now live amongst Viayans, in the Rejang and Baram districts, with whom they intermarry. A peculiarity of these people is that they do not tattoo, a general custom amongst all the inland tribes of Indonesian stock. The Bukitans and Ukits, of whom there are but a few families now left, dwell mainly in certain districts of the Rejang. There are several branches of the Ukit tribe, all of which are remnants of some ancient Bornean tribe, in all probability the same tribe as that of which the Ukits and Bukitans are descendants.

The foremost tribes of the Indonesian stock are the Kayans and Kenyaks. These powerful allied tribes appear to have formed their first settlements in Borneo in the Betungan River district, in Southern Borneo, from whence they overflowed into the Batui (Rejang), Baram and Bintulu River Regions, the Kayans first and the Kenyaks following. In the Rejang, the former spread down stream as far as Kapit, where the Ukits made their last stand against them. They drove the Malays out of the river, and harried the Sea-Dayaks, who were then commencing to spread into the branch streams on the left side of the lower Kyang, but were eventually forced to retire above the rapids before the increasing numbers of these Dayaks, and are now confined to the head-waters of the Balui above Belaga.

In the early days of the White Raj, the Kayans and the Kenyaks were troublesome neighbours. Under the effete rule of Brunei they did as they pleased, and raided the surrounding country unchecked, but in 1861 their country passed to Sarawak, and in 1863 they were effectively subdued by the late Rajah. The Baram did not come under Sarawak rule until twenty years later.

These people are on a slightly higher level of culture than any other of the interior

* From the word *bukit*, a hill ; lit. the hill people.

† Tanjong = cape, point ; lit. riverside people.



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

"A BORNEAN SODA FOUNTAIN"
 Natives of the Murut Tribe drinking fermented fruit juice
 through a hollow reed



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

DYNAMITING FISH IN A BORNEAN RIVER
 Stunned by the explosion, the fish float to the surface in large
 numbers, and have merely to be collected

tribes, even than the Sea-Dayaks, now the dominant people of the State, but they lack the energy and enterprise of the Dayaks. A full and interesting account of the Kayans and Kenyaks is to be found in "The Pagan Tribes of Borneo," and of the other tribes noted above.*

The Melanans, another tribe of Indonesian stock, form a very important and numerous population on the sea-coast, in the Rejang Delta, and in the Oya, Muka, Balinean and Bintulu River regions, and are to be found in small communities along the river banks beyond Kedwrong Point. Though these people live practically in the same district, with only a few miles separating the various settlements, their language presents such a confusing diversity of dialects, that it is reasonable to suppose the tribe was widely dispersed long before they settled in Sarawak, and that they came in separate groups, at different times, and from different localities.

* *The Pagan Tribes of Borneo*, by Dr. Chas. Hose.

Whence and when they came is still, and will probably remain, a matter of pure conjecture, but it is fairly evident that they are older settlers than the Malays, who arrived in Borneo some 400 years ago.

The Melanans have always been a peaceful and industrious people. As before noted, they cultivate the sago palm on a very large scale, and deep-sea fishing during the S.W. monsoon is another of their activities. Many are fairly skilled blacksmiths, carpenters, and boat-builders. Originally all Pagans, most are now Mohammedans, but of recent conversion, and all have to a great extent assimilated the customs of the Malays.

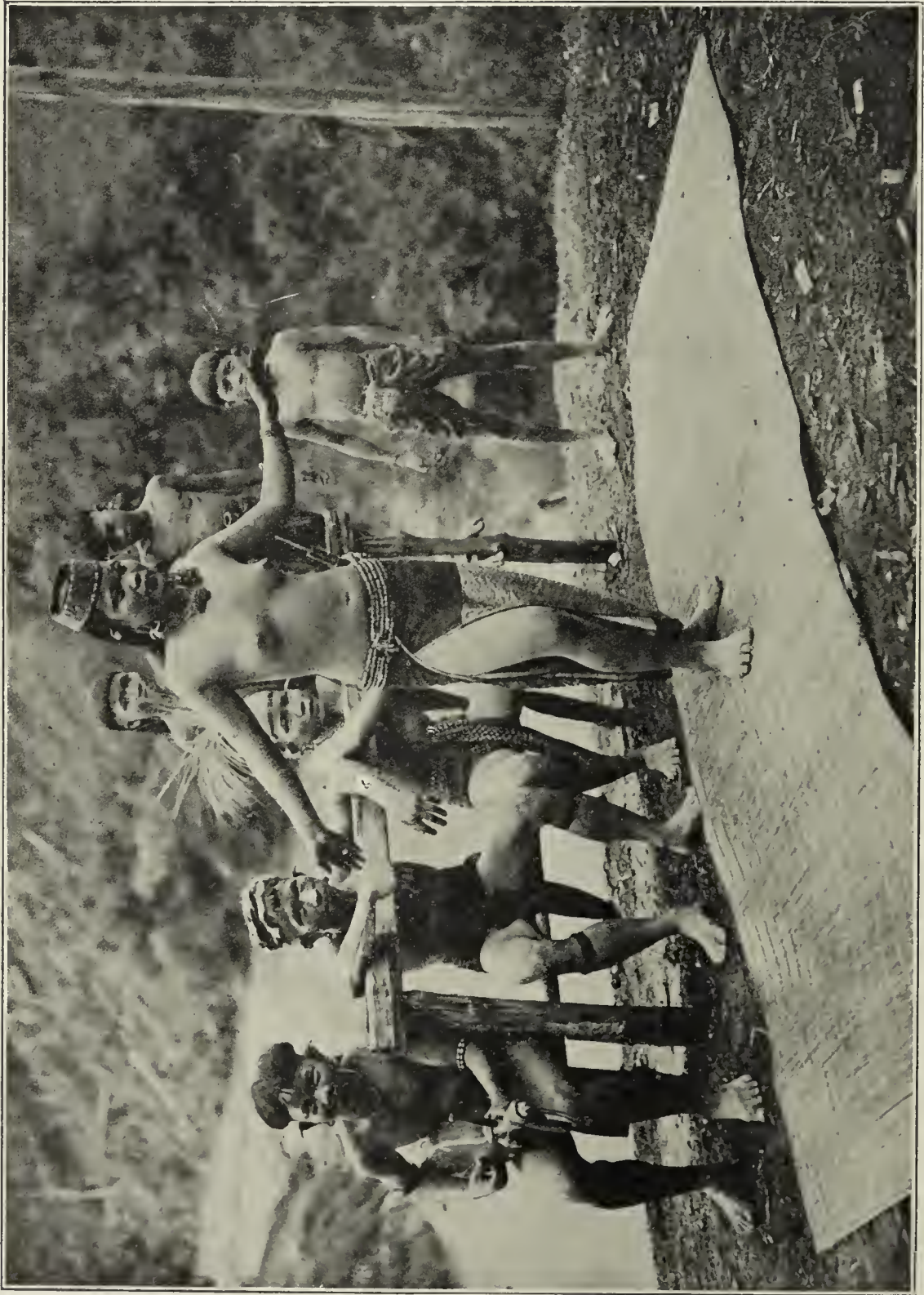
LAND-DAYAKS.

The Land-Dayaks must not be confused with the Sea-Dayaks, the two tribes being ethnologically distinct. Daya, in most of the coastal dialects, means "land," or "inland," hence Orang Daya means an islander. Both tribes are indiscriminately



Photo, Dr. Charles Hose

KUCHING, CAPITAL OF SARAWAK, A Chinese New Year Festival



A KENYAK DANCING GIRL

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose



THE GHASTLY TROPHIES OF A HEAD HUNTER

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose

Dried human heads in a village on the Rejang River, Sarawak. (This form of crime is now rigorously suppressed by the Government of the White Rajah)

called Orang Daya by the inhabitants of the coast. The words land and sea were added by Europeans, to differentiate the two tribes, and are characteristic of these people. The Land-Dayaks were unskilled boatmen even in rivers, whilst the Sea-Dayaks roved the sea for long distances in their war-prahus on their marauding expeditions. The Land-Dayaks, like the Sea-Dayaks, have no collective tribal name, but both adopt the term *Daya* when referring to themselves to people of other tribes. By the Kayans the Sea-Dayaks are styled *Ivan*, and this word in the corrupted form of *Iban* is becoming common to the latter as a tribal designation.

The Land-Dayaks occupy the upriver districts of the Sundu, Sarawak, Samarahan and Sadong Rivers, and the adjacent country over the borders, and collectively form a large tribe. In disposition they are mild and peaceable, and in days past fell an easy

prey to the head-hunting Sea-Dyaks, and to the rapacious Malays, which probably accounts for their peculiar custom of building their villages on steep hills remote from rivers.

To define the ethnological position of the Land-Dayaks amongst the other tribes presents to ethnologists an interesting, though a somewhat difficult problem. Linguistically they appear to occupy a separate position, their language having no affinity with those of other tribes, either of Indonesian or Malayan stock. They differ in physical type and in many essential customs, such as the disposal of the dead by cremation, and their aversion to the flesh of cattle. These customs and the ancient Hindu relics found in this country evidence a close contact with Hinduism in some remote period. That there was a Hindu settlement at the Santukong entrance of the Sarawak River has been clearly established by the interest-

ing remains discovered there. This was probably a dependency of the ancient Hindu-Java Kingdom of Majapahit, to the rule of which Brunei was once subject, and the Land-Dayaks retain a tradition that they also were once under the rule of Java, and paid tribute to that country.

SEA-DAYAKS.

The latest immigrants are the Sea-Dayaks of proto-Malayan stock, and the Malays, both of the same ethnic family. The Sea Dayaks migrated to Western Borneo, in all probability from Sumatra, at a period previous to the conversion of the Malayan people to the Mohammedan religion, which commenced towards the close of the thirteenth century. No Arabic words, so common in the Malay language, are to be found in their dialect, excepting a few of quite recent introduction. The Malays, according to their own tradition, which is

probably not far from the truth, also migrated from Sumatra some hundreds of years ago, and they were then Mohammedans. The Sea-Dayaks are still pagans, and their religion, like that of the tribes of Indonesian stock, is purely animistic—none are idolators.

The principal characteristics of the Sea-Dayaks are independence and energy, and being endowed with these qualities in a greater degree than the other inland tribes, they have become the dominant and most important people in the State. Ever increasing in numbers, from the Kapuas River in Dutch Borneo they have spread along the Batang, Supar, Sarikas, Kalaka, and Rejang Rivers, which regions they have thickly populated, and they are now spreading along the rivers to the north-east. Formerly an agricultural and a peaceable people, they fell under the evil influence of the piratical Malays, who, under their half-breed Arab chiefs, dominated the coast



"A PEACE CONFERENCE"

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose

This meeting between rival Chiefs under the ægis of the White Raj ended a native war
Notice the Idols on each side and the bird omen overhead



A NATIVE GRAVE

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose

A typical example of the ornamental architecture and wood carving of the Sekapan people of the Rejang River region of Sarawak

districts until their power was broken by the first white Rajah.

The Sea-Dayaks proved useful followers to these Arabs and Malays, but in time they became too powerful to be held in subjection, and pirated and pillaged on their own account, not even sparing their quondam rulers. They were the terror of the coast population from Pontianak to Brunei and beyond, and became known as the head-hunters of Borneo. Head taking is a savage attribute common to all tribes with the exception of the Malays, the Melanans and the Ukits, but the practice was confined to enemies slain in warfare, whereas the Sea-Dayaks made no such distinction, and slew indiscriminately far and near, solely for the sake of obtaining these trophies.

The advent of the first white Rajah put a period to their head-hunting expeditions along the coast, and when their country passed under the rule of Sarawak, they, and the turbulent Malays, were gradually brought to order by the late Rajah. The inherent instinct that prompts the taking of heads has, however, not been completely eradicated, and occasionally breaks out, but now only amongst a few living in the more remote districts; such lapses are few and far between, and meet with prompt punishment.

In disposition the Sea-Dayaks are cheerful and friendly, and they are industrious, thrifty and sober. Formerly a troublesome and turbulent people, indulging in continual feuds, they have now become law-abiding subjects and staunch supporters of the Government, upon whom the power of the three white Rajahs has mainly depended.

Their principal industries are rice-farming and jungle produce collecting, in search of which they take long expeditions into the interior, and

to the neighbouring countries, as well as to Sumatra and the Malay Peninsula.

MALAYS.

The Malay is the latest immigrant, and as already noted, followed the Sea-Dayaks from Sumatra within comparatively recent times. They came as peaceful settlers, and established themselves on the banks of the Sarawak River, from whence they spread up the coast to the Rejang, and gradually founded a small State to which the peaceable native population were subjected, but which subsequently succumbed to the rising power of the Malay Sultanate of Brunei.



WAH-WAH MONKEY

Photo, Dr. Charles Hose



Photo, British North Borneo Co.

AFTER A CROCODILE SHOOT IN BORNEO. SKULLS READY FOR THE MUSEUMS AT HOME

The Malays are on a far higher grade of civilisation than the tribes of Indonesian stock and the Sea-Dayaks, but they lack the energy and enterprise of the latter. They are more cultured in language and arts, and are more refined in manners and customs. Proud and reserved in character they are polite in manner, and are by no means so vindictive and treacherous as they are popularly supposed to be, but keenly resenting ill-treatment and affront, they become dangerous when subjected to either. They are brave and trustworthy, and serious crime is uncommon among them, though those of the upper class once earned an unenviable reputation for depravity and cruelty that was not generally deserved, and with justice can be relegated to the past.

The Malays are Mohammedans, but are without the bigotry of Western Mohammedans. They lack religious fervour, and content themselves with a loose adherence to religious observances. They retain animistic

beliefs and practices condemned and forbidden by their religion. They form the main population of Kuching, the capital, and of the principal towns on the coast and the lower reaches of the rivers, from Cape Datu to the Rejang, and are fairly numerous in the settlements beyond. Their principal occupations are farming, fishing, working timber, and petty trading. Many find employment as sailors, policemen and servants. From the ranks of the higher class the principal Government chiefs are selected, and some hold high office in the administration.

There is a large population of Chinese, but of these enterprising and intelligent people, without whom no tropical country would be developed, little need be said. To them Sarawak, in common with neighbouring States and Colonies, owes its economic prosperity. The merchants, tradesmen, artisans, agriculturists and miners are all Chinese. A large proportion are country born, and many are of mixed blood.

BRITISH ISLES

Imperial History

THE heart of the world-wide British Empire is "The Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland," geographically known as the British Isles, which consist of the two main islands of Great Britain and Ireland, with the Isle of Man and the Channel Islands, and a large number of islets lining the coasts or situated in the surrounding seas at no great distance from them (Scilly Isles). They are washed on the north-west, west and south-west by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Atlantic and English Channel, and on the east by the North Sea. They lie between latitude 48° and 61° N., and longitude 2° E. and 11° W. The total area is 121,630 square miles, or 77,683,084 acres, with a population of about 50,000,000.

Early History

Although very little is known of Britain before the Roman invasion, it appears to have been divided into a number of states, these being sub-divided into clanships. The inhabitants were tribes of the Celtic stock, and were often at war with each other. Although there was no organised form of central government, each tribe being ruled by its own chief, the sacerdotal order, known as the Druids, had great power throughout the land.* They ministered religion; enjoining the worship as deities of many such objects as the sun, moon, fire, water, and the oak tree; their temples were massive structures of stone, and they acted as judges and doctors. The Britons were expert horsemen, and were skilled in the art of primitive

warfare, but they lacked cohesion and discipline. Hunting and fishing were the principal occupations; and the dwellings consisted of rude huts covered with the skins of animals. Such was the condition of the country previous to the Roman invasion.

ROMAN PERIOD.

From the pages of Caesar and Tacitus we learn the state of Britain at the dawn of Christianity. About half a century before the Christian era (55 B.C.) Julius Caesar, then Governor of that portion of the Roman Empire which embraced the greater portion of Western Europe, decided on the conquest of Britain. He sailed from Gaul on his first expedition in 55 B.C., and landed at Deal. The Britons opposed the landing, but the superior discipline and arms of the Romans prevailed. Not wishing to winter in the island, Caesar withdrew to Gaul, but returned with a stronger force in the following year (54 B.C.). He defeated the Britons, first, on the banks of the Stour, near Canterbury, and later crossed the Thames, eventually capturing St. Albans, the principal stronghold.

Julius Caesar then finally withdrew from the island, and for almost a century Britain remained unmolested, but in the reign of Claudius (43 A.D.) the Romans, under Aulus Plautius (with Vespasian and Titus), again invaded the country. These and other leaders finally subdued nearly the whole island, which became a Roman Province. In this condition it remained for nearly 400

* By some historians it is thought that the headquarters of Druidism was in Britain, and by others that it was on the Continent.



EARLY BRITONS

THE ANGLO-SAXON RACE.

years, and so great was the effect of the Roman occupation that the face of the land was changed from a wild, swamp and tree-covered island, inhabited by semi-barbarians, into a rich agricultural land, with roads, cities and all the attributes of early civilisation.

The first independent King of Britain was the Roman Governor, Carausius, who held the position of *Comes littoris Saxonici*, or "Count of the Saxon Shore." In this post he amassed great wealth and power, corrupted the fidelity of the troops occupying the country, defied the Imperial Government, and ruled as an independent sovereign from 288 A.D. to 293 A.D., when he was assassinated by Allectus, who ruled for three years, and was then, himself, defeated and slain by Constantine; and Britain again became a province of the Roman Empire.

The first Christian

ruler was Constantine, son of Constantine, under whom Britain enjoyed many years of peace (306 A.D.). With the decay of the Roman Empire the peace and prosperity of Britain declined. The troops were gradually withdrawn to defend Rome itself, and in 410 A.D. the Romans finally withdrew from Britain and a period of anarchy followed.

The Britons, who had lost the spirit of freedom, found themselves unable to resist the incursions of the Picts and Scots, who inhabited the northern portion of the island, or to check the attacks on the southern coast by the Saxon pirates. In their extremity they appealed to Rome for aid, and on this being refused they welcomed the assistance of the Saxons, who quickly made themselves



STONEHENGE, WILTSHIRE

Photo, G.W. Rly.



CARACTACUS, THE LEADER OF THE EARLY BRITONS, APPEARING BEFORE CLAUDIUS, THE ROMAN EMPEROR, WHO, WITH AULUS PLAUTIUS AND AN ARMY OF 40,000, CONQUERED SOUTH BRITAIN (A.D. 43-51)

masters of the country, which was divided—under the Heptarchy—into seven separate kingdoms. These were : Kent, founded in 457 ; Sussex in 490, Wessex in 495, Essex in 527, East Anglia in 570, Northumbria in 547, and Mercia in 582. Each of these states had its own independent ruler. The whole land was gradually re-peopled by the Saxon immigrants, the Britons being driven into the mountains of the West, South-west and North.

The Anglo-Saxons, as they eventually became, were a noble and brave race with a distinct fondness for maritime enterprise and a great respect for women. Christianity was introduced into Saxon-Britain by Pope Gregory the Great (British Christianity already existed in the West), who sent missionaries into the country under Augustine, in 596. About the events of the Heptarchy little is known. The seven chiefs ruled independently of one another, but each was naturally anxious to extend his dominions. Internal warfare raged, almost without intermission, until 827, when Egbert, exiled heir to the throne of Wessex, succeeded in making himself master of the whole country and gave to his island dominion the name of England. He died in 836, and was succeeded by his son Ethelwulf.

THE BIRTH OF ENGLAND.

Struggles with the Danish invaders constitute the principal events of this and the succeeding three reigns. Ethelbald, the eldest of the four sons of Ethelwulf, ascended the throne in 858 ; Ethelbert in 860 ; Ethelred in 866 ; and Alfred the Great in 871. This reign is the most brilliant in the early history of England. Long before Alfred came to the throne the Danes had gained a sure footing on British soil, but so vigorous was the rule of this Sussex king that they were everywhere held in check until his death in 901.

During the next few reigns the Danes consolidated their conquests in various parts of the island, and entered into joint action with the Britons, Scots and Welsh. The rulers of Saxon-England during this period were : Edward the Elder (901), Athelstan (925), Edmund (941), Edred (946), Edwy (955), Edgar (959), Edward (975), and Ethelred (978). It was during the last reign that the Danes, under Sweyn, son of the Danish King, succeeded in mastering the

country and compelling the weak Ethelred (the Unready) to leave his kingdom and take refuge in Normandy.

DANISH PERIOD.

In the year 1014, Sweyn became the unopposed ruler of England, but he died in the following year and was succeeded by his son, Canute. In the meantime the exiled Ethelred also died, and a dispute arose between his son, Edmund (Ironside) and Canute, which resulted in the division of the kingdom between the rival Saxon and Danish kings. The former died one year after this arrangement was made, and Canute became the ruler of the two kingdoms. His reign was a prosperous one, but his sons Harold and Hardicanute, who succeeded him in 1036 and 1040, were both cruel and intemperate, the latter dying of a debauch in 1041. This was the last of the Danish kings, the Saxon dynasty being resumed in the person of Ethelred's son, Edward.

SAXONS AND NORMANS.

Edward the Confessor was a feeble ruler with a strong liking for the Normans, among whom he had lived until called to the throne of England by universal acclamation in 1042. No important events occurred during this and the succeeding few reigns. Harold II, son of Earl Godwin—a ruler under Canute—ascended the throne 1066. The country was at this time invaded by the Norwegian king, and Harold's brother Tosti, who were, however, overthrown in a great battle near York. This was followed by the more formidable invasion of William of Normandy (1066). Harold hastened from his victory near York to repel the new invasion of the south, and the two armies met near Hastings (1066), where the English sustained a decisive defeat, Harold and his two brothers being among the slain. This ended the Saxon dynasty in England.

THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

William I (the Conqueror) ascended the throne in 1066, but it was fully ten years before he succeeded in effecting the subjugation of the whole country. He was a wise but despotic ruler. The principal events of this important reign were the establishment of the Feudal System and the Domesday Book, which was a register of all



TOWER OF LONDON

lands in the kingdom, and is now one of the most valuable of ancient records possessed by any country.

Although the principal features of the Feudal System were introduced during the reign of William I, its origin in Britain can be traced to Saxon times. The principal object of this system was to obtain a strong and well-equipped military force, but there were also subsidiary motives for its introduction. Among the principal features of the Feudal System must be mentioned (1) that every holder of land was required to serve in the military forces, (2) to help in the construction and maintenance of bridges and the walls of towns. These were the earliest of the feudal conditions of land tenure. Others arose later in which the great lords

or knights were directly subject to the king, and the lesser tenants to the great lords. All were vassals and had to serve with life and limb in return for the land they held.

The principal divisions of the Feudal System, when at its zenith, were (1) "The Knights' Fee" — by which every estate of the yearly value of £20 had to supply one knight for 40 days' military service in the year. It is believed that there were about eight to ten thousand of these. Then came (2) "The Soutage"—or inversion of personal

service into levies for overseas enterprise. These were the chief military conditions; there were, however, several important "feudal incidents" (principally financial conditions). First came "the Reliefs," by

GLOUCESTER CATHEDRAL
The Cloisters

Photos, G.W. Rly.



WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL, THE CHOIR

Believed to have been first built in A.D. 164. King Canute and William Rufus are buried here

which an estate on the death of a tenant was only re-granted to his heir on the payment of "relief." "Aids" were occasional demands for the payment of special contributions (limited in later years by the Magna Carta). "Wardship" was, as its name implies, the management of an estate and the collection (and personal ownership) of the revenues of a minor by the lord during the time of minority. In this relation much oppression occurred through the power of a lord to compel an heiress who was under age to marry a suitor chosen by himself. These were the distinguishing features of the Feudal System, which was the basis of national life for several hundred years, and the results of which

can be traced to quite modern times.

NORMAN PERIOD.

The Tower of London was built during the reign of William the Conqueror, who died in 1087. He was succeeded by his second surviving son, William II (Rufus), who was killed by Sir Walter Tyrrel while hunting in the New Forest in 1100. Few important events occurred during this reign. An attempt was made to obtain the Duchy of Normandy, and the Scots, under Malcolm Canmore, invaded England, but were repulsed by Earl Mowbray. Westminster

Hall was built; and the Goodwin Sands were formed by the inundation of the land. On the death of William II, the crown of England belonged by right to his brother



WARWICK CASTLE

One of the finest remaining feudal castles

Photos, G.W. Rly.

de hac terra. Simile de terra Elice qd fuit i^{us} que. e in Grimelbi h^{ab}.
 h^{ab} est epi^{us} duo.
 In d^{omi}n^o B. d^{omi}n^o de mortem^{er} h^{ab}et Lofoardi. acci
 p^{er}ante noui^{us} thodonci in Grimelbi. qd n^{on} fuit T. R. E.
 f. l. e. n^{on} q^{uod} fuit h^{ab}et fuisse p^{er} eum.
 Est p^{er} h^{ab}et est lincolniensis debet habere loca sup
 est bou^{er} t^{er}re 7 dimid. que iacet in eccl^{esi}a de Vinge^{ha}.
 Orasbi h^{ab}et est p^{er} b^{er}id^{er}entis loca sup d^{omi}n^o car^{er}e
 que fuit Ernum p^{er} b^{er}id^{er}entis. n^{on} est Suu^{er}ard^{er} p^{er} b^{er}id^{er}entis.
 In O^uarelu^{us} debet habere O^uarelin^{us} fili^{us} Linba loca
 sup d^{omi}n^o bou^{er} t^{er}re
 In T^{er}alestbi h^{ab}et h^{ab}et Rayner^{us} t^{er}ra Elice cu^{us} omib^{us}
 ibi^{us} p^{er}anentib^{us}. Gocet^{us} cu^{us} an^{te}q^{uam} Rayner^{us} c^{on}u^{er}uit.
 p^{er}edina^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am} antecessor^{um} comit^{um} Alani habuit
 loca. sed n^{on} sciunt qual^{es}.
 In clachestbi debet habere Gocet^{us} fili^{us} Lanba. n. molu^{us}.
 qd^{am} Gocet^{us} h^{ab}et luoni^{us} tullebosc^{us} mouit^{ur} sup^{er} eu^{us}.
 In Crofbi debet habere Willel^{mus} blund^{us} una^{us} horat^{us}.
 In t^{er}ra Juoni^{us} tullebosc^{us}. sed impedit^{ur} p^{er} molendin^{um}
 qd^{am} non fuit illi. T. R. E.
 In fuzet^{us} f^{er}ou^{us} debet est p^{er} dunelm^{us} habere xl. ac^{er} t^{er}re.
 7 i^{us} t^{er}re. om^{ne}s Alan^{us} inde loca. sic dicit Wapent^{us}.
 In ead^{em} uilla in t^{er}ra Rob^{ert}i dispensat^{ur} iudicant^{ur} habere
 loca. Alan^{us} comit^{um} sup^{er} una^{us} caruat^{us} t^{er}re.
 ibi^{us} debet habere Drogo. n. salina qu^{am} clumit^{ur}. inde
 Alan^{us} comit^{um} loca.
 De t^{er}ra tullebosc^{us} In Cucualt^{us} fuit fuisse Rayner^{us}
 diacon^{us} quando exiit^{ur} de hac t^{er}ra. Modo uenit^{ur} cu^{us}
 Thom^{as} archiep^{iscop}us. Rayner^{us} de Brimou^{us} calu^{er}it^{ur}.
 In ead^{em} Cucualt^{us} in t^{er}ra hugoni^{us} filii Baldrici. debet
 habere Willel^{mus} de p^{er}u^{us}. n. l^ou^{us} t^{er}re qu^{am} clumit^{ur}.
 Wapent^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am}.
 Dicit Wapent^{us} qd^{am} comit^{um} Alan^{us} debet habere loca
 sup^{er} aul^{us} Grimelbi. cui^{us} t^{er}ra h^{ab}et est p^{er} dunelm^{us} in t^{er}ra t^{er}re.
 In t^{er}ra hugoni^{us} firm^{us} ei^{us} non lib^{er}at^{ur} Col^{er}uan^{us}
 Alano^{us} comit^{um}. sed ill^{ud} ingenu^{us} fuit inq^{uam} uenit^{ur} ei^{us}
 ip^{si} comit^{um}. p^{er} alia^{us} t^{er}ra^{us} qui^{us} t^{er}rebat^{ur} de eo.
 Normeding^{us} om^{ne}s comit^{um} testat^{ur} qd^{am} t^{er}ra Vlf^{us}
 de Grimelbi ideo^{us} uenit^{ur} car^{er} t^{er}re dim^{us} fuit un^{us} indita^{us}
 in s^{an}ct^{us} MARIA de t^{er}ra T. R. E. in illa^{us} iacet^{ur} ip^{sa}
 die qua^{us} ill^{ud} p^{er} fuit mortu^{us}. &c. est p^{er} post^{er}ea inde
 fuit fuisse.
 Schimin^{us} in t^{er}ra luoni^{us} tullebosc^{us} clumit^{ur} Drogo. n.
 mans^{us}. q^{uod} debet habere t^{er}ram Wapent^{us} cu^{us} saca loca.
 In todrebi t^{er}ra b^{er}eng^{us} de todem^{us} debet habere est p^{er}
 dunelm^{us} n. bou^{er} t^{er}re. 7 b^{er}eng^{us} loca inde.
 Testat^{ur} Wapent^{us} p^{er} comit^{um} t^{er}re. qd^{am} est p^{er} dunelm^{us} debet
 habere t^{er}ra. n. firm^{us} cu^{us} saca 7 loca. Eudo. f. Spine
 uenit^{ur} t^{er}ra qu^{am} t^{er}ra fuit. simil^{is} cu^{us} saca 7 loca.
 loca est t^{er}ra. Alno^{us} fenchel^{us} Alschel^{us}.

CLAUONES IN WESKEDING.

LAGOLRIS WAPENTAC testat^{ur} qd^{am} Elno^{us}
 habuit loca 7 saca sup^{er} t^{er}ra sua. n. carue in d^{omi}n^o.
 Modo h^{ab}et Soreb^{er}ant^{us} post^{er} eu^{us}.
 Abb^{as} de Burg^{us} clum^{us}. n. bou^{er} t^{er}re in Ralun t^{er}re
 colluani 7 Wap^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am} T. R. E. uenit^{ur} in eccl^{esi}a
 om^{ne}u^{us} s^{an}ct^{us} in lincolia.
 T^{er}ra qu^{am} Gocet^{us} f. Litra clum^{us} in Carleone^{us}
 sup^{er} Norm^{an}n^{us} crast^{us}. mu^{er}diauer^{us}. n. burgen^{us} f^{er}
 lincolie. Guder^{us} Latum^{us} Siu^{us}in^{us}. de Agemund^{us}
 T. R. E.
 In Scamone Norm^{an}n^{us} crast^{us} sup^{er} milit^{um}. n. lib^{er}
 una^{us} mark^{us} auri. hoc uadit^{ur} luoni^{us} uiccom.
 In Soreb^{er}ant^{us} h^{ab}et. T. R. E. habebat Gocet^{us}
 antecessor^{um} Norm^{an}n^{us}. n. bou^{er} t^{er}re dimid^{us}
 ut Wapent^{us} testat^{ur}.
 Vna^{us} car^{er} t^{er}re in ead^{em} h^{ab}et clum^{us} Gislebe^{us} de qu^{am}
 sup^{er} abb^{as} de burg^{us}. Wapent^{us} a^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am} ip^{sa}
 t^{er}ra cu^{us} loca sua habet s^{an}ct^{us} p^{er} t^{er}re. de qua. h. e. f. fuit
 uiu^{us} f^{er} mortu^{us}.
 In Norelha^{us} h^{ab}et clum^{us} Rem^{us} est p^{er} bou^{er} t^{er}re.
 7 Wapent^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am} ip^{se} debet habere.
 Quarta^{us} parte^{us} filiu^{us} q. calu^{er}it^{ur} 7 annu^{us} f^{er}
 7 colluani in h^{ab}et. die Wap^{us} qd^{am} s^{an}ct^{us} p^{er} t^{er}re de
 burg^{us} debet habere.
 Wapent^{us} testat^{ur} qd^{am} Vich^{us} Alfort^{us} 7 Kest^{us}
 Almer^{us} habuit saca 7 loca sup^{er} t^{er}ra sua.
 sup^{er} h^{ab}et suos in t^{er}ra t^{er}re h^{ab}et.
 7 sup^{er} foriss^{us} t^{er}ra de Wapent^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 n. parat^{us} loca. comit^{um} t^{er}ra. h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 de herice. t^{er}ra sua p^{er} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 Sequ^{us} f^{er} qd^{am} t^{er}ra comit^{um} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 in d^{omi}n^o fuit foriss^{us} t^{er}ra. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 parat^{us} ad. p^{er} comit^{um} t^{er}re. h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 p^{er} t^{er}re ab h^{ab}et.
 Simile^{us} de t^{er}ra Soreb^{er}ant^{us}. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 De omib^{us} t^{er}ra^{us} n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 Simile^{us} de herice. Simile^{us} de herice. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 comit^{um} t^{er}re. h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 In hac clum^{us} t^{er}re n^{on} est clum^{us} t^{er}re. n. parat^{us} h^{ab}et s^{an}ct^{us} t^{er}re.
 Rob^{ert} de todem^{us} neq^{ue} Radulf^{us} de mortem^{er}.
 p^{er} antecessor^{um} suos.
 T. R. E. habuit Grimel^{us} sup^{er} t^{er}ra sua saca loca.
 f. Anno q^{uod} mortu^{us} fuit ill^{ud} fuit ip^{se} foriss^{us} t^{er}re.
 dedit illa^{us} o^uer^{us} l^ou^{us} uiccom^{us} p^{er} t^{er}ra sua.
 de ill^{ud} fuit herice.
 In Dunelbi de t^{er}ra h^{ab}et ind^{us} h^{ab}et Gocet^{us}. n. bou^{er}.
 7 Juo. n. bou^{er}. h^{ab}et est p^{er} de h^{ab}et h^{ab}et loca.

Robert, then leading a crusade in the Holy Land, but was usurped by his brother Henry, who mounted the throne in 1100.

A conflict between the two brothers arose, which eventually resulted in the invasion of Normandy, the defeat of Robert's army at Tenchebrai (1106), and the capture of Robert himself, who was then confined in Cardiff Castle; on attempting to escape, his eyes were put out. Trouble with the Church resulted in a compromise, and Henry I died in Normandy in 1135. The religious order of knighthood, known as Knights Templars, was inaugurated; and woollen manufacture was introduced into Wales by a colony of Flemings. Stephen (of Blois) usurped the throne from Matilda, daughter of Henry I, and became King of England in 1135.

A civil war was immediately begun on behalf of the rightful Queen. The Scottish king led an army into England, but was defeated in the Battle of the Standard, at Northallerton, in 1138. A year or two later Robert of Gloucester raised an army and defeated Stephen, taking him prisoner at the battle of Lincoln in 1141. Matilda was proclaimed Queen, but she made enemies on all sides, and the people rose and compelled her to flee from London. In the war which followed, Robert of Gloucester was captured, but was exchanged for Stephen. Matilda, becoming disheartened, left the Kingdom, and Robert died in 1146.

Prince Henry, Matilda's son, who had inherited Normandy, Anjou, Touraine and Aquitaine, contested the crown with Stephen. He crossed the Channel with a large army, and met the forces of Stephen at Wallingford. A conference took place at which it was agreed that Stephen should reign for the remainder of his life, and that Henry should succeed him. Stephen died at Dover in 1154, and with him ended the Norman era.

THE PLANTAGENETS.

The founder of this line of English kings was Henry II, son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou, who ascended the throne in 1154. Besides England, he had inherited vast domains on the Continent, and was one of the most powerful rulers in Europe. The chief events of this reign, which was one of the most notable in English history, were the struggles with the clergy, the murder of Thomas Becket, the conquest of Ireland,

rebellion of the King's sons, war on the Continent, war with the Scots, and the adoption of trial by jury.

Henry, wishing to remedy the great difficulty (almost impossibility) of punishing clerics for actual crimes committed, brought in the Constitutions of Clarendon in 1164. By these it was ordained, among other things, that clerics accused of crime should be tried by a secular as well as an ecclesiastical court, and in the event of being found guilty should not be withheld from justice by the Church. Archbishop Becket, whom Henry had expected to help him in the matter, proved a strong opponent, and a great struggle between the King and the Church took place until the murder of the Archbishop in his cathedral at Canterbury. A thrill of horror at this crime passed over the whole of Western Europe, and Henry did penance at the tomb. Becket was canonised, and "St. Thomas" became a very popular saint in England.

CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

This island, at the time of its conquest by Henry II, was divided into five kingdoms, and one of its chiefs (Dermot McMurchad) had been dethroned by a confederacy of the other four ruling chiefs. In order to get back his kingdom, Dermot, in return for military aid, promised Henry to become his vassal. The English king, being engaged elsewhere at the time, did not lead the first expedition in person, but allowed some of his knights, including Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, to take up arms in aid of Dermot. The expedition was entirely successful; Wexford, Waterford and Dublin being captured, and Dermot reinstated. On the death of the Irish chief, Strongbow succeeded to the throne, and Henry, fearing that he and the other chiefs might become too powerful, recalled them to England, and himself went over to Ireland at the head of a large force. Nearly all the Irish chiefs gave in their allegiance, and in 1171 Ireland became a possession of the English Crown. Henry II died in 1189, and was succeeded by his eldest son, Richard I.

DAWN OF OVERSEA ADVENTURE.

The coronation of this king was marked by a terrible massacre of Jews who had assembled to witness the ceremony. Similar



MALMESBURY ABBEY, WILTSHIRE
A famous seventh century Abbey containing the tomb of Athelstan

massacres also took place at York, Norwich and Stamford. One of the principal events of this reign was the expedition to the Holy Land, or Third Crusade. Richard (Cœur de Lion), being fond of warlike enterprise, equipped a large army at the expense of his subjects, and in conjunction with the French king set out for the Holy Land. Richard conquered the Island of Cyprus, and, on reaching Palestine, took part in the capture of Acre, and the defeat of the Saracen troops, under Saladin at Jaffa and Ascalon. Jerusalem was, however, left uncaptured owing to dissensions among the Crusaders themselves, and Richard left Palestine in 1192.

While travelling through Germany on his return to England, Richard was seized by the Archduke of Aus-

tria and imprisoned for several years, eventually being released on the payment of a heavy ransom by the people of England. In the meantime the Kingdom was sadly misgoverned, and efforts were made by his brother John to deprive him of the crown. Richard was, however, as much beloved by his people as John was hated, and the nation cheerfully paid the ransom demanded by the Archduke of Austria.

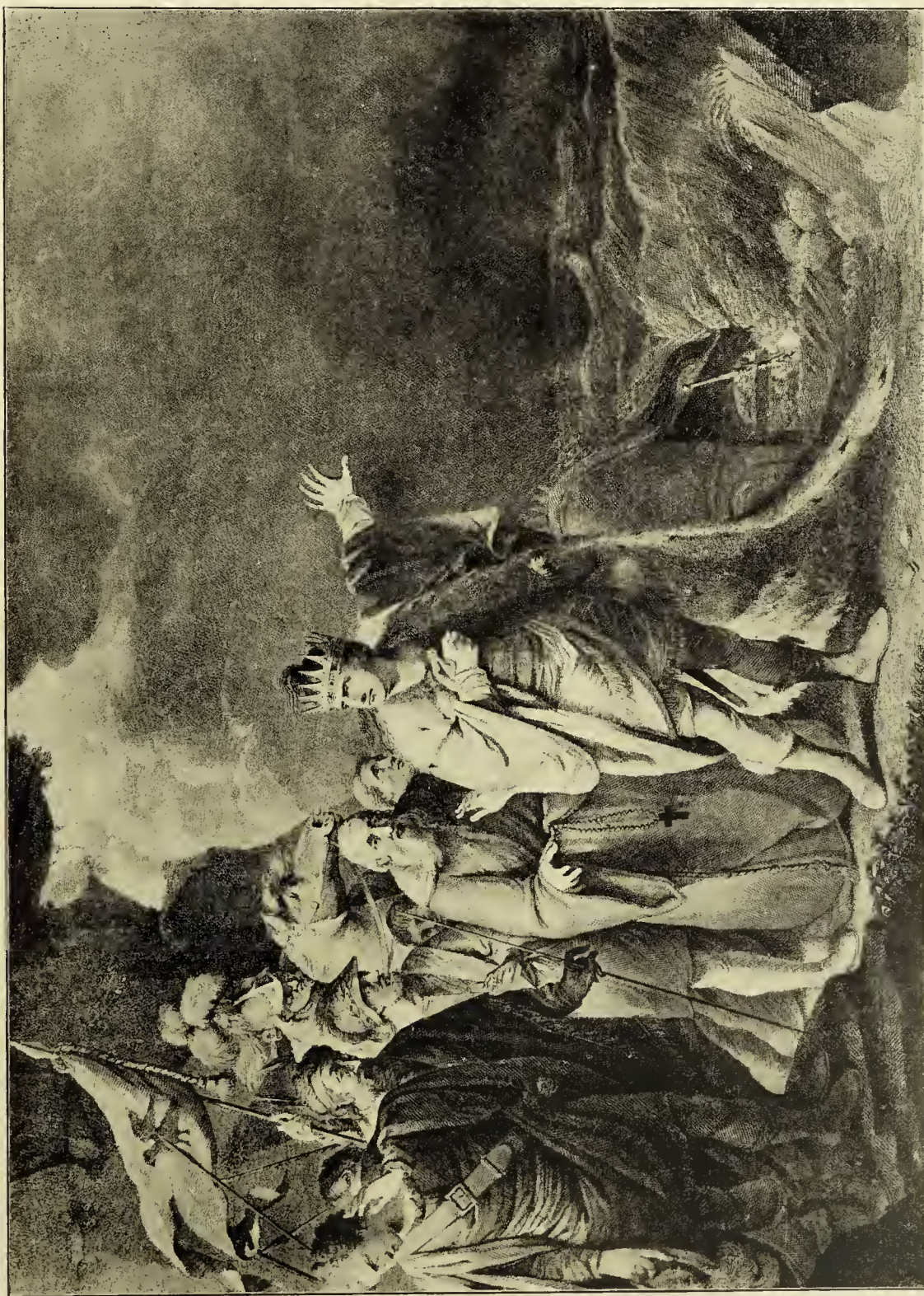
Scarcely had Richard returned from captivity, before he led an expedition into

France to punish the French king, who had aided his brother John in his treacherous efforts to secure the throne. John surrendered and was pardoned, and a truce was concluded with Philip of France, but



WELLS CATHEDRAL (West Front), SOMERSETSHIRE
Built in 1135-66. The West Front contains 300 carved stone figures

Photos, G.W. Rlv.



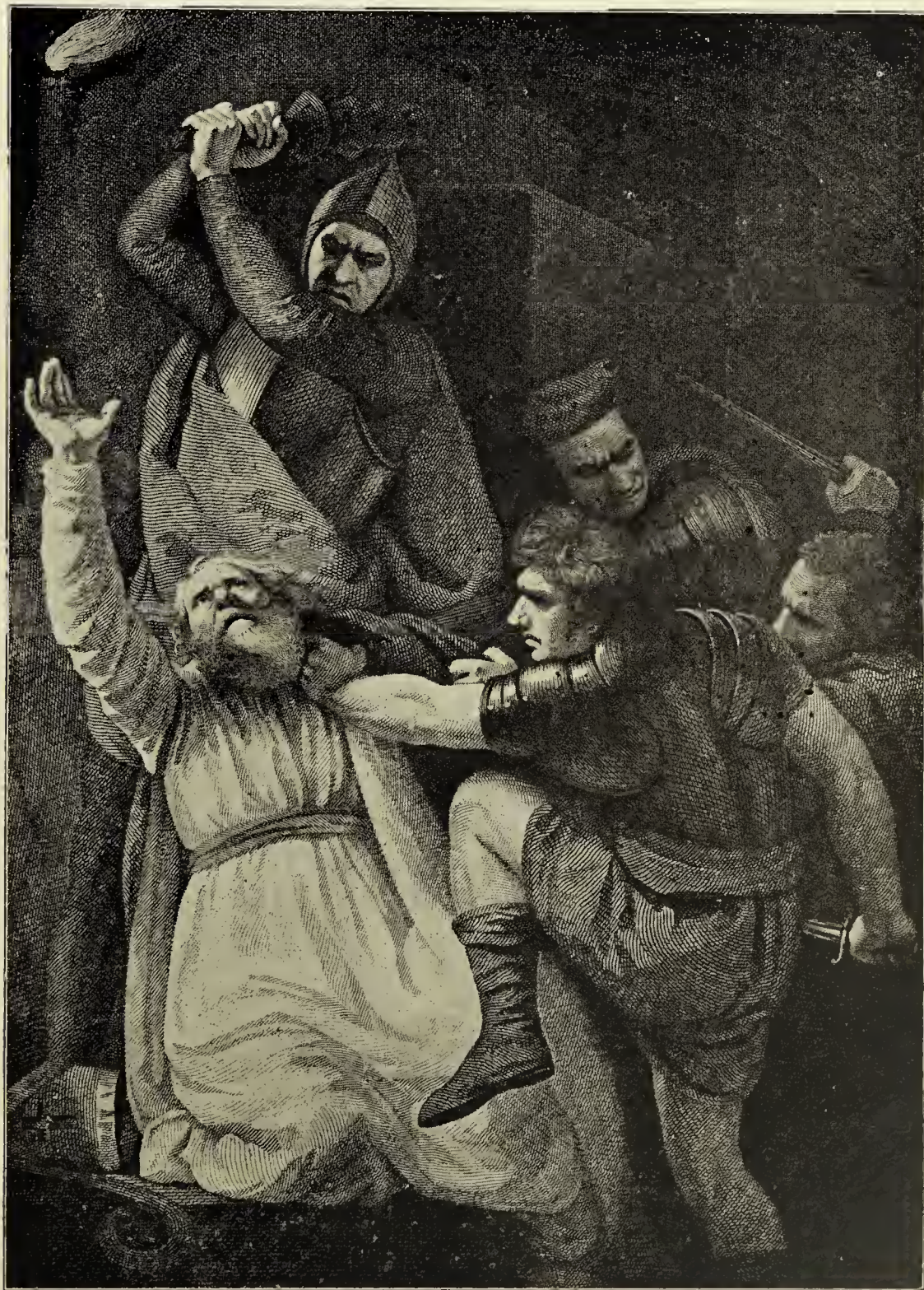
KING CANUTE COMMANDING THE WAVES TO BE STILL

W. A. Mansell & Co.



W. A. Mansell & Co.

WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR RECEIVING THE CROWN OF ENGLAND]



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET IN CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL



Photo, W. I. Mansell & Co.

KING JOHN SIGNING MAGNA CARTA

From a painting by Mortimer



W. A. Mansel & Co.

From the painting by J. E. Leprieux

THE BURNING OF JOAN OF ARC, AT ROUEN, IN 1431



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

From a painting by James Northcote

MURDER OF THE PRINCES IN THE TOWER



From the painting by Ernest Board

THE DEPARTURE OF JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT FROM BRISTOL
ON THEIR FIRST VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY, 1497

From the original in the Bristol Art Gallery



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

EXECUTION OF LADY JANE GREY

From a painting by Delaroche

Richard died of a wound in 1199. John, who usurped the throne, was of a despicable and cruel disposition. He carried off and married the affianced bride of the Count de La Manche, while his own queen was alive, and sanctioned the murder of Prince Arthur, the rightful heir to the throne.* He engaged in humiliating struggles with the Pope, the King of France, and his own nobles, in all of which he was ultimately defeated.

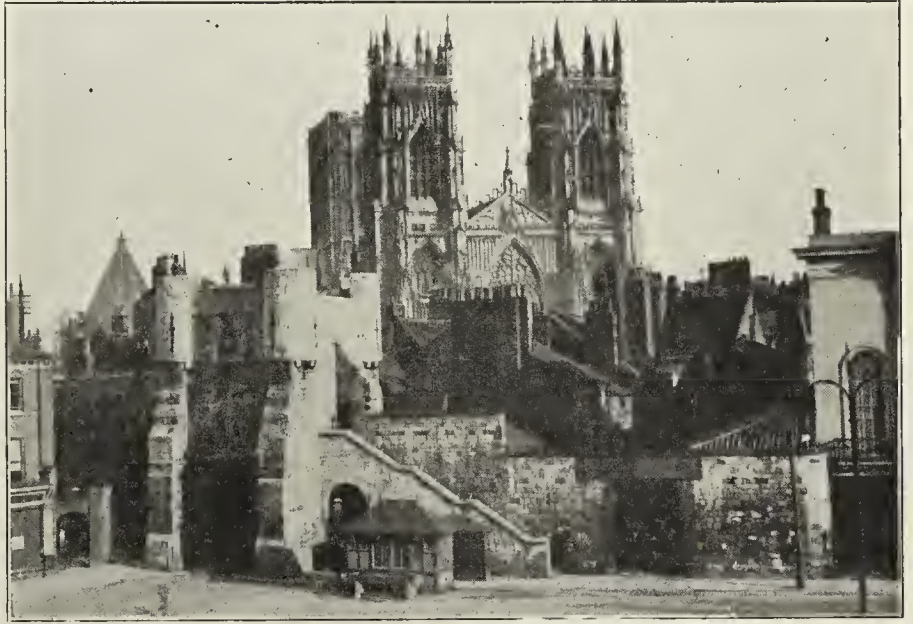


Photo by kind permission of the Town Clerk

YORK MINSTER AND OLD CITY WALL

Once the Eboracum of the Romans, York still contains many interesting relics of the past; among them, the Minster, which was built between 1154-1400. From the reign of Henry II onwards Parliament frequently sat in York

MAGNA CARTA.

The principal event of his reign was the signing of the Magna Carta, at Runnymede, on 19th June, 1215. In this document were embodied many restrictions on the arbitrary actions of the King. In one clause the ancient privileges of

London were guaranteed, in another it was stipulated that the Church (*Ecclesia Anglicana*) should be free, and in yet another that justice was not to be sold, delayed or denied to any subject.

Although King John signed this treaty, he made no effort to keep to its conditions, and an unsatisfactory war with the Barons followed. He died at Newark in 1216.

It is interesting to note that during this reign Londoners were allowed for the first time to elect a Mayor; the first to be so elected being Henry Fitz-Alwin (1208). London Bridge was completed, and chimneys first invented. Henry III, John's eldest son, was crowned King of England in 1216. His was a long



TINTERN ABBEY, MONMOUTHSHIRE

Photo, G.W. Rly.

Nave of the famous church built at the close of the twelfth century

* It is said by some historians that he murdered him with his own hands.

and feeble reign. As he was only ten years of age at the time of his coronation, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed Regent. The Dauphin, who had been assisting the Barons in their struggles against John, was quickly overthrown. On the death of Pembroke the direction of affairs was entrusted to Hubert de Burgh. A short and successful war with France preceded the Civil War, which was caused by the young king's extravagance and liking for foreigners.



PEMBROKE CASTLE

The Great Keep, built in the reign of King John, is 80 feet high

ORIGIN OF PARLIAMENT.

The leader in this struggle between the nobles and the King was Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester. By a decree of the Mad Parliament, held at Oxford in 1258, twenty-

four nobles were appointed guardians of the King. A war ensued, in which the nobles gained the decisive victory at Lewes in 1264, the King and his principal supporters being taken prisoners. To this

victory may be traced the origin of the House of Commons (1265). Previously the King's council had been composed entirely of nobles and the clergy, but Leicester in order to strengthen his hand by popular power, issued writs in the King's name to cities, boroughs and counties, asking each to send two representatives to Parliament. A turn in the wheel of fortune made the King again triumphant, and Leicester was defeated and slain in the battle of Evesham (1265). Henry III died in 1272.



WESTMINSTER ABBEY
Rebuilt during the reign of Henry III

Photos, G.W. Rly.



Photos, L. & N.W. Rlv.

TWO FAMOUS WELSH CASTLES BUILT IN THE REIGN OF EDWARD I

(1) CARNARVON CASTLE (2) CONWAY CASTLE

ANNEXATION OF WALES.

It was during this reign (1239) that a licence was first granted to the people of Newcastle to dig coal. Westminster Abbey was rebuilt and the mariner's compass was invented. Edward I ascended the throne on his return from Palestine in 1273, one year after the death of his father. The first important event was the conquest of Wales (1282). Llewellyn, the last reigning Prince of Wales, who had aided Leicester, had been compelled to acknowledge his allegiance to King Henry, but on being summoned to renew the oath to Edward I, refused to do so unless Eleanor de Montfort, to whom he was betrothed, was released from captivity.



SALISBURY CATHEDRAL, WILTSHIRE

The only Cathedral built entirely in the Early English style. The spire is the most lofty in the kingdom, 404 feet

A war ensued, and the Welsh sued for peace, but the severity of the English rule caused an insurrection, and Edward with a powerful force defeated the Welsh at Llandiloawr.

In this battle Llewellyn was slain, and his brother David was shortly afterwards captured and executed. At the Council of Rhuddlan (1283) Wales was annexed to the Crown of England.

THE STRUGGLE WITH SCOTLAND.

War with Scotland resulted in the English victory at Dunbar (1296), after which Edward received the allegiance, as feudal lord, of the Scottish nation, and carried to London from Scone the stone on which the Scottish sovereigns were crowned. This stone is now placed under the Coronation



ST. GEORGE'S CHAPEL, WINDSOR

Windsor Castle, for many years the premier residence of the Kings of England, was rebuilt in the reign of Edward III by the famous architect, William of Wykeham

Chair in Westminster Abbey. An insurrection broke out in Scotland in the following year, in which the Scots, under Wallace and Douglas, gained a victory at Cambuskenneth (1297), but suffered signal defeat at Falkirk in the following year. Among the names famous during these troublous times in Scottish history must be mentioned John Baliol, Robert Bruce, and William Wallace. Edward I died in 1307, while on his way to Scotland to quell the rebellion caused by the illustrious Robert Bruce raising the Royal Standard of Scotland and being crowned at Scone.

During the reign of Edward I the Great Charter was confirmed, with the additional stipulation that no tax should be levied without the consent of the Lords and Commons ; and, by the Statute of Mortmain, the rising temporal power of the Church was checked. The present banking quarter of London, known as Lombard Street, was formed about this time by the settlement there of a number of money-lenders and merchants from Lombardy. Edward II (1307) was a weak king with a strong regard for worthless favourites. Piers Gaveston and Hugh le Despenser were the first two on whom he showered both honours and power. This led to a war between the King and the nobles, which resulted in varying success for both parties.

In the meantime the Scots, under the great Robert Bruce, had organised a large army and regained most of their fortresses. Edward II marched with 100,000 men to the relief of Stirling Castle, which was on the point of surrendering. The Scottish Army, under Bruce, was not more than 40,000 strong, but at the Battle of Bannockburn (1314) the English forces were completely overthrown, and Scotland became an independent kingdom.

Further trouble arose between the King and his nobles, brought about by the infidelity of Queen Isabella, which resulted in the imprisonment of Edward and the resignation of the crown to his son. Edward was soon afterwards brutally murdered in Berkeley Castle at the instigation of his faithless and unscrupulous Queen. Edward III was under age when he came to the throne in 1327, and a regency was formed with Lancaster as the head, but the Queen and her

favourite, Mortimer, were the real power. At the age of eighteen, Edward III threw off the restraint placed upon him, imprisoned and executed Mortimer, and confined the Queen in Castle Rising, Kent, for the remainder of her life.

FAMOUS BATTLES OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

The principal events of this reign were two wars with Scotland, in 1333 and 1346, and three wars with France, in 1339, 1346 and 1356, in all of which the English armies were victorious. It was during Edward's second and third campaigns in France that the famous battles of Crecy (1346) and Poitiers (1356) were fought and won. In a naval engagement off Sluys (1340) an English fleet of 250 sail, commanded by the King, inflicted a crushing defeat on the French fleet of 400 ships.* It is said that over 200 French ships were sunk, and 30,000 men placed *hors de combat*. Towards the close of this reign Charles V of France succeeded in wresting from the English all the conquests made, and also in depriving Edward III of his hereditary continental dominions, with the exception of Calais. Many of the earlier victories of the English in France were due to the military genius of the Black Prince. Edward III died in 1377.

Among the other important events of this reign must be mentioned the passing of the Law of Treason ; the terrible plague, known as the Black Death, which swept over Europe, visiting England in 1349 and killing one-third of the population ; the institution of the Order of the Garter ; and the rebuilding of Windsor Castle by the great architect William of Wykeham. Wycliffe, the reformer, and Chaucer, the poet, lived in this reign. Richard II, who ascended the throne in 1377, was the son of the Black Prince. He was under age at the time of his accession, and the government was placed in the hands of a council. The imposition of a poll-tax caused a rebellion in the Eastern Counties in 1381. This was known as Wat Tyler's Insurrection. The rebels marched on London, and after doing considerable damage were persuaded by the King to disperse. Wat Tyler (a blacksmith) was slain, and many hundred were imprisoned and executed.

* The number of ships engaged is doubtful.

Richard grew tired of the restraint placed on him by the Commission of Regency, and on coming of age threw off the yoke and ruled as an absolute monarch. Treachery to his uncles, the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester, caused his downfall. Gloucester was mysteriously murdered at Calais, and the estates of Lancaster were seized on the death of the Duke, whose son, Henry Bolingbroke, after living some years in exile, returned to England and was joined by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland. Rich-

ard, on returning from Ireland, was taken prisoner by Bolingbroke and his supporters, and confined in the Tower, where he signed his abdication in favour of Bolingbroke, who had no direct hereditary title to the

throne. Richard II was done to death in Pontefract Castle in 1399. It was during this reign that the present Westminster Hall was built, and that peers were first created by letters patent.



THE MILL, GUYS CLIFF, WARWICK
Famous in the days of Piers Gaveston

HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Bolingbroke took the title of Henry IV, and commenced his reign by instituting many needed reforms. An unsuccessful invasion of Scotland was followed by a Scottish invasion of Northumberland, which was, however, checked at Kemildon (1402). A rebellion in Wales was headed by Owen Glendower, who successfully defied the King's authority. In 1403 the Percies allied themselves with Glendower and the Scottish Earl Douglas. A battle was fought between royal and rebel forces



HARLECH CASTLE, MERIONETHSHIRE
Surrendered and dismantled, 1468

Photos, G.W. Rly.

at Shrewsbury in 1403, in which the rebels were utterly defeated. A second rebellion occurred in 1405, in which the leading spirits were the Duke of Northumberland, the Earl of Nottingham, and the Archbishop of York. This was finally suppressed at Tadcaster in 1408. Henry IV died in 1413, after laying the foundations of the fierce

were of a generous nature, but the persecution of the Lollards was continued. The claim of Henry V to the throne of France caused a war with that country, which was, itself, torn by the antagonism of the two great Houses of Orleans and Burgundy. The first expedition, which was led by Henry in person, achieved the decisive victory of



NOTTINGHAM CASTLE

Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

A famous stronghold of mediæval England. Many stirring events took place within and without its walls in the days of Robin Hood, Charles I, and Cromwell

feud which lasted for many years between the Houses of York and Lancaster.

MILITARY POWER IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

It was during this reign that the persecution of the Lollards (followers of Wycliffe) was begun; and members of Parliament were granted freedom from arrest. Henry V (son of the founder of the Lancastrian Line) came to the throne in 1413. His first acts

Agincourt (1415) with greatly inferior numbers. The second expedition, in which Henry led a much larger army, was equally successful, and the Perpetual Peace was signed at Troyes in 1417. By this treaty Henry became Regent of France during the King's lifetime, and was to succeed to the crown at his death. A revolt in the provinces south of the Seine was soon crushed by Henry, whose wonderful success made his reign one of the most brilliant in the annals of English military



EXETER CATHEDRAL, WEST FRONT

One of the most beautiful Cathedrals in England. The Norman Towers are unique and the decorations are of the period 1281-1369

history. He died in the midst of his glorious career (1422). It was during this reign that a permanent Royal Navy was established—previously merchantmen had been borrowed when occasion demanded.

Although Henry V is generally credited with having established the national navy, it was really not until after the defeat of the Spanish Armada (1588) that the British Navy received its first great impetus. Henry VI was only nine months old on his accession to the throne in 1422, and a Council of Regency, with the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester at its head, was appointed. Charles VI of France died soon after his great rival Henry V, and, by treaty, the crown of France was assumed by the King of England. The Duke

of Bedford was appointed Regent. The cause of the Dauphin was, however, strongly upheld in many parts of France, and war resulted. Assisted by the House of Burgundy, the English were at first successful, winning the battles of Crevent (1423), Verneuil (1424, and Hering's (1429). About this time a peasant girl, known as Joan of Arc, persuaded the French to entrust her with the command of the army, insisting that she had been sent from Heaven to free the country from foreign aggression. A series of reverses was

then suffered by the English, but Joan was taken prisoner by the forces of Burgundy, and was sold to the English, by whom she was tried for sorcery and burned in the market-place of Rouen.



EXETER CATHEDRAL, THE CHOIR

Photos, G.W. Rly.



EXETER CATHEDRAL, WEST FRONT

One of the most beautiful Cathedrals in England. The Norman Towers are unique and the decorations are of the period 1281-1369

history. He died in the midst of his glorious career (1422). It was during this reign that a permanent Royal Navy was established—previously merchantmen had been borrowed when occasion demanded.

Although Henry V is generally credited with having established the national navy, it was really not until after the defeat of the Spanish Armada (1588) that the British Navy received its first great impetus. Henry VI was only nine months old on his accession to the throne in 1422, and a Council of Regency, with the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester at its head, was appointed. Charles VI of France died soon after his great rival Henry V, and, by treaty, the crown of France was assumed by the King of England. The Duke

of Bedford was appointed Regent. The cause of the Dauphin was, however, strongly upheld in many parts of France, and war resulted. Assisted by the House of Burgundy, the English were at first successful, winning the battles of Crevent (1423), Verneuil (1424, and Hering's (1429). About this time a peasant girl, known as Joan of Arc, persuaded the French to entrust her with the command of the army, insisting that she had been sent from Heaven to free the country from foreign aggression. A series of reverses was then suffered by the English, but Joan was taken prisoner by the forces of Burgundy, and was sold to the English, by whom she was tried for sorcery and burned in the market-place of Rouen.



EXETER CATHEDRAL, THE CHOIR

Photos, G.W. Rly.

THE BRITISH EMPIRE



WARS OF THE ROSES.

The war dragged on for some years, but on the whole disadvantageously for the English, and a temporary armistice was concluded in 1444. Hostilities were renewed in 1452, but again the fortune of war turned against England, and all the conquests of Henry V (with the exception of Calais) were lost. The death of the able Duke of Gloucester in 1447, followed by the mock trial and execution of the Earl of Suffolk, and Cade's Rebellion in Kent (1450) caused great discontent in the country, which was increased by the insanity of the King. Disputes arose between the Duke of Somerset (who was acting as Regent during the King's imbecility) and the Duke of York, heir-presumptive to the throne (on the death of Gloucester). Thus began the Wars of the Roses, which lasted for thirty years. The first conflict at St. Albans (1455) ended victoriously for the Yorkist cause. The death of Somerset and the appointment of the Duke of York as Protector, caused a lull in the actual hostilities, but each party was awaiting events.

The partial recovery of the King and the dismissal of the Duke of York from the office of Protector caused hostilities to be renewed. The whole country was divided into two factions, the Yorkists, whose badge was the white rose, and the Lancastrians, who wore the red rose. Many bloody conflicts took place during the long struggle. The principal battles were as follows : Blore Heath (1459), Yorkist victory (followed by defeat) ; Northampton (1460), Yorkist victory ; Wakefield (1460), Lancastrian victory ; Mortimer's Cross (1461), Yorkist victory ; St. Albans (second), (1461), Lancastrian victory ; Towton (1461), Yorkist victory ; Hedgely Moor (1464) Yorkist victory ; Hexham (1464), Yorkist victory ; Barnet (1471), Yorkist victory ; Tewkesbury (1471), Yorkist victory ; Bosworth (1485), Lancastrian victory. Henry VI was dethroned after the first battle of St. Albans, and died ten years later (1471) in the Tower.

HOUSE OF YORK.

On entering London in 1461, the Duke of York was proclaimed King, becoming Edward IV. A large Lancastrian army in the north caused the Wars of the Roses to be continued, and the eventual alienation of some

of the most powerful supporters of the House of York compelled Edward to become an exile in 1470 ; and Henry VI was released from the Tower and replaced on the throne. In the following year Edward returned from France with a small army, and after fighting the battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury succeeded in regaining the throne. Margaret, wife of Henry VI, and her son, Edward, were taken prisoners. The Queen suffered five years' captivity in the Tower before being ransomed by the King of France and the young prince was put to death. On the day following the victory at Tewkesbury, King Henry was found dead in his prison.

In this way the Yorkists disposed of their principal rivals, but some fourteen years later a new champion of the Lancastrian cause arose in the person of Henry Tudor. In the meantime Edward renewed his claim to the crown of France, and crossed the Channel with a large army, but through desertion and intrigue was induced to sign a treaty with Louis XI, which provided for annual payments of money in place of the crown. Edward IV died at Westminster in 1483. It was during this reign that printing was introduced into England, William Caxton establishing a press in Westminster Abbey, where the first book to be printed was *The Game of Chess*. The next King of England was Edward V, who was barely thirteen years of age on coming to the throne in 1483. This ill-fated monarch never reigned, both he and his infant brother being murdered by the infamous Gloucester, who usurped the throne and was crowned as Richard III in 1483.

THE TUDOR LINE.

The principal events of this reign were the murder of the Princes in the Tower, followed by Buckingham's Rebellion in favour of his old enemies, the House of York, and in 1485 the final conflict in the Wars of the Roses. Henry Tudor, although not a legitimate descendant, was generally looked upon as leader of the House of Lancaster. He had spent much of his life in exile, but, being promised powerful support, landed at Milford Haven with three hundred French troops. He was joined by large numbers of English adherents to the Lancastrian cause on his long march through Wales. Crossing the Severn at Shrewsbury, he moved forward towards Leicester, and met the royal army

under Richard at Bosworth (1485). Lord Stanley, in command of one wing of the king's forces, deserted to the Lancastrian side, and Richard was completely overthrown and killed. The crown of England, which was found under a bush on the field of battle, was at once offered to Henry Tudor, Duke of Richmond. It was during the reign of Richard III that the laws of England were first written in English (previously in French), and consuls were first appointed.

EARLY EXPLORATIONS.

Henry VII (Henry Tudor) was a prince of the House of Lancaster, and on ascending the throne in 1485 united the two great factions by marrying the Princess Elizabeth, the representative of the House of York. This terminated the bloody Wars of the Roses which had torn the whole country for thirty years. This reign was a long and comparatively peaceful one. A rebellion occurred in 1491-97, which was headed by Perkin Warbeck, an imposter, who represented himself to be one of the young princes murdered by Richard III in the Tower. He received encouragement from France and Scotland, but was eventually captured, imprisoned and hanged at Tyburn. The Earl of Warwick, who had aided Warbeck in an attempted escape from the Tower, was also executed. Henry VII died at Richmond in 1509. It was during this reign that Columbus discovered America (1492); Sebastian Cabot explored the coast of North America (see under *Canada*); the Portuguese navigator, Vasco da Gama, rounded the Cape of Good Hope and reached India (*q.v.*); and Henry, himself, built the thousand-ton vessel *Great Harry*.

Henry VIII, who was only eighteen years of age when he ascended the throne in 1509, was one of the richest of England's kings, having inherited several millions sterling from his father, Henry VII. He began his reign in very favourable circumstances, for he united in his own person the claims of the two rival Houses of York and Lancaster. War with France was the first event of importance, the only combat deserving the title of battle being that of the Spurs (1513), in which the English mounted archers routed the French Army. Peace was made in the following year. In the meantime Scotland,

owing to various causes of dissatisfaction, took up arms in aid of the French. The Scottish king, James V, with a large army, invaded England, but was met and defeated by an English army under the Earl of Surrey at Flodden (1513).

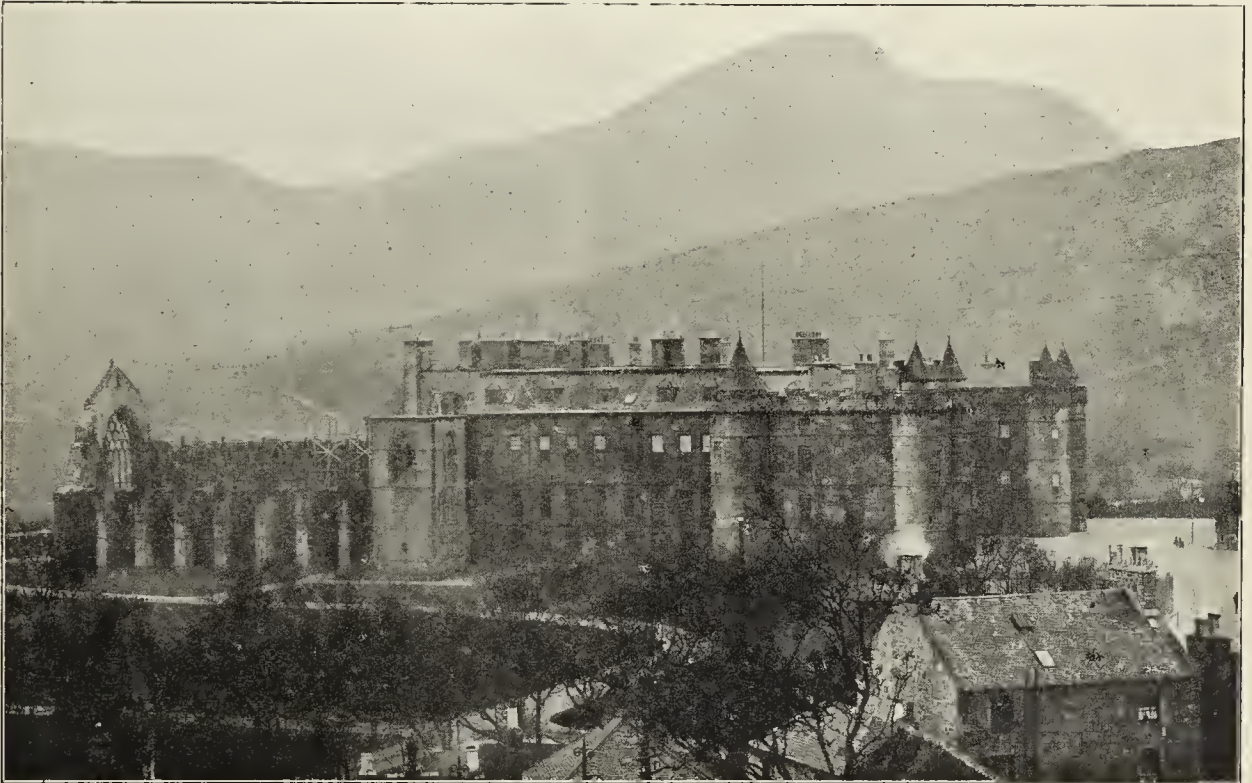
THE REFORMATION.

It was during this period that Cardinal Wolsey rose to almost supreme power in England. For fifteen years he virtually ruled the country. The son of an Ipswich grazier, he was educated for the Church, and by pandering to the vices of Henry VIII succeeded in rising to the Chancellorship, but notwithstanding his wonderful ability his fall was almost as rapid as his rise, and he died in 1530. In the meantime, however, the Duke of Buckingham, who had incurred the displeasure of Wolsey, was arrested and executed on a false charge of treason.

The Reformation was at this time making headway in many parts of Europe. Martin Luther, the German reformer, was born in Saxony, in 1483. From the Continent the new doctrine made its way to England, but was strongly opposed by Henry, who, himself, wrote a treatise denouncing Luther. For this the Pope conferred on the royal author the title of Defender of the Faith (1521).

The next events of importance were the King's divorce from Catherine, the fall and death of Wolsey, the rise of Cranmer, the acknowledgment of Henry as supreme head of the Church of England, the marriage of Henry VIII to Anne Boleyn (1533), the suppression of the Monasteries (1536) which resulted in risings among the peasantry, the execution of Anne Boleyn (1536), the King's marriage to Jane Seymour on the day following the execution of his former wife, the religious persecutions following the separation of the Church in England from the authority of Rome and the passing of the Acts of Six Articles,* the natural death of Jane Seymour, and the marriage of the King to Ann of Cleves (1540) the divorce of Ann of Cleves (1540), the execution of Cromwell, Earl of Essex, on a charge of treason, but really because of his having been instrumental in bringing about the marriage with Anne of Cleves; the marriage of the King to Catherine

* Sometimes called the Bloody Statute.



HOLYROOD PALACE, EDINBURGH

Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

The thank-offering of a Scottish King. David I erected this Abbey after a lucky escape in the hunting field. King James V converted it into a Palace 400 years later. Only a small part of the earlier buildings remain, including Darnley's apartment with its relics and tapestries, the supper room in which Rizzio was murdered, and Queen Mary's apartments

Howard (1540), the execution of Catherine Howard (1542), the marriage of Henry to his sixth wife, Catherine Parr (1543), who succeeded in outliving him. The closing events of the reign of Henry VIII were a war with Scotland (1543), and an indecisive war with France in 1544. He died in 1547.

It was during this reign that ship building was improved, Woolwich Arsenal was founded, Hampton Court Palace was built, Trinity College (Cambridge) and Christchurch (Oxford) were founded, and Ireland was constituted a Kingdom. In 1547 Edward VI, then only ten years old, was crowned King, but a council of sixteen was appointed to administer the Government. The Duke of Somerset, uncle of the King, made himself Protector, and ruled from 1547 to 1549. A war with Scotland, undertaken to force the Scots to consent to the marriage of their

Princess Mary (afterwards Mary, Queen of Scots) with the young King of England, was begun in 1547, and the Scottish forces were defeated by the English Army under the Protector at Pinkie. The Princess was, however, immediately conveyed to France and betrothed to the Dauphin. Rebellions occurred in many parts of the country, notably in Norfolk, but were bloodily repressed.

THE TRAGEDY OF LADY JANE GREY.

The fall of Somerset, the Protector, occurred in 1550. He was eventually imprisoned in the Tower and executed in 1552. Warwick, Earl of Northumberland, succeeded him in office. By a matrimonial alliance the family of Northumberland was connected with the throne (marriage of Lord Guildford Dudley to Lady Jane Grey), and the Earl

succeeded in persuading the young King Edward to nominate Lady Jane Grey as his successor to the throne. Edward VI died in 1553. Among the events of his reign were the attempted discovery of a north-east passage to China, the opening of commercial relations with Russia, the appointment of Lords-Lieutenant of counties, and the founding of many grammar schools.

On the death of Edward, the Earl of Northumberland caused Lady Jane Grey to be proclaimed Queen against her own wishes. Mary, although excluded from the throne by the will of her father, was generally looked upon as the rightful queen, and on hearing

of the proclamation of Lady Jane retired into Norfolk, where the name of Northumberland was odious, owing to the cruel suppression of a previous rebellion. Mary was supported by many of the nobles and was liked by the people. Northumberland collected a small force and marched to meet the army of Mary, but was forced to surrender at Cambridge. He was condemned and executed in 1553.

The first act of the new queen was to restore the ancient Church order. Wyatt's rebellion was suppressed with the aid of the citizens of London; and the unfortunate and unoffending Lady Jane Grey and her



EDINBURGH CASTLE

Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

"Time's Hoary Sentinel." It contains many relics of Scottish history, including the Old Parliament Hall, now filled with tattered flags, broad swords and suits of mail, each of which has a page of history or a secret in its keeping

husband, Lord Guildford Dudley, were executed (1554). The Princess Elizabeth, who had sanctioned the Wyatt Rebellion, was imprisoned in the Tower. The principal event of this reign was the persecution of heretics. A war with France, which resulted in the loss of Calais, England's last continental possession, was the final event in the reign of Queen Mary. During this period Russian ambassadors were first appointed to the English Court, and a commercial treaty was signed.

SCOTTISH HISTORY.

The next to mount the throne was Elizabeth (1558). She was the daughter of Anne Boleyn, and her first act was to restore the English vernacular liturgy, but this was done with great caution and without persecution. About this time (1561) the affairs of Scotland became complicated. Mary, who had married the Dauphin of France (Francis II) returned to Scotland on the death of the French king. Her early administration of that country was peaceful, but she incurred the dislike of her own subjects and also of the English, by her efforts at a religious propaganda. In 1565 she married Darnley; which act was followed by Murray's unsuccessful rebellion, the murder of Rizzio, the Queen's French secretary, in Holyrood Palace, and the transference of the Queen's affections to Bothwell. Shortly afterwards Darnley was murdered, and the Queen married Bothwell. Danger to the life of the young prince through Bothwell's ambition caused many of the most powerful Scottish lords to unite for his defence. A civil war broke out and the forces met at Carberry Hill (1567). The Queen was taken prisoner and confined in Lochleven Castle, where she signed the abdication in favour of her infant son, James. With the aid of friends inside the Castle she succeeded in escaping, and was joined by several powerful lords. An army was raised, but was quickly overthrown at Langside Hill (1568), and Mary was forced to take refuge in England. She endeavoured to obtain a personal interview with Elizabeth, but owing to certain imputations against her, the Queen would not grant it until she had cleared herself. An inquiry was instituted, but the results were unsatisfactory, and Mary was confined in Tutbury Castle. Rebellions occurred in

various parts of England, among the Roman Catholics, with the object of setting Mary at liberty; and the Duke of Norfolk was executed as the instigator (1571).

The extensive persecutions of the Protestants in France, Spain and the Netherlands, combined with the conduct of Pope Pius V, who caused Elizabeth to be excommunicated and forbade all her subjects to obey her on pain of a similar sentence, compelled the Queen of England to suspect an extensive Romanist plot on the Continent to dethrone her. She aided with men and money the revolt of the Netherlands against Spanish dominion and persecution, and so incurred the hatred of Spain which afterwards resulted in the despatch of the great Spanish Armada. In 1586 Babington's Conspiracy to assassinate Elizabeth and place Mary Queen of Scots on the throne was discovered and its instigators executed. Mary, herself, was accused of complicity in this and other plots on the life of Elizabeth, and was tried and executed in Fotheringay Castle (1587).

RISE TO NAVAL POWER.

Spain now declared war against England, and prepared to despatch the great Armada. Drake destroyed many of their ships in the harbour of Cadiz, and hasty preparations were made to resist the Armada with an English fleet and army. The command was given to Lord Howard of Effingham, but under him served the distinguished captains Drake and Raleigh. A storm aided the English fleet, and the Spanish Armada (1588) was all but destroyed, only 50 battered vessels returning to Spain. The war continued for some time, Cadiz being taken by the English and many of the Spanish provinces in America being raided. A rebellion in Ireland was suppressed in 1602; and a revolt in London, raised by the Earl of Essex, owing to his removal from the command of the army in Ireland, resulted in the execution of Essex—once the Queen's favourite—in the Tower in 1602. Elizabeth died at Richmond in 1603. It was during this reign that the English Navy received its first great impetus, Sir Francis Drake sailed round the world, and the East India Company received its first charter. (See under *Indian Empire*).



SHAKESPEARE'S BIRTHPLACE, STRATFORD-ON-AVON

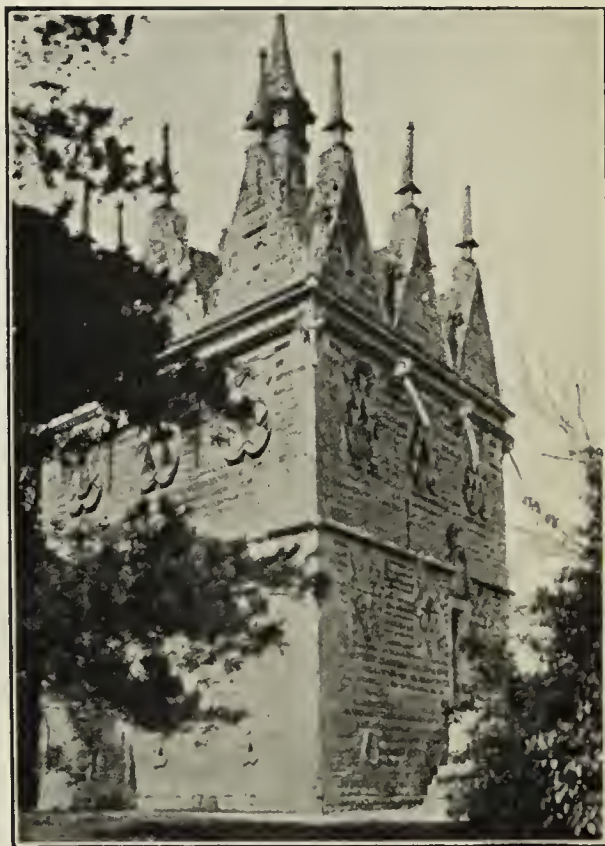
Birth of the Empire

UNION OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.

With the accession of James I (previously James VI of Scotland) to the throne of England in 1603, the rise of the British Empire may be said to have begun. It was at Edinburgh that James heard of the death of Elizabeth, and he hastened to London. For some time previous he had, however, been in secret correspondence with Cecil, the son of the great Burghley, and with the rebellious Earl of Tyrone and the Pope, whose support had been assured. Although from the beginning his selfish and cunning nature rendered him unpopular, there was no active opposition to his succession, and the two kingdoms of England and Scotland became united after many years of independence and hostility.

Conspiracies were the chief events in the early part of this reign. First came the Surprise Plot (1603), which was an organised effort on the part of the Roman Catholics to seize the King and compel toleration; next, the Spanish Treason (1603), which aimed at the dethronement of the King with the aid of Spanish money and troops, and the offer of the crown to Lady Arabella

Stuart. It was in this plot that Sir Walter Raleigh was implicated, and for which he suffered thirteen years' imprisonment in the Tower, being executed in 1618. Next came the Gunpowder Plot (1605), which was a conspiracy by Catesby, Fawkes, Percy, Wright and other Roman Catholics, to blow up Parliament when the King was present at its opening. The timely discovery of this plot through an anonymous letter addressed by one of the conspirators to Lord Mounteagle, whom he desired to



Photos. G.W. Rlv.
CONSPIRATORS' LODGE, RUSHTON
The rendezvous of Catesby, Fawkes, Percy, Wright and others engaged in the Gunpowder Plot

save, led to the discovery of Guy Fawkes hidden in the vaults beneath the Houses of Parliament ready to set fire to a large store of gunpowder, which had been collected there by the conspirators (5th November, 1605). Most of the conspirators were captured and executed.

The ineffective Hampton Court Conference between the leading members of the Puritan party and those of the Church took place in 1604; but was dissolved by the King after three days of violent discussion, and a royal proclamation was issued enforcing strict conformity with the doctrines of the Church. Disputes between the King and the Parliament were almost incessant, and the investing of worthless favourites with high offices led to much discontent. In 1617 James visited Scotland for the first time since his accession, his object being to substitute Episcopacy in the place of Presbyterianism. In this he was successful.

COLONISATION OF ULSTER.

After the suppression of Tyrone's rebellion in Ireland during the previous reign, the large estates belonging to the rebel leaders, comprising nearly the whole of Ulster, were confiscated, and during the reign of James I were split up into allotments and given to large numbers of Lowland Scotch and English emigrants. It was in this way that Ulster was first colonised.

Among other events in this reign was the release of Sir Walter Raleigh from the Tower and his expedition to Guiana in search of an alleged gold mine. An affray with the Spaniards angered James, and the sentence of death which had been hanging over Raleigh since his participation in the Spanish Treason was carried out on the return of the expedition to London in 1618. The present translation of the Bible was accomplished during 1607-10; the title of Baronet was created and sold for the benefit of the Royal Purse; Dr. Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood; and colonies were established in North America.

The marriage of Elizabeth, eldest daughter of James, to Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, who made an unsuccessful attempt to obtain the crown of Bohemia, and was in consequence deprived by the Austrians of the palatinate itself, led James to take up arms in defence of the Elector, but the feeble

and ineffectual prosecution of the war caused Parliament to remonstrate, and Pym, Coke and many other members were committed to prison. The failure of the Spanish alliance between the King's second son Charles (Henry having died in 1612 at the age of 19) and the Infanta of Spain, displeased the people of England, who had always regarded the idea with disfavour, and the prince (afterwards Charles I) married Henrietta of France, whom he met at the court of her father (Henry IV). James I died of ague in 1625, and was buried at Westminster.

THE PARLIAMENTARY STRUGGLE.

Charles I, who ascended the throne, was a strange contrast to his father, and in appearance was every inch a king. His first act was to marry Henrietta of France, who, being a Roman Catholic princess, was regarded with as much disfavour as the Infanta of Spain; and the upstart Buckingham, once George Villiers, a page at the court of his father, was retained in the highest favour. The whole country was split into three parties: the Puritans, zealous in religion, whose efforts were directed against Popery and to obtain national liberties; the Country Party, whose object was the securing of civil rights, but who were content with the Church; and the Court Party, who believed in the "Divine Right of Kings," and supported the Crown even when in opposition to the rights of the subject. These parties were all strongly represented in the House of Commons, the last, however, being the weakest, and whenever it was necessary the two former united to obtain an overwhelming majority.

This was the political state of the country at the time of the first parliament of Charles I, who was anxious to secure a large money vote to pay the expenses of his recent marriage and to provide funds for a war against Spain. Trouble arose out of the supply question, as the Commons doubted the advisability of a war with Spain, and they voted only a small sum. Wishing to prevent the misappropriation of money, they reversed the custom of bestowing "tonnage" and "poundage"—the former being the duty paid on all wine imported, and the latter a duty of twelve pence in the pound on all other goods imported and exported—on the King for life, at the time of his accession, and



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

From an old print

DISCOVERY OF GUY FAWKES IN THE VAULTS OF THE
HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT

granted it for one year only. This measure was thrown out by the Lords. In 1625 help was being furnished to the Elector and the King of Denmark in their resistance against the Catholic powers of Germany. Urged forward by the unscrupulous Buckingham, Charles also despatched an expedition to attack Cadiz, which had as a subsidiary object the intercepting of the Spanish treasure fleet, with the spoils of which the King's treasury was to have been replenished.

The utter failure of this expedition compelled the King to make every effort to court the favour of the second Parliament, which he did successfully, with the result that liberal supplies were promised; but the Commons decided to impeach Buckingham, whom they regarded rightly as the evil genius of the King. At this critical moment Charles came into collision, over several high-handed acts, with the House of Peers, and was obliged to give way. Buckingham was impeached before a tribunal of the Lords, and in order to save his favourite, Charles dissolved the second Parliament before any supplies had been voted. In order to obtain money he resorted to illegal taxation. In 1627 Buckingham succeeded in bringing about a war between England and France in order to avenge a private injury, and the expedition sent to assist the Huguenots, who were then defending themselves in La Rochelle, ended in complete disaster, with the result that the Huguenots, much to the indignation of the people of England, were abandoned.

THE PETITION OF RIGHT.

The third Parliament was convened by the King in 1628 in order to obtain supplies. The Commons offered liberal subsidies on the condition that the royal assent was given for the redress of a list of grievances embodied in the Petition of Right. The King at first agreed to this drastic proposal, which has been likened in importance to the Magna Carta, and then broke faith and resorted to the old ways of illegal taxation, imprisonment and the enforcing of compulsory loans. The next event of importance was the assassination, by Felton, of the Duke of Buckingham while preparing another expedition to La Rochelle. On the death of Buckingham, Charles took for his advisers, Archbishop Laud, and Wentworth, after-

wards Earl of Strafford, the latter having been gained over from the popular cause.

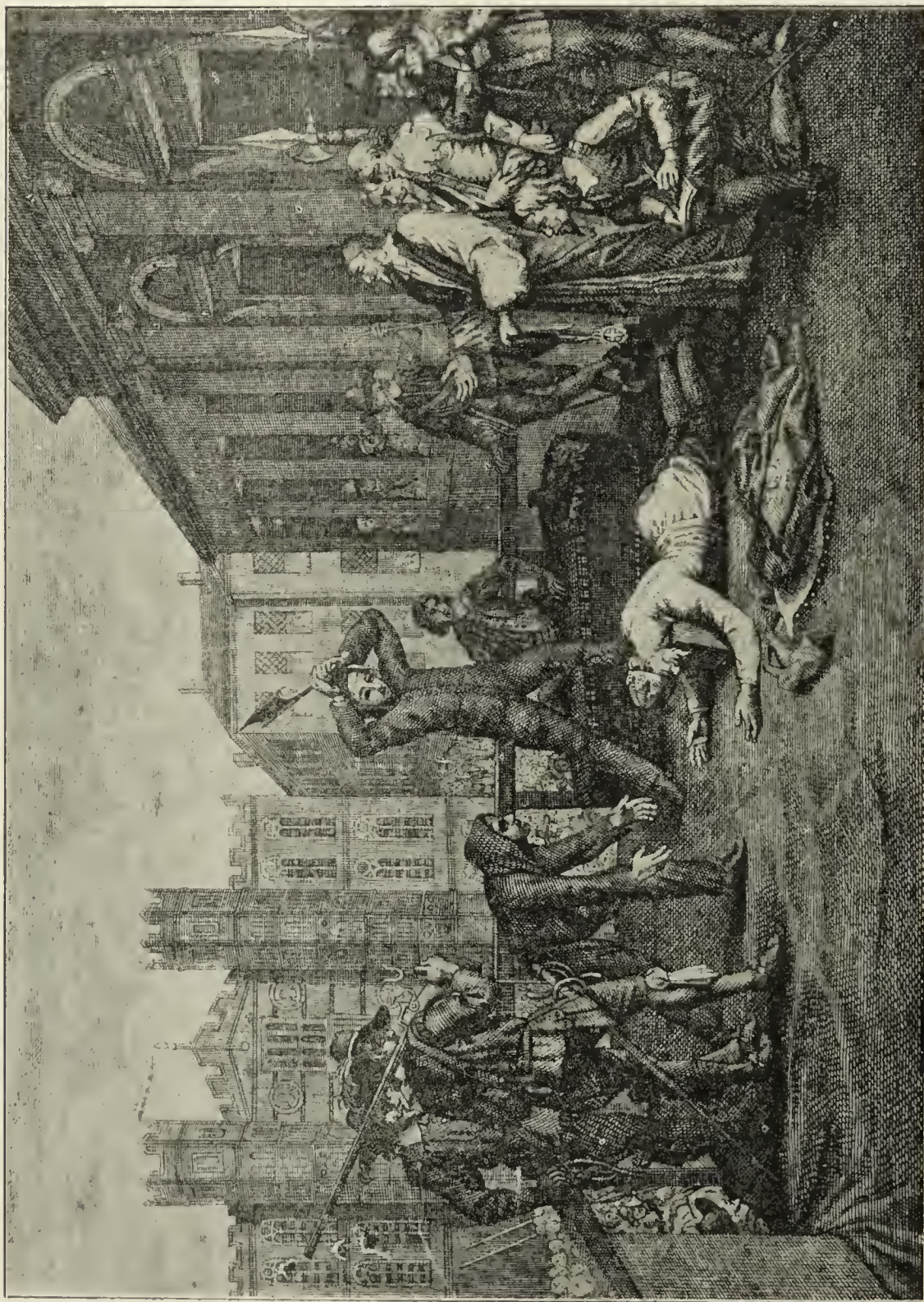
On the reassembling of Parliament, Sir John Eliot brought forward several resolutions against religious innovation and illegal taxation. A tumult occurred, and when the Speaker, acting under instructions from the King, refused to put them to the vote, he was assaulted by two members and held down in the Chair while the resolutions were passed with enthusiasm. Officers sent by the King to stop the proceedings found the doors locked against them, and soldiers were despatched to force their way in and clear the House, but before they could arrive the members had adjourned. A week later Charles dissolved Parliament. Several members were arrested and fined; and Eliot died in prison.

From 1629-1640 Charles I ruled with despotic power, raising the necessary revenue by illegal taxation. The Courts of the Star Chamber and of the High Commission were in force, having jurisdiction over civil and ecclesiastical matters, respectively. In order to illustrate the severity of these tribunals it is necessary to refer only to one case, that of Leighton, a Puritan, who had published a book against prelacy. This unfortunate man was sentenced to pay a fine of £10,000, to be twice publicly flogged, to have his nostrils slit, his cheek branded, and to be imprisoned during the King's pleasure.

THE COVENANTERS.

In 1637 Charles attempted to enforce the use of the English liturgy in Scotland, which brought about the unification of all classes in Scotland and the signing of the Solemn League and Covenant (1638). The Covenanters denounced popery and episcopacy, and formed an army, under Lesley, to defend their rights. An English army was despatched to suppress the rising, but was unsuccessful, and Charles was compelled to resort to the weak policy of negotiation.

In 1640 another English army invaded Scotland, but the Covenanters, anticipating the move, had entered Northumberland, and the King, knowing that disaffection was rife among the troops, again entered into negotiations. In order to obtain supplies for the subjugation of the Scots, Charles convened, in 1648, what is known as the Short Parliament, but instead of granting supplies, the



W. A. Mansell & Co. EXECUTION OF KING CHARLES I OUTSIDE THE PALACE OF WHITEHALL, ON JAN. 30th, 1647

From an old print

Commons enumerated the illegal acts of the King and his council, with the result that Charles dissolved it after it had been in existence only three weeks. Beset with difficulties, the King summoned a second Parliament in the same year. This is known as the Long Parliament, and a whole series of reforms were instituted, among the most important of which was the abolition of the Star Chamber and High Commission (1641), and the limiting of the duration of Parliament to three years. The next event was the impeachment of the Earl of Strafford, which collapsed, but was followed by his attainder, the bill passing both Houses with but little opposition, and Charles weakly gave his consent. Strafford was executed, and many acts of violence were done by this Parliament. An Act was also passed to prevent the dissolution of Parliament without its own consent.

CAVALIERS AND ROUNDHEADS.

To effect the overthrow of the King's authority the Commons proceeded to extreme measures, and proposed the removal of the bishops from the House of Lords. Many members of the opposition enrolled themselves as a body-guard for the King, and were called Cavaliers, while others sided with the Parliament and were called Roundheads. Again doing the wrong thing at the crucial moment, Charles, when he was regaining popularity by allowing himself to be advised by the moderate party, demanded the impeachment of his principal opponents and himself went to the Houses of Parliament with an armed guard to arrest Pym, Hampden, Hollis, Hazelrig, and Strode. The members had, however, left and taken refuge in the Guildhall. On the following day they were escorted to Westminster by a guard of 6,000 armed citizens with artillery. This was the beginning of the Civil War, for Charles retired, first to Hampton Court, and then to Windsor. In this same year there broke out the Irish Rebellion. A great massacre of Protestants resulted.

The Civil War

Two bills were sent by Parliament to Hampton Court for the royal assent. One was for the removal of the bishops from the House of Lords, and the other was to place

all the military forces under parliamentary control. The King assented to the former, but rejected the latter. A period of discussion followed, and it soon became apparent that any definite understanding between the King and the Parliament could not be arrived at. The Queen had left for the Continent to sell the crown jewels in order to provide funds for the Royal Army, and Charles raised his standard at York and was joined by many supporters. The advantage was, however, on the side of the Parliament, as they had the navy entirely in their favour, and no help could reach the King from abroad. The Parliamentary Army at first numbered 15,000 men. Nearly all the towns, including London, were on their side; but the nobility, landed gentry, and the Church and Catholic parties, were hard and fast for the King. The first battle was fought at Edgehill (1642), where the Royalists gained the advantage. Lindsay, their commander, was, however, slain, and the losses on both sides numbered about 1,500. Charles retired on Oxford, and the Parliament opened peace negotiations, but these were unwisely rejected by the King and his advisers.

The principal battles of the Civil War are : Chalgrove Field, 1643 (Parliamentary success); Lansdown (Royalist victory); Roundway Down (Royalist victory); Atherton Moor (Royalist victory); Newbury, 1643 (indecisive); Marston Moor, 1644 (decisive Parliamentary victory — aid of Scottish forces); Cropredy Bridge (Royalist victory); second Battle of Newbury, 1644 (indecisive); Naseby, 1645 (decisive Parliamentary victory). The Battle of Naseby was the most decisive combat in the Civil War, and ruined the cause of Charles I. In Scotland the Marquis of Montrose successfully upheld the King's cause until 1643. He defeated the Duke of Argyll and the other Parliamentary leaders in several engagements; but after the desertion of many of his followers, was defeated by Lesley at Philiphaugh in 1643, and was compelled to take refuge in the Highlands.

While these events had been taking place, the Parliamentarians had themselves divided into two parties—Presbyterians and Independents. The latter succeeded in passing the Self-denying Ordinance, under which a member of either House was prevented from holding military command. An exception



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

OLIVER CROMWELL DISSOLVING THE LONG PARLIAMENT

From a painting

was made in the case of Cromwell, who was considered indispensable both in Parliament and in the army. An attempt was made by a commission which met at Uxbridge to negotiate with the King, but this failed. Archbishop Laud was tried and executed in 1645. After the defeat at Naseby, Charles took refuge in Oxford, but, seeing that nearly all his strongholds had fallen, and that Oxford itself was threatened, he gave himself up to the Scots, who surrendered him to the Parliamentary forces.

The Presbyterians having gained a majority in the House of Commons, and being jealous of the power enjoyed by the army, denounced Cromwell and the other military commanders as traitors. Colonel Pride, with a company of soldiers, was despatched to clear the House of all those members who disagreed with the views of the army. This Act is known as "Pride's Purge." The remaining fifty members were known as "The Rump," and they immediately passed an ordinance for the trial of the King. Although this measure was rejected by the House of Lords, Charles was arraigned as a traitor in Westminster Hall, the presiding judge being the notorious Bradshaw. It was by this illegal tribunal that Charles I was tried and condemned. He was beheaded on 30th January, 1649, on a scaffold erected in front of the Banqueting House of Whitehall, and was buried at Windsor.

It was during the reign of Charles I that linen manufacture was introduced into Ireland by Strafford, who did much for that country; Covent Garden Market was built and hackney coaches were first used in England.

The Commonwealth

When the confusion occasioned by the overthrow of the Royalist cause and the execution of the King had somewhat subsided, there still existed three opposing political parties: (1) the Royalists, who, although beaten, were quietly waiting for an opportunity to assert the rights of Charles II; (2) the Presbyterians, hostile to the Independents, but growing more friendly towards the Royalists; and (3) the Independents, who, although weak in political representation, had talented and vigorous leaders and the entire support of the army. With the

execution of the King the Rump abolished the House of Lords and declared it treason to proclaim anyone as King. A Council of State was appointed to take the place of the House of Lords, with Bradshaw as President.

The Prince of Wales was proclaimed King in Ireland on the death of his father, and, the Irish people being favourable to his cause, some Royalist successes were gained. Cromwell, who had, however, been appointed Lord Lieutenant, landed at Dublin with a large and well-trained army. No battle was offered in the open, but a series of sieges were begun, among the most famous of which were those of Drogheda and Wexford. On their capitulation to the Parliamentary forces a horrible and ruthless massacre took place. While Cromwell was investing Waterford he was recalled on account of trouble brewing in Scotland, and Ireton succeeded to the command and subdued the country.

The Scottish Parliament had proclaimed Prince Charles as King of Scotland on his signing the Solemn League and Covenant; but in the meantime Montrose had led a Royalist expedition in his favour, which was defeated and the chief was hanged at Edinburgh. Cromwell, now Commander-in-Chief, decided on the invasion of Scotland, and after crossing the border came up with the Scots, under David Lesley, at Dunbar (1650), and defeated them. Charles was, however, crowned at Scone, and an army for the defence of the country was concentrated at Stirling. On the advice of the newly-crowned King, this utterly inadequate army marched into England, hoping to swell its ranks with English adherents to the Royal cause. In order to allow this army to cross the border and then to cut off communication with the Highlands, Cromwell took up a position at Perth and then followed the King's forces southwards, overtaking and utterly defeating them at Worcester in 1651. Charles succeeded in escaping, and after many adventures arrived in Normandy. General Monk, who had been left in Scotland by Cromwell, quickly reduced the country to subjection. Thus both Ireland and Scotland were subdued, and Cromwell had made himself the supreme power throughout the British Isles.

The refusal of the Dutch States to enter into an alliance with the English Commonwealth, and the assassination of the English



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

CROMWELL REFUSING THE CROWN (1653)

From a painting

envoy (Dr. Dorislaus) at the Hague, caused a war to break out between the English and the Dutch in 1652. The command of the British fleet was given to Blake, who defeated the Dutch Admirals Van Tromp, De Ruyter and De Witt. When peace had been made in 1654, the Parliament, intending to curb the power of Cromwell, endeavoured to disband the army. This produced a storm of complaint from the military faction, and as the Parliament would not yield to the demands of the troops, Cromwell went to the House with a strong force of soldiers, and, driving out the members, locked the doors and placed the keys in his pocket.

THE PROTECTORATE.

With the dissolution of the Long Parliament, the only authority in the three Kingdoms became that of the army, but Cromwell, thinking it imprudent to dispense entirely with the appearance of a Parliament, decided to create one which would be subservient to his will. With this object in view he ordered the ministers of religion to nominate members from which Cromwell and his officers made a selection. This, which was known as Barebone's Parliament, consisted of 139 Englishmen, four Scotsmen, six Irishmen, and six Welshmen. The measures passed, although honest in purpose, did not meet with the approval of Cromwell, and the members were dismissed.

A new plan for the government of the British Isles was then drawn up, the supreme authority being vested in Cromwell as the Lord Protector, and a Parliament consisting of 400 members for England, thirty for Scotland, and thirty for Ireland was created. Parliament was to be summoned every three years, and must sit for at least five months before being prorogued or dissolved. Royalists and Roman Catholics were prohibited from voting. At the same time the first standing army in England was established, consisting of 30,000 men. The first Parliament (1654) assembled under the new scheme did not prove tractable, and was dissolved at the end of the five months.

A war with Spain next occupied the attention of the country. This was undertaken ostensibly to obtain for British merchants the right to trade with America. Although the fleet, which was despatched to the West Indies under the command of Admiral Penn

and General Venables, failed in general purpose, it succeeded in capturing the island of Jamaica in 1655, and some time later a Spanish treasure fleet was captured in Cadiz harbour. Blake's last sea fight was the daring attack on Santa Cruz, in the island of Teneriffe; he died on the return voyage, when in sight of England, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. A treaty was concluded with France, then also at war with Spain, and large forces were sent into the Spanish Netherlands. In 1656 Dunkirk was captured by the allies and was ceded to the English.

The third Parliament under the Protectorate was assembled in 1656, and sat for nearly two years, but 100 members were excluded owing to their opposition to Cromwell. It was this Parliament which gave Cromwell the right to appoint his successor and to create a House of Lords. Eventually becoming unmanageable, it was dissolved. In the year 1658 Oliver Cromwell died of ague in the midst of his triumphs. Virtually King of England, Scotland and Ireland, he intended to found a dynasty, but his son, Richard, who succeeded him as Lord Protector, lacked both the ability and the ambition to rule, preferring the life of a country gentleman. He succeeded, however, to the position of first authority without a dissentient voice; but with the meeting of Parliament in 1659 trouble arose over an effort made to curtail the power of the Council of Officers, who represented the army and were the advisers of the Lord Protector. The council compelled Richard to dissolve Parliament after a sitting of only three months, and the "Rump" was restored. Finding that his power was declining, Richard willingly resigned office and withdrew to the Continent, eventually returning to England and dying in 1712.

Restoration of the Commonwealth

A dispute within the military faction caused the second dismissal of the Rump, and a Committee of Safety was formed, consisting of twenty-three persons. In this Committee the supreme authority was vested. In the meantime General Monk, commanding the army in Scotland, was carefully weeding from his forces all upon whom he could not



From an old print

THE FIRE OF LONDON

W. A. Mansell & Co.

rely. Although he had faithfully supported Cromwell, he had originally been a Royalist, and was at this time the "unknown quantity" in the political situation. The people throughout the country were eager for a free Parliament, and in 1660 General Monk and his army set out on the march to London. To the great joy of the people, Monk restored the excluded members of the Long Parliament, which, however, dissolved itself finally on 16th March, 1660. A new Parliament was immediately elected, known as the Convention Parliament, in which the Royalists constituted a large majority. On the first meeting of the new Parliament a letter was received from Charles, together with the Declaration of Breda, which promised: (a) a pardon to all except those charged by Parliament; (b) full liberty of conscience as sanctioned by Parliament; and (c) the settlement of disputed estates and the arrears of the army. Charles was at once invited to return without the imposition of any restrictions.

Restoration of the Stuarts

The prospect of a settled administration caused the people of all classes to join hands in welcoming Charles II, who made his public entry into London on 29th May, 1660, amid scenes of delirious joy. General Monk was created Earl of Albemarle, Montague was made Lord Sandwich, and Hyde became Lord Clarendon. In order to conciliate the Presbyterian faction, several of their chief members were retained as members of the King's Privy Council. In accordance with the Declarations of Breda, Parliament sanctioned the pardoning of all except the principal regicides. Ten of these were executed, and the others confined for the remainder of their lives. The bodies of Cromwell, Ireton and Bradshaw were taken from their tombs in Westminster Abbey, and were hung on gibbets.

A reorganisation of the revenue was the next important event. Charles agreed to accept a fixed annual income of £1,200,000 in lieu of the revenue derived from his feudal rights, which were abolished by law. This relieved land owners from their heaviest burdens, and they succeeded in preventing the new revenue from being derived from a land tax by voting that the excise upon beer

and other liquors should be permanently settled upon the Crown. The Royal prerogative was curtailed and the last remnant of the feudal system was abolished. Among other Acts following on the restoration of Charles II to the throne, was the disbanding of the army with the exception of 5,000 Guards, the restoration of certain Royalist lands, and the passing of the Corporation Act (1661), which was directed against the Presbyterians.

During the Commonwealth and Protectorate, England and Scotland had been closely united, but this good work was almost undone by the determination of the Parliament to restore episcopacy, and the execution of Argyll. The Act of Uniformity, passed in 1662, compelled every minister of religion publicly to declare his assent to everything contained in the Book of Common Prayer, or to be deprived of office. This caused a loss of benefice to over 2,000 preachers, who were furthermore prevented from holding religious meetings or forming congregations of their own by the Conventicle Act (1664), which provided that any person attending a religious meeting not held in connection with the Church should be imprisoned, and, for a third offence, transported for seven years.

SEA FIGHTS.

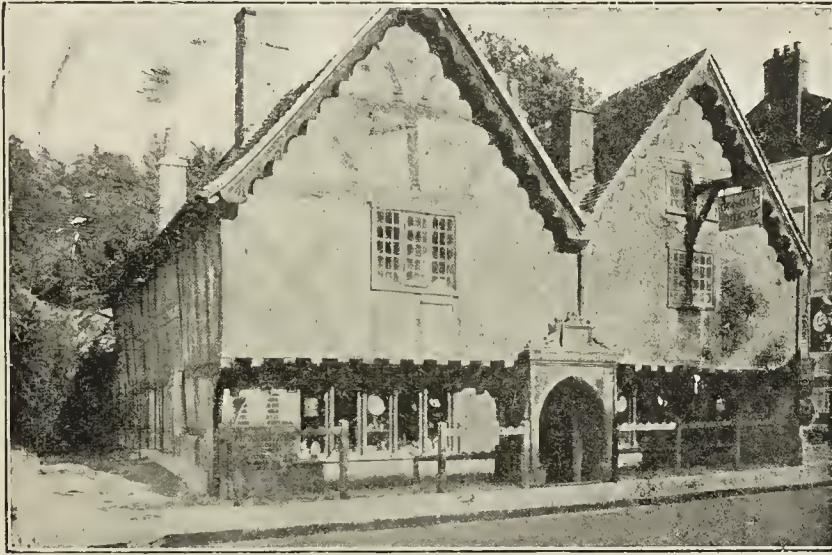
A war broke out with the Dutch in 1665. It was caused by the personal ambition of the Duke of York, who commanded the British fleet, and was hastened by an English squadron taking possession of a Dutch settlement on the American coast on the plea of discovery. This war was confined to the seas, and the first action occurred off the coast of Suffolk, where the British fleet, under the Duke of York, defeated the Dutch under Admiral Opdam. In the following year another action took place off the North Foreland, which resulted favourably to the Dutch, but was followed a few weeks later by an English victory, after which the British fleet sailed along the Dutch coast, inflicting great damage. The British commanders were Albemarle and Prince Rupert, and the Dutch admirals De Ruyter and the younger Tromp. In revenge for the raid on the Dutch coast, and while peace negotiations were pending and part of the British fleet had been cashiered, a Dutch squadron sailed up the Medway and destroyed Sheerness and



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE BATTLE OF THE BOYNE

From a painting



A RELIC OF THE MIDDLE AGES *Photo, Southern Rly.*
[The oldest house in an old city. Cheesehall Rectory, Winchester]

the dockyard at Chatham, afterwards retiring. The Peace of Breda was signed in 1667.

THE PLAGUE AND THE FIRE.

Contemporaneously with the Dutch War came the Plague of London (1665), which, starting in a crowded and dirty quarter of the city, soon spread over the whole of London. Infected houses were marked with a red cross on the door, and carts went round at night to take away the dead. It started in May and raged until December, and it is said that 100,000 persons perished in London alone. In the following year the Great Fire broke out, which raged for days. All the houses being of wood, the water-pipes empty, and a strong wind blowing from the sea, there is little wonder that 13,000 houses and 89 churches, including St. Paul's, were engulfed by the flames.

The Five-mile Act (1665) prevented ministers, who would not swear that it was unlawful to take up arms against the sovereign on any pretext whatsoever, from going within a radius of five miles of any corporate town, except when travelling, and also prohibited them from keeping schools. This, combined with the previous Corporation Act, Act of Uniformity, and Conventicle Act, was known as "The Clarendon Code." The absence of any gain from the Dutch War rendered Clarendon very

unpopular, and he was deprived of office and banished from the country. He retired to France, and there wrote his *History of the Great Rebellion*.

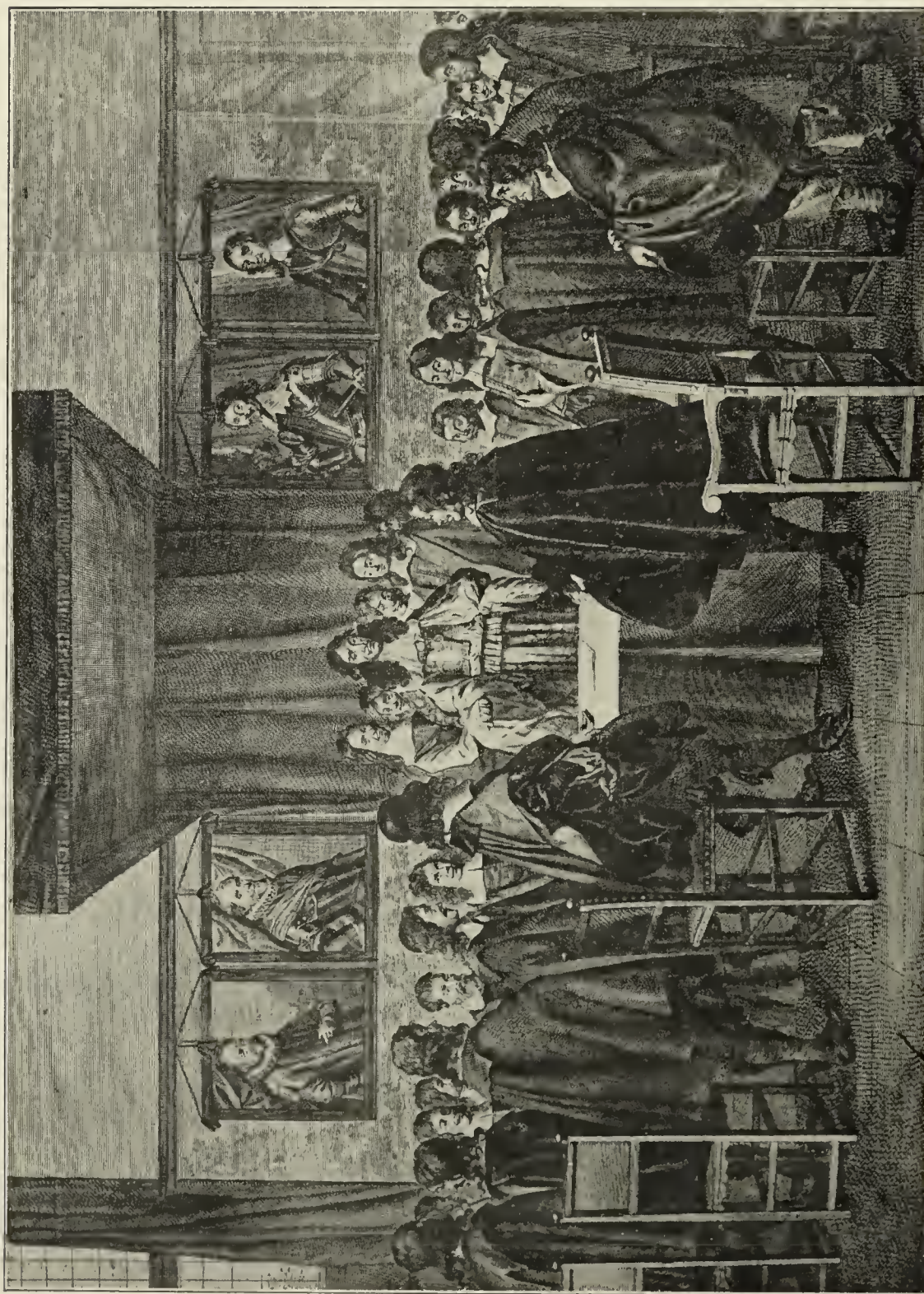
THE CABAL MINISTRY.

The ministry which took office on the fall of Clarendon, known as the Cabal (1668),



JACOBEOAN ENGLAND
The Old Cloth Hall, Newbury

Photo, G.W. Rly.



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

SIGNING THE TREATY OF BRED A

From an old print

was, perhaps, the most corrupt that had ever existed in England, and was secretly in the pay of Louis of France. A League, known as the Triple Alliance, was formed about this time between England, Holland and Sweden, in order to check the designs of the French King on the Netherlands. But Louis had bribed not only the Ministry and many members of Parliament, but also Charles II, who had so far debased himself as to enter into a secret and treacherous agreement to aid the French King against Spain and Holland in return for a pension of £120,000 per annum. There is little doubt that Charles was drawn into this nefarious design by the corrupt Cabal Ministry. Even before war had been declared, the British fleet, under Sir Robert Holmes, attacked the Dutch Smyrna fleet, and immediately on the declaration of hostilities an action between the two main fleets was fought off Ostend, with the result that the Dutch were forced to retire from the action and French forces marched into the Netherlands. The Dutch were compelled to sue for peace in 1674.

By the Coventry Act of 1671 it was made felony to disfigure the person, and the Test Act made it necessary for all holding public offices to conform more closely and publicly to the exact doctrines of the Church. This caused the resignation of the Duke of York from the Navy, as he had turned Romanist. It is asserted that this Act was aimed at no humbler personage. The fall of the corrupt Cabal Ministry was followed by the accession to power of the Danby Administration, which held office from 1673–1679, when Lord Danby (Sir Thomas Osborne) was impeached by the Commons and imprisoned in the Tower for having been a party to the treacherous French Agreement. He was betrayed by Louis, who was angered at the success of his exertions to bring about a marriage between the Princess Mary and William, Prince of Orange.

Intrigue was at this time rife throughout the country, and many plots were hatched for the sake of the rewards given for their discovery. An infamous character of the name of Titus Oates pretended to have discovered the Popish Plot (1678), and so plausible was his sworn testimony that Lord Stafford was condemned and executed, and many others were imprisoned. The Meal-Tub Plot in the following year was hatched

in the hopes of reward, and the papers on which it was based were all forgeries. Such was the state of England in the nineteenth year of the reign of Charles II.

A rebellion broke out in Scotland owing to the tyrannical way in which episcopacy was forced upon the people, soldiers being employed to prevent the observance of Presbyterian worship. After many sharp encounters between the English soldiers and the Scottish peasantry, the insurrection was finally suppressed with great cruelty by the Duke of Monmouth and Graham of Claverhouse.

RYE HOUSE PLOT.

Charles, who had been ruling without a Parliament since 1681, now sought still further to strengthen his authority by depriving London and other large towns of their charters; only restoring them on obtaining the right to have the final voice in the appointment of town officials. This gradual return to the despotic rule of Charles I caused many leaders of the patriotic party, among whom were Monmouth, Shaftesbury, Russell and Sidney, to hold frequent meetings to decide on the best measures of a non-seditious character to resist the return to the old obnoxious ways. Several of those present at these meetings were, however, of a more violent disposition, and plotted to conceal themselves in the Rye House, Hertfordshire, and from there to shoot the King when on his way to Newmarket. Several of the conspirators turned informers, and all concerned in the meetings, whether cognisant of the inner plot to kill the King or unaware of its existence, were arrested. Monmouth was pardoned, but Russell and Sidney were condemned and executed. This was known as the Rye House Plot (1683). Charles II, who married the Infanta Catherine of Portugal, by whom he had no children, died of apoplexy in 1685.

The only other event of his reign worth recording was the passing of the Habeas Corpus Act in 1679, which prevented arbitrary imprisonment, and provided that every prisoner should be brought before a judge within a limited time or released on bail, that no one should be tried twice for the same offence, and that no one should be sent to a prison overseas. Greenwich Observatory was founded; the Royal Society was

incorporated ; St. James's Park was planted ; *Paradise Lost* was published ; and Bombay, which was part of the dowry of Catherine of Portugal, came into the possession of England. (See *India, History*).

MONMOUTH REBELLION.

James II, brother of Charles, came to the throne unopposed in 1685. Although a Roman Catholic, he agreed by manifesto to respect the civil and religious liberties of his subjects, but broke all his promises within three years from the date of his accession. The Duke of Monmouth, who had been, with many other disaffected nobles, watching events from Holland, thinking England ripe for rebellion, decided to invade the country and raise the Protestant banner. He landed in Dorset with a small untrained army, but some hundreds of the West Country peasants joined his standard, and he marched on Taunton, there proclaiming himself King. Monmouth proceeded to Bridgwater, and encountered the Royal forces under Lord Churchill (afterwards Duke of Marlborough) at Sedgmoor (1685). His ill-trained army was utterly routed, and he fled, being discovered some days later hiding in a ditch. Monmouth was conveyed to London and executed on Tower Hill. This rebellion was followed by the Bloody Assize, which is the name given to the trials by the notorious Judge Jeffreys of all those who showed sympathy with the ill-fated Monmouth. Over 300 persons were executed, and 1,000 were sold as slaves in the colonies.

In Scotland, the Earl of Argyll declared for the covenant and raised a rebellion, but his forces were defeated, and he was executed at Edinburgh. With the suppression of these rebellions, James considered that he could rule as a despotic monarch and establish the Roman Catholic faith. In order to effect this he decided to maintain a large standing army and to repeal the Test and Habeas Corpus Acts. The Parliament opposed these measures and the King dissolved it. He re-established the Court of High Commission ; received an ambassador from the Pope ; and endeavoured to force the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge to admit to a degree monks and others without taking the oaths. In 1688 the Declaration of Indulgence was ordered to be read in all Churches, but the clergy refused, and asked the bishops to

support them. Seven of the prelates drew up a petition asking for the recall of the order, and were at once imprisoned, but they were acquitted by a jury.

THE PRINCE OF ORANGE.

The daughters of James were non-Romanists, and this in no small measure accounted for the toleration shown by the people of England to the King when setting aside the liberties of the people as established by the



Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

PRINCE CHARLES' MONUMENT
Loch Shiel

Civil War. It was understood that one of these daughters must succeed him ; but the unexpected birth of a son created an alarm and the leaders of the patriotic party immediately asked for the assistance of the Prince of Orange to overthrow the King's Government. William of Orange landed with a large army and a powerful fleet at Torbay in 1688. He issued a proclamation that his object was "the defence of the liberties of England." Deserters from the Royal cause flocked to his standard, and the army of 16,000 with which he landed was soon heavily reinforced. Among those who



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

ENTRY OF PRINCE CHARLES EDWARD INTO EDINBURGH

From a painting by G. Duncan

joined the Prince were Lord Churchill and Prince George of Denmark. James, seeing the danger to his throne, endeavoured to regain the lost affection of the people, but in this he failed, and seeing the desertions from his cause growing daily he left the remnant of his army and returned to London. The Prince of Orange advanced rapidly on the capital, and James attempted flight, but was brought back. He, however, succeeded in escaping a second time, and arrived safely in France, dying at St. Germain in 1701.

THE DECLARATION OF RIGHTS.

The Crown of England was offered to, and accepted by, the Prince and Princess of Orange; and with the formal tendering of the Crown was also delivered the Declaration of Rights. This declared to be illegal: (1) the suspension of the laws; (2) the Court of the High Commission; (3) taxation without the consent of Parliament; (4) the maintenance of a standing Army without the consent of Parliament; and also stated that (5) subjects might petition the King; (6) Protestants possess arms for their defence; (7) the election of members of Parliament should be free; (8) the freedom of speech in Parliament; (9) excessive bail should not be required; and (10) Parliament should meet frequently. The family of James II by his first wife (Anne, the daughter of Lord Clarendon) consisted of Mary, Princess of Orange, and Anne, afterwards Queen of England. By Mary d'Este, his second wife, James Edward, the Old Pretender.

William and Mary, after agreeing to the stipulations contained in the Declaration of Rights, were proclaimed King and Queen of England on 13th February, 1689. One of the principal features of this reign was the continual struggle between the two great political factions, the Whigs and Tories. The former and the more moderate members of the latter party supported William and Mary; but James still had many adherents among the extreme Tories. William's somewhat repulsive manner and his marked liking for his Dutch friends prevented his ever becoming popular; and many of the Whigs—his own political party—were in secret communication with the exiled King. Among these was the famous Duke of Marlborough. William's first act was the change of the Convention into a full Parliament with great

freedom, and then came the Toleration Act, which liberated dissenters from the penal statutes. The Roman Catholics were treated very leniently.

MASSACRE OF GLENCOE.

Scotland, which had suffered much at the hands of James, was generally favourable to William and Mary, but there were, however, several powerful supporters of the late King north of the Tweed; among whom were the Duke of Gordon, and Graham of Claverhouse (Viscount Dundee). The latter defeated the Royal forces under Mackay at the Pass of Killiecrankie in 1689, but was mortally wounded. The loss of this chief gave the death blow to all resistance in Scotland, and episcopacy was abolished and Presbyterianism—which has since been the national religion in Scotland—was finally established. Three years later there occurred the Massacre of Glencoe. The Highland chief, Macdonald, having failed to give in his allegiance to King William within a specified time, was declared to be a rebel, whereas the delay had been caused by unavoidable circumstances. Dalrymple, the Secretary for Scotland, in order to gratify private malice, sent troops to the peaceful vale of Glencoe, and the inhabitants were massacred without mercy.

JAMES IN IRELAND.

In Ireland, with the exception of Protestant Ulster, the cause of James was at once espoused on the landing of the exiled King at the head of a few troops lent by the King of France, and a large army was soon formed. James entered Dublin in 1689, and at once proceeded to join his army which was besieging Londonderry. This siege is one of the most famous in history. Although the town was reduced to the direst extremity, and had to contend with a numerous and well-equipped army without and treachery within, it held out until relieved by General Kirke. When this had been accomplished, the Enniskilleners sallied forth and defeated a portion of James's army at Newton-Butler. Dublin became the headquarters of James, and he summoned a Parliament and assumed the stature of a sovereign. The Duke of Schonberg was sent from England with a considerable force, but he effected little. In the following year, however, William landed at



IRELAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES. DONEGAL CASTLE

L.M.S. Riv.

Carrickfergus and routed the army of James at Drogheda on the Boyne (1690). James became a fugitive, and fled first to Dublin and then to France. William marched into Dublin and pardoned all the common people who had aided James, and then advanced southwards and captured Waterford. Limerick still held out, but Cork and Kinsale were taken by Marlborough, and Athlone fell, after a desperate resistance, to the Royalist forces under Ginckell, who subsequently routed the revolutionary army with great slaughter at Aghrim. This was followed by the surrender of Galway and the fortress of Limerick.

During the war in Ireland a naval action took place off Beachy Head, between a combined English and Dutch squadron and the French, who were endeavouring to carry supplies to the insurgent forces. Owing to the treachery of the Earl of Torrington, the French fleet was victorious. This, however, had but little influence on the campaign, which terminated with the fall of Limerick.

WAR OF THE GRAND ALLIANCE.

Next came the War of the Grand Alliance, which lasted for nine years (1689-97). One of the principal objects of William's life had been to check the ambitions of the French King, and with this aim in view he joined forces with the princes of Germany, the Republic of Holland, and Savoy. The assistance which Louis had rendered to James afforded the necessary pretext, and

hostilities were commenced in various parts of Europe; but although the war lasted for nine years, no decisive results were attained. The principal engagement was a naval action off La Hogue (1692), in which the French were completely defeated. This was the last effort made by the French



AN IRISH BARONIAL HALL
Fireplace, Donegal Castle

Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

King to place James again on the throne of England. The war terminated with the Peace of Ryswick, by which treaty the right of William to the English throne was recognised. Queen Mary died of small-pox, to the regret of the whole nation, in the year 1694.

Trouble now arose between the King and the Parliament over the size and composition of the standing army, and it was with difficulty that William was persuaded from abandoning the Government and leaving the Kingdom. Next came the Partition Treaties, which were an arrangement entered into between William and Louis XIV for the peaceful distribution of the Spanish Dominions, on the death of the childless Charles II of Spain, among the numerous claimants to the Spanish throne. An act of treachery on the part of Louis, whereby the whole of the Spanish Dominions were bequeathed by Charles II upon his deathbed, to the second son of the Dauphin, in total disregard of the arrangements with William, caused great consternation in England, as it meant the uniting of France and Spain, and a change, detrimental to England, of the balance of power in Europe.

When Louis also disregarded the Peace Treaty of Ryswick by recognising the son of James II as King of England, it became apparent that the aim of France was to be supreme in Europe. In order to frustrate this design, William formed a league, in which were included Germany, Russia, Prussia, Sweden, Holland and Savoy. War did not break out, however, until after the death of William.

The Act of Settlement (1700) became necessary owing to the death of the Duke of Gloucester, the only surviving child of Anne. By this Act all the descendants of Charles I were excluded from the throne, which was settled (after Anne) upon the Princess Sophia of Hanover and her heirs, not being Roman Catholics. William died in 1702 from the effects of a fall from his horse, and was buried at Westminster. He left no family. Among other notable events of this reign was the passing of the Triennial and Treason Bills; the latter regulating the mode of trial. The Bank of England was founded; Chelsea Hospital was completed; Greenwich Palace was changed from a royal residence into a home for old and disabled seamen; the National Debt was first created; and Peter the Great of Russia served as an apprentice to a ship-wright at Deptford.

WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

Anne, the youngest daughter of James II, ascended the throne in 1702, and reigned for

thirteen years. This period was full of important historical events. First came the War of the Spanish Succession; and the policy of William and the League was adopted. The Duke of Marlborough was appointed to the command of the Allied Forces and landed in the Netherlands with an army of 60,000 men (1702). The slowness of the Dutch delayed operations, but Venloo, Liège and other frontier towns were captured during this year. Following the plan suggested by William, an allied British and Dutch fleet, under Sir G. Rooks, carrying a force of 14,000 men, was despatched against Cadiz. This expedition, owing to gross mismanagement, failed in its purpose, but on the homeward voyage came up with the Spanish Plate Fleet and obtained a considerable amount of treasure.

A British squadron under Admiral Benbow brought a French fleet to action off the West Indies, and defeated it, but a mutiny among the British officers marred this success. In 1703, Bonn, on the Rhine, and other towns, were taken by the forces under Marlborough, and Portugal and Savoy joined the Alliance. In the following year Marlborough hastened into Bavaria to assist the Emperor of Germany, who was in danger. After breaking through the Bavarian lines at Schellinberg, Marlborough was joined by Prince Eugène, of Savoy; and the allied armies met the united French and Bavarian forces, under Tallard, near Blenheim (1704). This hard-fought battle resulted in a decisive victory for Marlborough, and the Allies recrossed the Rhine and brought the year's campaign to a close by besieging the fortresses of Landau and Trèves.

Meanwhile (1704) an expedition under Sir George Rooke to Barcelona proved unsuccessful, but on the return voyage Gibraltar was seized; and this magnificent fortress has since remained in the hands of the English (*q.v.*). Barcelona was afterwards reduced by Lord Peterborough and the Archduke Charles after desultory warfare in the surrounding country, but the opposition of the majority of the Spanish nation rendered this success of little avail. In 1705-6 Marlborough planned a campaign in Italy, but abandoned the scheme through considerations for the safety of the Netherlands; and while preparing to lay siege to the fortress of Namur was met in battle at Ramillies



W. A. Mansell & Co.

DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE AT QUEBEC, 13th SEPTEMBER, 1759

From a painting

(1706) by the French under Marshal Villeroy, whom he defeated with heavy losses. This decisive victory induced the States of Brabant to acknowledge the Archduke Charles as King; and the fortresses of Antwerp, Ghent, Brussels and Oudenarde were surrendered.

Little was accomplished during 1707, but early in the following year the French surprised and captured Ghent and Bruges, but while besieging Oudenarde were met by the allied armies and forced to raise the siege. Ghent was soon recovered and the great fortress of Lille captured. Louis of France now sued for peace, and agreed to give up all the Spanish possessions with the exception of Naples, but the allied Powers insisted on the surrender of all the Spanish Dominions, and Louis refused. The allied forces immediately besieged and captured Tournay, and were investing Mons, when battle was given by the French army under Villars at Malplaquet. The French were routed and Mons was taken. The next move was the invasion of France, and Marlborough succeeded in forcing the frontier defences erected by Villars; but a change in the English Ministry led to a secret treaty with the French King, and Marlborough's enemies at home at last succeeded in getting him recalled and dismissed from office.

THE TREATY OF UTRECHT.

Deserted by the English in this impolite and callous manner, the Allies made peace, which was ratified in 1713 by the Treaty of Utrecht. By this treaty, which was brought about by Bolingbroke (St. John) and Oxford (Harley), and was a disgrace after the magnificent successes of Marlborough, Louis obtained far better terms than those he had offered in 1708. It was thereby agreed that Philip should retain the whole of Spain; the Emperor having the Netherlands and the Italian Dominions; the Duke of Savoy taking Sicily; and England having Gibraltar, Minorca, Hudson Bay and Newfoundland (*q.v.*).

While these events had been taking place on the Continent—in the effort to maintain the balance of power in Europe—the usual party dissensions were rife in England, being even more bitter than in the reign of William. The Queen leaned to the Tory Party, and the first Ministry was formed under Lord

Godolphin (1702); but Marlborough's influence with the Queen enabled the second to be a Whig Ministry (1705), and included in the Cabinet were both Marlborough and Godolphin—never a strong Tory. The great achievement of this Parliament was the passing of the Act for the Union of England and Scotland (1707). The third Parliament was also Whig, and the only important event was the impeachment of Dr. Sacheverell for sedition. He was found guilty, but the verdict was unpopular, and caused the return of the Tories to power, under Harley (Earl of Oxford) and St. John (Viscount Bolingbroke), by whom the Treaty of Utrecht was made. Queen Anne died in 1714, and was buried at Westminster. All her numerous family had preceded her to the grave. Among other events of this reign was the establishment of "Queen Anne's Bounty"—a one-time royal revenue alienated by Charter for the perpetual augmentation of poor livings—and the first publication of the *Spectator*. Sir Isaac Newton, the philosopher, became famous.

THE JACOBITES.

The first sovereign of the Hanoverian line was George I, son of Sophia of Brunswick—a granddaughter of James I. He ascended the throne, in accordance with the Act of Settlement (1700), in the year 1714. Being of German inclinations, he was never popular. The Whigs, being the chief supporters of the House of Hanover, were predominant in the first Ministry. An early measure was the impeachment of Oxford, Bolingbroke and others for high treason in bringing about the Treaty of Utrecht. The former suffered two years' imprisonment, but the latter escaped to the Continent, where he joined the Pretender (Stuart line). In 1715 occurred the first of the Jacobite revolts, and the Riot Act was passed. Later in the same year the Earl of Mar caused an outbreak of rebellion on the part of the Jacobites with the object of restoring the Stuart dynasty. The standard of revolt was raised at Braemar. Simultaneously an insurrection occurred in the north of England under the Earl of Derwentwater. A junction was effected between the English and Scottish Jacobites, and the revolutionary forces marched southwards to Preston in Lancashire, where they were surrounded by the Royal troops and



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE SIEGE AND RELIEF OF GIBRALTAR

From a painting

The famous siege lasted three years, commencing in 1780. The attacking fleet were destroyed by the use of red-hot shot

compelled to surrender. An indecisive action took place on the same day between the revolutionary forces under the Earl of Mar and the northern army of the King under Argyll at Sheriffmuir (1715). A few days later the Pretender landed, but failing to arouse the expected enthusiasm he fled, with some of the other Jacobite leaders, to the Continent.

A few of the revolutionary leaders were pardoned, others escaped, and Lords Derwentwater and Kenmuir were executed, and the estates of the former granted to Greenwich Hospital. The unsettled political state of the country caused the Ministry to deem it dangerous to risk a General Election, which, according to the Triennial Act, should have taken place in 1717. With the object of prolonging the life of Parliament, the Septennial Act was passed in 1716. By this the duration of Parliament was extended to seven years. An attempt on the part of Spain to recover the lost Italian provinces led to the formation of the Quadruple Alliance—England, France, Germany and Holland—to maintain the Treaty of Utrecht, and war with Spain was the result. England's part in this contest was confined to the sea; and the defeat of the Spanish fleet, off Cape Passaro, was the principal action. Spain endeavoured to assist the Pretender with an expedition against England, which, however, failed; and Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, who was a party to the plan, was discovered and deprived of his see.

THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

In 1720 the South Sea Company was started. This Company undertook to repay the National Debt in return for the exclusive privilege of trading to the South Seas. Shares were offered to the public, and rose from the original £100 in value to £1,000 each. The fall came rapidly, and thousands were involved in ruin. In fact, so great was the effect of the bursting of the South Sea Bubble, that the financial fabric of the whole nation was shaken to its foundations, but confidence was quickly restored by the admirable measures adopted by Sir Robert Walpole. King George I died at Osnaburgh in Hanover, in 1727. He had married the Princess Sophia, daughter of the Duke of

Brunswick and Zell, by whom he had one son, afterwards George II. Among other events of this reign was the re-establishment of the order of Knights of the Bath, the founding of Guy's Hospital, and the introduction of inoculation for small-pox, by Lady Wortley Montague.

SPANISH AND SILESIAN WARS.

George II came to the throne in 1727, but like his father he had German predilections and was but little more popular. Sir Robert Walpole continued as Prime Minister for fifteen years (until 1742). The Porteous Riots (1736) occurred in Edinburgh; and war broke out with Spain, who hampered English trade in the West Indies and harboured designs on Gibraltar. Admiral Vernon attacked and destroyed Portobello, but failed in an assault on Cartagena. A British fleet was despatched into the Pacific under Commodore Anson. He was away for four years and suffered great vicissitudes of fortune, but, after circumnavigating the globe, returned in 1744 laden with spoils. The general results of this war were, however, unsatisfactory. Walpole resigned office and was succeeded by Carteret, afterwards Earl Grenville.

The Silesian War was caused by the attempt on the part of Prussia, Bavaria and France—in opposition to treaty obligations—to deprive Maria Theresa of Austria of some of the hereditary dominions settled on her by Charles VI, in accordance with the Pragmatic Sanction. England's connection with Hanover caused the nation to enter the war on the side of Maria Theresa; and a strong British army, led by George II in person, entered Germany to join forces with the army of Austria. The Allies met the French at Dettingen (1743), and gained a decisive victory. In 1745 the Allies, under the Duke of Cumberland, were hastening to relieve Tournay when they were met and defeated at Fontenoy by the famous Marshal Saxe. The victory delivered Tournay and other fortresses in the Netherlands into the hands of the French. A naval victory over the French was, however, gained by Admiral Anson, off Cape Finisterre, in 1747, and another by Admiral Hawke, off Belleisle. This war was concluded in 1748 by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

THE YOUNG PRETENDER.

In the meantime, Charles Edward, grandson of James II, and known as the Young Pretender, had landed in the Highlands, and was immediately joined by Lochiel, chief of the Camerons, and other Highland clans; assistance also being furnished by the French. Edward marched into Perth, where his father, the Old Pretender, was proclaimed King. He proceeded to Edinburgh and took up his residence in Holyrood Palace. A few days later he met and defeated the Royal army, under Sir John Cope, at Preston Pans (1745); and then, expecting aid from the Jacobites and the French, invaded England penetrating as far as Derby. Being disappointed in not receiving the assistance he had expected, he eluded the forces of King George and retreated into Scotland. On the approach of the Duke of Cumberland with a large army he retreated into the Highlands, but was brought to battle and defeated at Culloden, near Inverness, in 1746. The slaughter in this battle was very great, and shocking barbarities were consequently committed by the Royal troops. Lords Lovat, Kilmarnock and Balmerino were taken and executed, but "Bonny Prince Charlie," although a reward of £30,000 was offered for his capture, went from place to place in the Highlands, and eventually succeeded in escaping to France. He died in Italy in 1788.

SEVEN YEARS' WAR.

In 1744, Mr. Pelham had become Prime Minister in the place of Earl Grenville; and the elder Pitt (Lord Chatham) was included in his administration. Pelham died in 1754, and was succeeded in office by his brother, the Duke of Newcastle. It was in 1756 that the Seven Years' War broke out, and in which nearly all the great European Powers were engaged. The cause was a comparatively simple one, but the ramifications were world-wide. It arose over a boundary dispute between the French and English colonists in North America. Being in possession of the Canadas, Newfoundland, Cape Breton and Arcadia (Nova Scotia), in the north, and Louisiana and other provinces along the lower Mississippi in the south, the French sought, by the erection of a chain of forts, to exclude the English settlers from the wide hunting grounds of the West, and

to pen them between the Atlantic and the Alleghanies. Conflicts between the colonists themselves frequently took place, and war was at last declared. A community of interests caused England and Prussia to join forces against France, Austria, Russia and Sweden, and war was carried on in Europe, America, India and on the seas.

CONQUEST OF CANADA.

A signal British defeat opened the campaign in America, General Braddock and the troops under his command being surprised and routed in the Ohio Woods by a force of French and Indians. Cape Breton Island was, however, captured by Admiral Boscawen and General Amherst in 1758; and in the following year a large force was despatched to Canada under General Wolfe, who succeeded, amidst great difficulties, in capturing Quebec (1759). Wolfe died on the field of battle; but the whole of Canada was soon afterwards surrendered to the British. (See *Canada*.) In Germany the allied forces, under Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, triumphed at the Battle of Minden (1759); but in the war at sea, the Island of Minorca, which was defended by General Blakeney, was compelled to surrender to the French fleet after an unsuccessful attempt at relief by Admiral Byng, who was afterwards court-martialled and shot. Admiral Boscawen's fleet, which had been blockading Toulon, put to sea on the retirement of the English from Minorca to Gibraltar, and the French fleet escaped into the Mediterranean. It was pursued, and overtaken off the African coast, and several ships were captured. Admiral Hawke defeated the French fleet off Brest in 1759. In India, Robert Clive won the famous victory of Plassey (1757) with 3,000 men against Surajah Dowlah and 60,000 followers. (See *History of India*.) Clive returned to England in 1760, rich with the spoils of war. George II died suddenly in 1760, and was buried at Westminster. He had married Caroline of Anspach, and the eldest son, Frederick, Prince of Wales, had died before him. There were, however, several other children.

PEACE OF FONTAINEBLEAU.

George III, grandson of the former King, ascended the throne in 1760. He was English both in education and ideas, and was far more

popular than the two previous sovereigns of the House of Hanover. The Duke of Newcastle remained as Premier until 1762. The Seven Years' War was continued under the new reign; and Belleisle, off the French coast, and Dominica, in the West Indies,

were captured by the British in 1761. France and Spain entered into an arrangement hostile to England which was known as the Family Compact. This caused war to be declared against the latter country. France and Spain tried to force Portugal to join them, and a British army was immediately despatched to assist Portugal, with the result that the Spaniards were quickly driven out. Manila (Philippine Islands) was taken by the British from Spain; and France lost several of her West Indian Islands. The Peace of Fontainebleau (1763) terminated the Seven Years' War. This treaty, which was very unpopular in England, provided that Great Britain should retain Canada, Cape Breton, and all her northern conquests; Louisiana in the south of North America, St. Vincent, Dominica and Tobago, in the West Indies; Florida and other possessions; but certain conquests were to be surrendered.

AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

English Ministries changed rapidly, and included those of Bute, Grenville, Rockingham, Chatham (Pitt) and Grafton. Then came Lord North's long administration, which lasted from 1770 to 1782. During the Grenville administration certain stamp duties were imposed on the American colonists, which, however, were substituted by Lord Rockingham for a duty on tea. The colonists denied the right of the Motherland to impose taxes without their consent. The Imperial Government, with a lamentable lack of foresight and tact, made no effort at compromise, but proceeded to enforce the obnoxious measures. The colonists opposed the landing of the Government tea in



THE ORIGINAL "POORT," OR GATEWAY TO THE CASTLE, CAPE TOWN. CAPTURED FROM THE DUTCH IN 1796-1806

Photo, South African Government



By kind permission of the West India Committee

CAPTURE OF TRINIDAD, 1797

Boston Harbour and commenced organising for defence.

Early in the year 1775 the first skirmish in the American War of Independence took place at Lexington, between the King's troops, who had been sent to seize some military stores, and the rebellious colonial militia. In the summer of the same year a strong insurgent force attempted to blockade Boston by entrenching themselves on a neighbouring eminence, from which they were ultimately dislodged by the King's troops. This action, the first of importance in the War of Independence, was given the name of Bunker's Hill.

At this juncture the Colonial Congress tried to effect a settlement, but failed. Forces of Royal troops, under Generals Arnold and Montgomery, were sent to Canada. The latter captured Montreal, and on effecting a junction with Arnold commenced the investment of Quebec, but General Carlton and the insurgents compelled the siege to be

raised. General Washington now became the Commander-in-Chief of the Colonial armies, and soon compelled the King's troops, under General Howe, to evacuate Boston (1776), which was the key to the whole country south of the St. Lawrence. Later in the same year Howe landed on Staten Island, and after defeating the Colonial forces (local), captured New York and drove Washington out of New Jersey, a portion of which was, however, afterwards recaptured by the insurgents. In 1777, Howe invaded Pennsylvania; met and defeated the Colonial forces at Brandywine, and captured Philadelphia. In the same year, however, the King's forces suffered a serious disaster. General Burgoyne, coming down from Canada, met and defeated a detachment of Colonials, but shortly afterwards found himself hemmed in by the insurgent army under General Yates at Saratoga (1777). He surrendered with his whole army.



THE BLOWING-UP OF THE "ORIENT"

The victory of Admiral Sir Horatio Nelson over the French Fleet in Aboukir Bay, 1st August, 1798

By permission of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty

In the following year (1778) France sent a fleet to assist the insurgents, and acknowledged the independence of the colony. War thus broke out between England and France. A French fleet, acting in conjunction with an insurgent army, attacked the British in Rhode Island; but were defeated and driven off by Lord Howe. The desultory fighting which followed proved unsatisfactory for the insurgents. The whole of Georgia was taken by the British and retained in face of the desperate efforts of General Lincoln and the allied armies to recover it. In South Carolina, Sir W. Clinton besieged Charleston and compelled Lincoln to surrender. An insurgent army, under General Yates, marching into the province to assist Lincoln, came out too late, and was defeated at Camden by Lord Cornwallis. General Arnold had gone over to the British, and was despatched with Cornwallis to Virginia, but a section of his army was routed. An indecisive action took place between Cornwallis and Greene at Guildford. This insurgent army was, however, subsequently defeated at Hobkirk's Hill by the King's forces under Lord Rawden, and the British entered Charleston. Assisted by the French fleet, under De Grasse, General Washington succeeded in capturing York Town and compelling Lord Cornwallis and his army to capitulate. This was the last action in the American War of Independence, although it was not until 1783 that peace was definitely assured. In the meantime war broke out with Spain (1779), and England had thus to face not only the insurrection in the American colonies, but also the forces sent against her in various parts of the world by France and Spain.

INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES.

In the West Indies France captured several islands, including Dominica, St. Vincent and Grenada (1779). In the following year a British fleet, under Admiral Rodney, met the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent and defeated it. He then set sail for the West Indies, and, in 1782, brought the French squadron under De Grasse (who had assisted Washington) to battle off St. Lucia and defeated it. The Dutch had also entered the war, and Admiral Hyde Parker caught a Dutch squadron, under Admiral Zoutman, off the Dogger Bank (1781) and

destroyed it. The island of Minorca was surrendered by the British after a long siege in 1782. The famous siege of Gibraltar, which lasted for three years, commenced in 1780. The Rock was defended by General Elliot, who eventually destroyed the attacking fleet by the use of red-hot shot. The war was brought to a conclusion by the Treaty of Versailles (1783). The independence of the United States of America was recognised by this treaty. Honduras and the Floridas were restored to Spain, and an exchange of conquests took place between France and England. Thus terminated the ill-advised and weakly conducted war in America, which added £100,000,000 to the National Debt of England. If Great Britain lost her American colonies by mismanagement, she at least, by her earlier colonising enterprise, laid the foundations for a new and prosperous English-speaking nation. A serious riot, known as the Gordon Rebellion, occurred in England in 1780. It was caused by the passing of an Act favourable to the Catholics, and the mob was incited to violence by Lord George Gordon, who was afterwards said to be insane. Many serious affrays occurred before it was suppressed.

SEA POWER AND THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

In 1789 the leaders of the French Revolution offered their support to any country following their example in the overthrow of organised government; and in 1792 they opened the navigation of the Scheldt and attacked Holland, which was then in alliance with England. All efforts to negotiate proved futile, and the Convention declared war against England in 1793. An expedition, under the Duke of York, was sent to the Netherlands, but was compelled to return home after enduring great privations. Admiral Lord Howe defeated the French fleet under Admiral Villaret off Brest in 1794. The Dutch now joined the French, and war was declared against them by England. The Cape of Good Hope was taken from them, as well as several of their East and West Indian dominions. (See *History of South Africa, West Indies*, etc.). Spain was also at war with England, and Admiral Jervis met the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent in 1797 and defeated it.



From a painting

THE DEATH OF CAPTAIN COOK

W. A. Mansell & Co.

In this action Nelson distinguished himself. Admiral Duncan defeated the Dutch under De Winter, off Camperdown, in 1797.

UNION OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

A lull in the storm followed these victories, and the British administration occupied itself with home affairs. In 1797 the Bank suspended cash payments; and the crews of the North Sea and Channel Fleets mutinied. This was suppressed with some difficulty, and the leaders were hanged. About this time the Irish Rebellion broke out. The differences in religion, the monopoly of trade by English merchants, and the poverty of the Irish peasantry, all contributed to the coalition of the numerous political parties into a more or less united body known as "United Irishmen." Assistance was asked for from France; and outbreaks were numerous. The most formidable rebellion occurred in Wexford; but the defeat of the rebels at Vinegar Hill terminated the revolt. France despatched a force to the assistance of the Irish insurgents, which landed at Killala. A few minor successes were at first gained, but it ultimately surrendered to Lord Cornwallis. In 1800 the Act for the Union of Great Britain and Ireland under one Parliament was passed.

THE STRUGGLE WITH NAPOLEON.

Affairs on the Continent had in the meantime taken a new turn. Napoleon Bonaparte, who was born in 1769, had, by military and administrative genius, raised himself from a lieutenant of artillery to First Consul of France, and then to Emperor. The Revolution had welded the French nation into a combined whole; and the ambitions of Napoleon were for world-wide dominion. In 1798 he led an expedition to Egypt, and Nelson, with a British squadron, had been watching for the French fleet, which was discovered lying at anchor in Aboukir Bay, at the mouth of the Nile. The Battle of the Nile resulted in the complete defeat of the French. A British force, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie, was despatched to the Helder, and was at first successful, but on the command being transferred to the Duke of York, its fortunes declined. In the East, Napoleon

had mastered Egypt and was invading Syria, with the intention of conquering the whole Turkish Empire, when, in 1799, he suffered defeat at Acre at the hands of the Pasha, aided by Sir Sidney Smith. Napoleon then returned to France.

England's claim to search vessels for contraband caused the Powers of Northern Europe, led by Russia, to enter into an armed neutrality to resist search. Negotiations were without result, and the British fleet, beginning with Denmark, bombarded the capital and destroyed the Danish fleet. This, together with the assassination of the Emperor Paul of Russia, ended the Convention for armed neutrality. In 1801 a British force, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie, was sent to force the French from Egypt. This expedition was successful, but Abercrombie fell mortally wounded at the battle of Alexandria. In 1802, by the Peace of Amiens, the war against Napoleon ceased for a time. By this treaty England retained all the conquests she had made, except Trinidad and Ceylon. The French retained their Continental acquisitions, and England acknowledged Napoleon I.

TRAFALGAR.

While all these events had been taking place, England had changed her Ministry four times. With the dissolution of the Ministry under Lord North, came the short administrations of Rockingham, Shelburne and Lord Portland, the younger Pitt commencing his famous administration in 1783. In 1801 he retired and was succeeded by Mr. Addington, but resumed office again in 1804. In the following year hostilities with France were resumed. Malta was ceded by England to the Knights of St. John; and unsuccessful negotiations to this end were conducted with the French Government. Spain was allied to France; and Nelson, after a long search, came up with the combined French and Spanish fleets off Cape Trafalgar (1805). The action which followed resulted in a glorious British victory, which, however, was marred by the death of Admiral Lord Nelson. In 1806 Pitt died, and a Ministry, which was named "All the Talents," was formed under Lord Grenville. This was soon dissolved, and a Cabinet with Lord Portland as the head and Mr. Perceval as the Leader of the Commons was formed.

PENINSULA WAR.

About this time Napoleon issued a manifesto from Berlin ordering all continental ports to be closed against British vessels and merchandise; and many of the Governments of Europe, through fear of reprisals, submitted to this order. Napoleon exhibited an intention of seizing the Danish navy and employing it against Great Britain, and in order to prevent this the Danes were asked to place their vessels under British protection during the war. This they refused to do, and an expedition, under Lord Cathcart and Admiral Gambier, was sent to Copenhagen. The city was bombarded, and the shipping was surrendered and conveyed to England (1807). Gallant little Portugal, having from the first refused to close her ports to British commerce, was invaded by Napoleon's armies, under General Junot. The Portuguese Royal Family fled to Brazil, and Junot was made King of Portugal.

Napoleon decoyed the King of Spain to France and forced him to resign the crown. The Spaniards appealed to England, and an army of 10,000 men, under Wellesley (afterwards the Duke of Wellington), landed in Mondego Bay. The French were defeated at Roliça and Vimiera (1808). By the Convention of Aintree the French were, however, allowed to leave Spain unmolested. Sir John Moore, who had conducted a diversion in the north of Spain, penetrated as far as Salamanca, but, being unsupported, was compelled to retreat, fighting and winning the famous rear-guard action at Corrunna, in 1809. This brave leader died in the hour of victory.

In the same year came Wellesley's second campaign. He drove the French from Oporto and followed them into Spain, inflicting a heavy defeat at Talavera (1809).^{*} Heavy French reinforcements, under Massena, were coming to the aid of the defeated legions, and Wellesley retreated to the defences he had caused to be prepared at Torres Vedras, defeating a French force at Busaco on his way. Massena, now in command of the strengthened French army, did not attempt to force the lines of Torres Vedras, but waited in front of them for

some time and retreated with the coming of spring. He was followed by the British, and a French force sent to relieve Badajos was defeated by General Beresford at Albuera in 1811. The attacks on the fortified places, Badajos and Ciudad Rodrigo, repeatedly failed, but they both fell in the spring of the following year. The battle of Salamanca was won in 1812, and Wellesley entered Madrid. Again however, he was compelled to retreat into Portugal, but on receiving heavy reinforcements once more entered Spain. The first victory was at Vittoria, in 1813. The French were then driven through the Pyrenees on to the plains of France. The fortified towns of Pampeluna and San Sebastian were taken, and the French were completely overthrown at the battles of Orthes and Toulouse. The remnants of the armies of France were pursued to Paris, where Napoleon signed the Act of Abdication and was exiled to Elba.

WATERLOO.

Louis XVIII was placed on the throne by the Allied sovereigns who had united against Napoleon. In 1815 Napoleon escaped from Elba and landed in France. He was immediately joined by thousands of his veteran soldiers and generals. Louis fled from France and the British and Prussian armies were sent to resist Napoleon. Minor actions took place at Ligny and Quatre Bras, but the hostile armies met in general battle at Waterloo (1815). The French were routed, and Napoleon shortly afterwards surrendered to the British, and was banished to St. Helena, where he resided until his death in 1821.[†]

The fall of Napoleon after the Peninsular War had been mainly caused by his invasion of Russia. In June, 1812, he crossed the Niemen with 300,000 of his best troops, and in September defeated the Russians at Borodino and entered Moscow, which had, however, been set on fire and reduced to ruins by the retreating Russians. In October, Napoleon commenced the retreat from Moscow, and lost the major portion of his huge army in the long march through wasted country amidst the rigours of a Russian

^{*} At the same time, in the Walcheren Expedition, under Lord Chatham, a British army was almost decimated by ague.

[†] For the history of India and other portions of the Empire during this and other periods, see under *India*, etc.



THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR

Photo. Imperial War Museum

winter. Although he formed fresh armies in 1813, he never recovered from the blow, and in October suffered a serious defeat at Leipzig from the allied armies of Russia, Prussia, Austria and Sweden. In 1814, while Wellington was coming up from Spain, another large allied army was converging on Paris from the east, the two great armies entering Paris during March and April, 1814. The second overthrow of Napoleon after his escape from Elba was, however, almost entirely due to the splendid British victory at Waterloo, which was made even more complete by the arrival of the Prussians under Blücher.

WAR WITH THE UNITED STATES.

While this great Continental war was at its height, a quarrel arose between Great Britain and the United States, the American Government refusing to permit their vessels to be searched for deserting British sailors, and in 1812 the second war with America broke out. Several attempts were made to invade Canada, but owing principally to the loyalty of the Canadians, they were repulsed. There were raids by the British on land and sea, which alternately met with failure and success. In June, 1813, the famous single ocean combat between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon* took place outside Boston Harbour, the American vessel being captured in fifteen minutes. A British expedition to New Orleans failed miserably, and this evenly contested but unsatisfactory campaign was brought to a close in 1814.

GEORGIAN ENGLAND.

In the year after Waterloo (1816) the Algerian Expedition was despatched under Lord Exmouth to put a stop to the piracy carried on along the North African coast. The Algerian fleet was destroyed, and the capital bombarded. During the period 1816–20 there was much discontent in England, and riots were frequent. In 1817 the Princess Charlotte, only child of the Prince Regent, died; and in 1819 the Princess Victoria (afterwards Queen Victoria), the daughter of the Duke of Kent, was born. In the following year King George III died, and was buried at Windsor. He had

reigned for sixty years, but during the latter part of this time the insanity of the old King caused the affairs of the nation to be in the hands of the Prince Regent, who ascended the throne as George IV, in 1820.*

Other important events during the reign of George III were the passing of the Royal Marriage Act, which made the Royal assent necessary to the marriage of any member of the Royal Family under 25, and of the Council, when over that age; the slave trade was abolished in the British colonies; cotton manufacture was improved by many inventions; vaccination was introduced; and James Watt improved the steam engine. In 1807 London was first lighted by gas; the first steanboat was tried on the Clyde in 1811. Sir Humphrey Davy introduced the safety lamp in 1816. The voyages of Captain Cook took place during the years 1768–1779. In 1768 Bruce explored the Upper Nile. Mungo Park explored the River Niger in 1795. The turnpike system in England was extended in 1763; mail-coaches were used for the conveyance of mails in 1784; and Sunday schools were first established in 1781.

During the first seven years of the reign of George IV, Lord Liverpool held the Premiership; and the first event of importance was the Cato Street Conspiracy—a plot by Thistlewood, an ex-army officer, and others to assassinate the Ministers and set fire to London, taking advantage of the confusion to establish a Government of their own. Five of the leaders in this happily unsuccessful conspiracy were hanged. Queen Caroline, who had been separated from her husband, and had been living a rather free life on the Continent, returned at the coronation and endeavoured to assert her rights, but was repelled by force. Later a bill was introduced to degrade her from the title she held, but so ably was the Queen defended, and so popular was she with the people of England, that this bill was abandoned. She died in the following year.

WEST AFRICA AND BURMA.

In 1824–6 a war broke out against the Ashantees in West Africa. A British force was cut up, and Sir Charles Macarthy,

* The family of George III included George (IV); Frederick, Duke of York; William (IV); Edward, Duke of Kent; Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, and King of Hanover; Augustus, Duke of Essex; and Adolphus, Duke of Cambridge.



W. A. Mansell & Co.

"1814." THE BEGINNING OF THE END

The retreat from Moscow in which Napoleon's Grand Army was almost decimated

From the painting by Meissonier

Governor of Cape Coast Castle, was killed ; but the Ashantees were subdued. Next came the Burmese War, caused by the aggressions of the Burmese on the East India Company's territory in Bengal. An expedition, under Sir Archibald Campbell, was despatched, and succeeded in capturing Rangoon. The nature of the country and the warlike character of the natives caused this war to last for two years. It was terminated by the Peace of Yandaber, by which Assam, Aracan, Tenaserim, and other parts of Further India were ceded to the British. During 1827 the Premiership changed hands three times. Lord Liverpool resigned office through ill-health, and was succeeded by Mr. Canning, who died the same year, and Viscount Goderich became the Prime Minister. In 1828 the Duke of Wellington formed a Tory Ministry.

During the struggle between Greece and Turkey in 1827, a British expedition was sent to the Mediterranean. Its stated object was the protection of British commerce, but the event which followed was directed against Turkey. The British fleet, under Admiral Codrington, was joined by the French and Russian fleets, and an allied attack was made on the Turkish and Egyptian navies in Navarino Bay. They were almost totally destroyed. George IV died in 1830, and was buried at Windsor.* Among other events of this comparatively short reign were the founding of the National Gallery, and the establishment of the Metropolitan Police Force.

REFORM BILL.

William IV, brother of the late King, ascended the throne in 1830. His reign of seven years was a peaceful one. Being in a minority over the question of reform, the Duke of Wellington resigned office, and Earl Grey formed a Whig Ministry. The first measure introduced by the Grey Administration was the original Reform Bill. Agitation for political reform had long been taking place in many parts of the country, and many anomalies had crept into the system of representation. Lord John Russell introduced the Reform Bill into the House of Commons in 1831, but it was defeated, and the Ministry resigned. A new Parliament carried the Bill through the Commons with

a large majority, but it was thrown out by the House of Lords. On being again introduced it was so altered by the Lords that the second Ministry resigned. Serious riots occurred in Bristol, Nottingham, and many other places, and the Duke of Wellington failed to form a Ministry. Earl Grey returned to office, opposition to the bill was withdrawn, and it was finally passed in 1832.

ABOLITION OF SLAVERY.

In the following year a Bill for the Abolition of Slavery in the West Indies and elsewhere was passed through the exertions of Wilberforce. All the negroes existing in slavery, numbering about 700,000, were set free ; the nation paying £20,000,000 as compensation to the slave owners. In the same year the Factory Act was passed, limiting the hours of employment in factories for women and young people, and rendering school attendance compulsory. In 1834 the Poor Law Amendment Act was passed, bringing the various parishes under the control of a central authority. In this year Earl Grey resigned, and was succeeded by Lord Melbourne, who, in turn, was succeeded by Sir Robert Peel and a Tory Cabinet ; but Melbourne was soon recalled to office. The chief events of Melbourne's first administration were : the passing of the Municipal Corporation Act, the Tithe Commutation Act, and the Marriage Act. William IV died in 1837, and was buried at Windsor. He had married Adelaide, of Saxe Meiningen, and had two daughters, both of whom died during childhood. The first railway (Liverpool to Manchester) was opened during this reign ; and cholera first appeared in England, at Sunderland, in 1831-2.

EARLY YEARS OF QUEEN VICTORIA.

Queen Victoria, daughter of the Duke of Kent—son of George III—ascended the throne in 1837 at the age of eighteen. According to the Salic Law the Kingdom of Hanover was, on her accession to the English throne, separated from all connection with England. Lord Melbourne continued to hold the Premiership during the first four years of this long and wonderful reign, which added so much to the size, wealth, power, happiness and prestige of the growing British and Indian Empires. In

* Family—Charlotte, Queen of the Belgians. Died 1817.



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

From the original by Ernest Crofts, R.A., in the Mappin Art Gallery, Sheffield

WELLINGTON'S MARCH FROM QUATRE BRAS TO WATERLOO



W. A. Mansell & Co.

BURNING OF SEVASTOPOL

From a painting by Brierley

the first year came the Insurrection in the Canadas, which was quelled by Sir Francis Head, the Governor of the Province, and a few British troops aided by a large section of the population. (See *History of Canada*.) In 1841 the two Canadas were united and granted a constitution.

The expedition to Syria, in 1840, was undertaken in order to maintain the integrity of the Ottoman Empire against Mohammed Ali, Pasha of Egypt, who had revolted against the Sultan and conquered Syria. Combined naval and military action, under Admiral Stopford and General Sir Charles Napier, compelled Mohammed Ali to withdraw from Syria and to hold Egypt as an hereditary Pashalik of the Turkish Empire. In the same year trouble arose in China over the contraband trade in opium. The Chinese Government prohibited British vessels from entering Chinese waters, and war broke out. The War with China (1840) was at first confined to the bombardment of certain coast ports, but troops were eventually sent from India under Sir Hugh Gough, and the Chinese were defeated. They then agreed to open five ports to British trade. (See *England in China*.)

EXPANSION OF BRITISH INDIA.

In 1839-42 occurred the Afghan War, undertaken to check the advance of Russia on Afghanistan. The most notable event of this campaign was the disastrous retreat of the British forces, under General Elphinstone, through the Khyber Pass (1841); one officer and a few privates alone escaping. Two expeditions followed, and the British prisoners were recovered. (See *History of India*.) In 1843 Ireland was thrown into a state of agitation by Daniel O'Connell, who was prosecuted by the State and temporarily imprisoned, during which time his power over the more turbulent Irish declined, and when released he quitted the country.

At this period wars in India were of frequent occurrence. First came the Mahratta War (1843); the Scinde War (1843); the First Sikh War (1845-6); and the Second Sikh War (1849-50). These brought large additions to the territory under British suzerainty in India. (See *History of India*.)

REPEAL OF THE CORN LAWS.

In 1841 Lord Melbourne resigned the Premiership, and was succeeded by Sir Robert Peel and a Tory Ministry. The Repeal of the

Corn Laws (1846) was mainly brought about by Mr. Cobden and a league he had formed called the "Anti-Corn Law League." Through the exertions of this organisation popular feeling was aroused against a tax upon corn, which had been imposed throughout the country. Sir Robert Peel, hitherto a supporter of the corn laws, introduced a bill for their abolition in 1846. After encountering great opposition, this bill was passed and the taxes removed. This change in the political attitude of the Premier caused the resignation of his Ministry, and Lord John Russell held office until 1852.

A widespread famine, followed by riots, occurred in Ireland in the years 1846-7. The potato crop failed, and many died of famine and fever, notwithstanding the efforts made at relief. The spirit of revolution, which was openly rife on the Continent, spread into England, and the Chartist Riots were the result. These were followed by a rebellion in Ireland, set on foot by Smith O'Brien. This was easily suppressed, and many of the leaders were transported. The Great Exhibition was opened in Hyde Park in 1851. It was a brilliant success, nearly all nations being represented with their principal arts and crafts. In the following year the place of Lord John Russell was taken by Lord Derby and a Conservative Ministry, which was superseded a few months later by a Coalition Ministry under Lord Aberdeen. In 1852 the Kaffir War broke out. The British victory at Berea terminated this campaign, and peace was concluded in 1853.

CRIMEAN AND PERSIAN WARS.

Russian encroachments on the Turkish Empire was the primary cause of the Crimean War (1854-6). England and France joined hands, and landed considerable armies in the Crimea, under Lord Raglan and Marshal St. Arnaud. The Allies stormed the heights of Alma and invested Sevastopol. The siege of this powerful fortress occupied many months, and in the meantime the battles of Balaclava and Inkerman were won by the Allies. The severity of the Crimean winter, combined with general mismanagement, caused the loss of thousands of British troops. Sevastopol was taken in September, 1855. Certain ports on the Baltic and Black Sea were bombarded; and the war terminated on the signing of the Treaty of Paris in 1856.

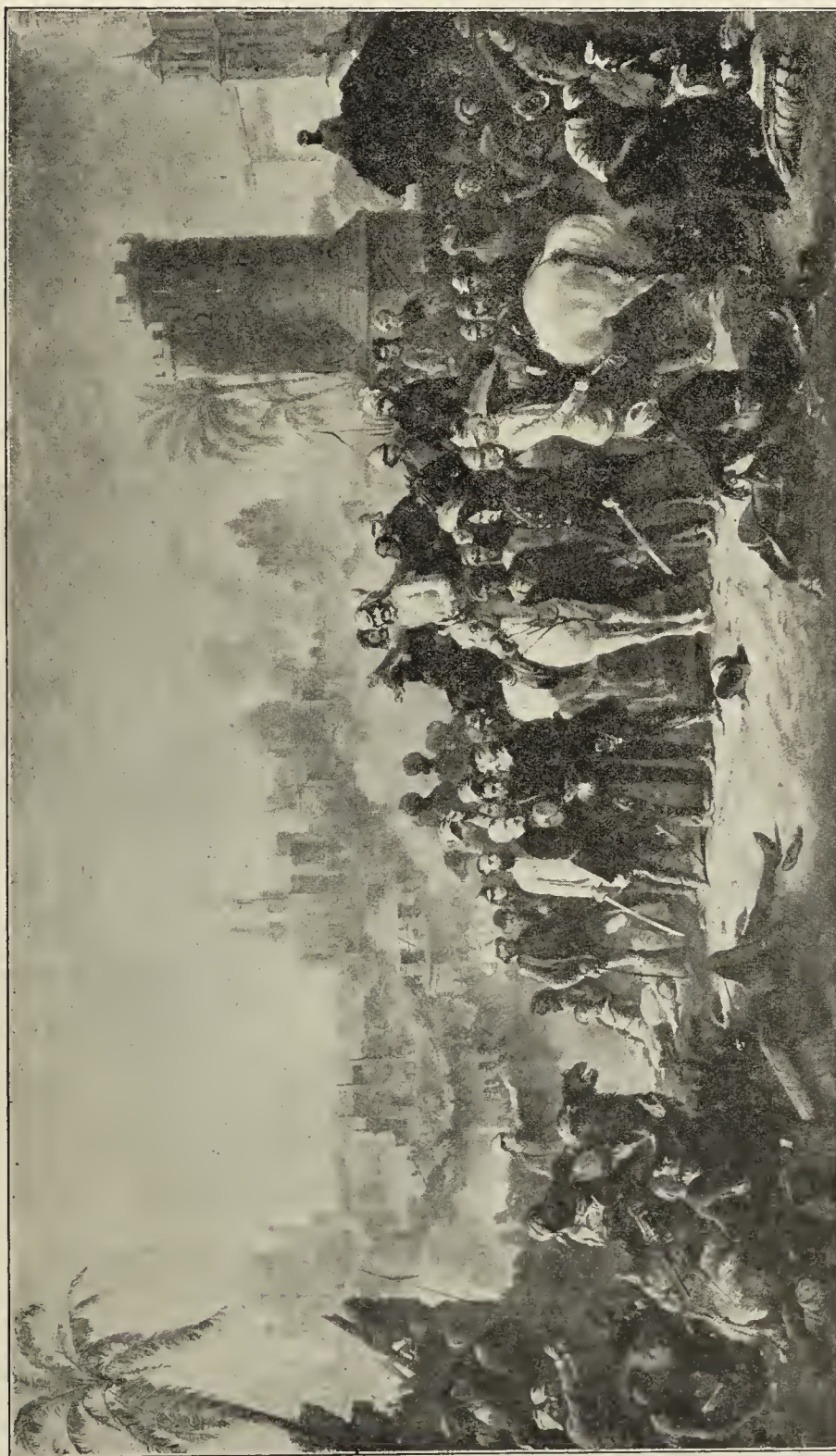
Lord Palmerston and a Liberal Ministry assumed office on the resignation of the Coalition Government, under Lord Aberdeen, in 1855. In this year Russian intrigues caused a war with Persia. The British captured Bushire, on the Persian Gulf, and won the battle of Mohammerah (1857); the war almost immediately terminated. Next came the Chinese War of 1856, which was caused principally by the arrogance of the Chinese Commissioner. Canton was occupied, and the British and French fleets sailed up to Tientsin, where a treaty was signed (1858), guaranteeing further commercial rights. (See *England in China*).

INDIAN MUTINY.

The Indian Mutiny broke out at Meerut in 1857, and lasted until 1858, being finally quelled by British and Sikh forces, under Generals Havelock, Outram, Lawrence, Colin Campbell, and many others. (See *History of India*.) The Government of Lord Palmerston was defeated over the Conspiracy Bill, and was succeeded by a Conservative Ministry, under Lord Derby, in 1858. In the following year, however, Lord Palmerston again took office over the question of reform. The failure on the part of the Chinese to observe the Treaty of Tientsin caused a resumption of the Chinese War. Allied British and French forces occupied Tientsin, and then marched on Peking, where a treaty was signed (1860), in which the Chinese agreed to the payment of an increased monetary indemnity, to open the port of Tientsin, and to cede Kowloon (Hong-Kong, *q.v.*) to the British.

AMERICAN CIVIL WAR.

The American Civil War broke out in 1861, and there was some danger of England being involved owing to the seizure of two envoys from the Southern States on British vessels, but the wise counsels of Prince Albert, husband of the Queen, prevented a rupture. The blockade of the Southern ports by the navy of the Union paralysed the cotton manufacture in England. Great distress was caused in Lancashire and elsewhere, but it was borne patiently, and the increased supplies from India and elsewhere gradually improved the trade until the termination of the Civil War in 1865. An important incident was the case of the *Alabama*, a vessel



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE RELIEF OF LUCKNOW DURING THE INDIAN MUTINY
The meeting of Generals Havelock, Outram and Sir Colin Campbell

From a painting

built at Birkenhead, which succeeded in getting away from England and preying on Union commerce. Although the American Ambassador warned Lord John Russell, he failed to arrest the vessel in time. Relations were somewhat strained for a time, but the matter was referred to arbitration, and England paid three millions sterling as compensation for the damage wrought by this vessel. The Second International Exhibition was held at South Kensington in 1862. It was similar to the one held in Hyde Park in 1851, and was a great success.

THE FENIANS.

A conspiracy among the lowest class in Ireland, which had for its object the overthrow of Imperial authority and the establishment of a republic in Ireland, began to get troublesome during 1865-6. The conspirators formed themselves into the Fenian Brotherhood, which quickly became a dangerous anarchist league governed by head centres. The necessary financial support was derived from Irish-Americans; but the Imperial Government, by suspending the Habeas Corpus Act, deprived the conspiracy of the support it had hitherto received from America; and an attempted Fenian Raid into Canada from the United States, caused the Government of the latter country to adopt strong measures for the prevention of a breach of international law. Dissensions among the conspirators themselves soon robbed the conspiracy of all cohesive power, but there has several times since been isolated revivals of the Fenian spirit.

HOME AFFAIRS 1865-75.

The failure of many large banks and industrial companies caused a commercial panic in 1865, which was followed by great distress. In the same year the first Atlantic cable, connecting the old and new worlds, was successfully laid. The cholera epidemic, which had first appeared in England in 1831, then in 1849, and again in 1854, broke out afresh in 1866. It was of a malignant character, and caused great loss of life in the East End of London. In Parliament the reins of Government had changed hands several times since 1858. On the death of Lord Palmerston, the Premiership was taken by Earl Russell, who, however, failed to carry through the new Reform Bill in all its

details, and was succeeded in office by Lord Derby (1866) and a Conservative Ministry. In 1868 Gladstone became Premier; and this Ministry disestablished the Irish Church, passed the Education Act, the Irish Land Bill, and the Bill for establishing Voting by Ballot.

FORMATION OF THE INDIAN EMPIRE.

In 1873 Disraeli and a Conservative Ministry were returned with a good majority. Through the efforts of Samuel Plimsoll a Bill was passed for the better protection of the lives of British merchant seamen. Powers were given to local authorities to pull down insanitary buildings and to erect workmen's dwellings on the sites. The Education Act was extended. The people of the British Isles were now beginning to awaken to a realisation of the value and development of the huge overseas Empire. The Prince of Wales visited India in 1875, and in the following year Queen Victoria assumed the title of Empress of India. Trouble with Russia, which threatened war, induced Disraeli, to have transported large numbers of Indian troops to Malta, which tended to increase Imperial prestige in the Near East. In 1875 Disraeli had purchased, on behalf of the British Government, £5,000,000 worth of Suez Canal shares, which secured for England the commanding voice in the control of this great highway to India. (See *Trade Routes, Canals and India*.) In 1877 the Russo-Turkish War broke out, which ended disastrously for Turkey, and in the following year a conference of European Powers was held at Berlin to decide on the terms of peace. (See *Near Eastern Question*.) Disraeli, who had now become Earl Beaconsfield, and Lord Salisbury (Foreign Minister) represented British interests at this conference; and their successful policy, which obtained peace with honour, was hailed with rejoicing.

ENGLAND IN AFRICA.

Trouble now arose in South Africa (*q.v.*) and on the North-West Frontier of India (*q.v.*); and at the General Election in 1880 the Liberals were returned with a large majority. Gladstone again became Prime Minister. Among the Irish peasantry "boycotting" became the order of the day. This

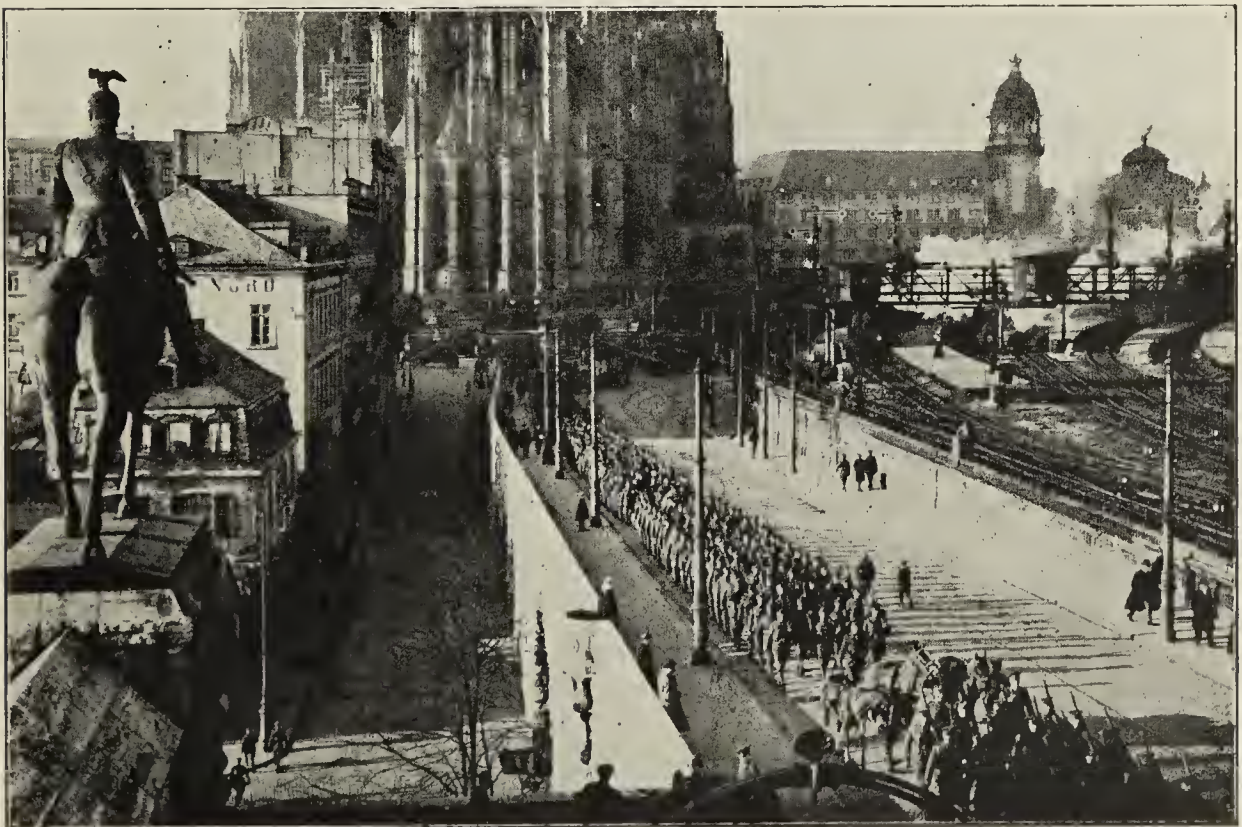
system caused tenants who took a farm from which another had been evicted to be boycotted by all around, "as if they were lepers." The trouble in South Africa (*q.v.*) resulted in the First Boer War, culminating in the defeat of the weak British forces at Majuba Hill in 1881. (See *History of South Africa*.) In Egypt the Araby Revolt led to the bombardment of Alexandria by the British fleet in 1882. Gordon was killed in the Sudan in 1885. (See *Egypt and the Sudan*.) Trouble in Afghanistan caused England and Russia to be on the verge of war for some months.

IRELAND AND HOME RULE.

Trouble in Ireland, principally between the farmers and landlords, had continued in varying intensity since the "boycotting" system, introduced by Parnell, and the rise to power of the Land League had been effected in 1880. A Coercion Bill had been passed through Parliament to suppress outrages, and a new Irish Land Bill enabled

Land Courts to fix fair rents and to help tenants to purchase their own farms. The Home Rulers, under the leadership of Parnell, did not regard these measures with favour, and outrages became of frequent occurrence. Parnell and others were imprisoned, but released on undertaking to stop the outrages. Forster, the Secretary for Ireland, resigned owing to his disapproval of this method, and was succeeded by Lord Frederick Cavendish, who, with his private secretary, was assassinated in Phoenix Park, Dublin.

In 1884 the British Parliament passed a Parliamentary Reform Bill which increased by over two millions the number of voters, large towns were given increased representation, and the lowering of the Irish franchise increased the followers of Parnell. In June, 1885, Gladstone's Government came to an end, but after the General Elections the Liberals were returned with numbers equal to the Conservatives and Irish Home Rulers combined. A Home Rule Bill was



OCCUPATION OF GERMANY
The Grenadier Guards marching through Cologne

Photo, British War Museum



Photo, Imperial War Museum

A CAMOUFLAGED TANK AT "CLAPHAM JUNCTION." (Note shell bursts in distance)

introduced in 1886, but was defeated on the second reading; and Gladstone resigned. The next was a Conservative Ministry under Lord Salisbury. The partition of Africa was completed, County Councils were established. Free education in elementary schools was introduced. The hours of factory labour for women were curtailed; and power was given to County Councils to assist people to acquire small holdings.

SECOND BOER WAR.

Gladstone returned to office in 1892 with a very small majority. A new Home Rule Bill was passed by the Commons, but defeated in the House of Lords. The sessions in 1894 were occupied by the passing of the Parish Councils Bill. The amendments to this Bill made in its passage through the Lords caused Gladstone to resign. He made his last speech in March, 1894. Lord Rosebery next became Premier; and the Death Duties were greatly increased. In 1895 a Conservative Government was returned with a great majority. Lord Salisbury became

Premier, with Balfour as First Lord and Mr. Joseph Chamberlain as Secretary for the Colonies. The Colonial Secretary became very popular in all parts of the Empire, with the exception of certain portions of South Africa. In 1898, penny postage between the United Kingdom and the Colonies was established. In 1899 the Boer War broke out, which ended in the overthrow of the Transvaal and Orange Free State Republics in May, 1902. (See *History of South Africa*.) The Union of the Australian States into the Commonwealth of Australia was accomplished, and an Act sanctioning this administrative change was passed by the Imperial Parliament in 1900. On January 22nd, 1901, the great and beloved Queen Victoria died.

ALLIANCE WITH JAPAN.

King Edward VII ascended the throne in 1901. The first Parliament of the Commonwealth was opened by the Prince of Wales (now King George V) in the same year. In May, 1902, the Boer War was brought to a



SURRENDERED GERMAN SUBMARINES MOORED AT HARWICH



THE ABOVE HISTORIC PHOTOGRAPH SHOWS A PORTION OF THE INTERNED
GERMAN SHIPS AT SCAPA

Photos, Imperial War Museum

successful conclusion by the operations of Lords Roberts and Kitchener ; and the Peace of Vereeniging was signed. In the same year a treaty was concluded with Japan, by which it was agreed that if either nation was attacked by two Powers at the same time, the other nation should go to its assistance. This treaty, which has since been revoked, applied more to India, Japan and the Far East, than to affairs in Europe or the New World. In the Russo-Japanese War of 1904 this treaty was of great assistance in limiting the struggle to these two powers. A refusal on the part of Venezuela to meet her financial obligations—long outstanding—caused a blockade of the ports of this country by the English and German fleets in the latter part of 1902. Antagonism between Germany and England had been steadily growing in intensity, although officially ignored ; and this concerted naval action in South America was as unpopular in England and Germany as it was in the United States.

THE ENTENTE CORDIALE.

Owing to an illness, the Coronation of King Edward VII had to be postponed from June to August (1902). In the following year King Edward visited Paris, where he was received with great enthusiasm ; and the French President, in return, visited London, and received an equally cordial reception from all classes. This was the beginning of a series of friendly visits by statesmen and others of both nations, which led to the *Entente Cordiale*—a bond of friendship between the two countries. An agreement was at last arrived at with France over the Newfoundland question (See *History of Newfoundland*.) Towards the end of 1903 the boundary between Alaska and Canada was determined by an Anglo-American Commission ; but, unfortunately, Canadians were dissatisfied with the result.

NORTH SEA INCIDENT.

The Russo-Japanese War broke out in February, 1904, and resulted in a series of brilliant victories on both land and sea for the Japanese. A crisis was caused between England and Russia by the firing of the Baltic Fleet on English fishing vessels in the North Sea, mistaking them for Japanese warships. The matter was, however, happily

settled by arbitration. A Conference of Colonial Premiers was held in London in May, 1907 (see *Imperial Conferences*) ; and in 1909 a Bill was passed by the Imperial Parliament for the Union of South Africa. The Duke of Connaught opened the first Parliament of The Union of South Africa in November, 1910. (See *History of South Africa*.) King Edward VII—known as the "Peacemaker"—died on 6th May, 1910.

King George V was crowned on 22nd June, 1911. Royal visits were paid to Wales, Scotland, Ireland and India. In all parts this Sailor-King, with his consort Queen Mary were received with unprecedented loyalty and devotion. One of the first acts of the new reign was the extension of the penny postage to Australia and even the most distant parts of the Empire. Elections in Canada gave the death-blow to the projected commercial treaty between that Dominion and the United States, at the same time emphasising the desire of Canadians for closer bonds with the Motherland. In 1913 serious labour troubles, followed by riots, occurred in South Africa ; and on 4th August, 1914, the Great European War broke out. Nearly all the Great Powers were quickly drawn into this, the greatest and most fiercely contested war in the annals of the world, brought about by the unwholesome and Napoleonic ambitions of the Emperor William II and the military party of Germany.

The Great European War of 1914-21

The titanic nature of this struggle of the democratic Powers against the autocracy of Central Europe, its almost world-wide and encyclopedic effect, and the comparatively recent times in which the events occurred, render it impossible to give here a reliable and dispassionate account of the causes, historical, political, geographical, economical and ethnological, which combined to produce, in the epoch-making year 1914, this great upheaval in the world. It has been more or less officially termed "The War for Civilisation," by which is apparently meant the final passing of the long and ingrained feudal system in its broadest and deepest sense, and the dawn of democratic government. But even this statement, necessarily general and indefinite, is open to serious



THE SIGNING OF THE PEACE TREATY IN THE HALL OF MIRRORS AT VERSAILLES *Photo, Central News*
Seated at the table immediately in front of the second pillar from the left-hand statue are (right to left) Mr. Lloyd George, M. Clemenceau, President Wilson and Signor Orlando

criticism and objection. The truth is that no exact definition will be possible until the lapse of half a century or more has enabled the world to sift the conflicting mass of evidence and view the multifarious events through the large end of the telescope of time.

The volume of literature entirely devoted to this epoch-making world war renders it unnecessary here to do more than briefly review, (1) the direct or final cause of the catastrophe, and (2) the victorious part played by the British and Indian Empires in Armageddon. The British battle-line extended from the Arctic Sea to Australia, crossing oceans and continents. On November 11th, 1918, when the "Cease Fire" sounded from the Grand Fleet at Scapa Flow, the order was carried by British bugles to Basra on the Persian Gulf—a battle line on sea, land and air of over 3,000 miles, held for nearly five years continuously by never less than 4,000,000 men from different parts of the Empire, who suffered casualties to the extent of 980,667 killed and 2,127,067 wounded. Statistics of fleets, air squadrons, batteries and battalions fade into insignificance in face of the human achievement, but these important details will, nevertheless, be found in the section devoted to *Imperial Defence*.

FINAL CAUSE OF WORLD WAR.

On 20th June in the year 1914, the Archduke Francis Ferdinand, heir to the Throne of Austria-Hungary, was murdered at Serajevo, Bosnia. This sad and regrettable event was followed by diplomatic tension between Austria and Serbia—accused of aiding and harbouring the assassins.

The Emperor William II of Germany presided over a Crown Council at Potsdam (Berlin) on July 5th, and war on the side of Austria was there decided upon. Austria was promised the support of the great armies of the German Empire, and was, at the same time, advised to seize the opportunity to crush Serbia.

Mobilisation commenced in Germany, Austria, Serbia, and Russia. Eighteen days later (July 23rd) Austria presented an ultimatum to Serbia demanding the fulfilment of conditions thought by the Allied Powers (then British Empire, France and Belgium) to be unduly severe, and aimed at the

sovereignty of Serbia. A lapse of five days, occurred during which time every effort was made by the Allies, and also by Neutral Powers (U.S.A.) to avert a war which threatened to involve the whole of Europe.

These efforts were without avail, and Austria declared war on Serbia (July 28th). Three days later Germany sent an ultimatum to Russia, owing to the movement of troops in the latter country towards the German and Austrian frontiers. On the following day Germany declared war on Russia, and simultaneously invaded the Grand Duchy of Luxemburg. On August 2nd Germany sent an ultimatum to Belgium demanding the unopposed passage of her armies through Belgian territory, to enable her to invade France. On the following day, Germany, now in the delirium of war fever, declared war on France.

The threatened invasion of peaceful Belgium, whose neutrality had been guaranteed by a treaty signed by all the principal European Powers, including Germany ("a scrap of paper"), caused Great Britain to demand immediate assurance from Germany that this treaty would be honoured. This guarantee was refused, and war was declared by Great Britain against Germany at 11 p.m. on the night of August 4th, 1914. The opening engagement was the sinking of the German minelayer *Königin Luise* by a British destroyer in the North Sea on the day following the outbreak of war.

THE GREAT VICTORY.

It would be impossible to give here the hundreds of battles and skirmishes which took place in all parts of the world during the four years and three months of this unprecedented war. On October 28th, 1918, Austria asked for peace, and was followed by Turkey. The Emperor William II abdicated on November 9th, and Germany accepted final defeat on November 11th. Hostilities ceased on this day at 11 a.m. Then came the occupation of the Rhineland by Allied troops, the surrender of the German fleet, and the Peace Treaty of Versailles (1919). The official termination of the War did not take place until August 31st, 1921, when all the Treaties of Peace had been ratified by the respective Governments. (See *War for Civilisation, Defence, Finance, Palestine, Iraq*, etc.).

LEAGUE OF NATIONS.

After a long period of internal trouble in Southern Ireland this island was divided, in 1920-22, into two Empire States, each with self-government and Dominion status (see *Government*.) Northern Ireland, with Belfast as its capital, has a population of just over 1,256,000; and the Irish Free State, with Dublin as the seat of Government, has just under 3,000,000 inhabitants (see *Ireland*).

The history of the Indian Empire and of the Dominions and Colonies is given elsewhere, but no résumé of historical events affecting the British Isles would be complete without mention of the formation of the League of Nations. This international body, which has its permanent headquarters at

Geneva, Switzerland, actually came into being when the Treaty of Versailles (Peace Treaty with Germany) was ratified in 1920.

The League of Nations, in which the British Empire and each of the self-governing Dominions and India is separately represented, consists of the representatives of fifty-five nations, or over three-quarters of the entire world. It was established to provide a medium for the prevention or settlement of international disputes. There are, however, many subsidiary branches of the League's activities, dealing with such subjects as justice, labour, reconstruction of bankrupt states, mandates, the white slave traffic, the drug traffic, etc., in their *international aspect*.



RANKIN BROTHERS LIMITED
PRINTERS AND PUBLISHERS
TRENCHARD STREET
BRISTOL

Date Due

[illegible]

DA 11 .D7 1930

The Encyclopedia of the Britis

v.1
010101 000



0 1163 0181286 7
TRENT UNIVERSITY

27076

Do Not Remove From The Library

